



Remote Connections & Passwords.
Everywhere!

User Manual

2022.1



Table of Contents

Part I Overview	8
1 Remote Desktop Manager.....	9
2 Security.....	10
3 System Requirements.....	12
Prerequisite Software	14
4 The Devolutions Platform.....	14
Remote Desktop Manager Agent	15
Remote Desktop Manager Jump	18
Part II Getting Started	27
1 Using Remote Desktop Manager.....	28
2 Checklist for Individuals.....	28
Select the Data Source type - Individuals	30
3 Checklist for Teams.....	32
Select the Data Source type - Teams	34
Set up a team folder for default settings	36
4 Creating an Entry.....	38
5 Managing Credentials.....	39
Part III Installation	42
1 Client.....	43
Ancillary Files	44
Configuration File Location	46
Custom Installer Service	48
Installer File Generator	50
Option Selection Dialog.....	52
Custom Installer Manager.....	56
For All Users	64
Portable (USB)	65
Registration	70
Enterprise Edition.....	70
End of License.....	73
Free Edition.....	73
Trial Request.....	77
Remote Desktop Services	78
2 Database Upgrade.....	82
3 Uninstall.....	84
4 Update.....	84
Part IV User Interface	87
1 Main Screen.....	88

2	Style.....	89
3	Theme.....	93
4	Top Pane.....	94
	Quick Access Toolbar	95
5	Navigation Pane.....	97
	Opened Sessions	100
	Favorite Entries	103
	Most Recently Used Entries	106
	Navigation Pane Key Mapping	107
6	Content Area.....	108
	Embedded Sessions	108
	Dashboard	111
7	Panes (Footer).....	113
	Attachments	115
8	Status Bar.....	117
	Search/Filter	117
	Grab Input	120
9	Tray Icon.....	121

Part V Data Sources 123

1	2-Factor Authentication.....	127
	Authenticator (TOTP)	130
	Yubikey	131
	Duo	133
2	Caching.....	136
3	Create a data source.....	138
4	Data Source Types.....	142
	Advanced Data Sources	147
	Devolutions Server.....	148
	Microsoft SQL Server.....	155
	Configure SQL Server.....	166
	Recovery Model.....	169
	Encrypting Connections to SQL Server.....	169
	Microsoft Azure SQL.....	171
	Configure Azure SQL.....	180
	Enable Azure Active Directory Authentication.....	183
	Configure the Active Directory Admin.....	183
	Create an Azure Active Directory App Registration.....	188
	Configure RDM Active Directory Interactive (with MFA).....	194
	Configure RDM Older Version AD Interactive (with MFA).....	196
	Configure Azure Active Directory user in RDM.....	200
	Password Hub Business.....	201
	User Vault.....	204
	DropBox	205
	Google Drive	211
	Devolutions Online Drive	213
	Password Hub Personal	219
	SQLite	221
	XML	228

5	Import and Export Data Source	232
6	Lock Data Source	234
7	Offline mode.....	235
	Offline Read/Write	240
8	Manage Cache.....	244
9	User Vault.....	246

Part VI Commands 248

1	Context Menu.....	249
	Open with Parameters	250
	Documentation	252
	Editor.....	253
	Entry History	261
2	File	264
	Go Offline/Online	268
	My Data Source Information	269
	Devolutions Account	273
	Backup	275
	Settings	276
	Restore.....	278
	Refresh	281
	Change Master Key	281
	Data Sources	282
	Background Services	285
	My Account Settings	287
	My Personal Credentials.....	289
	User Specific Settings List.....	291
	Import	292
	Import Computer Wizard.....	294
	Import Generic CSV Wizard.....	300
	Import Strategies and File Format.....	300
	Import with Network Scan.....	304
	Import Sessions.....	305
	Import Logins.....	306
	Import Contacts.....	307
	Export	308
	Encrypted Html.....	312
	Templates	314
	Creating Templates.....	318
	Default Settings.....	324
	Password Templates	326
	Options	331
	Advanced	332
	Import Options	341
	Export Options.....	343
3	Home.....	346
4	Actions.....	346
	Commands	350
	RDP.....	350
	VNC.....	352

Telnet.....	353
5 Edit.....	355
Entries	360
Checkout system.....	360
Dynamic Credential Linking.....	364
Entry Credentials Options.....	367
Edit	369
Play List.....	369
Create and Edit a Play List.....	369
Play List Management.....	377
Setting Overrides	378
Specific Settings.....	378
Batch	381
Batch Edit.....	381
6 View.....	385
Task List	388
Activity Logs	391
Advanced Search	393
Documentation Search	396
7 Administration.....	399
Management	402
User Management.....	402
User Types.....	411
Integrated Security.....	413
User Groups Management.....	414
Vaults Overview.....	416
Licenses.....	428
Assign Licenses.....	430
Reports	432
Reports.....	432
Export Reports.....	434
Deleted Entries.....	437
Settings	439
Vault Settings.....	439
Default security for entries.....	439
System Settings.....	440
General	440
Security	443
Allow Password Access From External System.....	445
Application.....	448
Offline	451
Type availability.....	452
Version Management.....	453
System Permissions.....	454
Security Providers.....	460
Clean up	468
Clean Up Deleted History.....	468
Clean Up Entry History.....	469
Clean Up Activity Logs.....	471
Pack Data Source (Optimize).....	472
8 Tools.....	473
Generators	475
Password Generator.....	475

SSH Key Generator.....	483
Certificate Generator.....	485
Port Generator.....	489
Tools	490
Devolutions Localizer.....	490
Entry Security Analyzer.....	493
Key Agent Manager.....	496
PowerShell (RDM CmdLet).....	502
More Tools	503
Chocolatey Console.....	503
Local RDP/RemoteApp Manager.....	506
Playback (Ansi).....	512
RDM Agent.....	515
9 Help.....	524
Support	526
Application Log.....	526
Diagnostic.....	529
Profiler.....	533
Record.....	536
Part VII Devolutions Web Login	537
1 Overview.....	538
2 Installation	539
Chrome	539
Firefox	541
Edge	543
Opera	544
3 First Login	546
Password Hub Business Login	546
Password Hub Personal Login	550
Devolutions Server Login	554
Remote Desktop Manager Login	558
Enable Devolutions Web Login	561
4 Exploring Devolutions Web Login.....	562
Menu	562
Settings.....	563
Retrieve Credentials	568
Secure Devolutions Web Login	569
Unpair a Browser Extension.....	574
Keyboard Shortcuts	575
Part VIII User Groups Based Access Control	577
1 Permission.....	588
2 Scenarios.....	590
Simplified Security	590
Advanced Security	600
3 Legacy Information.....	613
Small to Medium Enterprise	613
Part IX PowerShell Scripting	624

1	Tips and tricks.....	625
2	PowerShell Module.....	627
	Extract TeamViewer ID	629
	Custom Export to CSV	629
	Creating Group Folder Structure from CSV file	630
3	Custom PowerShell Commands.....	631
	Change your Synchronizer source	635
	Batch Actions Samples	637
Part X Support/Resources		643
1	Technical Support.....	644
2	Keyboard Shortcuts.....	645
3	Lexicon.....	650
4	Tutorials.....	652

Overview

Part



1 Overview

1.1 Remote Desktop Manager

DESCRIPTION



Remote Desktop Manager is an application that integrates a comprehensive set of tools and managers to meet the needs of any IT team. It is designed to centralize remote connection technologies, credentials, and secure the access to these resources. Most connections are established using either an external library or third-party software.

Remote Desktop Manager is compatible with several relevant tools and technologies, including: **Apple Remote Desktop, Citrix, Dameware, FTP, Hyper-V, LogMeIn, Radmin, RDP (Microsoft Remote Desktop), SSH Port Forward, SSH Shell, TeamViewer, Telnet, Remote Desktop Services, VMware, VNC, SCP, X Windows**, and more!

THE REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER ECOSYSTEM

Remote Desktop Manager is available in two editions:

Free	For individuals only, no information can be shared with colleagues. The most popular remote access technologies are supported, and passwords can be stored securely.
Enterprise	Used by teams, this edition offers user permissions, user groups, advanced logging, etc. Typically uses a Database Management System (DBMS) for storing the information and sharing it according to your security requirements. Devolutions also offers two specialized services for either Cloud-Based storage, or to get full Active Directory Integration.

Remote Desktop Manager is also offered on multiple platforms, as seen below.



Purchasing an Enterprise license grants the right to use ALL the various client applications.



You must use a desktop application to create a team data source. This explains why the mobile applications are free. They do allow for simple usage by an individual much like the Free Edition, but they can only **use**, not **manage**, a Team data source.

Platform	Free Edition	Enterprise Edition
Windows	✓	✓
macOS	✓	✓
iOS		✓ (Free App)
Android		✓ (Free App)

1.2 Security

DESCRIPTION

All passwords stored in the data sources are encrypted using a strong encryption algorithm, to the extent that if a user attempts to access the data directly in the database, it will be considered unreadable.

If you choose to store passwords locally, Remote Desktop Manager will use the same mechanism used by mstsc.exe (Remote Desktop Manager client), which stores the passwords in the Windows Credential Manager. It must be noted that the password will not be able to be viewed due to being encrypted by Windows. For obvious reasons, this choice also means that credentials stored in this fashion are not shared. Please refer to Windows Credential Manager for more information.

U.S. FEDERAL GOVERNMENT APPROVED ENCRYPTION

Our application integrates an Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithm to protect sensitive data in the database.

This cipher is proven to be very secure. AES/Rijndael became effective as a U.S. Federal government standard and is approved by the National Security Agency (NSA) for top secret information.

TIPS



Encryption of data while in transit is offered natively by our cloud services. Whenever you decide to use an on-premise solution, encryption of data in transit must be implemented by using the tools involving your chosen technologies. Most customers with security concerns choose one of the supported [Advanced Data Sources](#). Follow instructions specific to the chosen solution.



The encryption key is ***built-in*** the application and is therefore the same for ***all*** copies of the software in circulation. It is ***imperative*** that you follow our recommended steps and apply a [Security Provider](#) to encrypt not only the passwords, but also ***all connection data*** stored in the data source. This will provide protection over your data at rest, using a key under your ***exclusive*** control.

We recommend you follow these steps to ensure security:

- Use an [Advanced Data Source](#) and grant user access by assigning permissions.
- Use encrypted communication with the database when available.
- Use the [Data Source Settings \(System Settings\)](#) to control settings impacting security.
- Use the [Security Provider](#) to encrypt entries completely instead of just the password.
- If using the offline mode, add your own password to add an additional layer of protection to the local cache. Go to **File – Options – Security**.
- Require a password to launch the application, and even better: require two factor authentication. **File – Options – Security**.
- If your data source supports it, choose not to save password in the data source, which will prompt for the credentials on the first connection.
- Use our policies to enforce some of these settings at the system level.

1.3 System Requirements

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager requires the following prior to installation:

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

Windows Desktop:

- Windows 11
- Windows 10
 - Version 1607, 1809, 1909, 20H2, 21H1 and 21H2
- 8.1
- 7 SP1

Windows Server:

- Windows Server
 - Version 1909 and 20H2
- Windows Server 2019
 - Version 1809
- 2016
 - Version 1607
- 2012 R2
- 2012
- 2008 R2 SP1

Microsoft .NET Framework 4.8

1 GHz or faster processor

4GB RAM

1024 x 768 screen resolution

500+ MB hard drive space

64-bit operating system

[Microsoft Edge WebView2 Runtime](#)

REMOTE DESKTOP SERVICES AND THIN CLIENT SUPPORT

Remote Desktop Manager can be installed on [Remote Desktop Services](#) and thin client.

MANUAL/PORTABLE DEPLOYMENT

Deploying manually using our zip file is documented as being a [Portable \(USB\)](#) deployment. In this case, the prerequisites will need to be handled manually as well. Please consult [Prerequisite Software](#) for details.

1.3.1 Prerequisite Software

DESCRIPTION

Specific prerequisite software need to be installed on your computer prior to running Remote Desktop Manager.



These are managed automatically by our installers. The only situations where one would perform a manual installation of the prerequisite software is when the zip archive is used for deployment or if there is no internet connection.

SETTINGS

The following package must be installed prior to proceeding with the Remote Desktop Manager installation:

- [Microsoft .NET Framework 4.8](#).

1.4 The Devolutions Platform

DESCRIPTION

Our platform offers multiple products to help in managing all of aspects of an IT infrastructure.

The flagship product is Remote Desktop Manager, the strongest edition admittedly being for the Windows operating system.

APPLICATIONS	DESCRIPTION	INSTALLATION
Remote Desktop Manager (RDM)	Application used to manage and centralize remote access technologies, passwords,	Windows, macOS,

APPLICATIONS	DESCRIPTION	INSTALLATION
	documents and shared information.	iOS, Android
<u>Remote Desktop Manager Agent</u>	Tool used to run commands on remote systems. It listens for commands from a master Remote Desktop Manager. It resolves a lot of issues brought on by remote management, in particular removing the need to use Microsoft's WinRM and managing lists of <i>TrustedHosts</i> .	Windows
<u>Remote Desktop Manager Jump</u>	Feature that uses the Remote Desktop Manager Agent to launch any of our supported technologies on a remote Windows Host. It transforms it in what is called alternatively a Jump Server, or Bastion Server, or Service Host.	Windows
<u>Devolutions Server (DVLS)</u>	Enterprise Grade data store for creating a centralized database for your team. Integrates with AD to drastically reduce time spent on managing permissions. It is installed on-premises and offers many advanced features.	Windows
Devolutions Web Login (DWL)	Web browser extension technology that interacts with our Remote Desktop Manager and Password Vault Manager desktop applications to obtain credentials and automatically fill authentication fields in your browser.	Windows, macOS

1.4.1 Remote Desktop Manager Agent

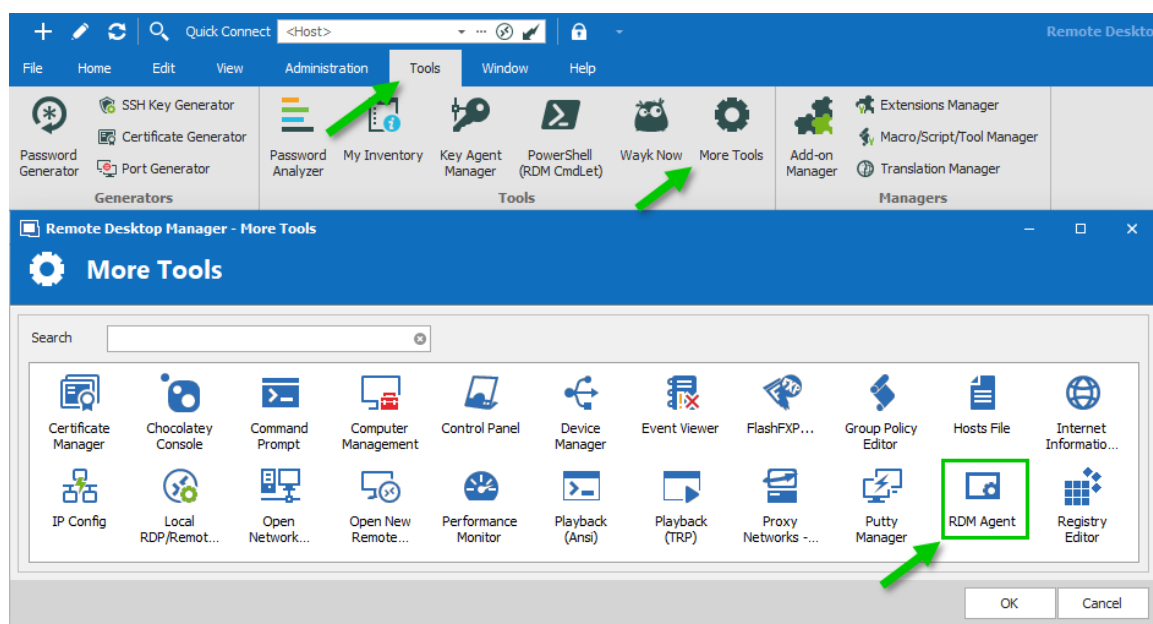
DESCRIPTION



Please note that if your Windows profile is corrupted, Remote Desktop Manager Agent and Remote Desktop Manager Jump might not work.

The Remote Desktop Manager Agent can run commands on remote hosts, but what is really useful is that it can send commands to multiple hosts at the same time. Since Remote Desktop Manager uses a secure RDP channel to communicate with the Remote Desktop Manager Agent, it can only operate against Windows-based hosts.

It supports both environment and Remote Desktop Manager variables. Remote Desktop Manager variables (i.e. \$HOST\$, basically all the ones surrounded by dollar signs) are resolved on the client against the running session, while environment variables (i.e. %windir%, basically all the ones surrounded by percent signs) will be resolved on the remote host at execution time. You can use Remote Desktop Manager variables while running file based scripts (.ps1) within the command. The file based script variables (.ps1) will be resolved prior to sending the script to the destination host.



RDM Agent

SCENARIOS

The Remote Desktop Manager Agent can be used to run scripts from another Remote Desktop Manager installation. Since it uses an RDP channel for communication, it saves you from remote management headaches such as opening various ports in your

firewall. This requires the lightweight installation model of just the agent package (Methods 2-4 below).

It is also used by [Remote Desktop Manager Jump](#) for supporting many technologies. However, it does require a full Remote Desktop Manager installation on the remote host for those features.

INSTALLATION

Installing Remote Desktop Manager Agent on a remote host can be achieved in 4 different ways:



The Remote Desktop Manager Agent must be configured to automatically start when a Windows session is established. Method 1 below performs that automatically, but in other cases, you must configure this manually using Windows features (*startup* folder or *Run* registry key). Please consult the documentation of your operating system for details.

1. Install Remote Desktop Manager and select Tools – More Tools – RDM Agent. It will launch and auto-register the Agent to automatically start with Windows.
2. Download Remote Desktop Manager Agent from <https://remotedesktopmanager.com/Home/Download>, and install the agent on the remote computer.
3. Copy the files Devolutions.Utils.dll, Devolutions.Windows.Utils.dll and RDMAgent.exe from the installation folder of the Remote Desktop Manager version that is used by your team, or download the zip file containing those files at <https://remotedesktopmanager.com/Home/Download> and deploy them on the remote host in the folder of your choice.
4. Via Chocolatey at <https://chocolatey.org/packages/rdmagent>.

```
C:\> choco install rdmagent
```

Chocolatey command line

Many new users using this technology wonder why a full installation of Remote Desktop Manager is required. There are three factors that make this a good solution:

- Remote Desktop Manager on the remote host does not require a data source, it's an empty shell.
- The logging of the activity is brought back to your data source.
- Every technology supported by Remote Desktop Manager can be used remotely.

1.4.2 Remote Desktop Manager Jump

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager Jump connects to a remote host, often called a **Jump Box, Service Host, or a Bastion Server**, which in turn connects to other hosts. Remote Desktop Manager Jump is actually an RDP in an RDP.

This can be compared to RD Gateway from Microsoft and to some extent SSH port forwarding.



The Jump is performed through Remote Desktop Manager Agent. The Agent needs to be **CURRENTLY EXECUTING** in a Windows Session on the remote host, or set to automatically start upon login. We have decided NOT to have this available through a service at this time.



The Remote Desktop Manager Jump feature does not allow you to circumvent the need to properly license your remote host to allow more than two RDP connection at a time. There is no other way except for installing remote desktop session host role on the server and purchasing RDS CAL (per user) for the remote connection. For more information please consult this Microsoft link: [Activate the Remote Desktop Services license server](#).



Remote Desktop Manager must be installed on the Jump Host for the agent to be able to run commands. The application does not have to connect to any data source, as Remote Desktop Manager only serves as a shell for the agent to run commands.

Both instances of Remote Desktop Manager Jump or Remote Desktop Manager and RDM Agent running on the **Jump Host** communicate through an RDP channel. Commands are sent securely over the RDP channel and are then executed on the **Service Host**. Commands include running a script or opening a remote session of any type. It can even launch a VPN client on the **Service Host** prior to running the remote session.

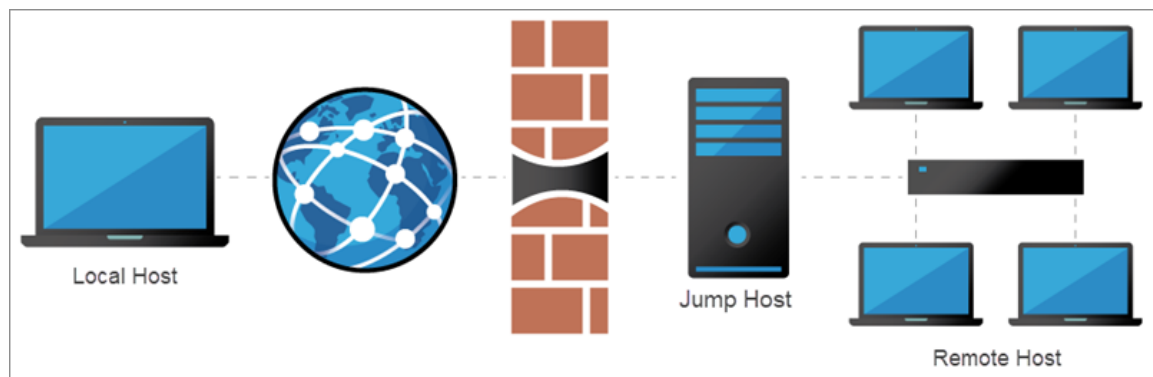
- [Usage Scenarios](#)
- [Configure a Jump Host](#)
- [Configure a session to use the Jump Host](#)
- [Validate that the Jump Host works](#)
- [Pro Tips](#)

USAGE SCENARIOS

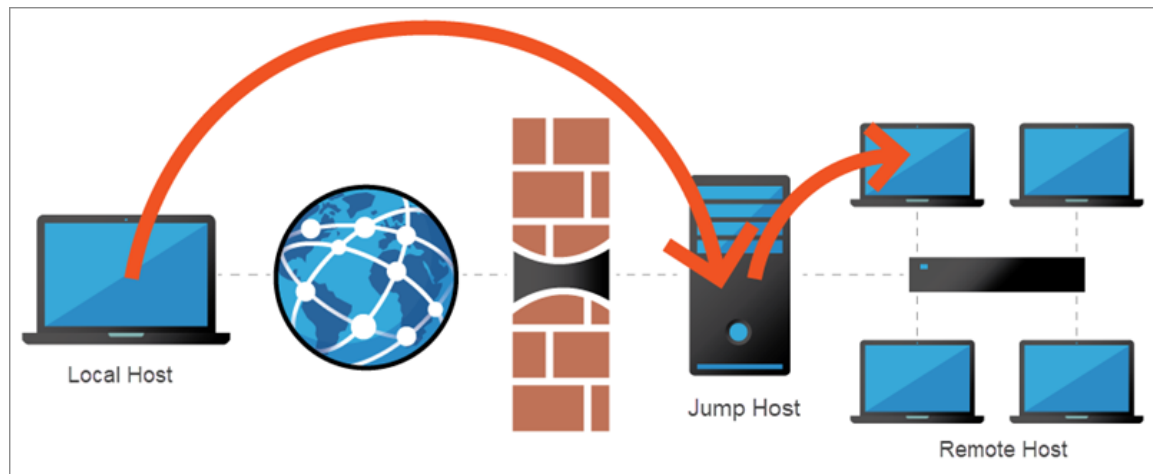
There are two targeted scenarios:

1. Accessing a secure network through a single host

This allows you to have a strict firewall policy that allows connections only from a specific IP address. This configuration only grants you access to hosts that are accessible from the Jump Box. Let's imagine you have the following infrastructure:



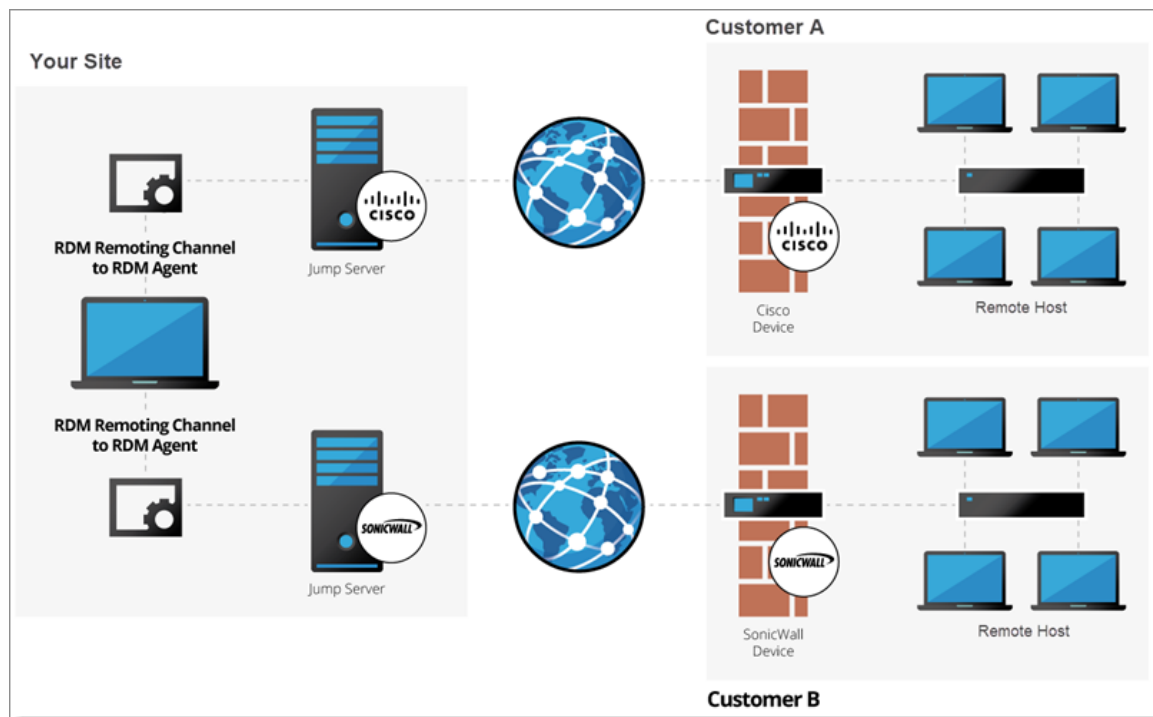
You need to access the remote hosts, but you want to limit risks and expose only the Jump Host to the internet traffic. This allows you to create strict firewall rules and to open only a single port. Therefore, it forces you to connect to the Jump Host before hopping to a remote host.



Remote Desktop Manager Jump helps achieve that goal simply and efficiently.

2. Workaround limitations of some VPN clients

These limitations make it impossible to use multiple VPN clients concurrently on the same workstation. In this case, you can have multiple virtual machines, each running a single VPN client. Using these virtual machines as jump boxes allows you to connect to the virtual machine, launch the VPN client, then launch the remote session.

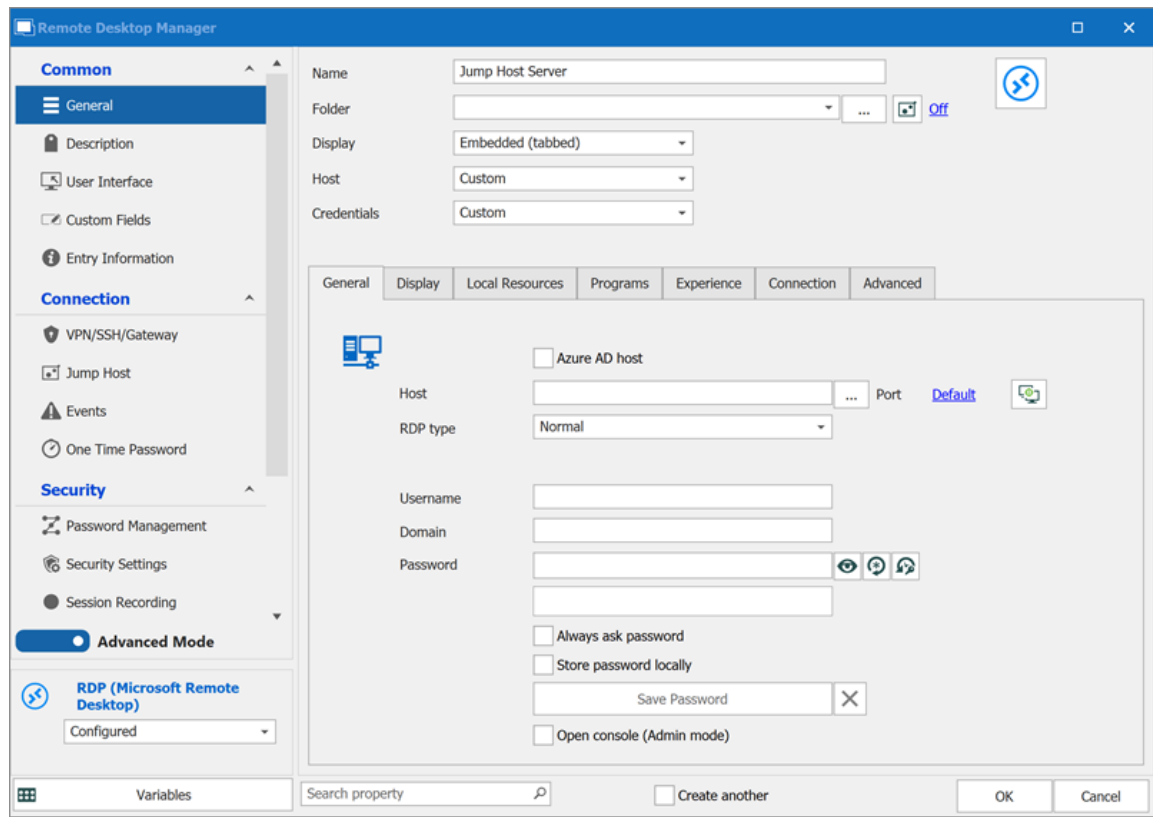


CONFIGURE A JUMP HOST

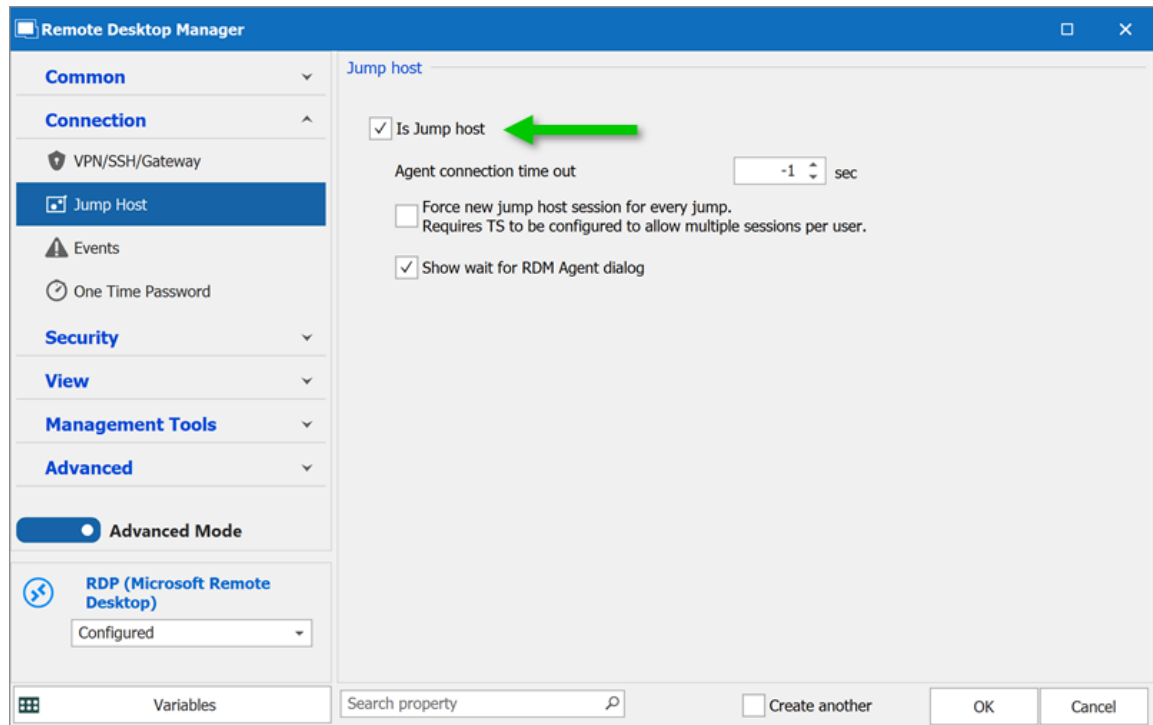
1. Create an **RDP** entry for the **Jump Host**.
2. Fill the entry with a **Name**, **Host** and the **Credentials**.



For **Jumps** to work, you need to supply the credentials via the **Jump Host** session. If the RDP sessions prompt you for the credentials after the start, the **Jump** will fail.



3. In the **Jump Host** section, check **Is Jump host**.



4. Click **OK**.
5. Launch the **Jump Host** session.
6. Install Remote Desktop Manager on the **Jump Host**.



The **Jump Host** acts as a relay between the local and the remote systems, allowing to use the Remote Desktop Manager license that has been used on the local workstation to register the application on the **Jump Host**.

Install Remote Desktop Manager on the **Jump Host**, perform your first jump and Remote Desktop Manager will be unlocked/licensed automatically via the jump communication/handshake.



There is no need to create a data source on the **Jump Host**. Remote Desktop Manager will open for the first time with a default **SQLite Local Data Source**. This is sufficient because the application on the **Jump Host** only acts as an intermediate between the local and the remote hosts.

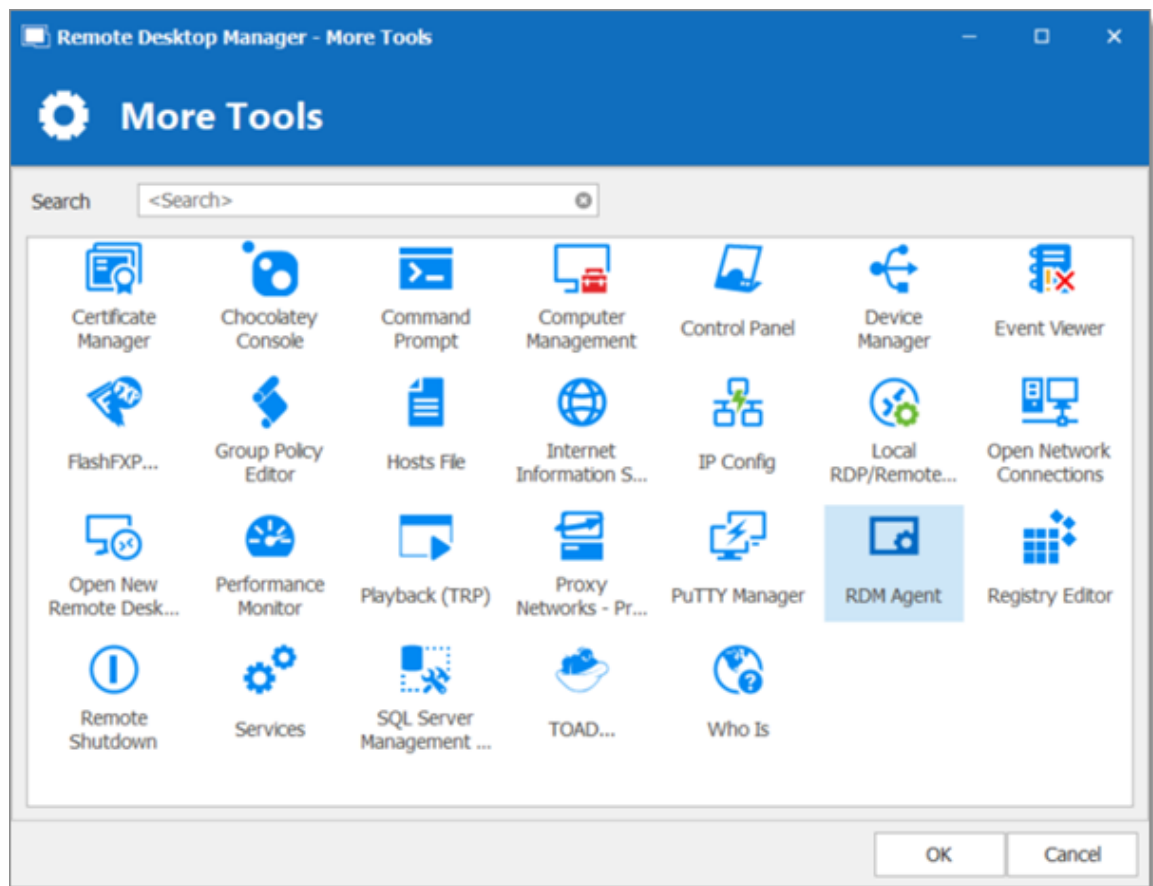
7. Confirm Remote Desktop Manager Agent is started and set to **Auto Start**.



Auto Start must only be activated for the Remote Desktop Manager Agent or Remote Desktop Manager but not for both. In the case where Remote Desktop Manager is set to **Auto Start** please make sure to delete the shortcuts from either/both the following locations:

- Run: *shell:startup*
- Run: *shell:common startup*

- a. Go to **Tools - More Tools**.
- b. Select Remote Desktop Manager Agent.
- c. Click **OK**.
- d. Click **Yes**.



8. Right-click the Remote Desktop Manager Agent icon in the taskbar.
 - a. Check **Auto Start**.
9. Adjust the user interface of the **Jump Host** to maximize the area to display remote sessions.
 - Make the application full screen.
 - Hide the **Navigation Pane** in the **View** tab.
 - Hide the **Ribbon** in the **View** tab.
 - To show the **Ribbon** again, click the Remote Desktop Manager icon at the top left corner.



To reset the layout, in the **Window** tab, click **Reset Layout**.

The **Jump Host** is ready to use.

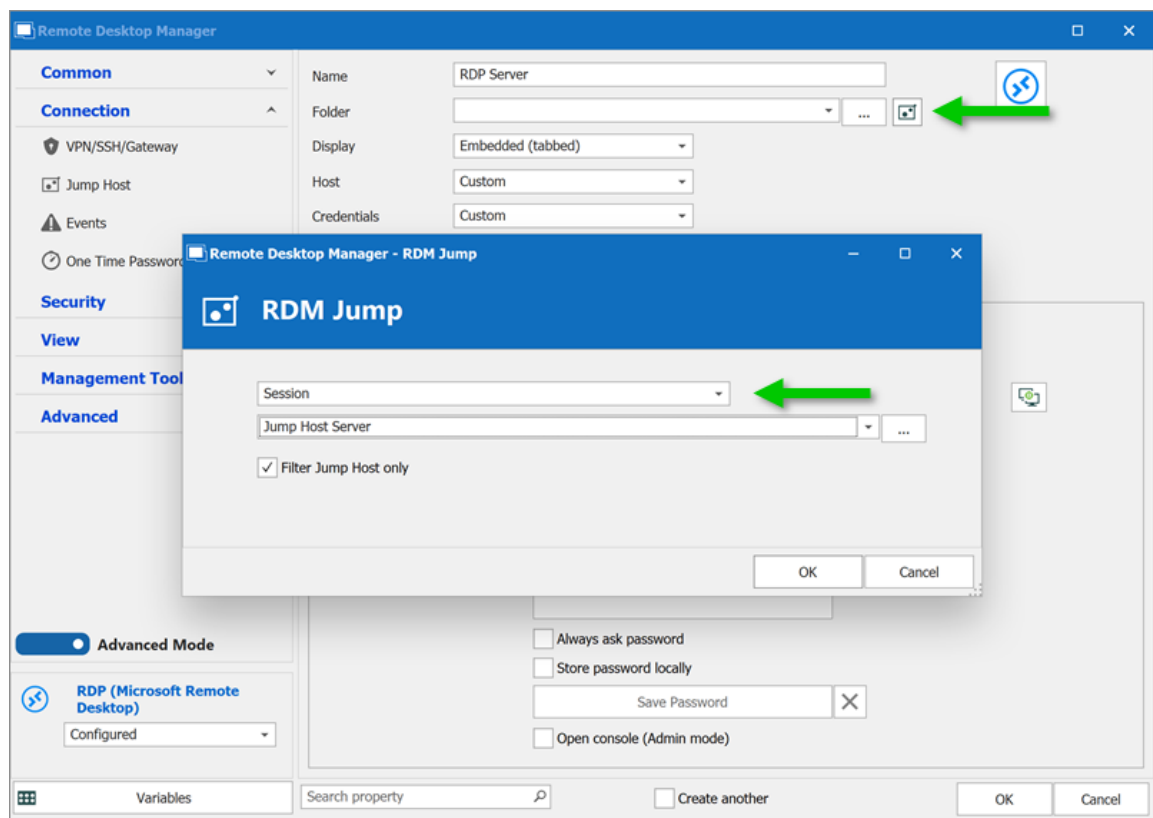
CONFIGURE A SESSION TO USE THE JUMP HOST

1. Create an **RDP** entry, on the local Remote Desktop Manager instance.
2. Set the **Jump Host** by clicking on the **RDM Jump settings** button.

- The **Jump Host** can be **Inherited** if it is defined in the parent folder.

Or

- Choose a specific **Session** to point directly to the **Jump Host** entry.



3. Click **OK** twice.
4. Launch the RDP session. The Remote Desktop Manager Jump opens automatically and it looks like a session in a session.

VALIDATE THAT THE JUMP HOST WORKS

1. Start the **RDP** session of the **Jump Host Server**.
2. Wait for Remote Desktop Manager Agent to connect.
3. On the **RDP** tab, right click **Agent Status**.
 - a. Remote Desktop Manager Agent should be connected.
4. Keep the **RDP** tab open.
5. Start the **Jump** session.
 - a. **Jump** session should start on the **Jump Host Server**.
6. Close all sessions.
7. Start the **Jump** session directly.
 - a. **Jump Host Server** & **Jump** session should both start.

All should be working correctly. If any of the steps fails, it is where you need to investigate.

PRO TIPS

- To gain more space for the dashboard, in the **View** tab, hide the **Ribbon** and **Navigation Pane** since the menus are not needed.
- Use the same Remote Desktop Manager license on the local and the remote instances. The Jump Host acts as a relay between the local and the remote systems, allowing to use the Remote Desktop Manager license that has been used on the local workstation to register the application on the Jump Host.
- There is no need to create a data source on the Jump Host. Remote Desktop Manager will open for the first time with a default **SQLite Local Data Source**. This is sufficient because the application on the Jump Host only acts as an intermediate between the local and the remote hosts.

Getting Started

Part



2 Getting Started

2.1 Using Remote Desktop Manager

DESCRIPTION


Remote Desktop Manager is highly flexible and can work for both individuals and teams. Please follow the checklist that applies to your environment:




- [Checklist for Individuals](#): For individuals but also for teams of three users or less that do not want to implement security.
- [Checklist for Teams](#): For a team environment that wishes to implement security.



2.2 Checklist for Individuals

DESCRIPTION

Here's a checklist to help you get started with Remote Desktop Manager for individuals.

CHECKLIST FOR INDIVIDUALS (ENTERPRISE EDITION)	DESCRIPTION
<p>Step 1 - Register your license:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enterprise Registration• Trial Registration	<p>Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise Edition grants you a 30 day trial. If you decide not to register by the end of the 30 day trial, your data will not be altered or erased, and you will have full access to it once you provide a license key.</p> <p>Here is a video link to assist you: </p>

CHECKLIST FOR INDIVIDUALS (ENTERPRISE EDITION)	DESCRIPTION
Step 2 - Add your Data Source and set up your Devolutions account and a master key.	<p>Warning: When choosing any data source type that is not on-premises, you need to think about the safety of the data at rest and during transport. We strongly recommend that you further encrypt your data by applying a master key for file-based solutions, or a Security Provider for Advanced Data Sources. This ensures only you can read the data.</p> <p>Upon first launch, Remote Desktop Manager uses a local SQLite data source. For help selecting a data source tailored to your needs, please see Choosing your data source (Individuals).</p> <p>Here is a video link to assist you:  Watch Video</p>
Step 3 - Set up your Devolutions Online Backup .	<p>The Online Backup allows you to securely backup your information for selected data sources. The backup is automatically executed 30 seconds after any modifications made to the data source content. It is best practice to always back up your data source.</p> <p>Here is a video link to assist you:  Watch Video</p>
Step 4 - Create your Default Settings .	<p>In File - Options you can set options for Remote Desktop Manager and create default settings Templates. Each entry type is supported and can have a default template defined to fit your requirements.</p> <p>Here is a video link to assist you:  Watch Video</p>
Step 5 - Create your folder structure	<p>Top level folders are at the foundation of a solid security structure. Your folder structure (Folder entries) should represent your company structure.</p>

CHECKLIST FOR INDIVIDUALS (ENTERPRISE EDITION)	DESCRIPTION
	Here is a video link to assist you: 
Step 6 - Import your Data .	The final step is to Import all of your data into Remote Desktop Manager. You can import your sessions, logins and contacts in a few easy steps. Here is a video link to assist you: 

2.2.1 Select the Data Source type - Individuals

DESCRIPTION

This topic is for individuals.

To help you select a data source, here is a set of concerns and the list of data sources that can serve in such context. If you have multiple concerns, simply create the intersection of all sets to isolate a list of choices.



When choosing any data source type that is not **on-premises**, you need to think about the safety of the data at rest and during transport. We strongly recommend that you further encrypt your data by applying a master key for file-based solutions, or a [Security Provider](#) for [Advanced Data Sources](#). This ensures **only you** can read the data.

DATA SOURCE	LOCAL	SELF-HOSTED	CLOUD BASED	SHARED BETWEEN YOUR COMPUTERS	WORKS OFFLINE	MULTI-USER
Devolutions Password Hub Personal			X			
SQLite	X				X	
XML	X				X	
Devolutions Online Drive			X	X	X	
Dropbox			X	X		Note 1

NOTES

NOTE 1

There is no protection in the case of data contention issues. The last one saving the file will win! This is for **single** users with **multiple** computers, **not for multiple users** using the data concurrently.

NOTE 2


The master XML is maintained by a single user and synchronized to a web site that is hosted as per your requirements. Accessing the data through a URL ensures it is read-only for other users.

2.3 Checklist for Teams

DESCRIPTION

Here's a checklist to help you get started with Remote Desktop Manager when working in a team environment.

CHECKLIST FOR TEAMS	DESCRIPTION
<p>Step 1 - Register your license:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enterprise Registration • Trial Registration 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise Edition grants you a 30 day trial. If you decide not to register by the end of the 30 day trial, your data will not be altered or erased, and you will have full access to it once you provide a license key.</p>
<p>Step 2 - Add your Data Source (for teams).</p>	<p>Warning: When choosing any data source type that is not on-premises, you need to think about the safety of the data at rest and during transport. We strongly recommend that you further encrypt your data by applying a master key for file-based solutions, or a Security Provider for Advanced Data Sources. This ensures only you can read the data.</p> <p>Upon first launch, Remote Desktop Manager uses a local SQLite data source. For help selecting a data source tailored to your needs, please see Choosing your data source (Teams).</p>
<p>Step 3 - Select your Security Provider.</p>	<p>Select your Security Provider before importing or creating any data in your database so nobody can read your entry configuration data, even when people have a direct access to your database.</p>
<p>Step 4 - Create your folder</p>	<p>Top level folders are at the foundation of a solid security structure. Your folder structure (Folder entries) should</p>

CHECKLIST FOR TEAMS	DESCRIPTION
structure.	<p>represent your company structure. For example, you can create a folder for your Production team, one for your Staging team and one for your Testing team.</p> <p>Here is a video link to assist you: </p>
Step 5 - Create your Default Settings .	<p>In File - Options you can set options for Remote Desktop Manager and create default settings Templates. Each entry type is supported and can have a default template defined to fit your requirements. After you configure the options, use the Custom Installer to share the pre-configured version with your team.</p>
Step 6 - Create Users .	<p>Remote Desktop Manager supports advanced User Management. User accounts must be created manually by an administrator of the database.</p>
Step 7 - Create User Groups .	<p>Create User Groups to easily manage your security system. You can then assign users to User Groups, making it easy to grant permissions to a set of users instead of having to manage permissions individually.</p>
Step 8 - Create Entries .	<p>An Entry is how you save information about your sessions (e.g. RDP, SSH connections), credentials, websites, VPNs, Synchronizers and documents.</p>
Step 9 - Grant Permissions .	<p>Once your users are created you can then grant Permissions for user group-based access control. The permissions granted on the folder can be inherited by each entry set under that folder.</p>
Step 10 - Import your Data .	<p>The final step is to Import all of your data into Remote Desktop Manager. You can import your sessions, logins and contacts in a few easy steps.</p>

2.3.1 Select the Data Source type - Teams

DESCRIPTION

This topic is for teams that need the functionality offered by our Enterprise Edition.



When choosing any data source type that is not **on-premises**, you need to think about the safety of the data both at **rest** and during **transport**. We strongly recommend that you further encrypt your data by applying a master key for file-based solutions, or a [Security Provider](#) for [Advanced Data Sources](#). This ensures **only you** can read the data.

To help you select a data source, here is a set of concerns and the list of data sources that can serve in such context. If you have multiple concerns, simply create the intersection of all sets to isolate a list of choices.

CONCERN	Devolutions Server	SQL SERVER	SQL AZURE
The database is not accessible to end users	X	Note 1 & 2	Note 1
AD accounts used for authentication	X	X	
AD group membership used to assign permissions	X		
The data is stored on-premises	X	X	
Activity Logs	X	X	X

CONCERN	Devolutions Server	SQL SERVER	SQL AZURE
Data accessible globally	Note 3	Note 4	X
Optional local cache of connections	X	X	X

NOTES

NOTE 1

The administrators can create accounts for end users without divulging the passwords. A locked data source definition is imported for each end user. This obviously requires a lot of manual operations by the administrator.

NOTE 2

Integrated Security is the name of a Microsoft technology that does not send credentials to get access to a SQL Server instance, but rather the token resulting from authentication in your Windows computer. This therefore allows the users to connect directly to the database using other tools. It should not be used if you need to prevent direct access to the database.

Our SQL Server data source offers a third option, namely the Custom (Devolutions) user type. It allows for the user to be impersonated and therefore not be made aware of the credentials used to connect to the database. Please consult [User Management](#) for details.

NOTE 3

You should not expose a Devolutions Server instance to the Internet without being able to protect it from DDoS attacks. Strong passwords must be used as well as obscure account names that are not easily inferred using social data mining.

NOTE 4

You can indeed expose a database to the Internet, but you must use SSL/TLS to encrypt traffic, you must ALSO protect against DDoS attacks. Cloud services, like Azure have that concern in the forefront. The default settings of the firewall should be to block everything, you will then open only the most limited set of ports, while filtering on a short list of acceptable origins for requests.

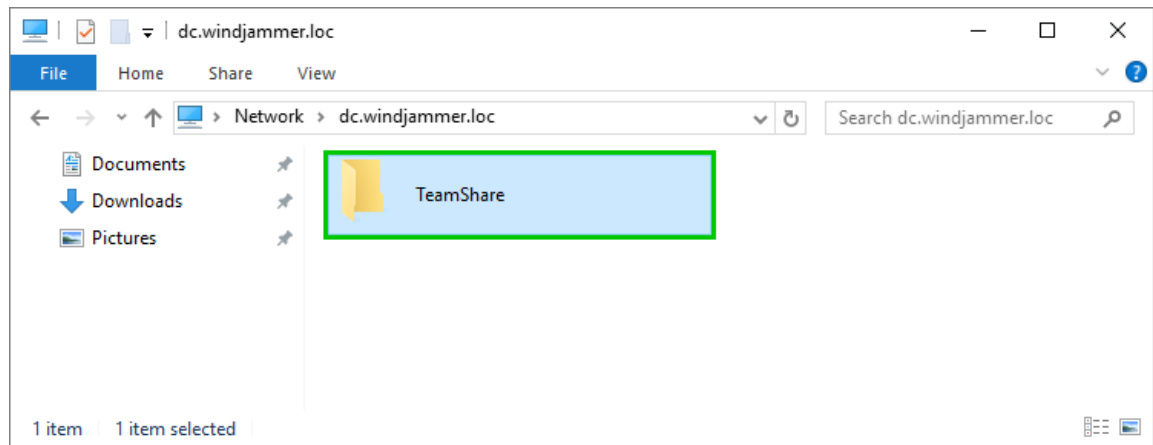
2.3.2 Set up a team folder for default settings

DESCRIPTION

You must create a team folder on a server drive to store your default settings templates in order to share them with your team.

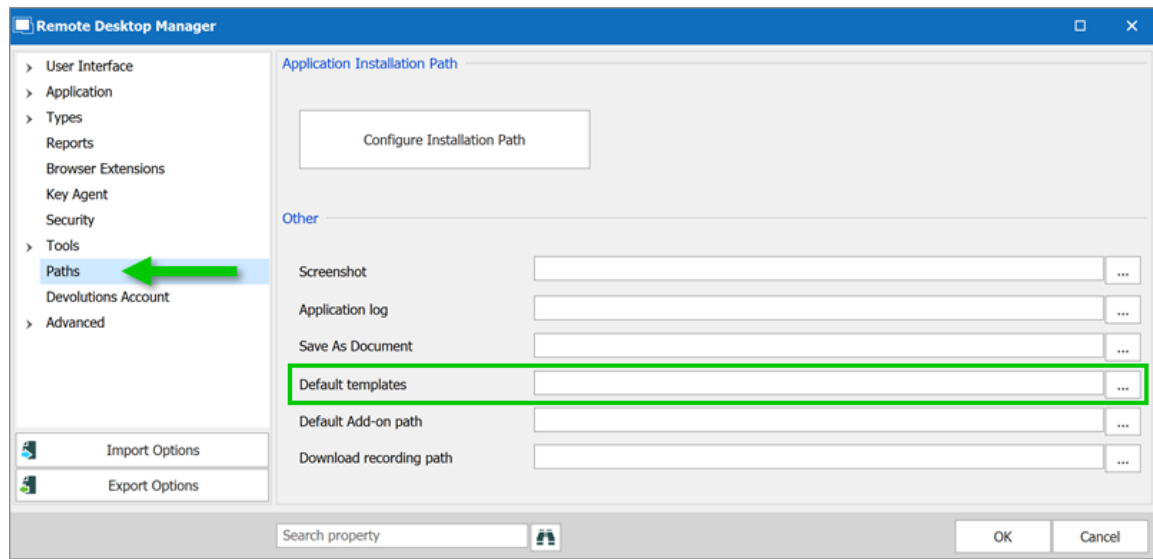
SETTINGS

1. Start by accessing your server drive (such as \\servercommon) and create a new team folder to hold all your team default settings templates.

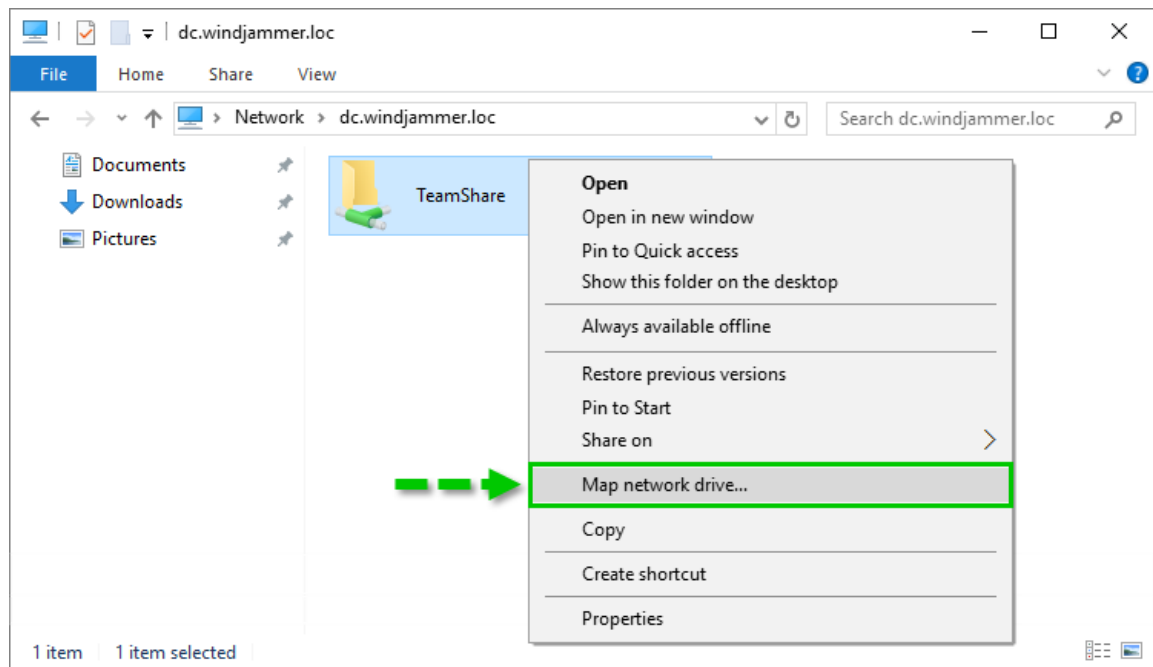


Server Drive - Team Folder

2. Go to **File - Options - Path** and enter the path of your newly created folder stored on your server drive. All your default templates will then automatically be saved in that folder.

*File - Options - Path*

3. If you have remote workers, ensure they have access to the shared server in offline mode. Map your network drive and then follow the instructions [here](#) for the offline mode access when using Windows 10.

*Map Network Drive*

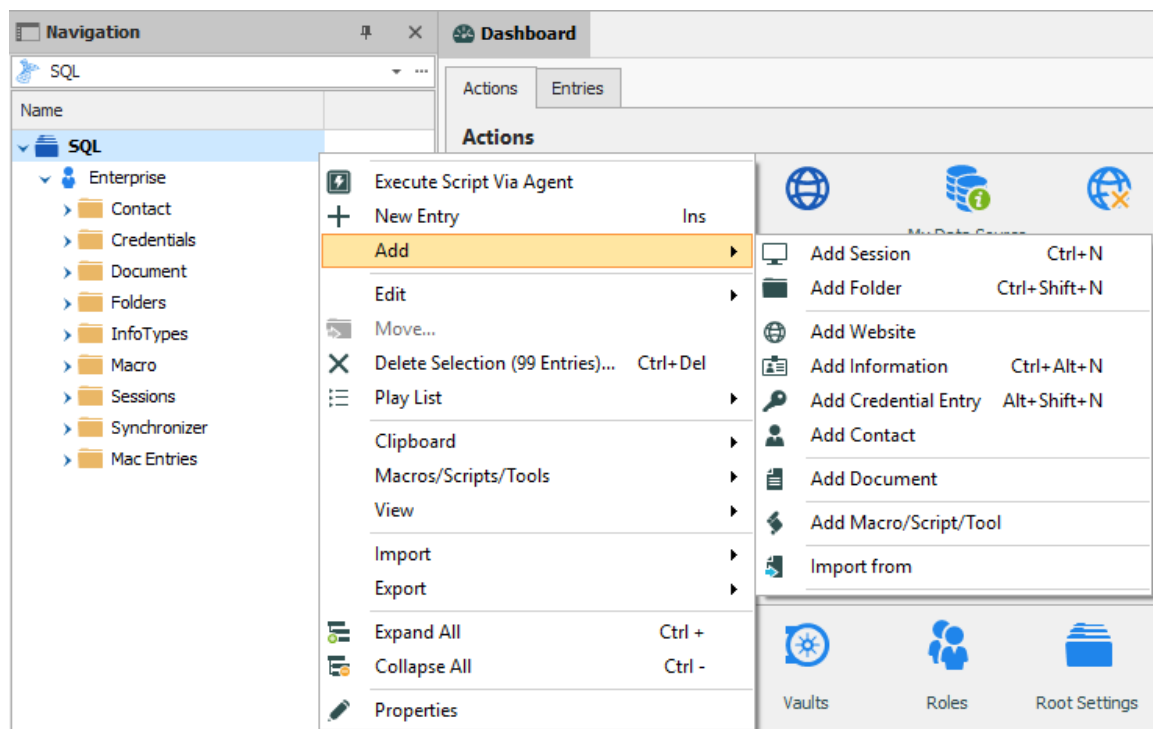
2.4 Creating an Entry

DESCRIPTION

When getting started with Remote Desktop Manager, you must configure your entries. There are many types of entries; you should know what third party or technology you will use in order to choose the appropriate entry type(s) that you plan on configuring.

CREATING AN ENTRY FROM THE CONTEXT MENU

On the main application window, simply right-click on **the name of the data source** and select **Add** from the menu. To initialize a new session, you can specify either the type of session, or a template. You will be prompted to customize your settings in the entry properties window.



Adding a new entry

CREATING AN ENTRY WITH DRAG & DROP

You can also create a session by dragging and dropping an .rdp file in the main application window. By doing so, Remote Desktop Manager will ask you whether to import the content and create a new session, or create a session linked to the .rdp file. It is also possible to drag and drop the **LogMeIn** desktop shortcut to create a **LogMeIn** session.



It is possible that drag and drop will not work because of your security settings. They may prevent applications running in different contexts from interacting. For example, if Remote Desktop Manager is running in an elevated context (administrator mode) and Internet Explorer is running in default mode, Windows will not allow you to drag a URL link in the application.

CREATING AN ENTRY BY IMPORTING ITS CONFIGURATION

You can also import entries by using the [Import Computer Wizard](#), or by importing its configuration directly from any compatible applications supported by our import tools. You can learn more in the [Import](#) section.

2.5 Managing Credentials

DESCRIPTION

Depending on your organization's security policies, there are multiple ways of handling credentials. We can manage a wide range of scenarios, the most popular are listed below. It is critical to understand that these are the credentials used to connect to **remote hosts**, not the ones you use to launching **Remote Desktop Manager**.



Most of these selections do not exist in the **Free** edition of Remote Desktop Manager as they depend on features offered by an **Advanced Data Source**.

A few key points that the admin of the solution must be aware of:

Password visibility	You can store passwords in a Credential entry (Username / Password entry, which (by default) makes the password USABLE , but not VISIBLE , by the end user. We provide multiple Credential entry types, you should always consider carefully which type you are using based on your security and administrative needs.
Credentials set on folders	Our folders can have credentials defined. This is useful because in the great majority of cases, one reuses the same credentials for a whole branch of the network infrastructure. To make use of credentials defined in a folder, the child sessions must be adjusted to use Inherited Credentials .
Entry location	When storing entries in the tree view, users with the View permissions on that entry (or folder by inheritance) will be able to make use of them. This is how you would share credentials with other members of your team. A User Vault exists for users to store user centric information that should be seen by no one else. Credentials stored this way can still be accessed in the Public area of the system by referencing them or through the User Specific Settings feature described below.
User Specific Settings	User Specific Settings are partial overrides for settings of your entries, most notably the Credentials . When applying such an override, one can choose the type in the credentials directly in the override or one can choose to instead link to credentials stored elsewhere, such as the User Vault .

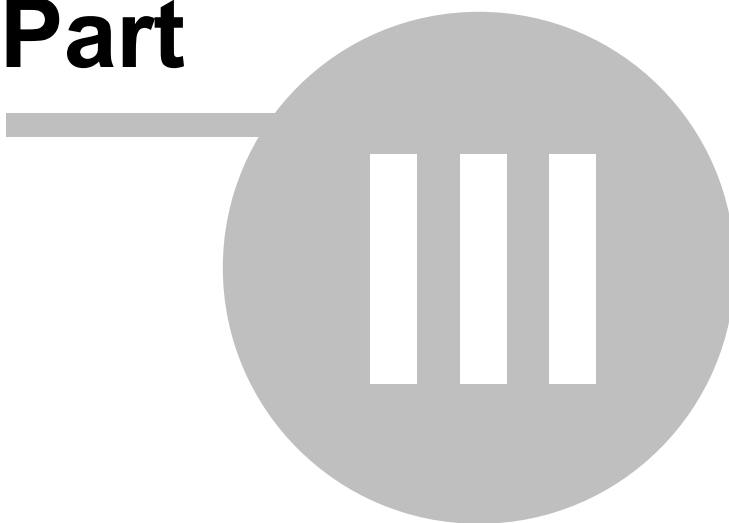
Here are the most common scenarios and how to address them. In the majority of cases, we prefer to have sessions using **Inherited credentials**, meaning it climbs up the tree until it has access to a set of credentials, be it defined, linked, or overridden in an entry.

SCENARIO	STRATEGY
One set of credentials is used by all of the staff, be it for the whole system or for a branch in your tree view (Customer, Department, etc).	Set the credentials on the Vault Settings . All children use Inherited Credentials .

SCENARIO	STRATEGY
Each user has its own credentials for many different branches (often corresponds to customers/departments, etc).	Make use of the User Specific Settings on each branch. All children use Inherited Credentials .
Each user has its own credentials managed by an administrator.	This solution involves a little more work. The admin must create a folder for each user, then grant permissions ONLY to that user. The user will then use User Specific Settings to specify that the credentials stored in that folder is used to override what is defined in the entries.
Each team uses the same credentials.	Much like directly above, but all the members of the team have access to the folder. All of them must use the User Specific Settings .
Each user uses their domain account.	Have the sessions configured to use My personal credentials . Each user will be prompted to define them once per workstation that they use.

Installation

Part



3 Installation

3.1 Client

Remote Desktop Manager can be downloaded as setup files, or as a binary compressed (zip) file.

INSTALLATION

Depending on the downloaded media, either run the setup, or extract the files from the archive in any folder and launch the executable. If you wish to use a portable device, or run multiple independent copies of the application, please consult [Portable \(USB\)](#).

LICENSE

Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise Edition comes with a 30 day-trial. If you possess a purchased license of the Enterprise Edition, please follow the instructions at [Register Enterprise Edition](#). To register the Free Edition, please refer to the [Register Free Edition](#).

DATA SOURCE

By default, a local data source is created using the SQLite format. You can add as many data sources as needed. Please consult [Data Source Overview](#) for more information.



To use a SQL Server or Azure SQL data source, refer to the [Configure SQL Server](#) topic.

EXTERNAL APPLICATIONS

Configure your installation path for all external applications you intend to utilize such as RealVNC, Putty, Filezilla, etc. Set the paths in **File – Options – Path**.

REMOTE DESKTOP SERVICES

Please consult the [Remote Desktop Services](#) topic.

3.1.1 Ancillary Files

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager generates ancillary files on your workstation. The table below lists out an example of ancillary files and their locations.

As described in [Configuration File Location](#), the default path for most of these files are customizable. For this reason, we use the **[CONFIG]** token in this documentation to denote when a file is stored in a configuration folder that can be relocated, or the **[PROFILE]** token to indicate that they are stored in the local profile. By default, these point to the **same exact folder**. The only method to separate them is by using a customized configuration.

Since you can also deploy on a portable device, sometimes known as using the XCOPY deployment model, we will use the **[INSTALLDIR]** token to indicate that the file is in the same location as Remote Desktop Manager.

The **Override Source** column indicates if an available mechanism can relocate the files of that category elsewhere.

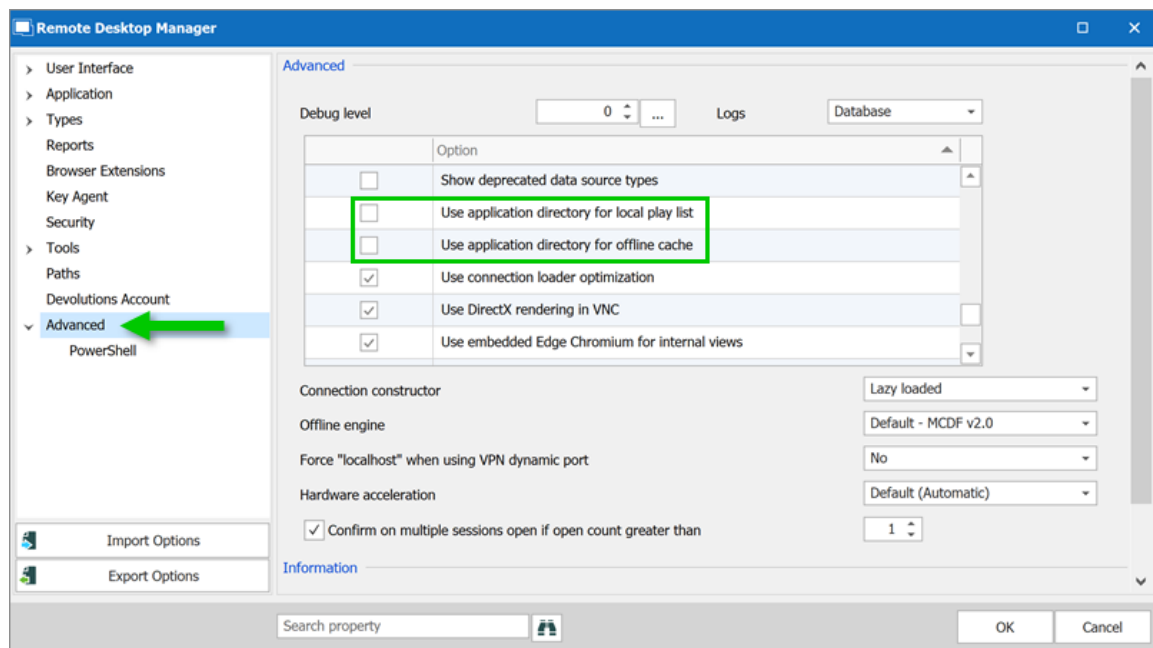
SUMMARY

FILE(S)	LOCATION	OVERRIDE SOURCE
Configuration File(s) (* .cfg, * .ext)	[CONFIG]	None
Data File(s) (*.xml, *.db)	[CONFIG] or custom path.	None
Default Settings	[CONFIG]	Data source settings (System Settings)

FILE(S)	LOCATION	OVERRIDE SOURCE
Encryption (*.enc, *.enb)	[CONFIG]	None
Layout Files (*.lyt)	[CONFIG]	None
Log Files (*.log, *.debug)	[CONFIG]	None
Local Play lists	[PROFILE] \[Datasource]\Playlists	Use application directory for <i>local playlist</i> will use instead [INSTALLDIR]
Local Templates	They are serialized directly in the configuration file of the application.	None
Offline/Cache data (offline.db)	[PROFILE] \[Datasource]	Use application directory for <i>online cache</i> will use instead [INSTALLDIR]
Sensitive (*.stv, *.stb)	[CONFIG]	None
Themes	[CONFIG]	None

OFFLINE AND LOCAL PLAY LIST OPTION

Offline and local play list options can be accessed by navigating to **File - Options - Advanced**.



Options - Advanced

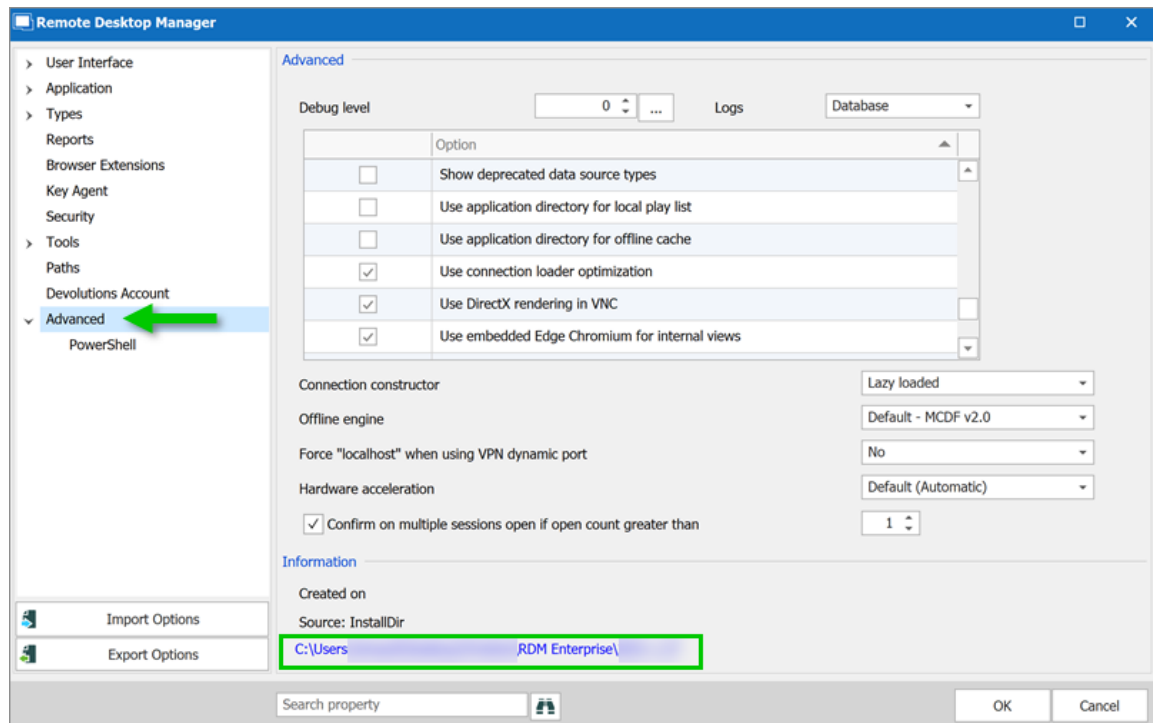
3.1.2 Configuration File Location

DEFAULT LOCATION

Remote Desktop Manager saves its configuration in a file named RemoteDesktopManager.cfg. This file contains most of the application settings.



You can retrieve the installation folder of Remote Desktop Manager by clicking **File – Options – Advanced**. A hyperlink displays the installation folder.



Options - Advanced

The configuration file can be located in different folders depending on certain conditions:

CASE	CONFIGURATION FILE LOCATION
Installed under "Program Files" or "Program Files (x86)"	%LocalAppData%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager
Application running on Terminal Server	%AppData%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager. This is the roaming profile and avoids multi-user conflicts.
Other	Installation folder

OVERRIDE THE DEFAULT PATH

There are two ways to change the folder where the configuration file is stored:

1. Create a file named "**Override.cfg**" in the application folder. Remote Desktop Manager opens this file and reads the first line. It should contain the desired installation folder (without the file name). If you wish to use the current installation path, put a period in the file. Here are a few examples:

EXAMPLES	
c:\RDM	The config file is saved in the designated folder.
.	The period is used to specify the Remote Desktop Manager installation folder.
%AppData%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager	Specify the application roaming data folder.

2. By adding a key in the registry:

CurrentUser\SOFTWARE\RemoteDesktopManager, OptionPath. Set the desired path in the key **OptionPath**. You must not include the file name in the value, just the path.

DEFAULT CONFIGURATION FOR REMOTE DESKTOP SERVICES ENVIRONMENT

Please refer to [Remote Desktop Services](#) for details.

3.1.3 Custom Installer Service

DESCRIPTION



- Generate and download custom installation packages for Remote Desktop Manager.
- Include preconfigured data sources in the package for quick enterprise wide deployment.
- Insert license serial in the installation package for easier management.
- Download the installer as a Windows Installer (.msi file).

The Custom Installer Service, offered through our Devolutions Customer Portal services, replicates the configuration from a Remote Desktop Manager instance. This configuration is used to create an installer file (*.rdi), which will be used to create the installation package intended for distribution. The configuration can contain the license serial, data sources, credentials, database templates and more. It is best practice to have a Remote Desktop Manager installation used specifically to create the installation package.

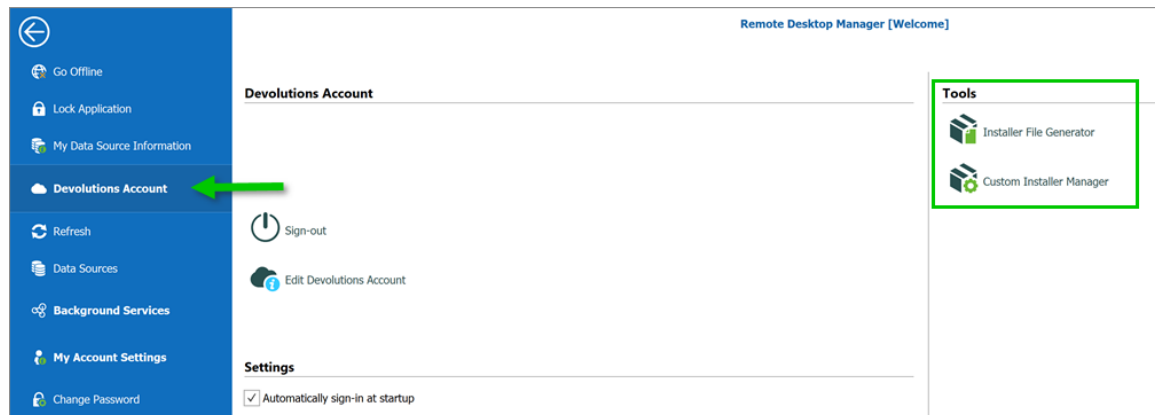


The Custom Installer Service uploads a configuration file to our online services. You should not use the service to redistribute passwords for data sources.



Please note that you **MUST** create an installer file using Remote Desktop Manager before creating the installer on the Web portal. This is described here in the [Installer File Generator](#) topic.

The Custom Installer Service can be found in with the Devolutions Account tools, located in **File - Devolutions Account - Tools**. You must be signed in to access it.



File - Devolutions Account - Tools

The following topics will help you get started to set up your customized installers with Remote Desktop Manager.

- [Create an Installation Package](#)
- [Installer File Generator](#)
- [Option Selection Dialog](#)

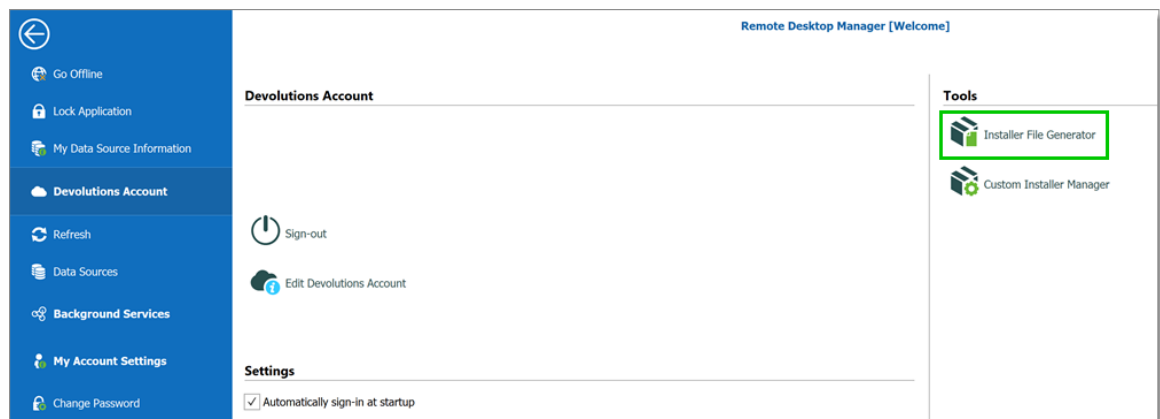
3.1.3.1 Installer File Generator

DESCRIPTION

When creating an installation package with the **Custom Installer Manager**, an installer file is necessary to determine what to include in the installation configuration. It is risky to create an installer file for each new version since you have to repeat the process manually every time. Instead, it is possible to create the configuration once, save the resulting file (*.rdi), and reuse it as many times as needed.

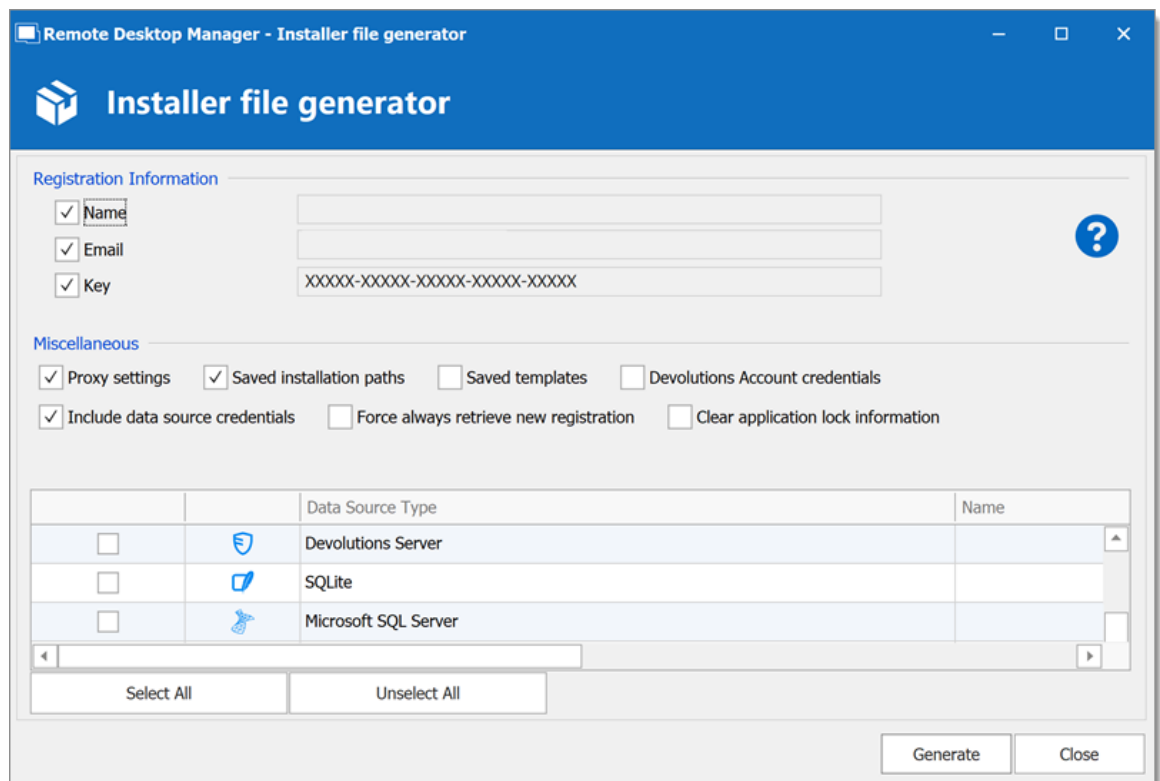
CREATING AN INSTALLER FILE

1. Click on **File - Devolutions Account - Installer File Generator**.



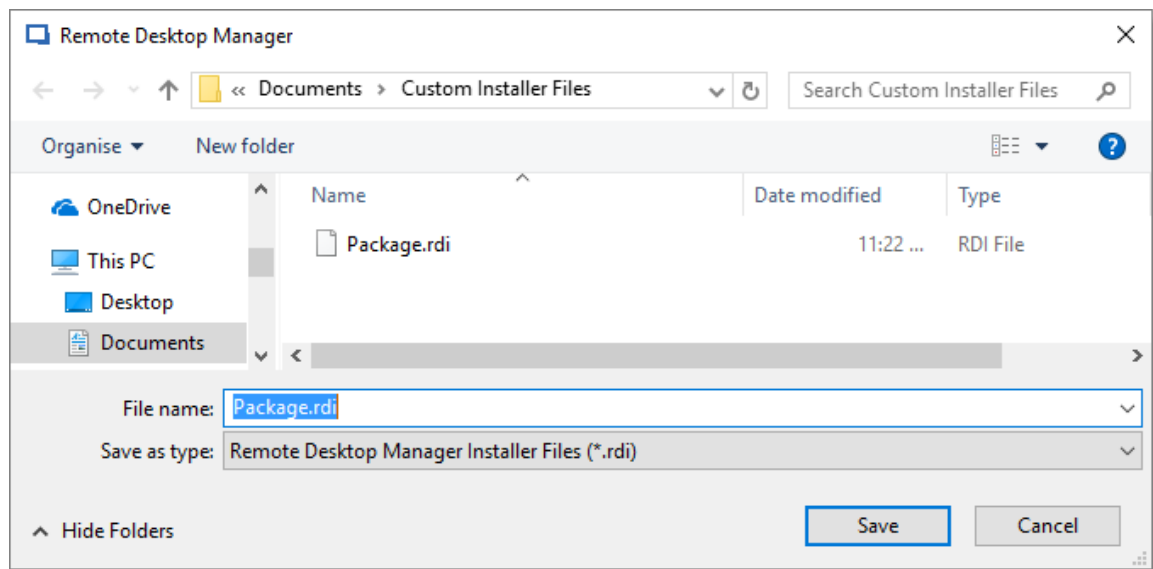
File - Devolutions Account - Installer File Generator

2. Select which data sources to include. You can also include the name and serial key for the registration.



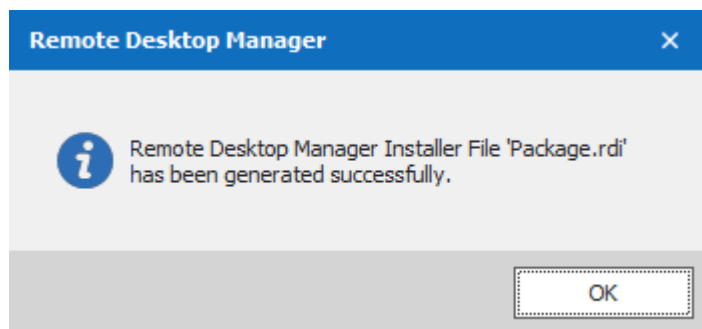
Installer File Generator

3. Click **Generate** and save the file.



Save the installer file

An information dialog is displayed when the file has been generated.



Package.rdi has been generated successfully

This file can be used in the **Custom Installer Manager** when creating an installation package.

For more information on how to create a custom installer package, please consult our [Custom Installer Manager](#) topic.

3.1.3.1.1 Option Selection Dialog

DESCRIPTION

When generating the installer file, you must decide what to include in the configuration. This process will replicate the configuration of the Remote Desktop Manager instance

currently used, and will generate an installer file (*.rdi). Once it has been generated, the installer file can be used as many times as needed to create custom installers. For security reasons, some settings that may contain credentials, such as **Saved Templates**, are disabled by default. Enable these at your own risk.



The same dialog is used for the Custom Installer Service and for exporting the Remote Desktop Manager configuration file. Some options must NOT be used for the Custom Installer Service to prevent sharing credentials that must stay confidential. Please read the documentation carefully.



Remote Desktop Manager may install required add-ons automatically when it detects that they are needed (configured in **File - Options - Paths**). If you need to customize the application's installation path of an Add-on, you must perform the modification, then create the installation package. This setting will be replicated in the installer file (*.rdi).

SETTINGS

You can open the **Installer File Generator** from **File - Devolutions Account - Installer File Generator**.

Registration Information

☒ Name

☒ Email

☒ Key XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX

Miscellaneous

☒ Proxy settings ☒ Saved installation paths ☐ Saved templates ☐ Devolutions Account credentials

☒ Include data source credentials ☐ Force always retrieve new registration ☐ Clear application lock information

	Data Source Type	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devolutions Server	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SQLite	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft SQL Server	

Select All Unselect All

Generate Close

Installer File Generator

REGISTRATION INFORMATION

Registration Information

☒ Name

☐ Email

☒ Key XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX

Installer File Generator - Registration Information

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Company registration name.
Email	Registration email if using a generic address.
Key	License serial.

MISCELLANEOUS



Do not redistribute the **Devolutions Account credentials**. Doing so would share these to ALL users having access to the online account used to create the installer package.



All **Local templates** will be included. If any contain credentials, it may cause a security risk. Ensure you are sharing only what is needed.



The data sources you decide to redistribute should **NOT** contain identifiable credentials. Use of integrated security is highly recommended. You can also use environment variables for the username.

Miscellaneous

- ☒ Proxy settings
 ☒ Saved installation paths
 ☐ Saved templates
 ☐ Devolutions Account credentials
☒ Include data source credentials
 ☐ Force always retrieve new registration
 ☐ Clear application lock information

Installer File Generator - Miscellaneous

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Proxy settings	Includes your Internet proxy settings
Saved installation paths	Preserves your installation paths configured for external third party applications. Use this only when all of the user's machines use the same paths.
Saved templates	Includes your local templates in the custom installer. Database templates are stored in the data source and may be a better option in you need to share them.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Devolutions Account credentials	Includes your Devolutions Account credentials used to create the custom installer. Please, consult security warning above.
Include data source credentials	Includes the credentials for all selected data sources below. Please, consult security warning above.
Force always retrieve new registration	Will allow the administrator to force the users to use this new configuration file.
Clear application lock information	Will clear the information from File - Options - Security - Lock application (local).

DATA SOURCES

Select the data sources that must be included in the configuration. In the description column, you will see details about each data sources. You should **ONLY** share data sources that are either using **Integrated Security**, or that are using an environment variable for the username. Passwords for accessing a data source should **NEVER** be shared.

3.1.3.2 Custom Installer Manager

DESCRIPTION



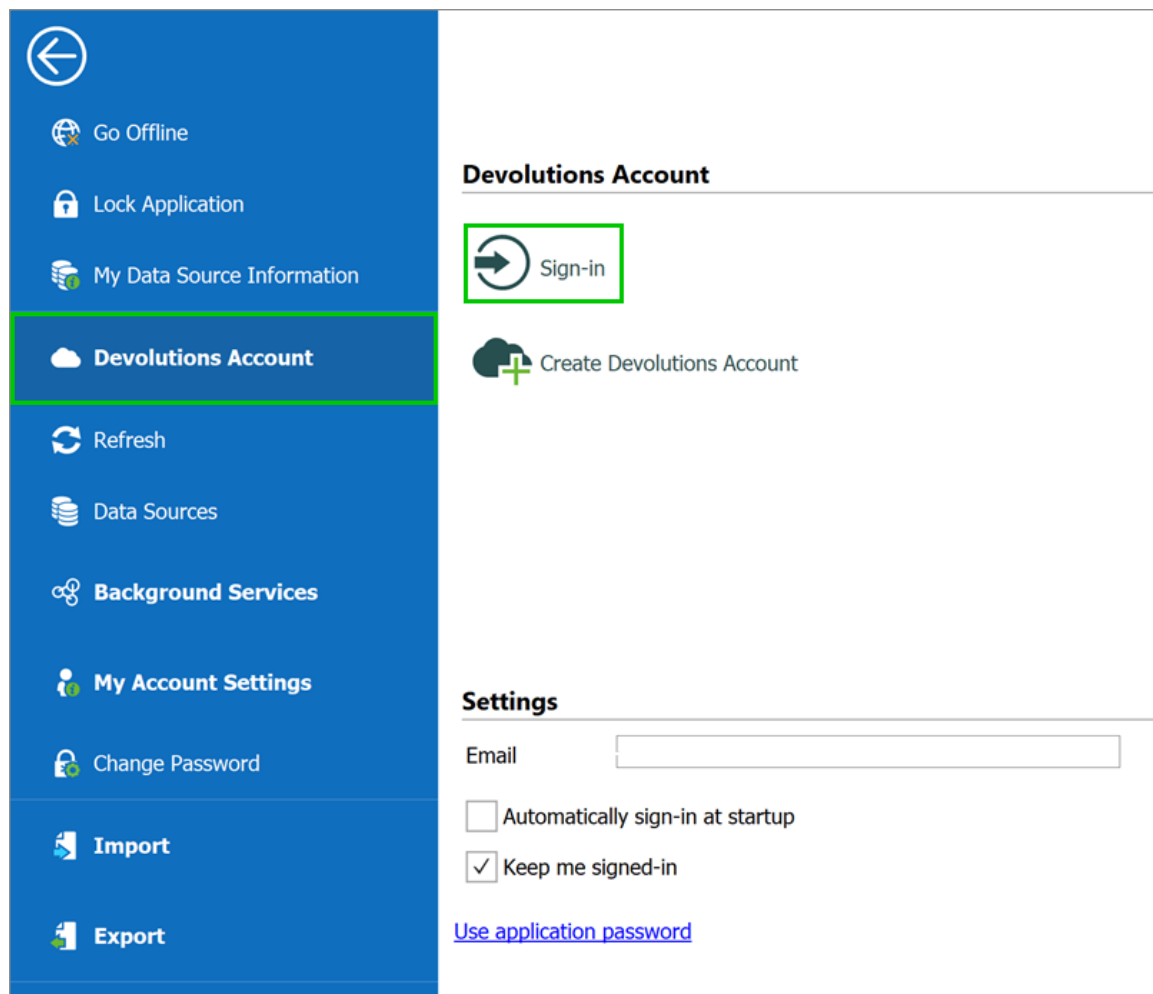
For stability reasons, in large installation bases, the latest official release is not available to the Custom Installer Service for an undetermined period while we ensure that no major issues are present. We recommend using this time with your organization to perform integration tests on a few workstations before upgrading your entire team.



Please ensure you have read and understood the content of [Custom Installer Service Overview](#) prior to subscribing to the service.

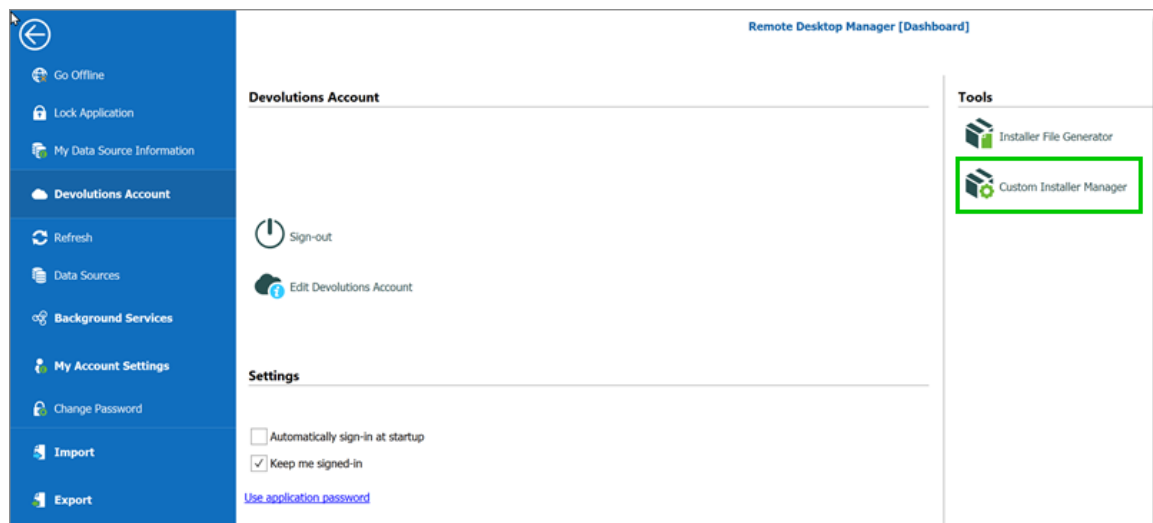
CREATE AN INSTALLATION PACKAGE

1. Click on ***File - Devolutions Account - Sign-in*** to connect to your ***Devolutions Account***.



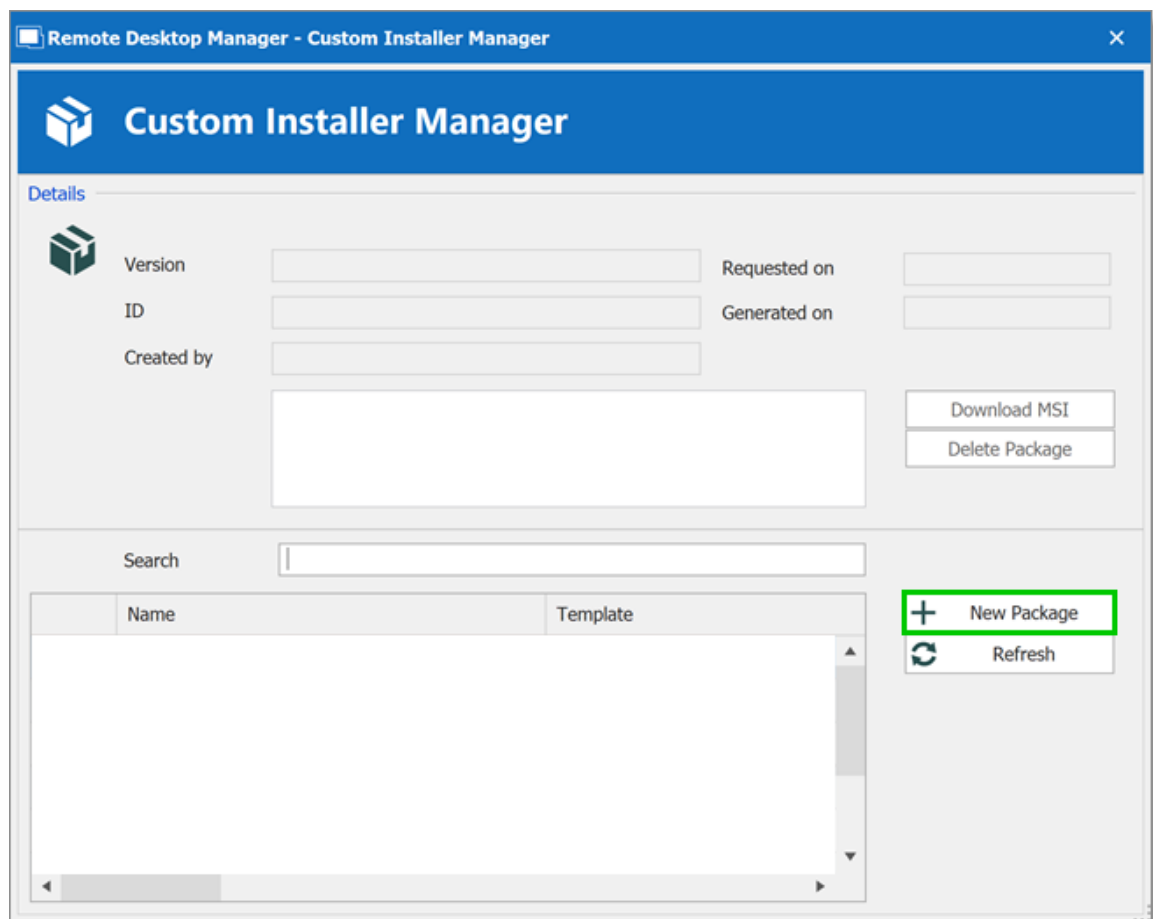
Devolutions Account Sign-in

2. Click on **Custom Installer Manager** to create a new custom installer with specific settings.



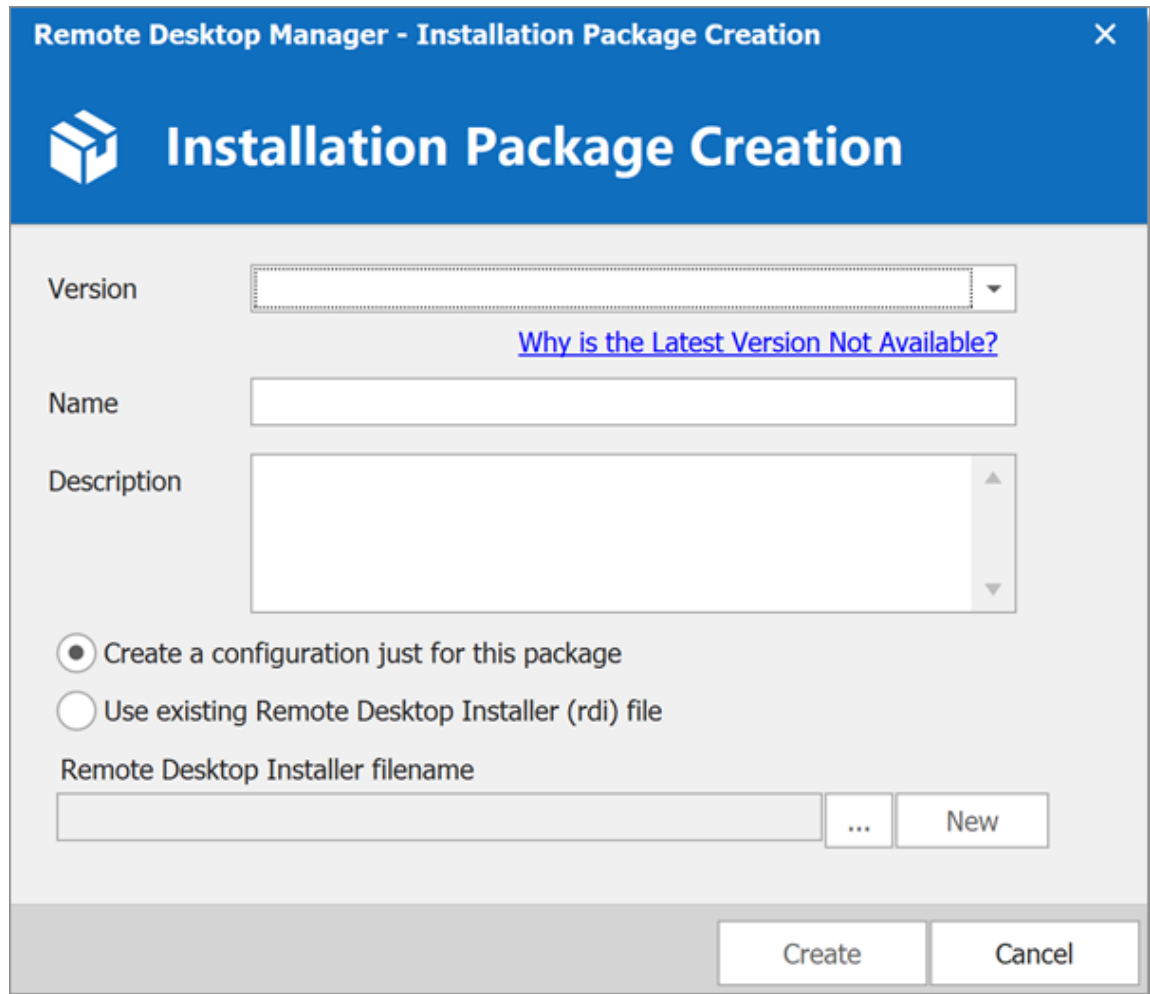
File - Devolutions Account - Custom Installer Manager

3. Click on **New Package**.




Custom Installer Manager - New Package

4. Select the application version, enter a name for your package and click on **Create**. You can either create a new configuration or use an existing Remote Desktop Manager Installer (*.rdi) file. For more information, please consult our [Installer File Generator](#) topic.



Remote Desktop Manager - Installation Package Creation

 **Installation Package Creation**

Version

[Why is the Latest Version Not Available?](#)

Name

Description

☒ Create a configuration just for this package

☐ Use existing Remote Desktop Installer (rdi) file

Remote Desktop Installer filename ... New

Create Cancel

Installation Package Creation

When choosing to create a new configuration, select what to include in the custom installer, then click on **Generate**.

Remote Desktop Manager - Installer file generator

Installer file generator

Registration Information

☒ Name

☒ Email

☒ Key XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX

Miscellaneous

☒ Proxy settings ☒ Saved installation paths ☐ Saved templates ☐ Devolutions Account credentials

☒ Include data source credentials ☐ Force always retrieve new registration ☐ Clear application lock information

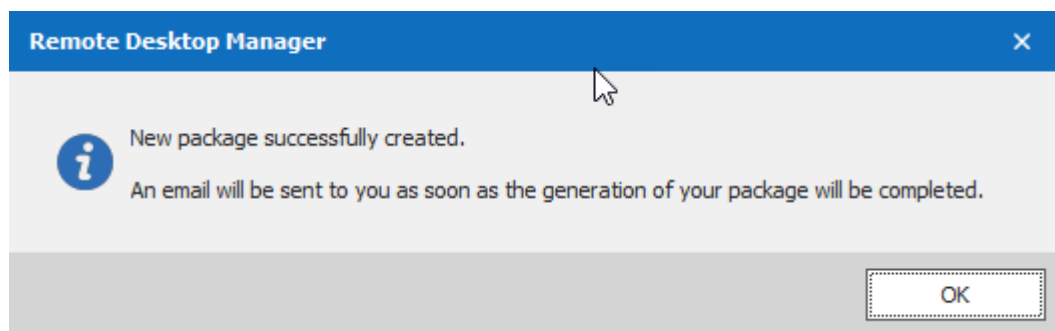
		Data Source Type	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>		Devolutions Server	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>		SQLite	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>		Microsoft SQL Server	<input type="text"/>

Select All Unselect All

Generate Close

Installer File Generator

5. Once the installation package has been created, the request is submitted to our online service. A confirmation dialog window appears if successful.

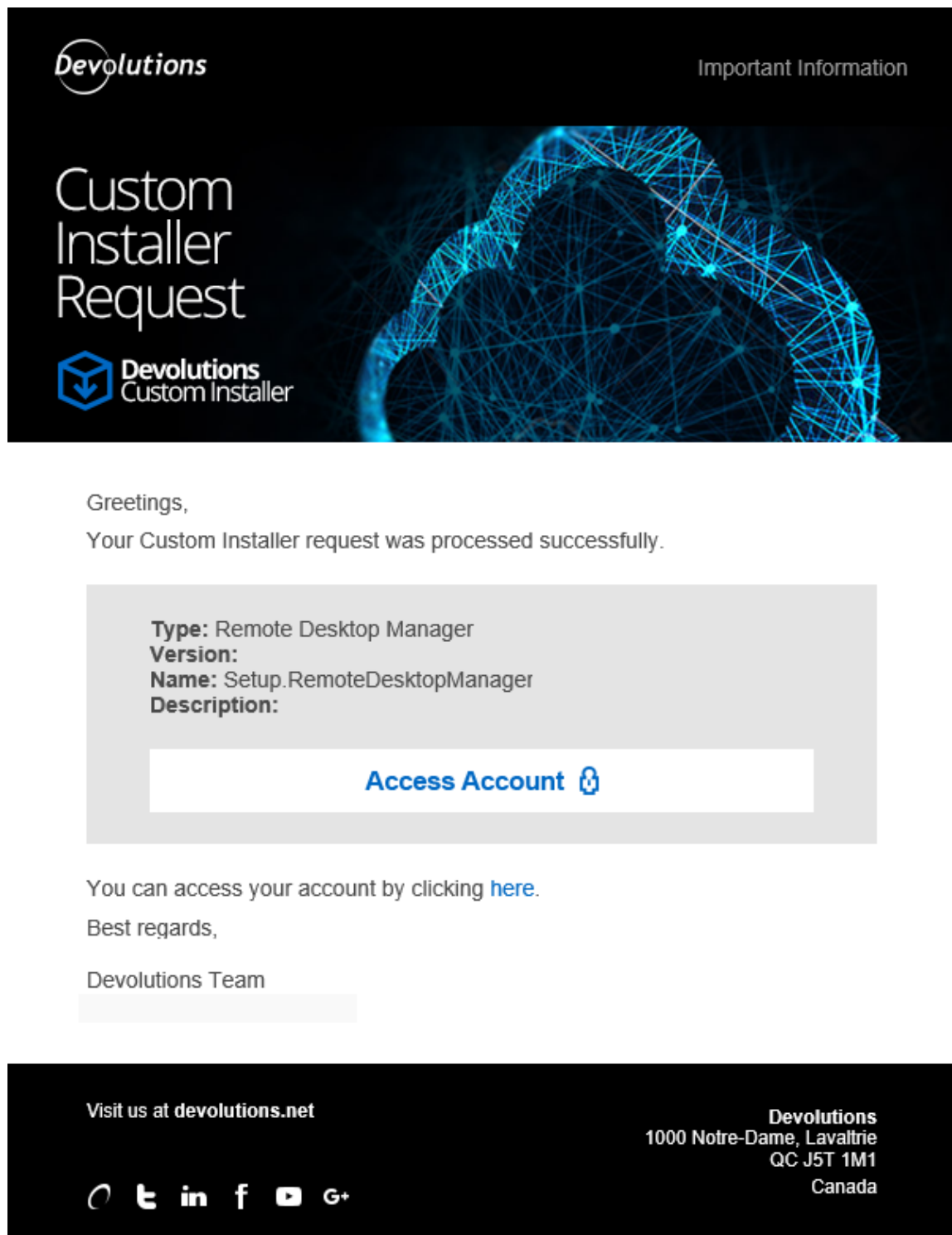


New package successfully created

6. The **Custom Installer Manager** will display an hourglass icon indicating that the package is being processed. When the package has been successfully generated, the **Custom Installer Manager** will display a green check mark . Note that this process can take a while.

DOWNLOADING AN INSTALLATION PACKAGE

Upon completion you will receive a confirmation email.

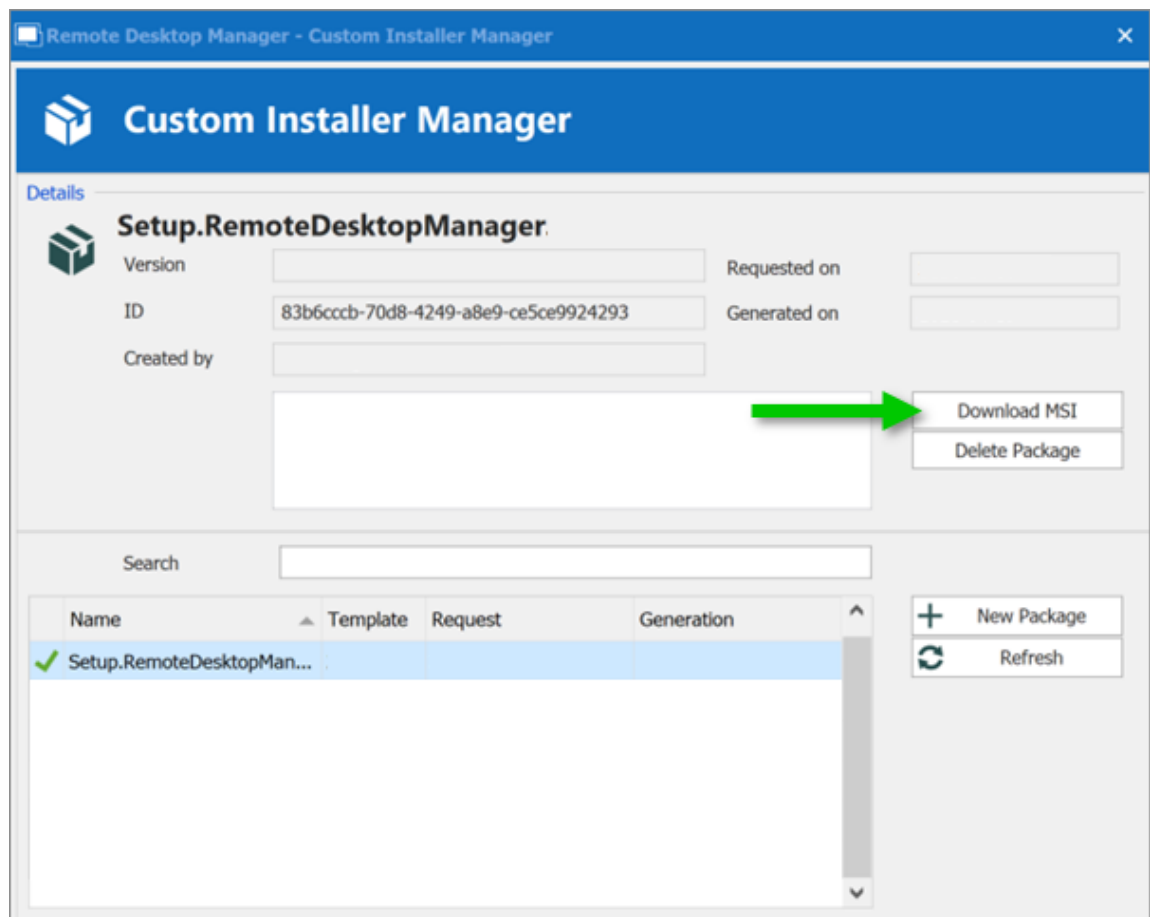


Email Confirmation - Custom Installer Processed

From here, there are two ways of downloading the package. You can download it directly from the **Custom Installer Manager**, or you can log in to the **Devolutions Account** you created the installer with.

DOWNLOAD WITH THE CUSTOM INSTALLER MANAGER

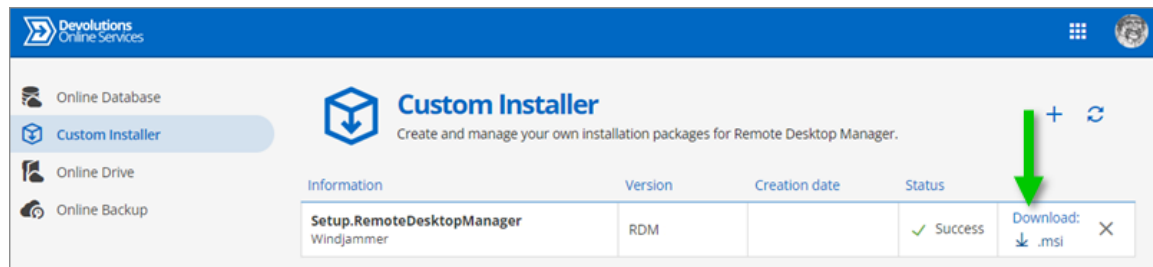
From the **Custom Installer Manager**, click on **Download MSI**.



Custom Installer Manager - Download Package

DOWNLOAD FROM THE DEVOLUTIONS CUSTOMER PORTAL

From the **Devolutions Customer Portal** you created the custom installer with, navigate to the **Custom Installer** section. Click on **.msi** to download the custom installer on your computer.



Devolutions Customer Portal - Download Custom Installer Package

3.1.4 For All Users

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager's current installation package does require to install with elevated privileges, as well as making the application available to all users of the computer where you are installing. That being said, feedback has shown that it does complete successfully across a wide spectrum of our community's environments. Follow this procedure to reduce deployment issues in the future.

PROCEDURE



This procedure registers all file types associations, this mean that rdp files will from now on be opened with Remote Desktop Manager. If you wish to avoid this, install manually using the Custom mode, and choose every option but that rdp association.

1. Copy the installer to a folder available for all users of the workstation. e.g. c:\Deploy.
2. Open an **Elevated Command** prompt (right click on the shortcut and select **Run as administrator**).
3. Run the following command, adapted for the version that you are installing


```
msiexec /i Setup.{APPNAME}.{VERSION}.msi /Quiet /Passive INSTALLMODE=Complete
```


We also **recommend disabling the auto-update** check as all further installations or upgrades should be performed by an administrator **AND** using elevated privileges.

If you wish to proceed with upgrades from within Remote Desktop Manager, **it must** have been started using ***Run as administrator***.

NOTES

The Microsoft installer technology copies the installer package under a new randomized name as well as register it in a database. Our experience shows that this copy has a way of disappearing and that the database becomes corrupted. We often have to direct our community to use https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/mats/program_install_and_uninstall

The Quiet and Passive parameters are just to ensure that you do not have to make a choice during the installation. We found that this reduces the risk of errors.

3.1.5 Portable (USB)

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager can be used as a portable application. Here are the steps required to ensure that it runs correctly:



The portable installation mode allows you to run multiple versions of Remote Desktop Manager, using various license serials and configurations.



To install a single portable Remote Desktop Manager application, follow this topic: [Portable RDM Installation](#).



This procedure is not recommended for running Remote Desktop Manager from a network shared by multiple users. This would prevent identifying individual users and there would be conflicts with user preferences.



Remote Desktop Manager stores the offline cache in your Windows profile by default. If you are using an Advanced Data Source and plan to use the offline mode, go to **File - Options - Advanced** and check **Use application directory for offline cache** to have the offline cached stored in the application folder instead.



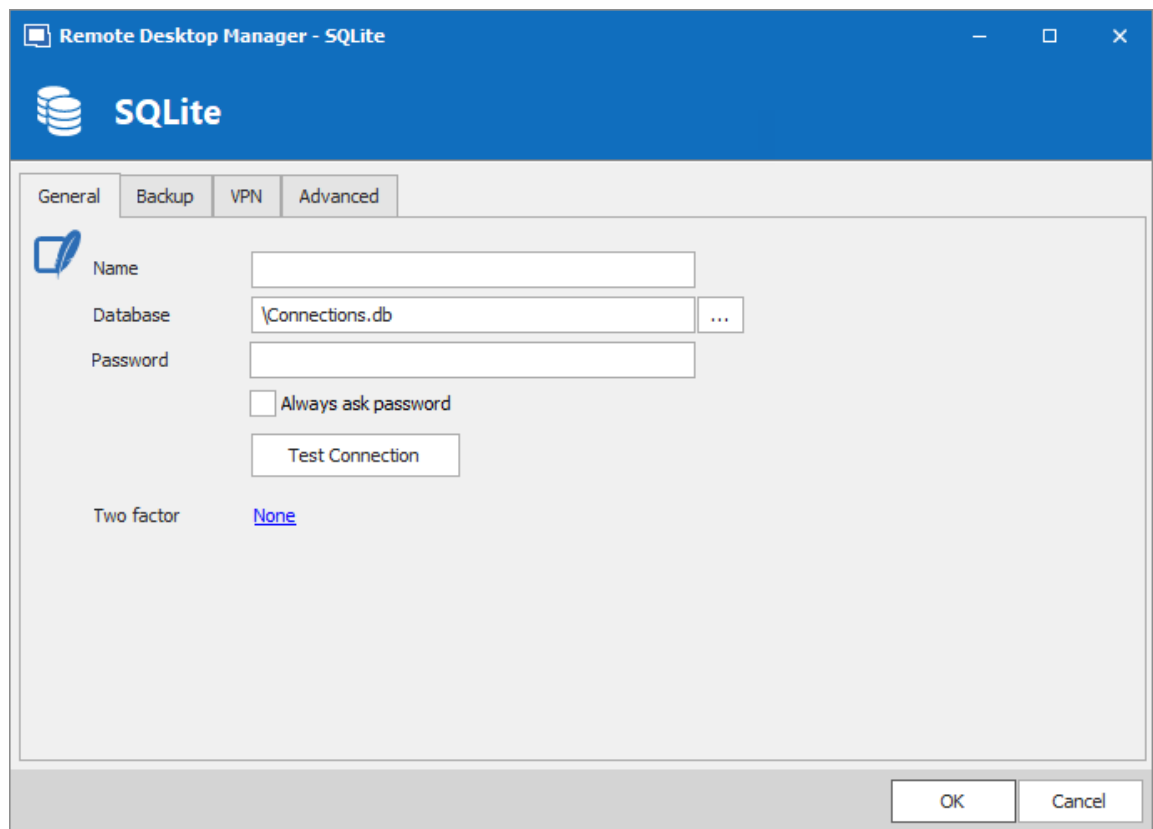
The following steps ensure true portability and ease of maintenance. It can easily be adapted to your liking.

PROCEDURE

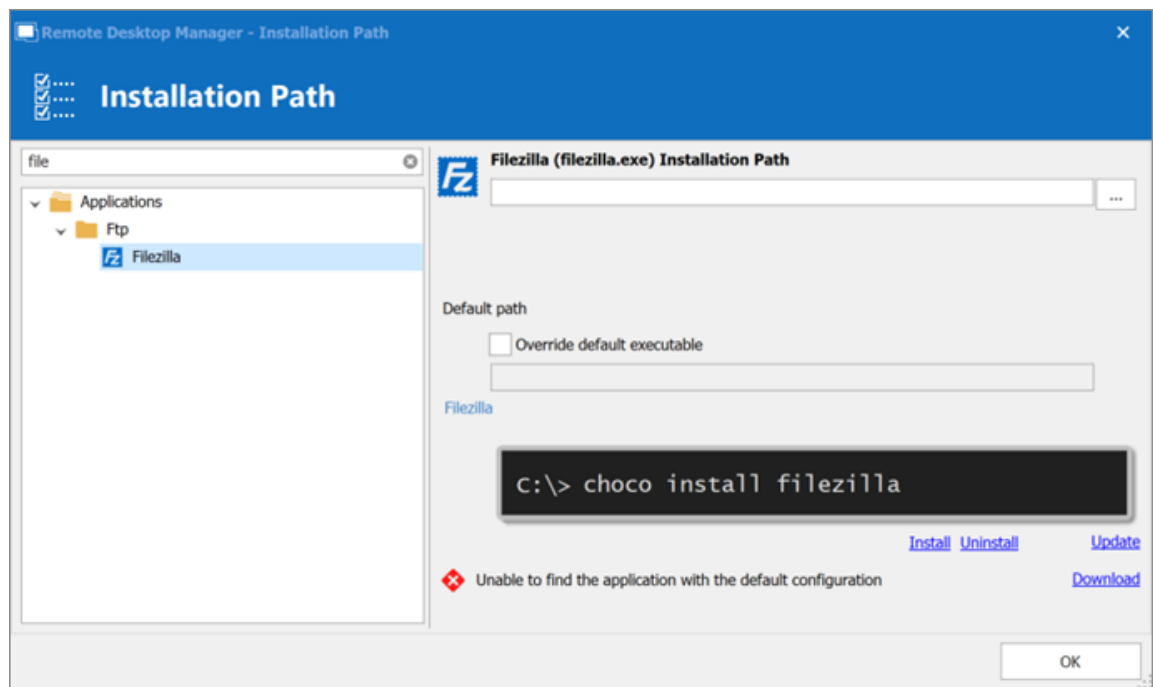
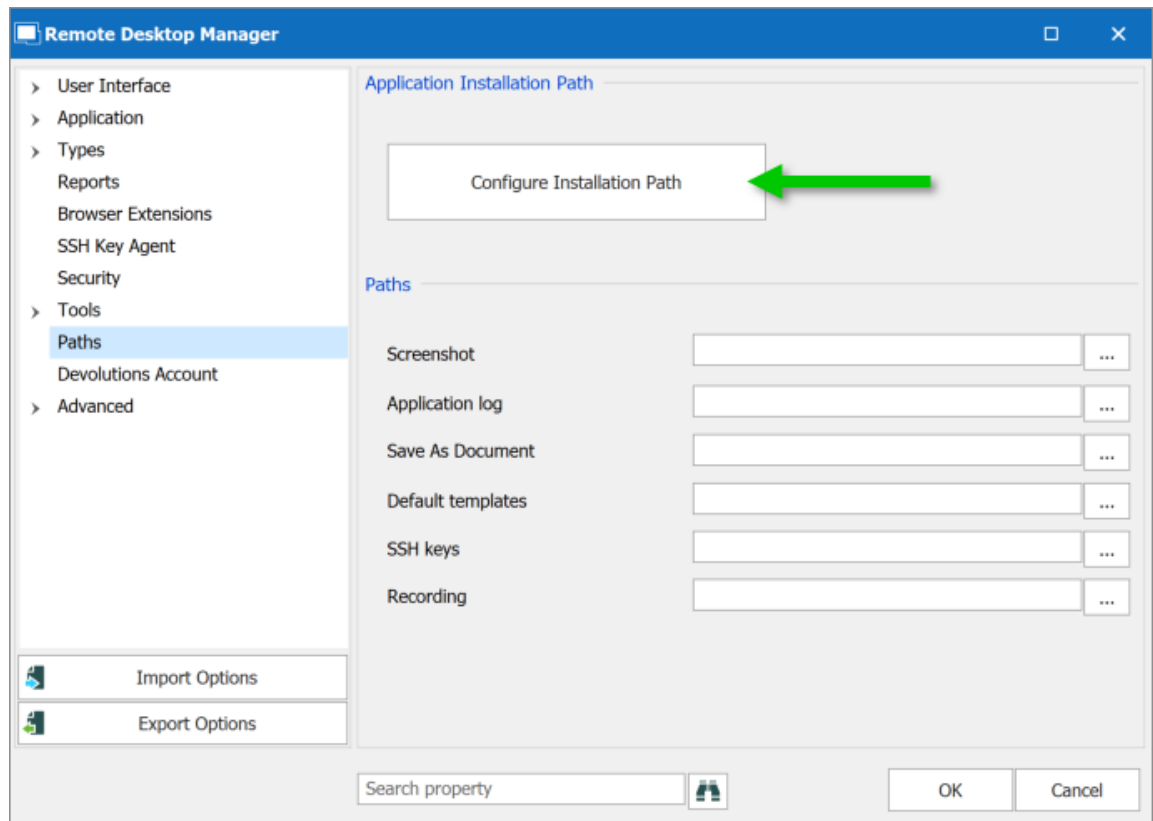
1. Download the **ZIP** package of Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise.



2. Create a RemoteDesktopManager folder on your portable device.
3. In the installation folder created in step 2, create two folders:
 - 3.1. A **config** folder.
 - 3.2. A **data** folder.
 - 3.3. A **tools** folder (optional, only if you intend to use external tools like Filezilla).
4. Unzip Remote Desktop Manager in the installation folder.
5. Create a text file named **override.cfg** in the installation folder. Set the content of the file to `.\config`
6. Open Remote Desktop Manager and display the data sources window using **File - Data sources**.
7. Create a new data source of a type that can be stored on your portable device. i.e. SQLite, XML, etc.
8. Configure the data source using a relative path so it is stored on the portable device: `.\Data\Connections.db`



9. Configure your portable applications (FileZilla, UltraVNC, etc.) in the same manner (relative to the installation folder). Click on **Configure Installation Path** to select your preferred portable application.



10. You can now delete the pre-existing **Local data source** that had been created automatically.

3.1.6 Registration

DESCRIPTION

REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER ENTERPRISE EDITION

Please refer to the [Enterprise Edition](#) topic to properly register your version. If you decide not to register at the end of the 30 days trial, your data will not be altered or erased, and you will have full access to it once you provide a valid license serial.

REQUEST A TRIAL

It is possible to request a 30 days trial to try Remote Desktop Manager - Enterprise Edition with all its features. For more information, please consult the [Trial Request](#) Topic.

REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER FREE EDITION

Remote Desktop Manager Free Edition is similar to the Enterprise edition. Remote Desktop Manager Free Edition must be registered following the 30 days trial period to ensure continued use. Registration is free, please refer to the [Free Edition](#) topic.

3.1.6.1 Enterprise Edition

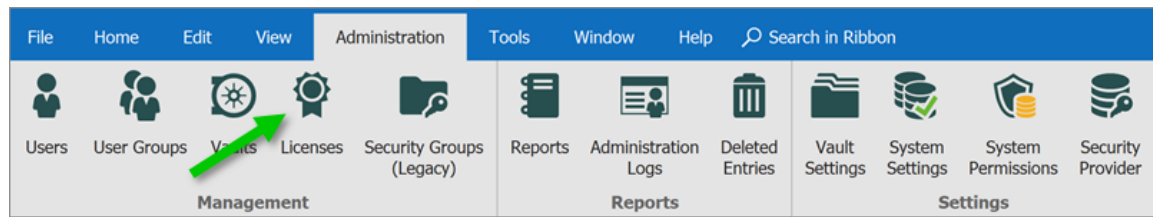
DESCRIPTION

When the license serial is stored in an [Advanced Data Source](#), there is no need to register Remote Desktop Manager as the license serial is retrieved directly from it. When launching the application for the first time, simply add the data source containing the serial.

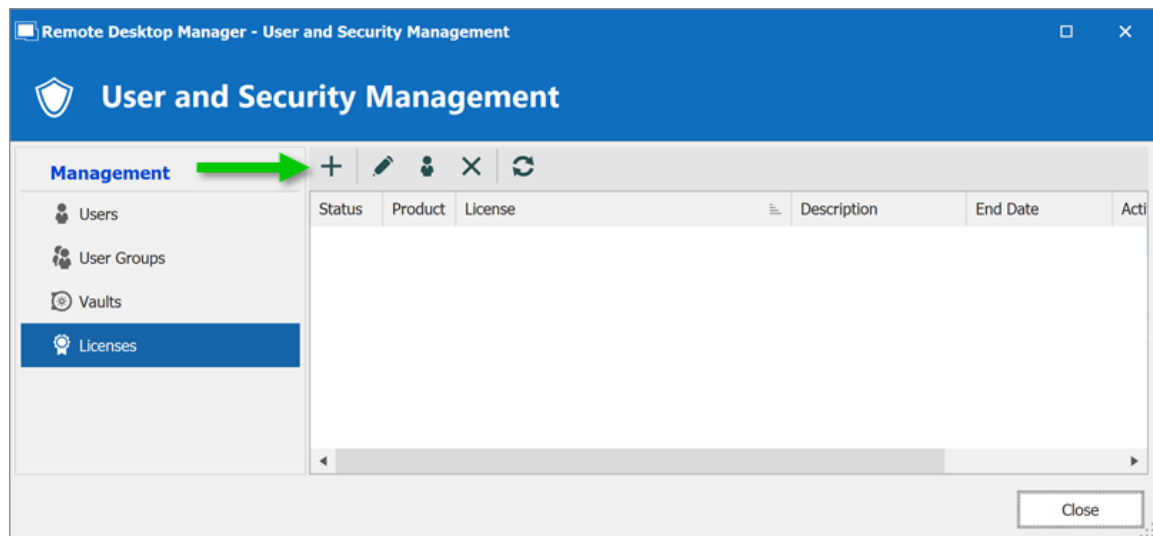


It is possible to [request a trial](#) to try Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise for 30 days. If you decide not to register the application with an Enterprise Edition license serial at the end of the 30 day period, your data will not be altered or erased, and you will have full access to it once you provide a license serial.

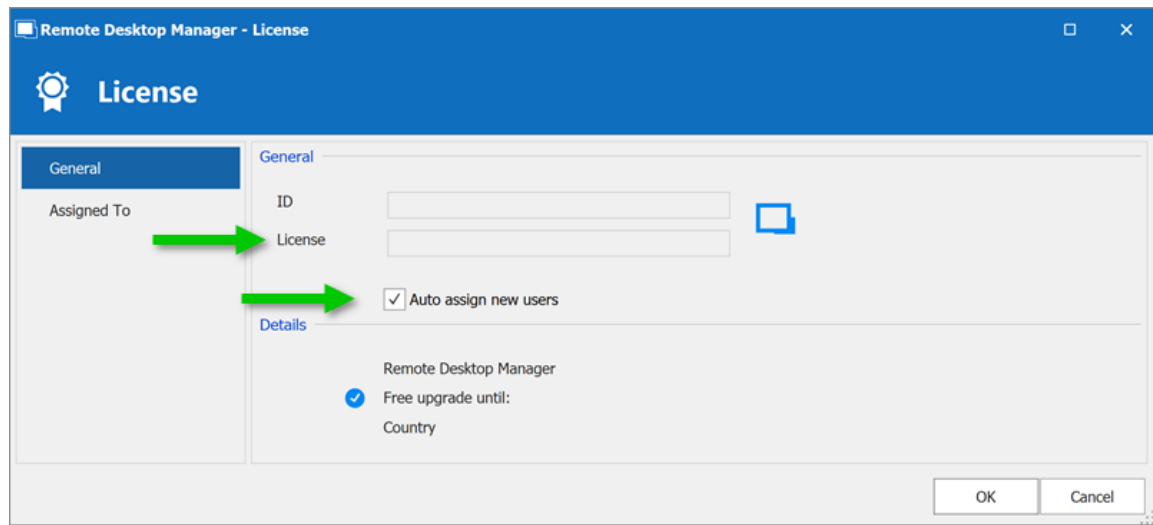
1. To add a license serial to the data source, navigate to **Administration - Licenses**.



2. Click **Add License**.



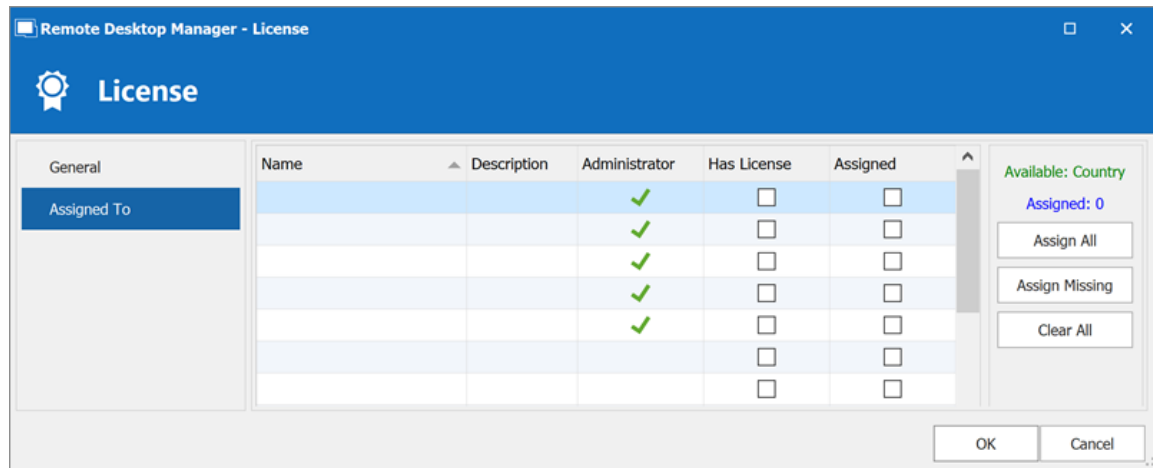
3. Enter the license serial.
4. Optional: Check the **Auto assign new users**, to automatically provide the RDM serial to all newly created users.



5. Click **Assigned To**.
6. Click **Assign All** or select in the **Assigned** column who should have an RDM serial access.



This step will automatically assign the license to the selected users, removing the need to interact with each user.



7. Click **OK** and **Close** the window.

3.1.6.1.1 End of License

DESCRIPTION

Some of our Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise users could wonder, what will happen when my license expires. Here is a breakdown depending on your purchase model.

PERPETUAL

When you purchase a perpetual license, you always receive 1 or a 3 year maintenance with it. After that period, Remote Desktop Manager will continue to work indefinitely with the latest version available at the moment of the maintenance expiration.

If you discover a bug, a security issue or you want to have access to newest features and that you would like to upgrade, you would need to purchase a maintenance plan for your perpetual license.

SUBSCRIPTION

All Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise **Subscription** plans offer software maintenance (1 or 3 years), which includes all major/minor upgrades and technical support.

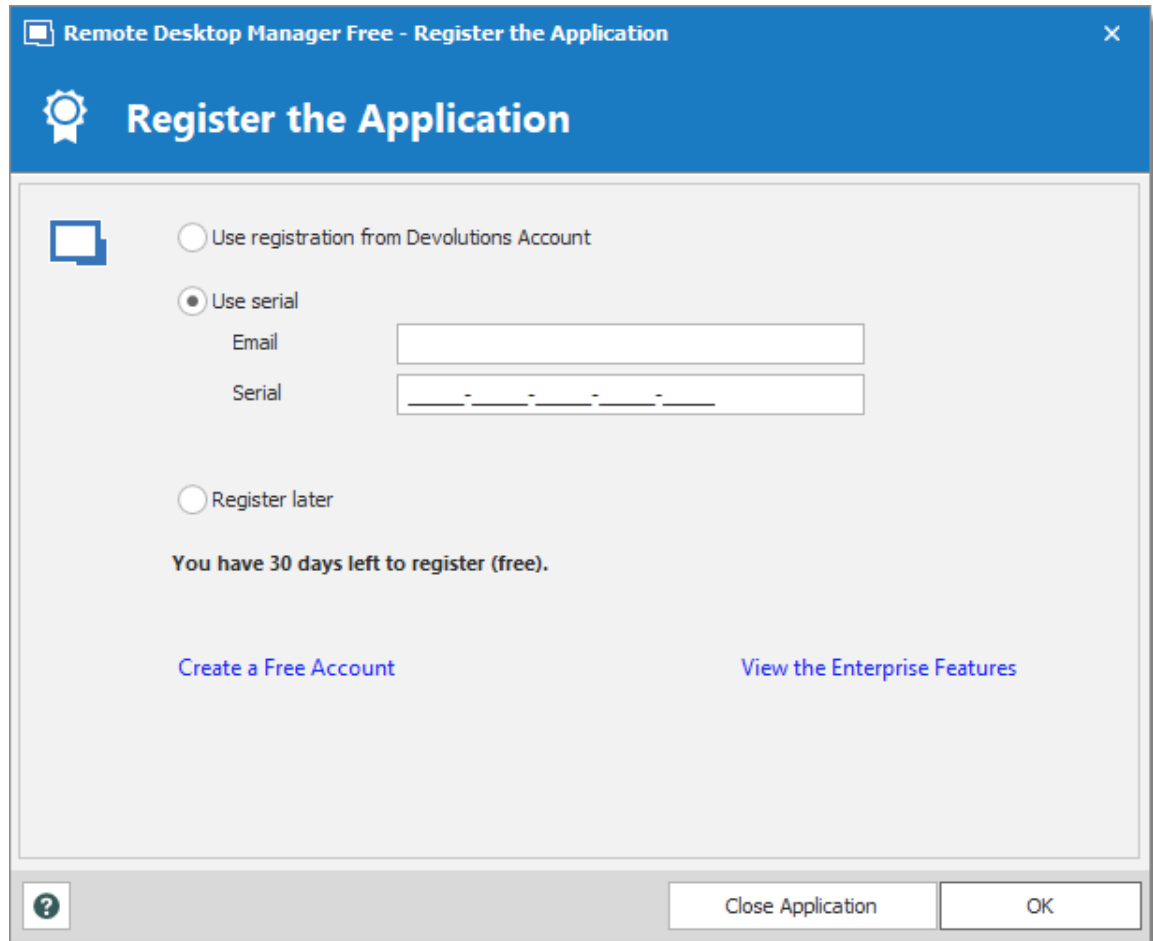
You need to renew your subscription agreement upon expiry. If you don't renew your subscription, access to your data will be limited.

3.1.6.2 Free Edition

DESCRIPTION

[Remote Desktop Manager Free Edition](#) requires a free registration after 30 days to be able to continue the use of the application.

The **Register the Application** window will display at each Remote Desktop Manager launch until you have registered the product license. It shows the number of remaining days and your registration choice.



Register the Application

USE REGISTRATION FROM DEVOLUTIONS ACCOUNT

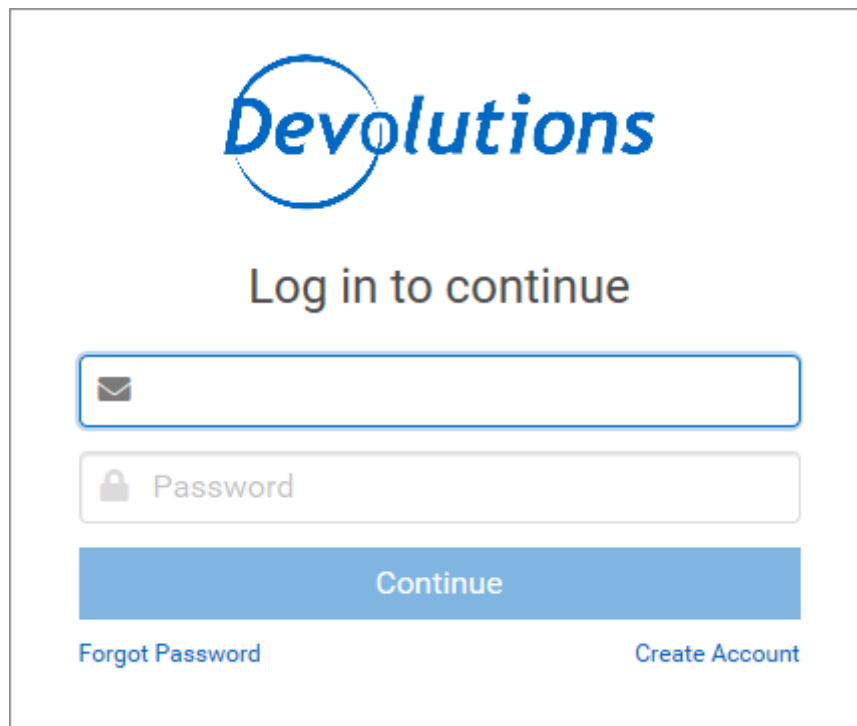
Every owner of a Devolutions Account is assigned a free license serial for Remote Desktop Manager in their Customer Portal.

To get a Devolutions Account, click on **Create a Free Account** in the register window.

To register your application follow these steps:

1. Select **Use registration from Devolutions Account**.
2. Click **Ok**.

3. Fill in your credentials and **Continue**.



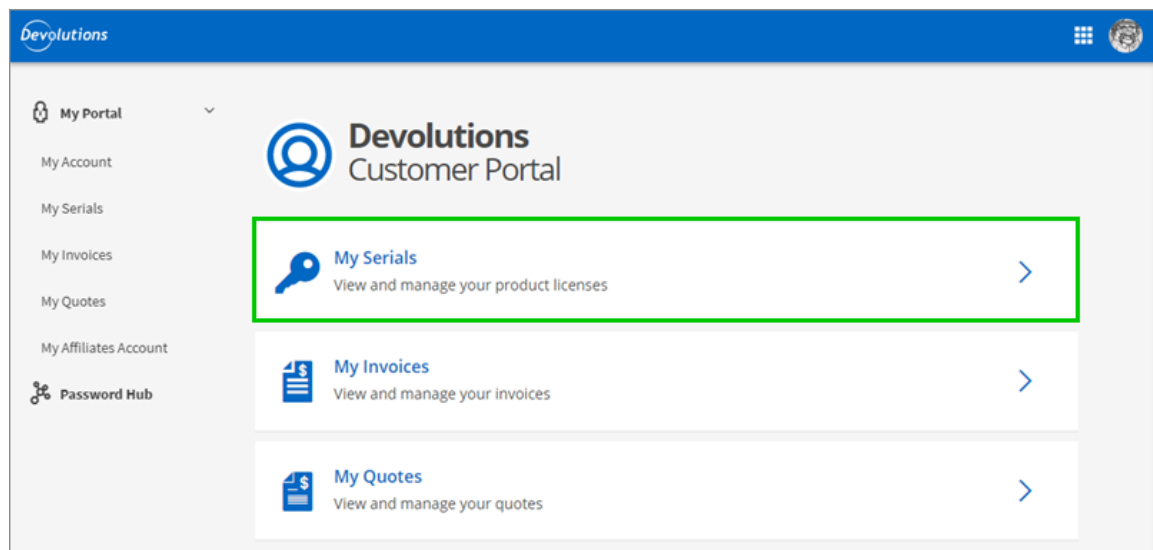
Devolutions Account Login

The license serial will be retrieved automatically.

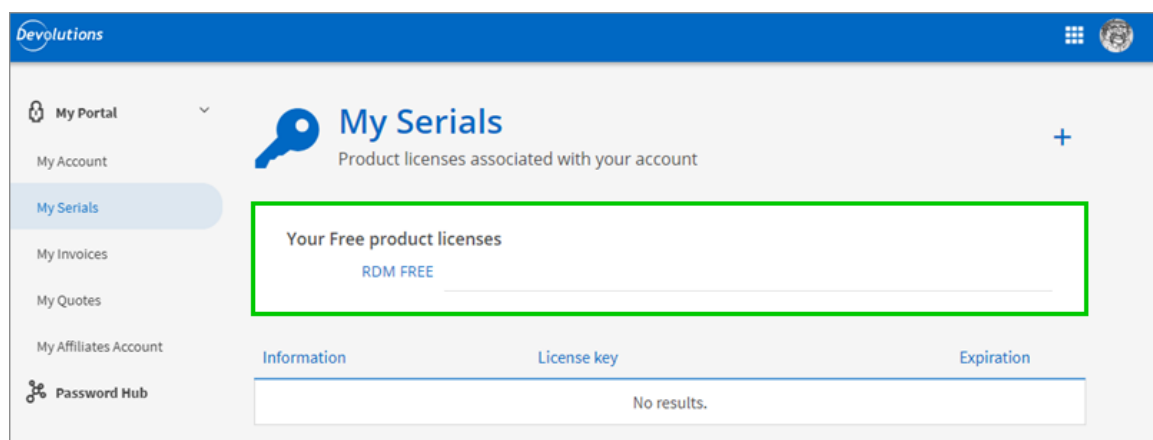
REGISTER THE FREE EDITION WITHOUT AN INTERNET CONNECTION

In the event that you need to register the application without an internet connection, the information must be entered manually. You will need the license serial from your [Customer Portal](#).

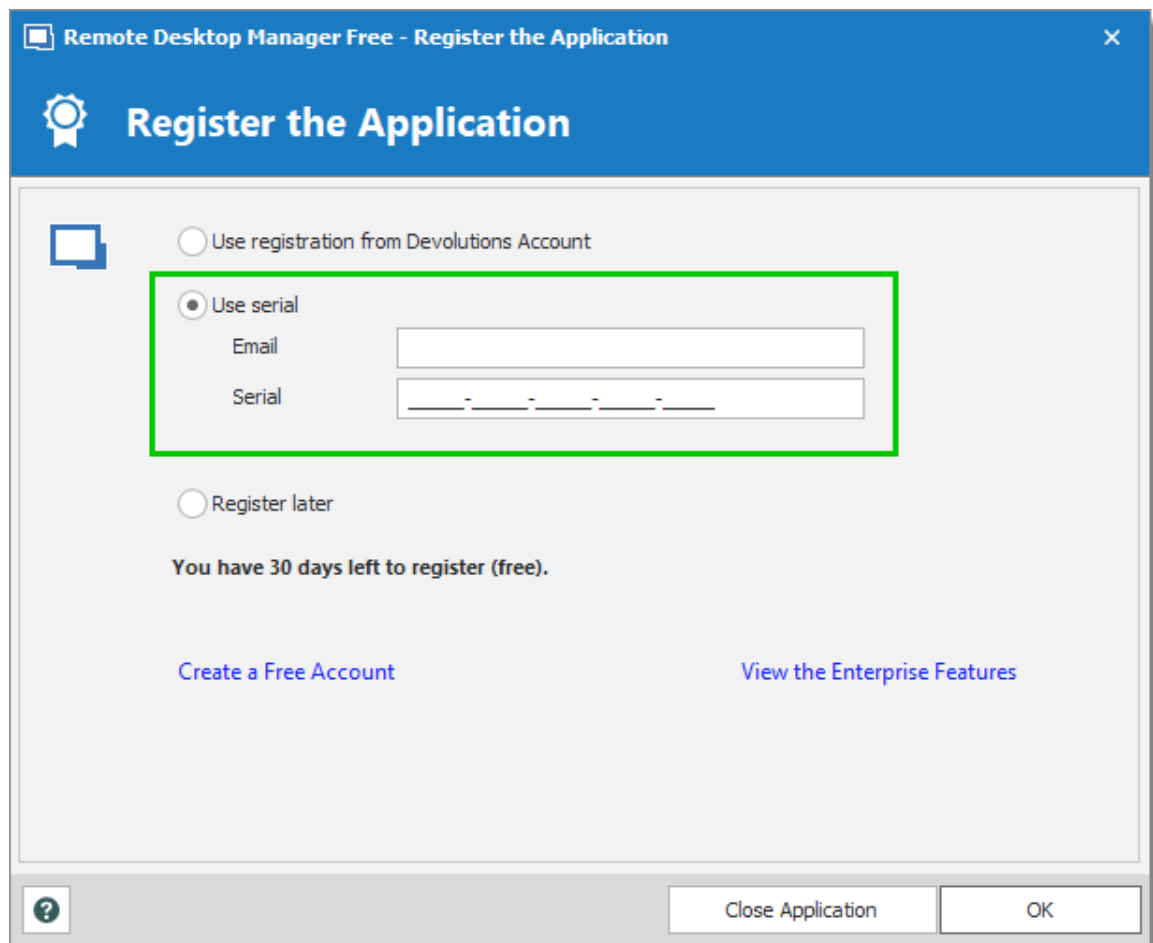
Log in to [Customer Portal](#) and click on **My Serials**.

*Customer Portal - My Serials*

Copy the license serial for the **Free Remote Desktop Manager Edition**.

*Free Product Licenses*

Paste the license serial, enter an email address and press Ok.



Register Manually

3.1.6.3 Trial Request

DESCRIPTION

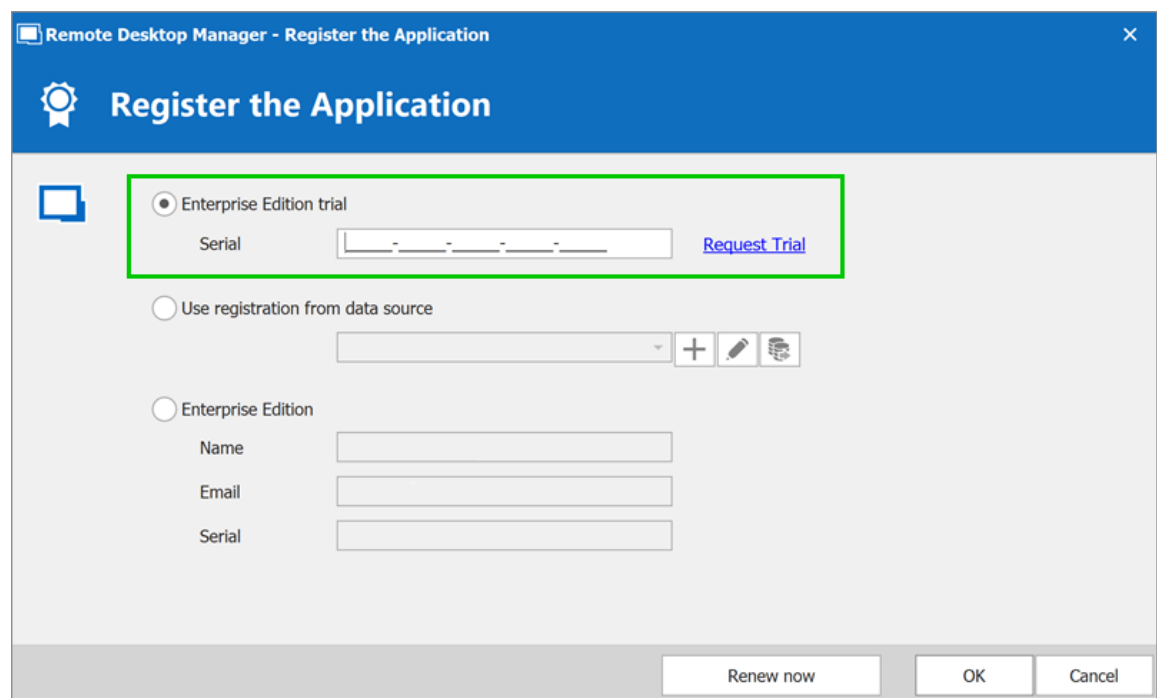
When launching Remote Desktop Manager for the first time, the application registration window is displayed. If you are not ready to buy Remote Desktop Manager, you must request a trial to use the application. The trial is valid for 30 day, after which the application cannot be used unless a valid Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise Edition license serial is provided.



Request your Remote Desktop Manager Enterprise 30 day trial from our [website](#).

STEPS

1. Request from our website your [Free 30 day trial](#) or click in the **Register the Application** window the **Request Trial** link.
2. Paste the trial license serial that you will receive in a confirmation email from Devolutions.
3. Click **OK**.



Register Enterprise Edition Trial

3.1.7 Remote Desktop Services

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager has an excellent support for running under a Remote Desktop Services environment. A master configuration file can be created to distribute settings for all new users of the system or even to update existing user's configuration.



Please ensure that you have followed Microsoft's recommendation on how to set up an RDS environment. It will severely impact the performance if default Windows installations are performed.

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/administration/performance-tuning/role/remote-desktop/session-hosts>



Each user must have a unique application data folder (Roaming profiles or similar technologies). Remote Desktop Manager saves some user preferences to the local configuration file. The folder can be wiped out whenever the user logs out of the Windows Session, but it must be accessible for the duration of Remote Desktop Manager execution.

PROCEDURE

1. Install by following the procedure [For All Users](#). This ensures that the Microsoft Installer Database does contain all of the needed information for all user profiles of the host.
2. After installing Remote Desktop Manager, configure your preferences. We recommend going through all the configuration options to find the set of options that you wish to distribute. The data sources deserve special interest since it is much better when they are configured by an administrator. You may even take the opportunity to lock the data sources to protect against any modification by the users. Please refer to [Lock Data Source](#) for more information.



When using [Advanced Data Sources](#), for effective logging methods, proper session security and user-based features, it is **CRITICAL** that each user has their own account to authenticate against the data source.

Redistributing a data source registration should follow one of the patterns below:

- The data source is configured to always ask the username and password;
- You are using integrated security against SQL Server;
- You use environment variables for the username, and require the password.
(we recommend %USERDOMAIN%\%USERNAME% or %USERDNSDOMAIN%\%USERNAME%)



Do not check the options to include **Devolutions Account Credentials** as well as any data source that contains saved credentials while also enabling **Include data source credentials**.

3. When running Remote Desktop Manager under a Remote Desktop Services environment, we may have to tweak the parameters of the RDP entries to use less resources as possible and improve the startup performance of the application.
 - a. To improve the Remote Desktop Manager startup performance, please see Solution #3 of the [Startup Performance](#) article.
 - b. To limit the memory consumption of RDP entries, please see [Memory Tuning of RDP Sessions](#).
4. When Remote Desktop Manager is configured to your liking, use **File – Options – Export Options**. This will allow you to choose exactly the data sources to include, as well as the various categories of settings. Please refer to [Export Options](#) for further details. Save the file with the name **default.cfg**.

5. Move the **default.cfg** file in the installation folder of Remote Desktop Manager, if you have used the default installation settings, it is under %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager.

WORKFLOW

NEW USERS

Whenever a new user creates a profile on the system, Remote Desktop Manager detects the presence of the *default.cfg* file and uses it as a template to create the user's configuration file.

EXISTING USERS



A group policy exists to force the new configurations to be accepted automatically. Please see the [How to Apply Policies](#) article to know how to deploy the **Force the loading of the default.cfg file** parameter.

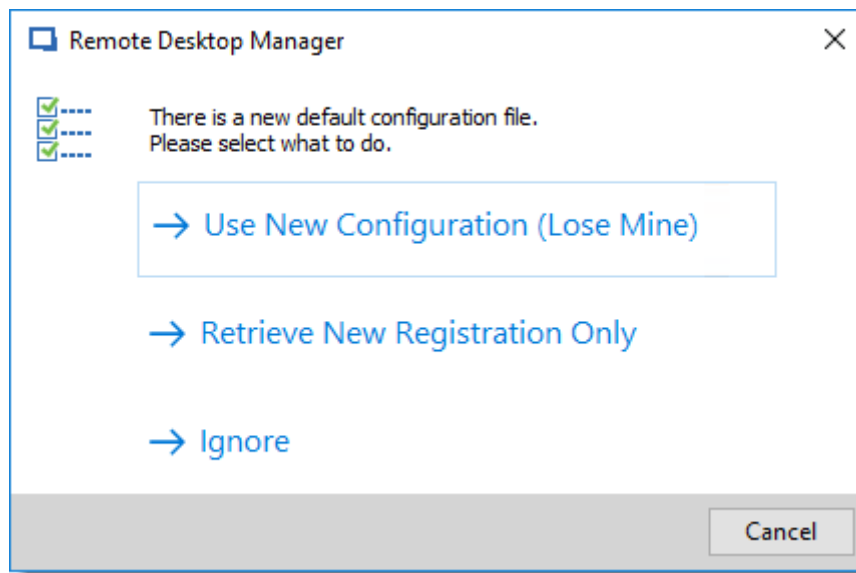


If the user chooses to ignore the new configuration file when presented with the dialog below, he will not be presented with the choice until the date/time of the *default.cfg* file has changed.



If the main concern is deploying a new license key, and you are using an [Advanced Data Sources](#), you should rather use the feature to store it in **Administration - Licenses**.

Whenever Remote Desktop Manager is started and it detects a new *default.cfg* file, the following dialog will appear:



New default.cfg detected

By selecting **Use New Configuration (Lose Mine)**, the user's configuration is simply overwritten. If you only wish to update the Remote Desktop Manager license key after a renewal, choose **Retrieve New Registration Only**.

3.2 Database Upgrade

DESCRIPTION

This topic applies to installations with data sources that are using a **database** as their data store.

Some Remote Desktop Manager releases must alter the database structure. These are performed automatically for you but it is best practice to perform a backup of your data source beforehand. Additionally, If you are in a team environment **you must be the sole user connected to the database** during the upgrade.



The user performing the update must have administrative privileges on the underlying database. (**SYSDBA** or **DB_OWNER**).



Perform a database backup and ensure that you can quickly perform a restore if required.



If your organization allows for a read/write offline cache, ensure that all of your users have merged their offline edits.

STEPS

Follow these steps for a successful version update:

1. Ensure you are the sole user of the database during the upgrade process. If your environment allows for offline use, have your team switch to the offline mode; or have them switch to another data source.
2. Back up your database using the database tools.
3. Install the desired version of Remote Desktop Manager, using the [Portable \(USB\)](#) deployment model may be desirable if you are doing this on your personal workstation.
4. Open Remote Desktop Manager while logged on as a user with administrative rights. You must also be **SYSDBA** or **DB_OWNER**.
5. You may be prompted with an upgrade message when your data source is accessed. If so accept the upgrade.
or
Using **File – Data sources**, locate your data source to upgrade and open its property window. Switch to the **Upgrade** tab, then click on **Update Database**
6. Wait for a confirmation dialog.
7. Close the dialog.
8. Ensure your Remote Desktop Manager application is currently using that data source.
9. Press CTRL-F5 to force a full refresh.
10. Validate the content and perform a check of the technologies that are critical in your environment.

11. Update the client software on all workstations.

3.3 Uninstall

INSTRUCTIONS

Remote Desktop Manager doesn't install anything in the Windows System directory. The only registry settings created are for the auto-run functionality and the installation path. As a result, Remote Desktop Manager can be uninstalled easily.

You can run the uninstaller if it was installed with the default setup file or delete the installation folder directly if it was installed from the binaries.

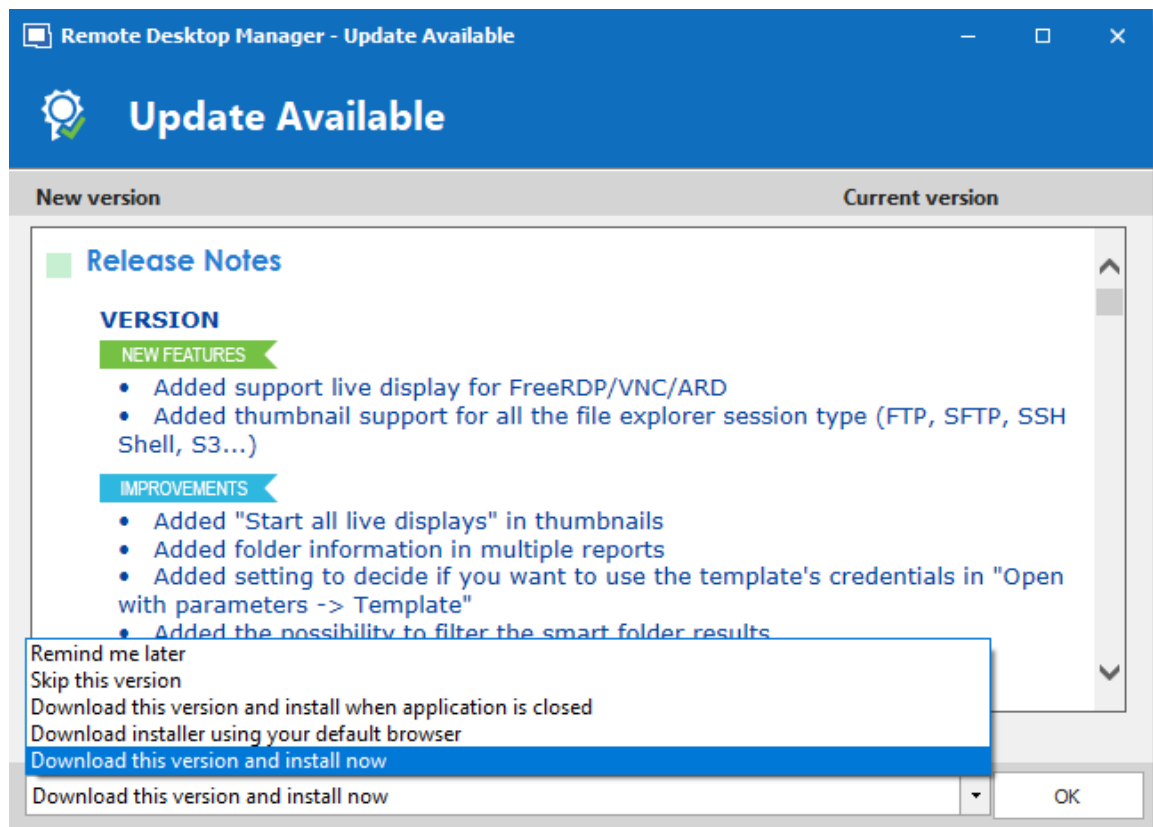
The application configuration files are saved in **"%LocalAppData%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager"** or **"%AppData%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager"** by default. It's possible that you may want to delete this folder for a complete uninstall.



Please note that if you are using a local data source like [SQLite](#) or [XML](#), your data source may be saved in the configuration folder. Perform a backup of the data source prior to the deletion of the folder.

3.4 Update

The **Update** feature prompts the user to update to a newer version of the application and displays the release notes. The user's choice for the previous update is shown as selected.

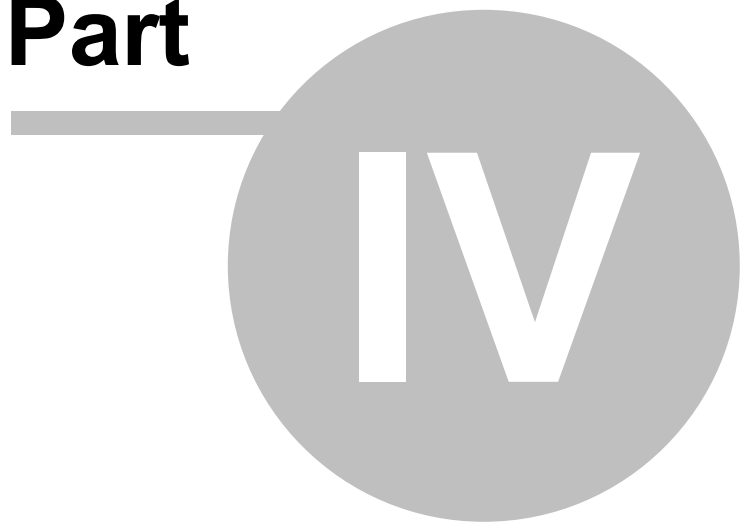
*Update*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Remind me later	Remind to update the next time the application is opened.
Skip this version	Do not update the application with this version.
Download this version and install when the application is closed	Download the version and wait for the application to be closed before installing.
Download installer using your default browser	Download the installer externally using your default web browser.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Download this version and install now	Immediately download the new version and install it.

User Interface

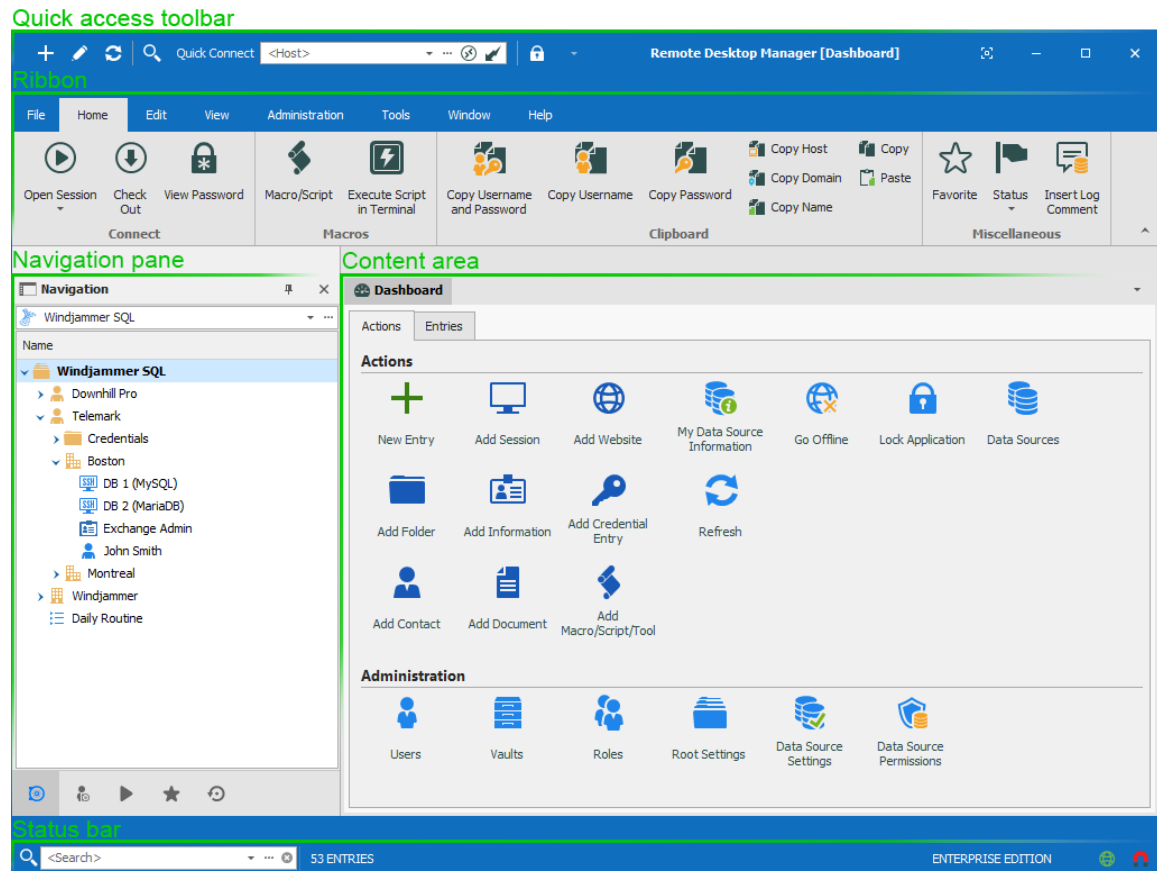
Part



4 User Interface

4.1 Main Screen

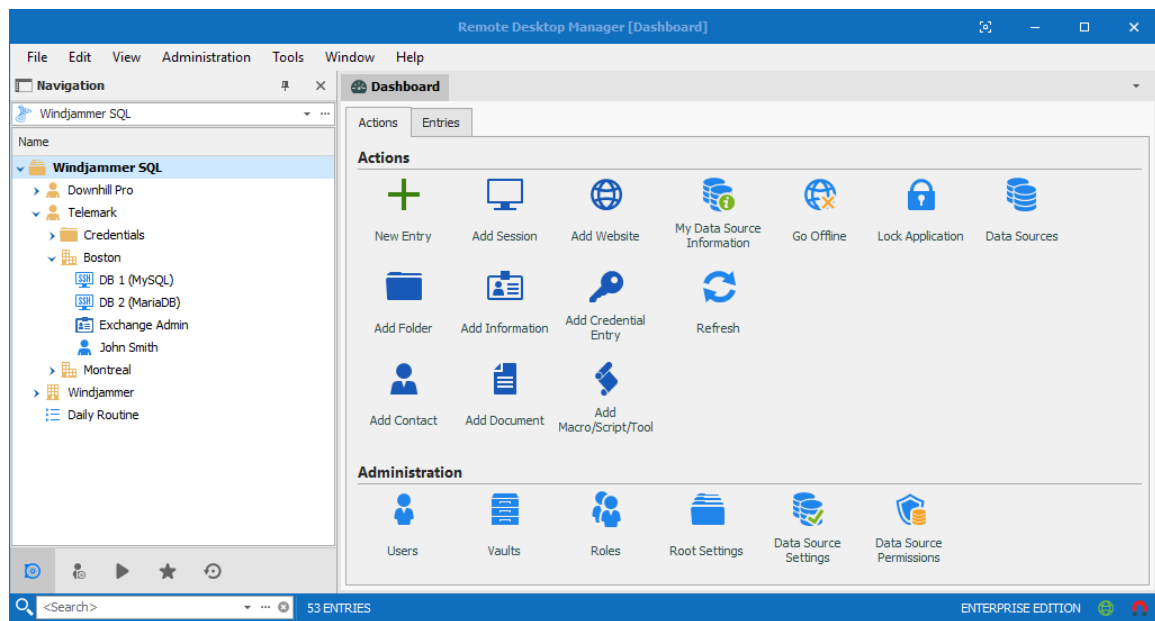
Illustrated below is the default Remote Desktop Manager main screen. Go to **File – Options – User Interface** to change the current style. We have various settings for you to customize your experience, such as different themes, shortcuts and more!



Overview of the default user interface

MENU USER INTERFACE STYLE

With the Menu user interface style, the **Ribbon** is been replaced by a standard menu, and the **Quick Access toolbar** is not present. This setting can be found in **File – Options – User Interface – Ribbon Interface**.



Menu user interface style

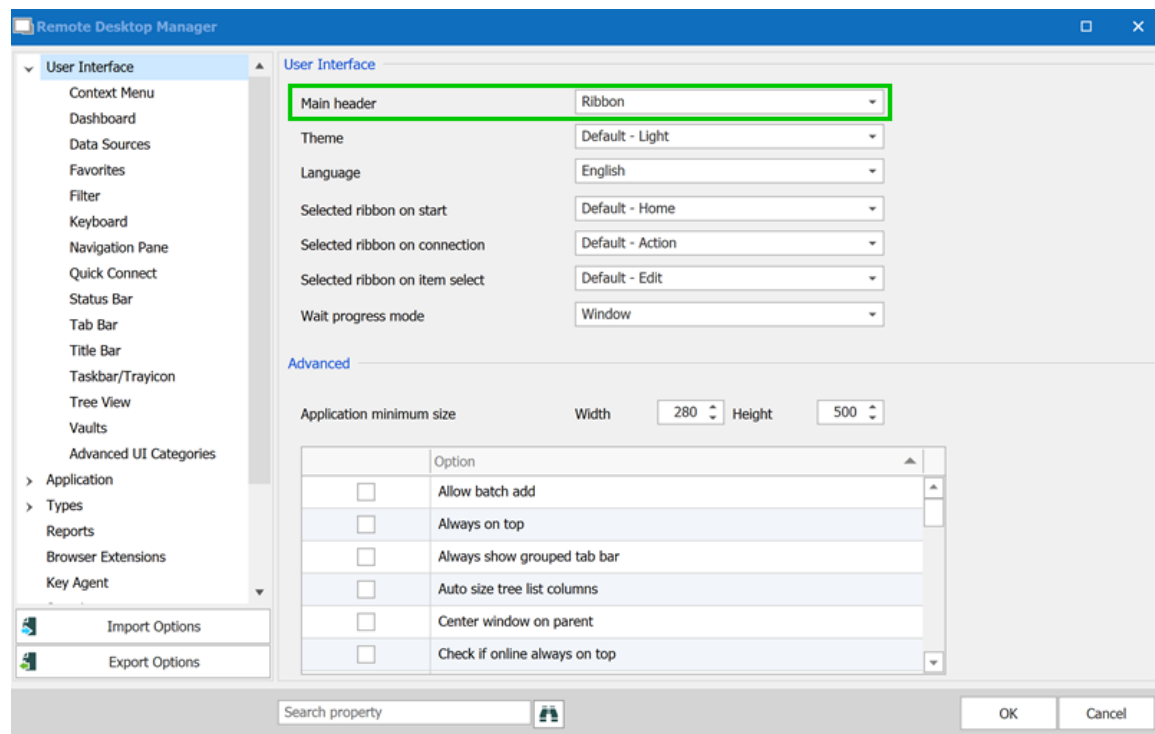
4.2 Style

Remote Desktop Manager supports different User Interface Styles (sometimes known as skins). These greatly influence the visual aspect of the User Interface as well as its mode of operation. Three styles currently exist:

- [Ribbon](#)
- [Menu](#)

CONFIGURATION

To select the User Interface style you must go in **File – Options – User Interface** and modify the **Main header**.

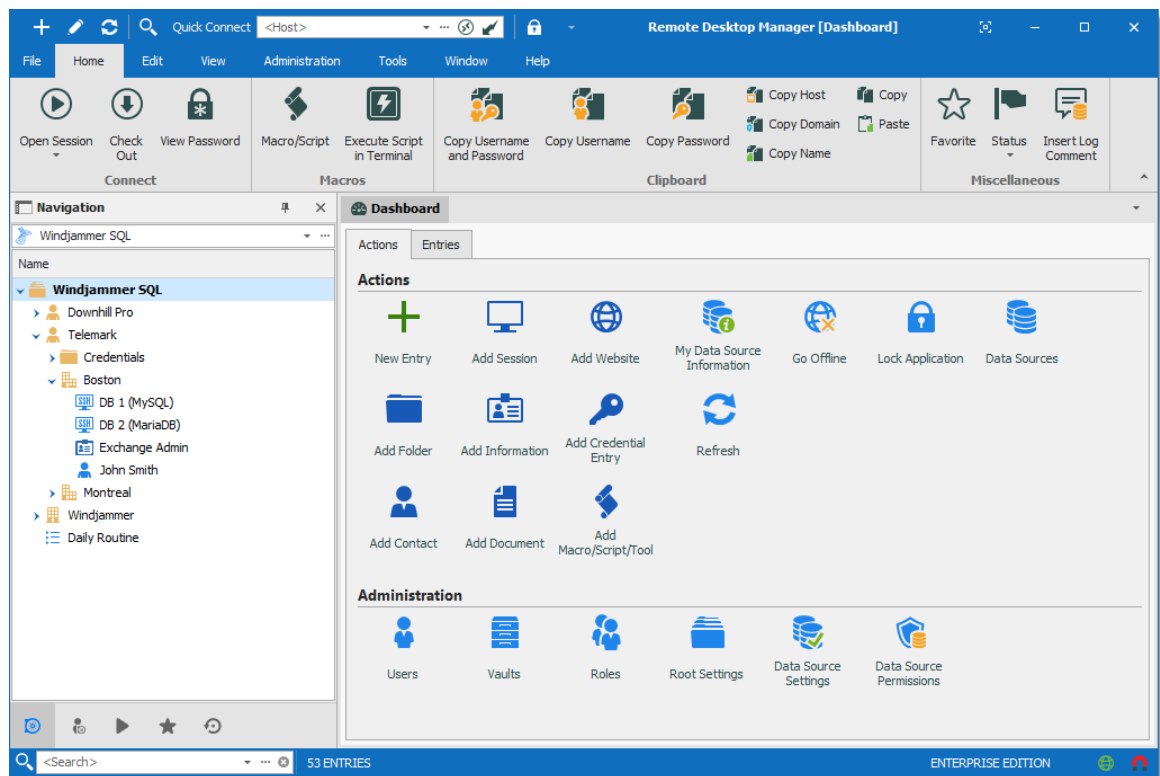


Options - User Interface

EXISTING STYLES

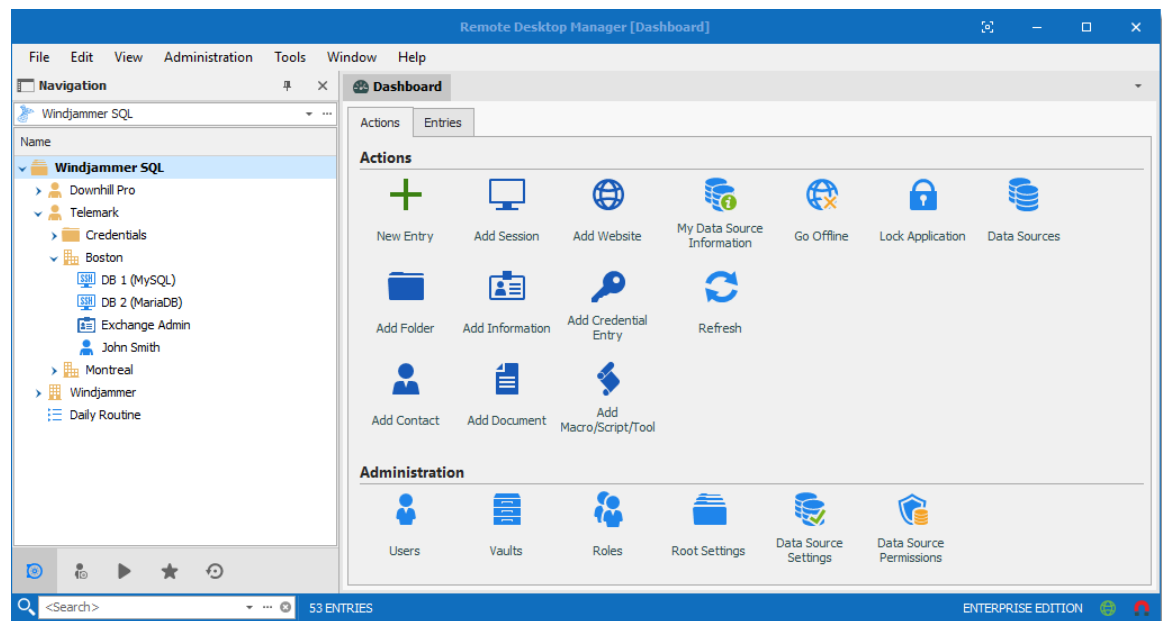
RIBBON

The latest style sports a ribbon. Icons and text makes it easy to explore features.

*Ribbon User Interface*

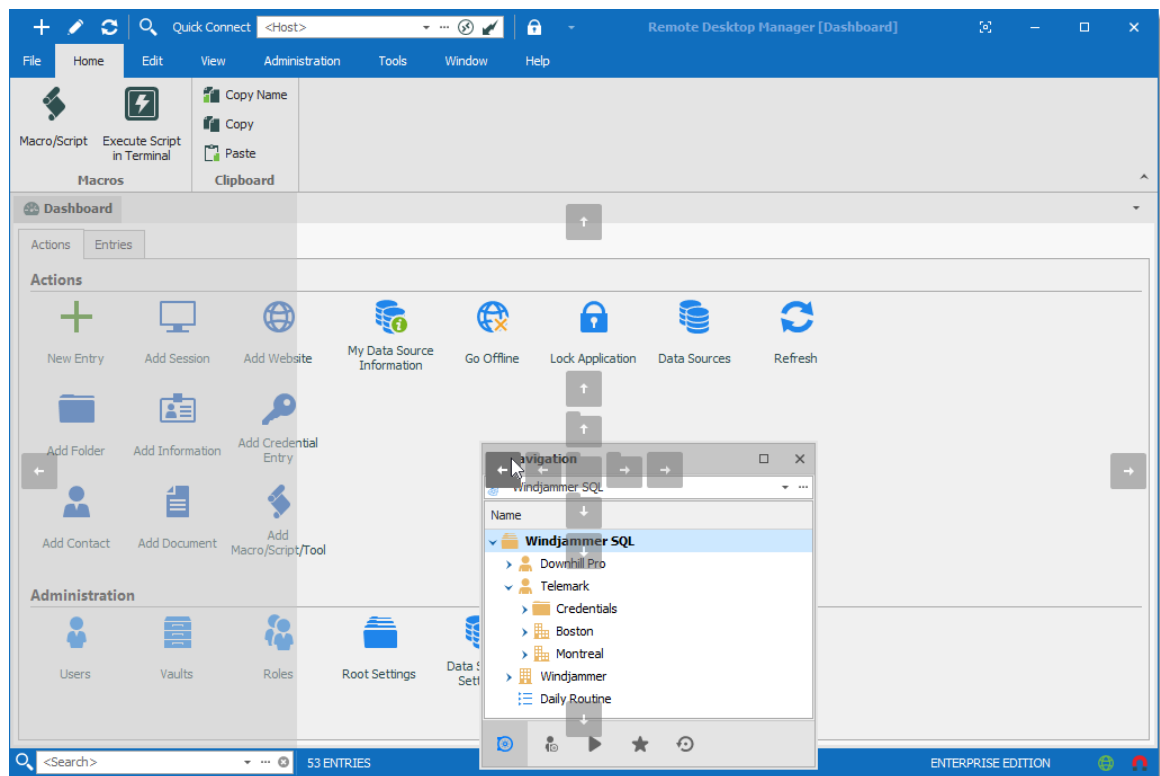
MENU

Previous generation style, it holds a standard menu to invoke commands.

*Default User Interface*

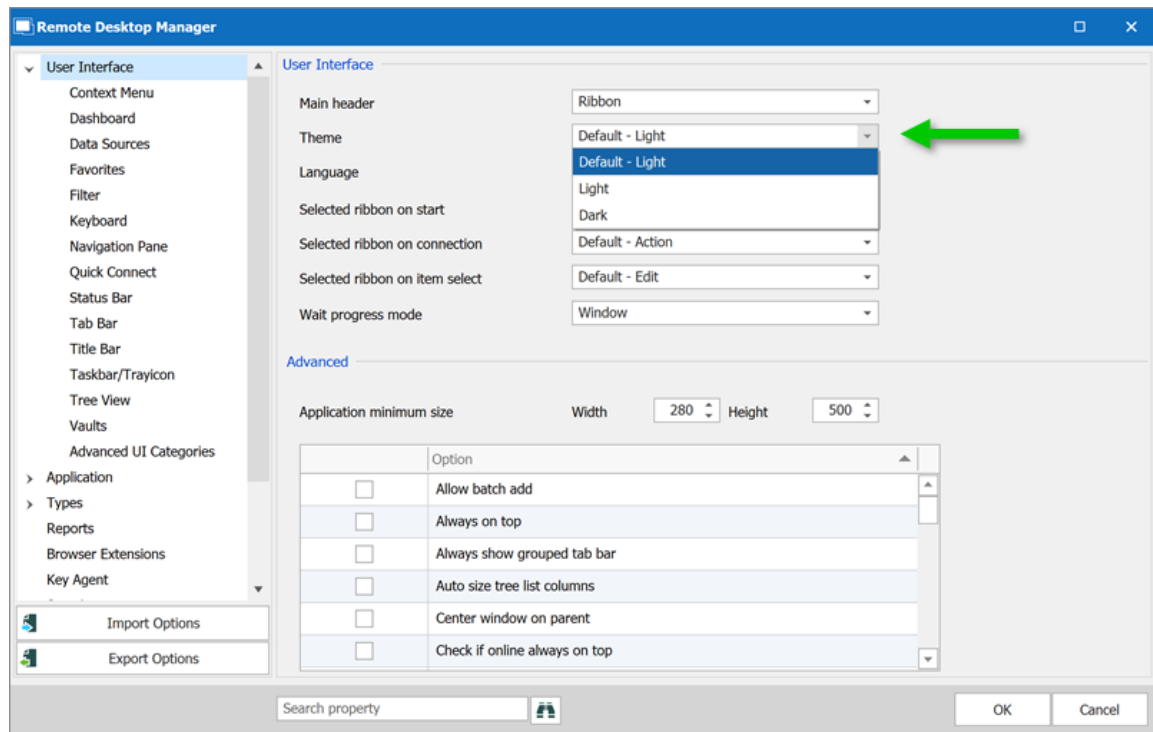
CUSTOMIZING YOUR UI

Customizable styles (Default Ribbon and Default Menu) have dockable areas that can be rearranged to your liking. Simply left-clicking then dragging the sub-components will result in drop zones appearing. This allows you to drop the sub component where you choose, even outside of the main form if you'd like.



4.3 Theme

The themes will modify the color and shade of Remote Desktop Manager.

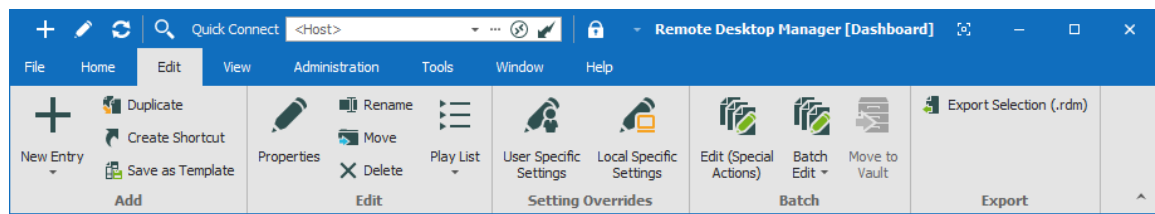


User Interface - Theme

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Default - Light	Use the default theme, which is the Light theme.
Light	Use a clear theme with tones of white, gray, and blue.
Dark	Use a dark theme with tone of gray and black.

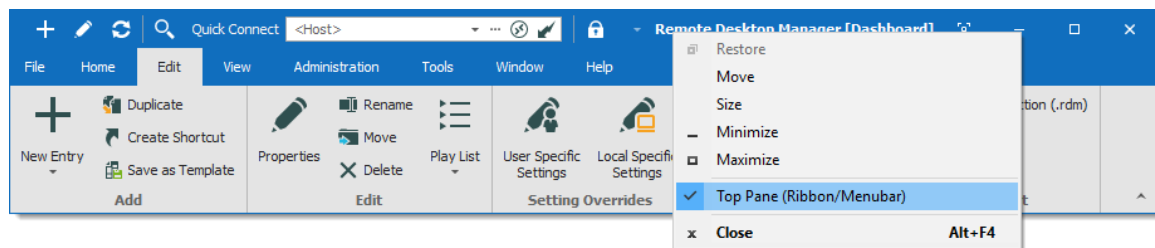
4.4 Top Pane

The **Top Pane** contains the [Quick Access Toolbar](#) and the Ribbon / Menu.

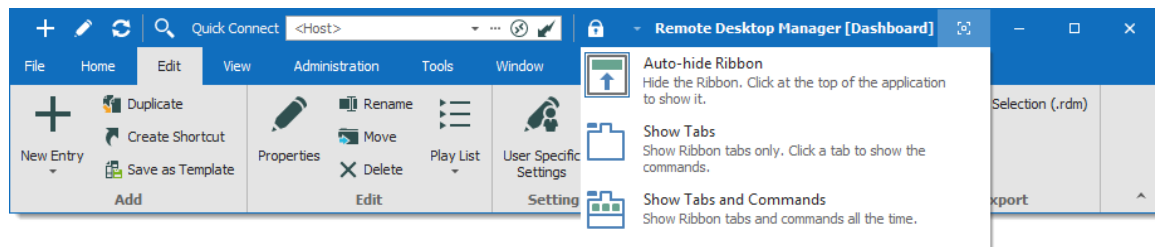


Remote Desktop Manager top pane

It can be hidden to maximize the work area.

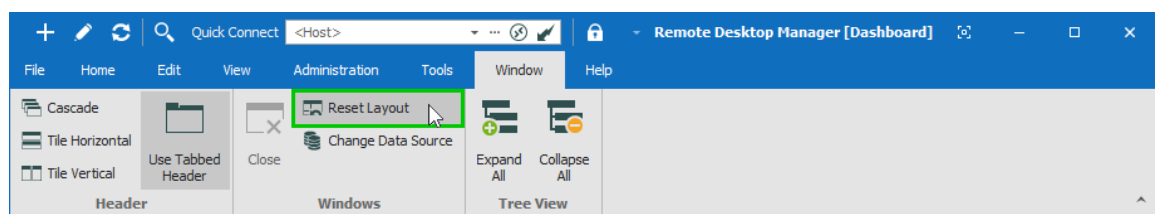


Hide the top pane completely



Hide the ribbon

If you end up confused by your modified settings and would like to reset it to its original layout, navigate to the **Windows** tab and select **Reset Layout**.



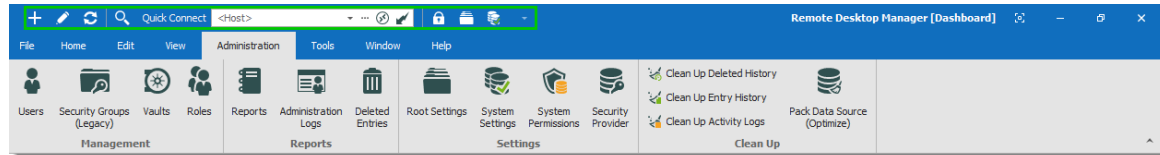
Windows – Reset layout

4.4.1 Quick Access Toolbar

The **Quick Access Toolbar**, which is found at the top of the application, It is composed of multiple parts:

- System menu icon.
- Favorite commands.

- Quick Connect control.
- Lock command.



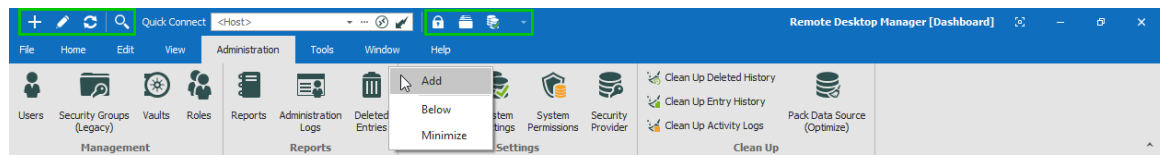
Quick Access Toolbar



Quick Access Toolbar buttons are flagged locally on the current machine by the current user. These local buttons are saved in a file named **RemoteDesktopManager.qtb**. By default, this file is located in %localappdata%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager.

FAVORITE COMMANDS

Commands contained in the ribbon can be added in the quick access toolbar. These are the favorite commands. To add a command to the quick access toolbar, right-click any icon in the ribbon the select **Add**.



Favorite Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
	Create a new entry in your current data source.
	Open the properties window of your selected entry.
	Refresh your data source.
	Open the filter dialog window to allow you to do a quick search.

Right-Click on any command to display the contextual menu. To remove an item from the quick access toolbar, right-click on the item and select **Remove**. To add an item to the quick access toolbar, right-click an item in the ribbon and select **Add**. Use this to customize your workspace with your preferences.

QUICK CONNECT CONTROL

Please refer to Quick Connect for a detailed description.

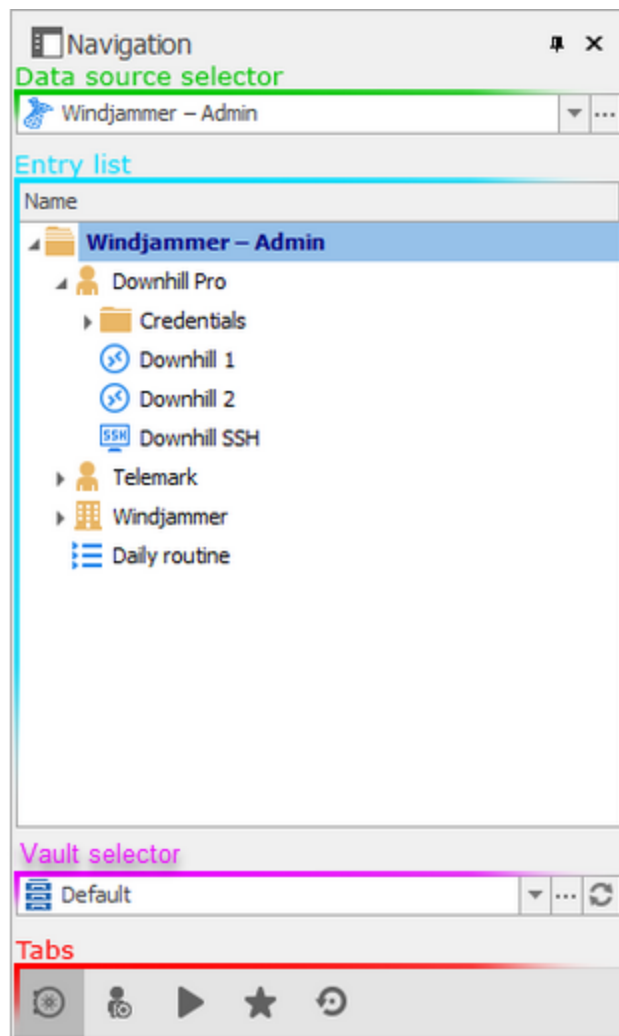
LOCK APPLICATION COMMAND

This command will minimize the application. When you attempt to restore it you will be prompted for the password. Applies only to data sources protected by a password.

4.5 Navigation Pane

DESCRIPTION

The **Navigation Pane** is one of the main components of Remote Desktop Manager user interface. It lists all the available entries in the current data source, and allows to switch to another data source or Vault.



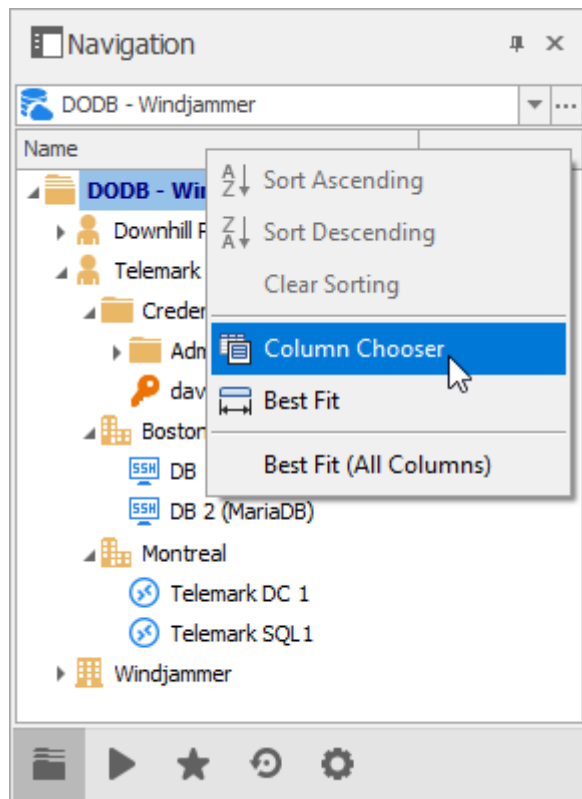
Navigation Pane

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Data source selector	Allows to switch to another configured data source.
Entry list	Displays the content of the current data source, depending on the selected tab. It allows to select entries and perform action on them.
Vault selector	Allows to switch to another configured Vault in the data source.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Tabs	Allows to switch to different views of the entry list, such as the Favorite entries or the Opened sessions .

COLUMN CHOOSER

Choose the columns to display in the tree view. Right-clicking on the column name in the Navigation Pane and select **Column Chooser**.



Navigation Pane – Column Chooser

For more information on each tab, please consult the following topics:

- Vault
- [User Vault](#)
- [Opened Sessions](#)

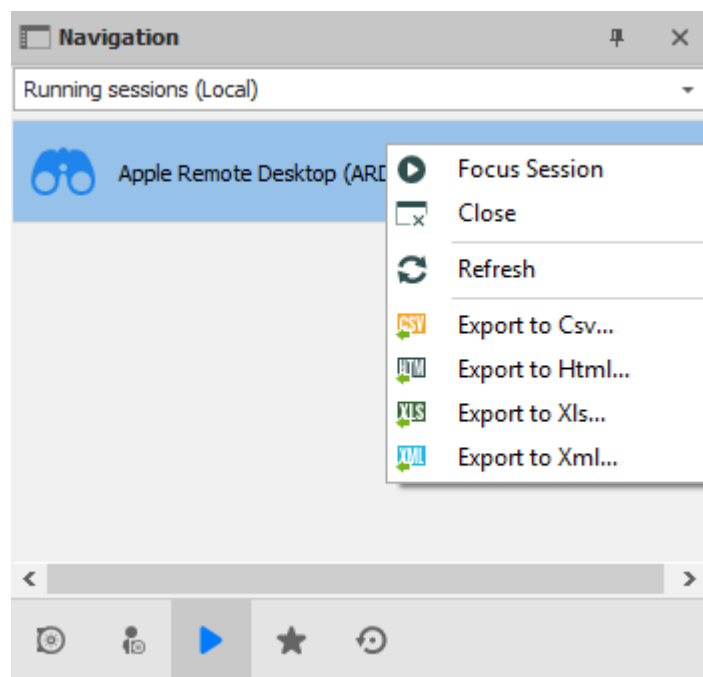
- [Favorite Entries](#)
- [Most Recently Used Entries](#)

4.5.1 Opened Sessions

DESCRIPTION

The **Opened Sessions** tab shows currently running sessions by type, and for the local machine only. You can give the focus to an opened session by double-clicking it from the list. All of the embedded sessions are listed, and the external sessions will appear if Remote Desktop Manager is able to discover the specific type of session.

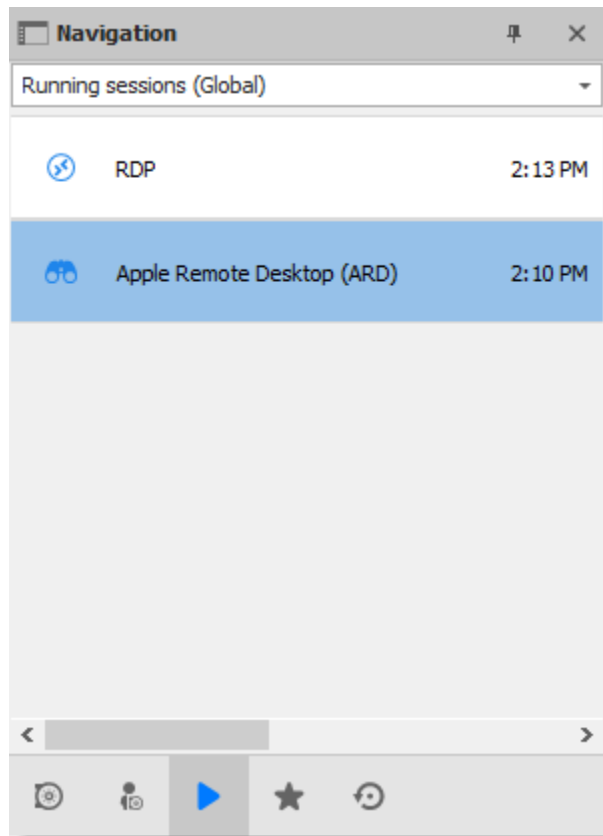
LOCAL SESSIONS



Local Opened Sessions

GLOBAL SESSIONS

With the SQL Server data sources, you can monitor currently running sessions, provided that they have been opened within Remote Desktop Manager.



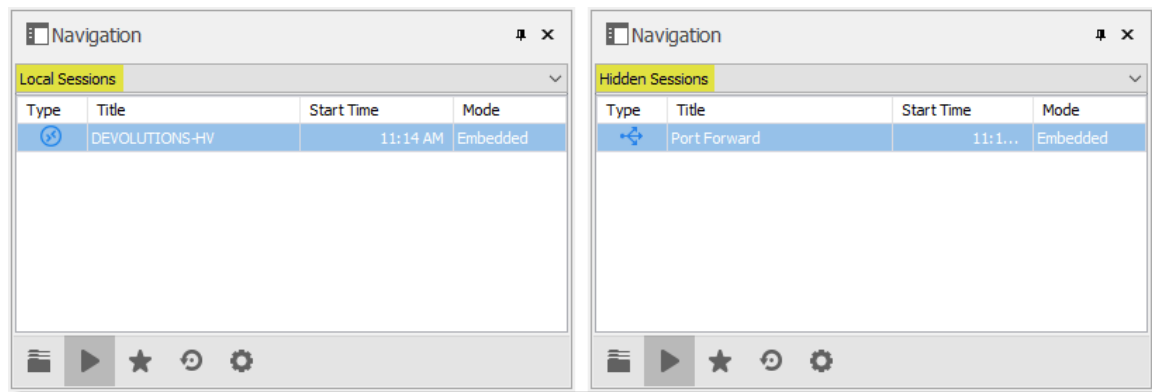
Global Opened Sessions

For many reasons beyond our control, it's possible for a session to be terminated without Remote Desktop Manager knowing that this has taken place. This can happen, for example, if Remote Desktop Manager isn't running when another application ends. As a result, any terminated session will remain listed in the log. You may manually mark it as closed via the contextual menu by selecting **Flag as Closed**.

To review a detailed log, double click on a session entry.

HIDDEN SESSIONS

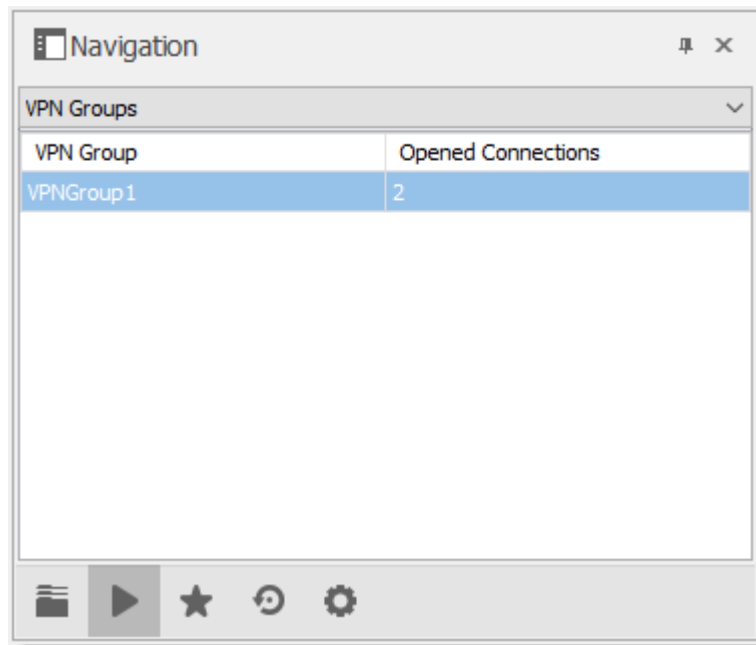
Some sessions, like **SSH Port Forward**, can be hidden from the dashboard when the connection is established. When these sessions are hidden, they are not displayed in the **Local Sessions**. Select **Hidden Sessions** from the combo box above the entry list to display hidden sessions only.



Local Sessions Versus Hidden Sessions

VPN GROUPS

Sessions can be configured to use a VPN Group. When multiple session are using the same VPN group, it will appear in this section with the count of opened connections using this VPN group.



VPN Groups

NOTES

- Remote Desktop Manager tries to detect opened sessions even if they weren't launched from the application. It uses the name of the process to accomplish this task.
- VPN sessions do not appear in the list.

4.5.2 Favorite Entries

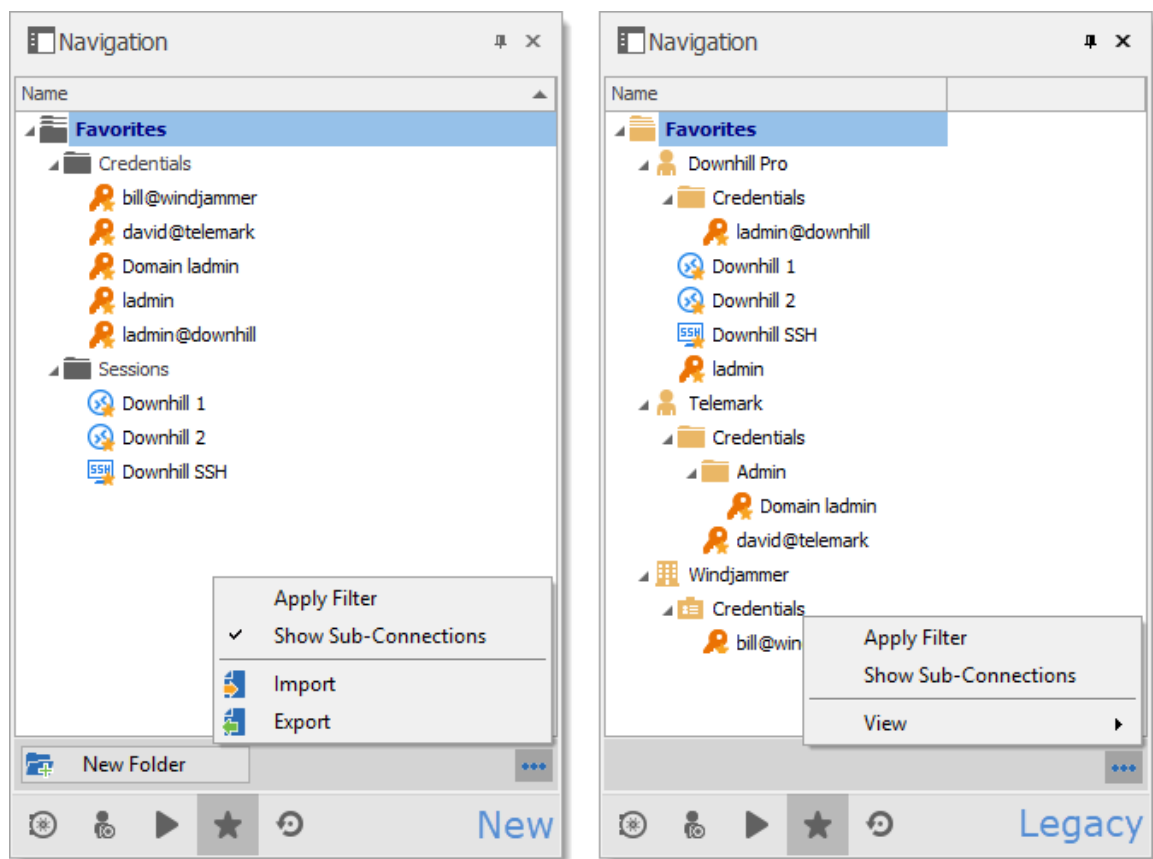
DESCRIPTION

The **Favorites** tab contains entries flagged as favorite by the current user. Favorites are not shared and they roam with the user profile.

This is useful when the number of managed entries becomes too great or when a strict directory structure must be maintained.



The favorites feature has been completely reorganized in beta version 12.9.0.0. To revert to the legacy interface, navigate to **File – Options – User Interface – Favorites**, then enable the **Use legacy favorite UI** option.

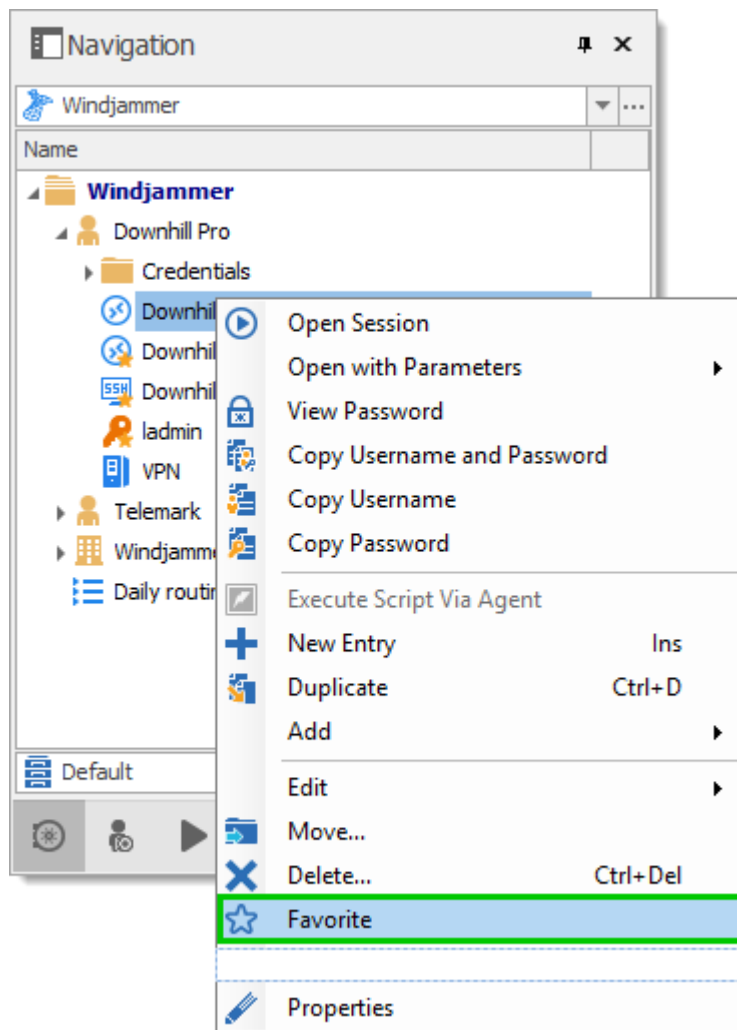


New and Legacy favorite UI

When using the legacy favorite interface, the favorites view can be personalized the same way as the Vault. Click on **...** to select a preferred **View**.

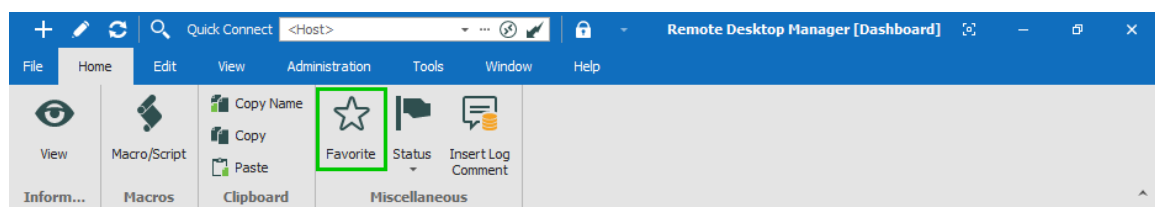
FLAG AN ENTRY AS FAVORITE

Right-click an entry in the Navigation Pane, then select **Favorite**.



Flag an entry as favorite

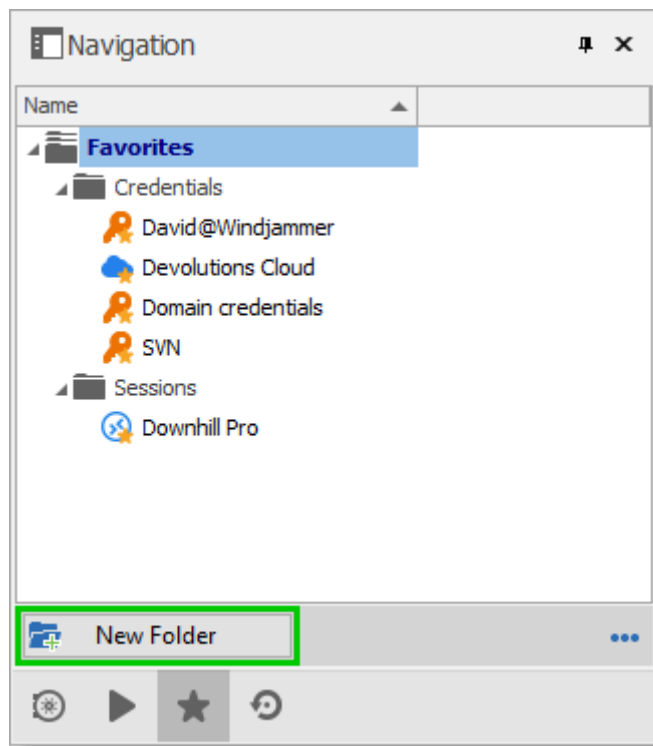
The same command is located in the ribbon **Home** tab in the **Miscellaneous** section.



Home – Miscellaneous – Favorite

ORGANIZE THE FAVORITES

Favorites does not necessarily replicate the folder structure of the Vault. Add folders in the favorite view to organize your favorite entries, or enable the legacy favorite interface.



Add folders to organize favorites

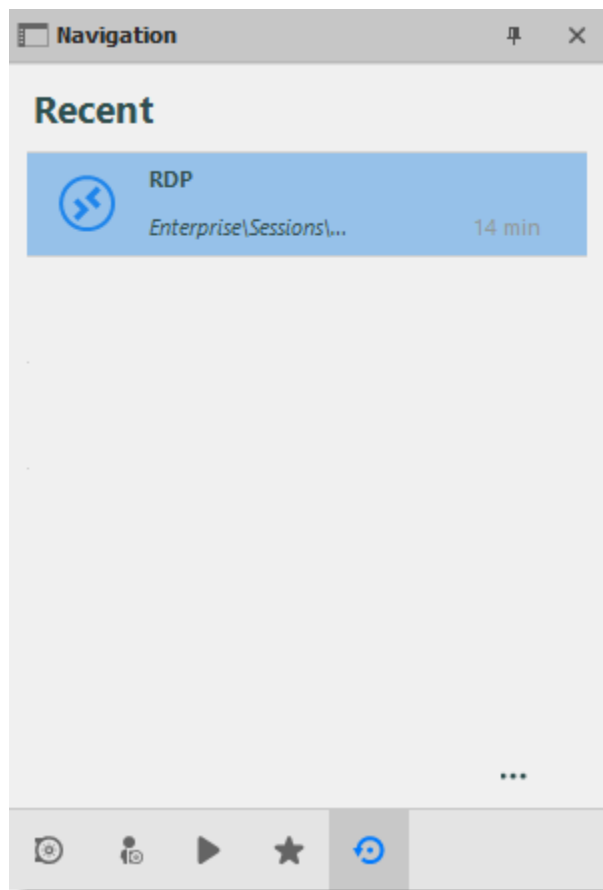
ICON OVERLAY

If desired, an icon overlay ★ can be displayed in the Vault over favorite entries. To display the icon overlay, navigate to **File – Options – User Interface – Favorites**, then enable the **Show favorite icon in connection list** option.

4.5.3 Most Recently Used Entries

DESCRIPTION

This tab show the most recently used sessions on the local computer.



Most Recently Used Entries

The most recently used entries view can be personalized the same way as the tree view. Click on the ... button to select your preferred view.

To delete the most recently used entries history, select **Clear Most Recently Used Entries...**

By default, 10 items will be kept in the most recently used entries history. This setting can be changed in **File - Options - Application - Recent**.

4.5.4 Navigation Pane Key Mapping

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager, being a Windows application, supports key mapping in its navigation pane.

To expand a current folder: right arrow or + (plus) sign.

To collapse a current folder: left arrow or - (minus) sign.

To expand all from here: * (star) sign.

4.6 Content Area

DESCRIPTION

The content area contains the various dashboards to manage RDM, as well as embedded sessions. There is a single dashboard active at a time, depending on the currently selected node in the Navigation Pane.

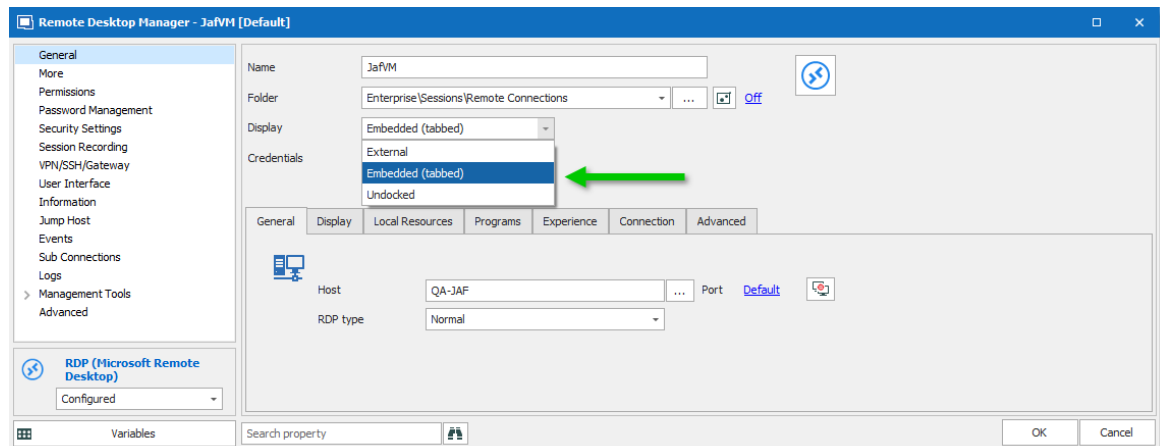
The options change depending on the entry:

- Sessions.
- Information Entries.
- Folders.
- Credentials.
- Macros/Scripts/Tools.

4.6.1 Embedded Sessions

DESCRIPTION

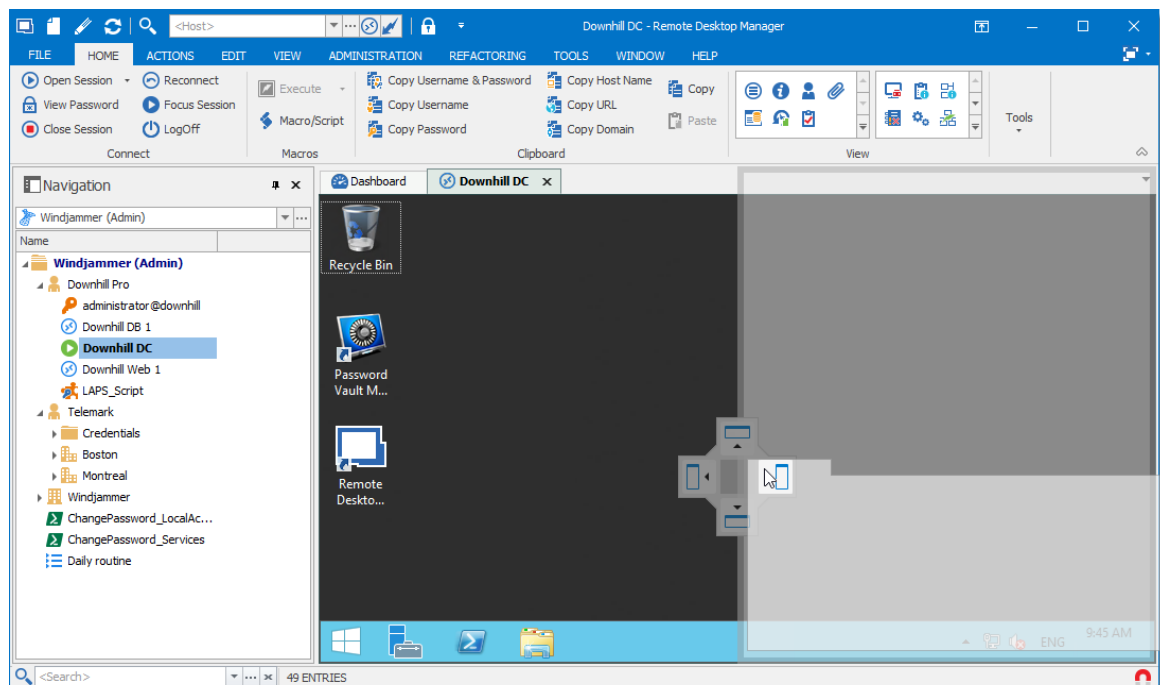
The **Embedded (tabbed)** display mode allows you to open multiple sessions as tabs withing Remote Desktop Manager, similar to the tabs in your standard web browser. Embedded sessions are one of the 3 available display modes, the other 2 being **External** and **Undocked**.



Display Mode Settings

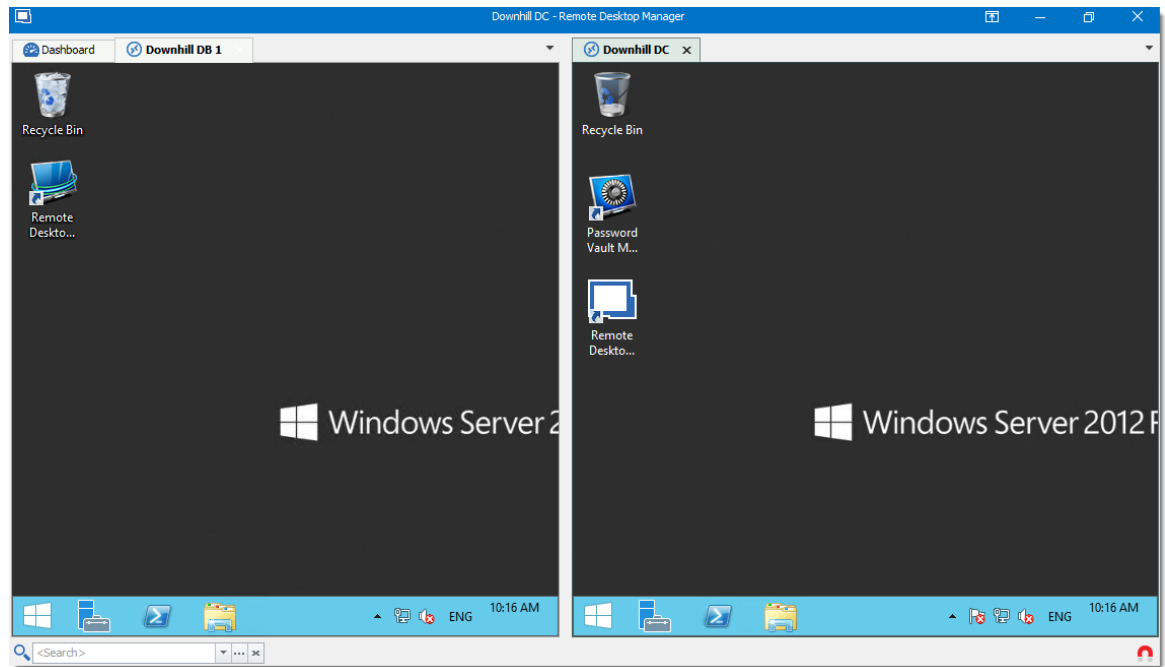
SPLIT WINDOWS

Within a Remote Desktop Manager embedded session is the option to display multiple tabbed windows simultaneously. As illustrated below, select and hold down on a tab and drag it towards the center of the screen to access the four-sided directional control. Aim the directional control to anchor the tab to the top, bottom, left or right of the adjacent tab.



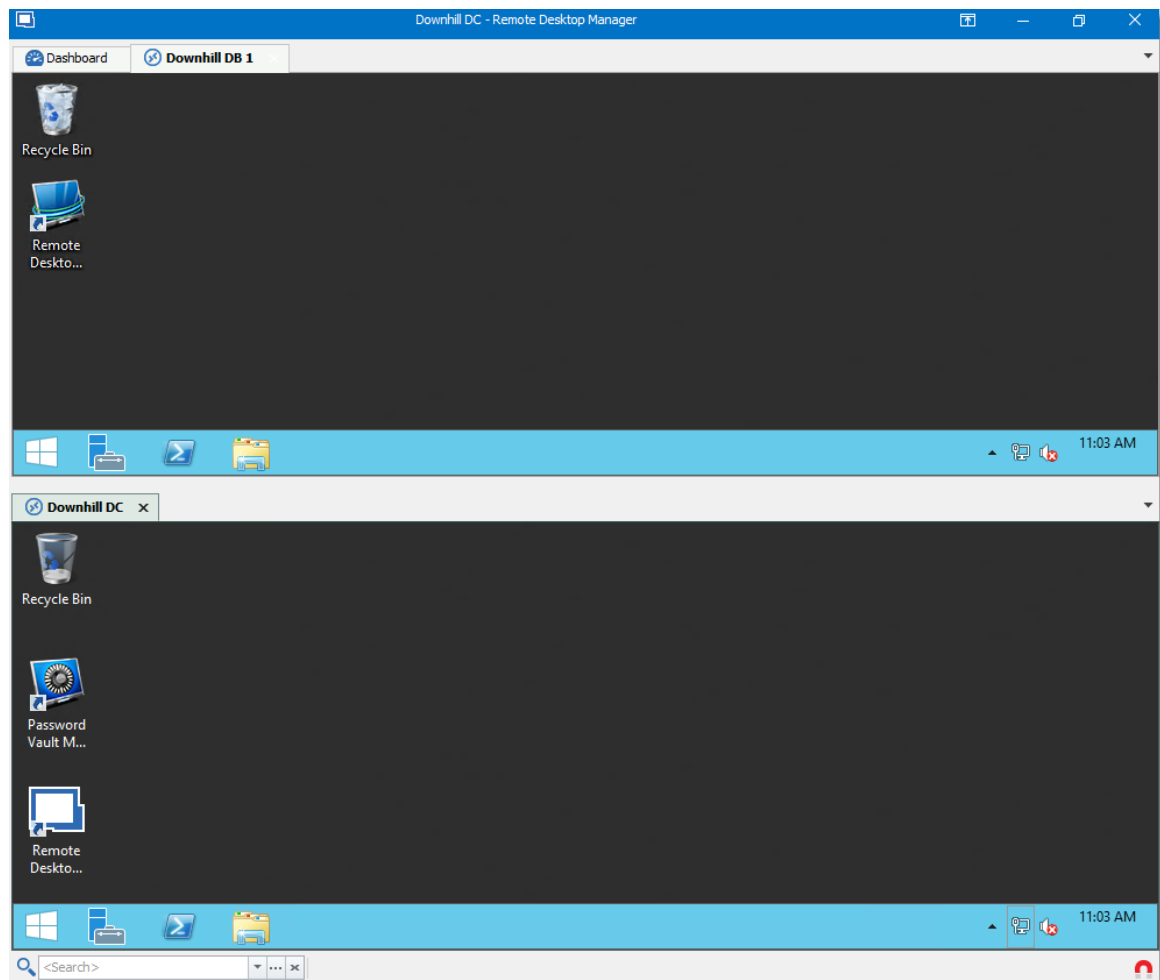
Split Window - Drag And Drop

Below is an example of a side-by-side split window.



Split Window - Side-By-Side

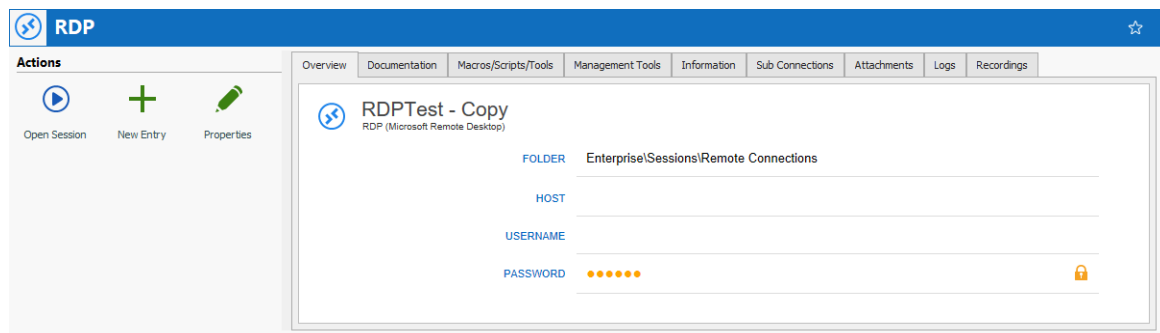
Below is an example of a top-down split window.



4.6.2 Dashboard

DESCRIPTION

The **Dashboard** displays commands and information related to the selected entry. The dashboard contents depend on the type of the selected entry.



Dashboard for credential entry

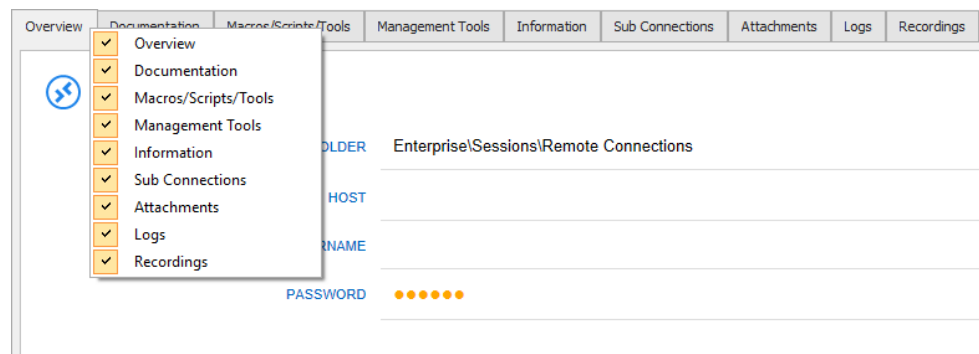
The different tabs available in the dashboard:

- **Actions** - Add special Open actions to dashboard, similar to **Open Session** or **Properties** in the contextual menu. Configure in **File – Options – User Interface**
- **Overview**
- **Documentation**
- **Macros/Scripts/Tools**
- **Management Tools**: Configure the Hyper-V, VMware, XenServer Dashboard before using the dashboard.
- **Information**
- **Sub Connections**
- **Attachments**
- **Logs**
- **Recordings**



The tabs can be hidden if they are not necessary for a user.

Simply right-click any tab, then select an item to toggle the visibility of its relative tab.

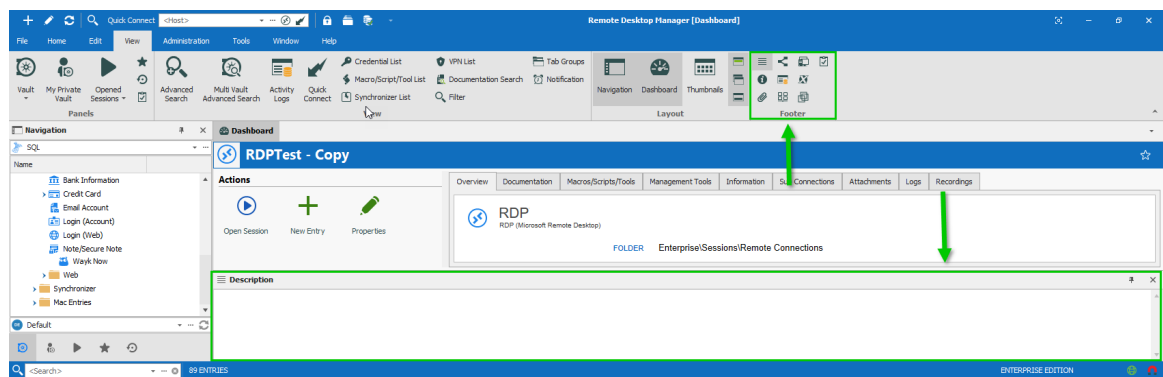


4.7 Panes (Footer)

DESCRIPTION

Although the panes are by default in the footer, most tabbed windows can be moved around and docked to your liking. That applies to the Default (Ribbon) or Default (Menu) styles.

Use the **View – Footer** commands from the ribbon to control the visibility of individual panes.



Footer Area

DOCKED FOOTER

Upon first use, the footer panes are undocked by default. You can dock them to a single panel with a simple drag & drop. Just drag a pane into another one, then drop it in the center of the directional control.

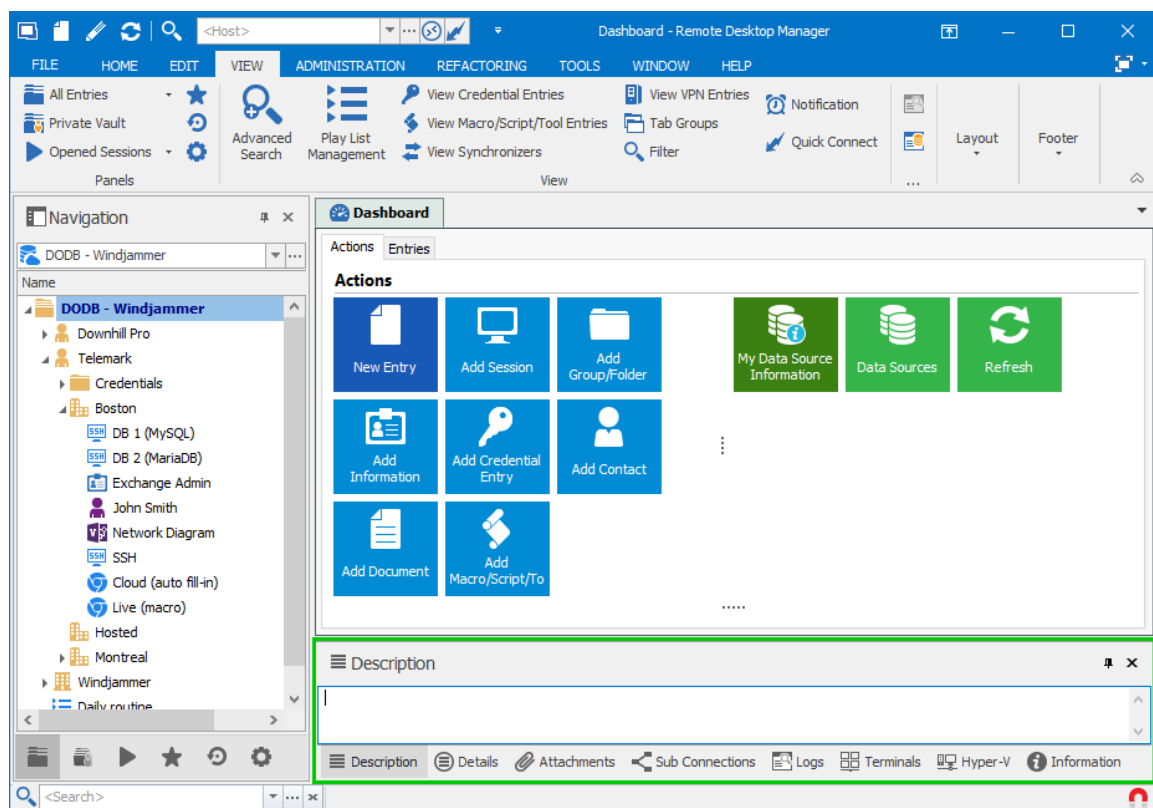
Here, we drop the **Details** pane to make it tabbed with the **Description** pane.



Dock a footer pane into another

You can use the same directional control to dock the footer panes into the main window.

Here is a personalized setup of the footer panes.



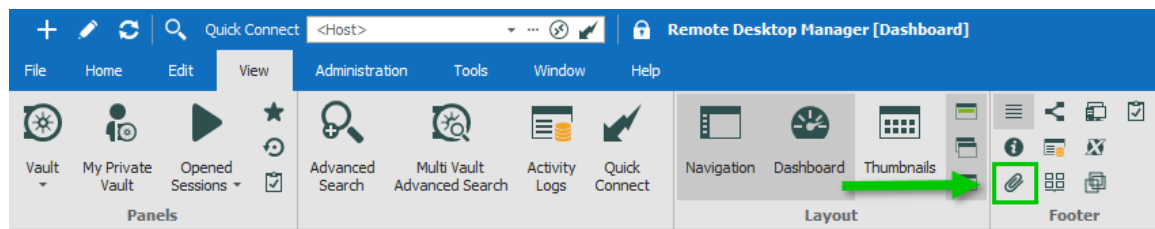
Footer panes docked in the main window

4.7.1 Attachments

DESCRIPTION

Files are attached to an entry and are stored directly in the database.

To enable the attachment pane, navigate to **View – Footer** in the ribbon, then select **Attachments**.



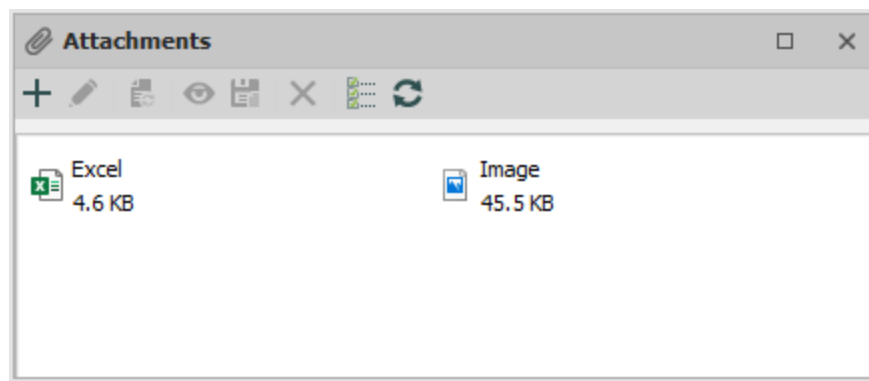
View – Footer – Attachments



This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).



The files in attachment are not available in offline mode.



Attachment list

The attachment type and size are limited only by your bandwidth and the data source. You can also view a saved attachment from:

- the session context menu;

- the session properties; or
- directly on the dashboard.









The refresh button allows you to update directly the selected document. Use it to save your local modifications after an edit.

ACTIONS

Use the toolbar above the attachment list to manage the selected attachment.



Attachment toolbar

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Add attachment 	Select a local file to add.
Edit attachment 	Edit the selected attachment.
Update document 	Update the selected attachment.
View attachment 	Open the selected attachment.
Save attachment as... 	Save the attachment on a local drive.
Delete attachment 	Delete the selected attachment.
Details 	Display details about the selected attachment, above the attachment list.
Refresh 	Refresh the attachment list.

4.8 Status Bar

The status bar rests at the bottom of the application. It is composed of multiple parts

- Search / Filter.
- Remote Desktop Manager version label.
- The Online / Offline toggle.
- Grab input toggle.



Status bar

SEARCH / FILTER

Please consult the [Search/Filter](#) for detailed explanations.

ONLINE / OFFLINE TOGGLE

This feature is indicated by the green globe between the version label and the Grab input toggle. Clicking it will change your connection between offline and online (for RDM only). You can tell which connection state you are currently using by the color of the globe. Green is online and orange is offline.

GRAB INPUT TOGGLE

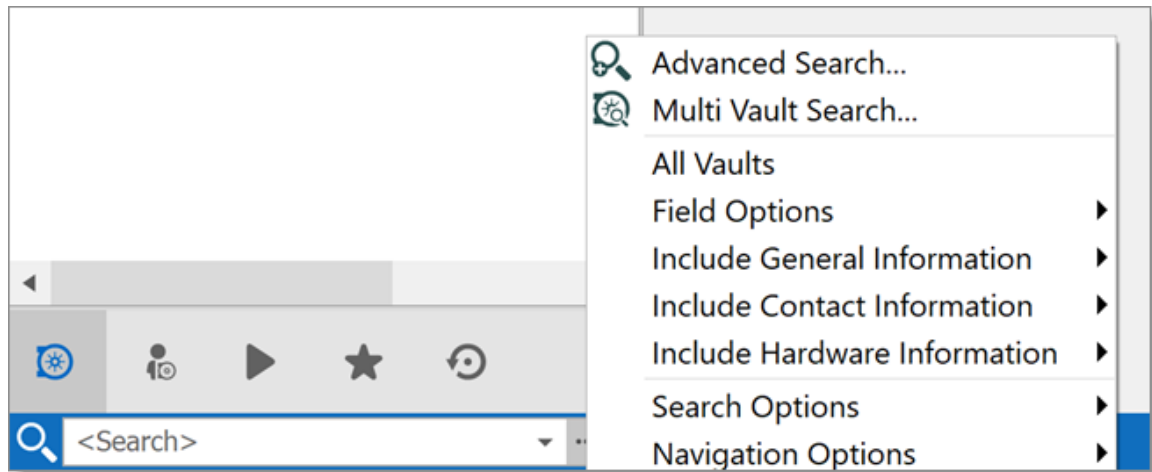
Please consult [Grab Input](#) for detailed explanations.

4.8.1 Search/Filter

It is possible to apply a filter in the Navigation Pane tree view by typing some characters in the filter box. The filter is applied using the specified settings in the application **File – Options – User Interface – Filter**.

ELLIPSIS BUTTON

Select the ellipsis button to display the options.



Ellipsis button

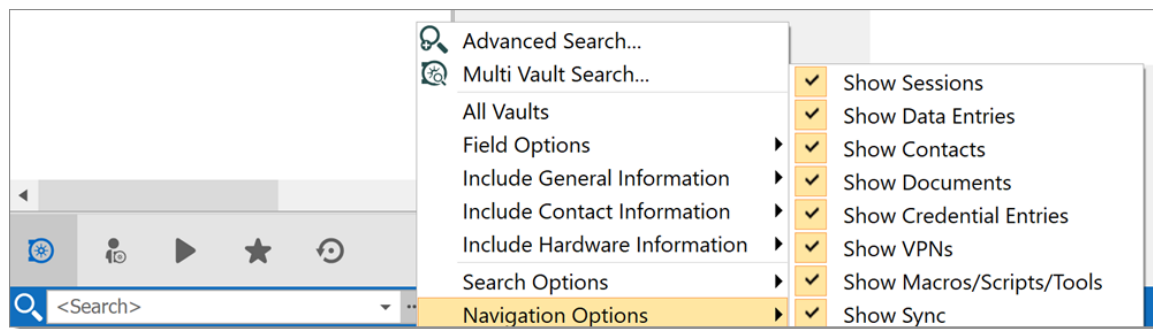
The filter expression is matched against fields as selected in the filter options such as:

- Search multiple or all Vaults at once.
- Field Options (Include Folder, Host, Username, etc.).
- General Information (Domain, IP, etc.).
- Contact Information (Name, Email, Phone number, etc.).
- Hardware Information (Serial number, Manufacturer, etc.).

It's possible to exclude results by choosing to display entries that match certain criteria:

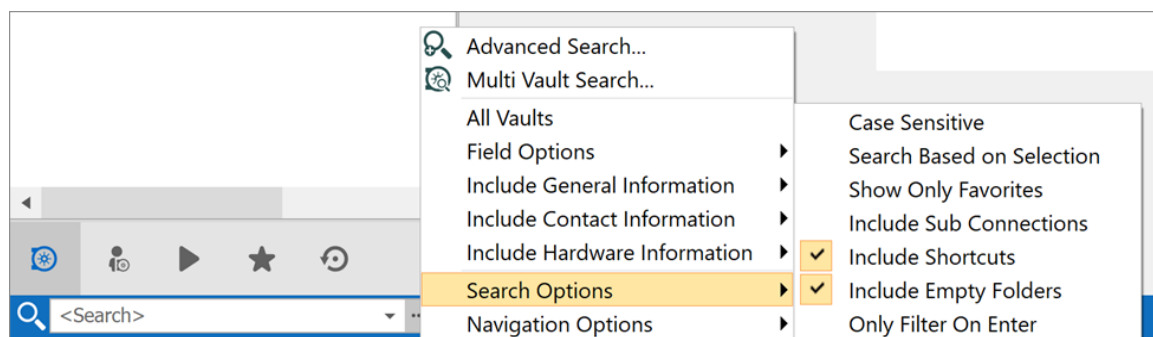
- Session types (credentials, script tools, VPN, etc.)
- If the session is marked as a Favorites

In Navigation options, you can limit the search parameters to specific entry types. Such as Sessions, Data Entries, etc.



Search Types

The Search Options offers the chance to customize your search, such as including shortcuts or favorites, making it case sensitive, and more!



Search Options

KEYBOARD SHORTCUT

Use the keyboard shortcut CTRL+F to quickly have access to the Search / Filter control. This can be disabled in **File - Options - User Interface - Keyboard**.

You can set the focus back on the Navigation Pane by using the keyboard shortcut Ctrl+L, this also can be disabled in the options.

BOOLEAN FILTER

Here a few implementation notes for the Boolean filter:

- We use the C# nomenclature (&& for AND, || for OR)
- Evaluated left-to-right
- No parentheses matching

- Double-quotes (") are not required or removed, they are part of the text filter, do not use them unless you are looking for a double-quote.
- Leading/trailing white-spaces are trimmed

EXAMPLES (THIS WILL WORK)

- Boise && Laptop
- Boise&&Laptop
- Boise && Laptop
- Baton Rouge || Boise && Laptop
- Laptop && Baton Rouge

EXAMPLES (THIS WILL NOT WORK AS EXPECTED)

- Laptop && "Baton Rouge"
 - Will work but filter for the string "Baton Rouge" and not the string Baton Rouge
- Laptop && (Baton Rouge || Boise)
 - Will work but filter for Laptop and the string (Baton Rouge || Boise)

4.8.2 Grab Input

DESCRIPTION

The **grab keyboard input** is used to capture the keyboard shortcuts when a session is running. It can be disabled momentarily to ensure that the shortcut is sent to the running session.

Ctrl+F is a shortcut that often interferes. It is used to focus Remote Desktop Manager's search/filter toolbar. However, it is almost always present in applications in the remote session and when you use the shortcut, Remote Desktop Manager sets the focus in the search/filter toolbar instead. This conflict can be avoided by disabling the feature.



Grab keyboard input

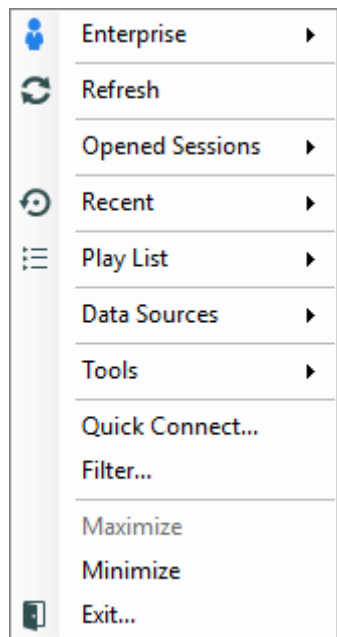
4.9 Tray Icon

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager allows the user to control the application from the Windows system tray. You can also [customize its content](#).

TRAY ICON CONTEXT MENU

Right-click on the Windows tray menu bar to access the context menu. You can launch sessions, change data source, use the Quick Connect feature, and more.



Tray Icon Context Menu

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Sessions List	Displays the sessions from the current data source. Sessions are listed by default. It is possible to show only those marked as favorites.

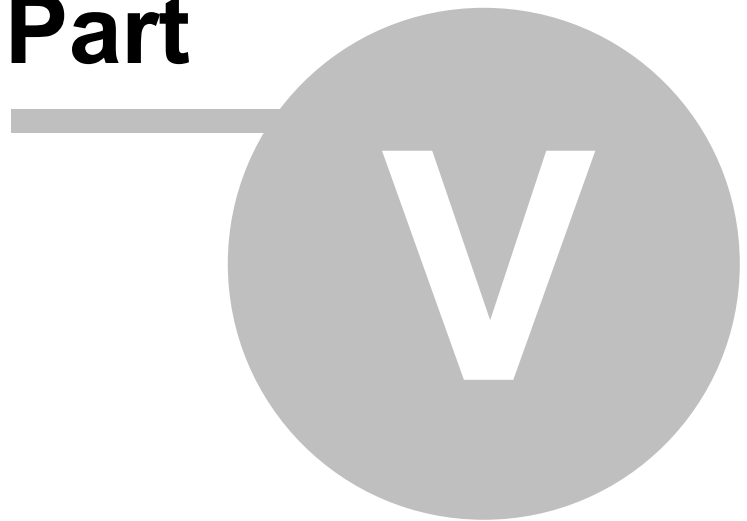
OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Refresh	Refreshes the data source.
Opened Sessions	Lists all the currently open sessions.
Recent	Lists the Most Recently Used Entries .
Play List	Allows the user to launch a Play List from the tray icon.
Data Sources	Lists the available Data sources and allows the user to switch from one to another. This section appears only if enabled and more than one data source is configured.
Tools	Lists all the configured tools.
Quick Connect	Prompts for the Quick Connect dialog to open an add-hoc connection with a specific type, or a selected template.
Filter	Launches the Search/Filter feature.
Maximize	Restores the application to full screen.
Restore	Restores the application from minimize.
Minimize	Minimizes the application in the task bar.
Exit	Closes the application.

TRAY ICON PREFERENCES

The application options contain many settings that allows for customizing the system tray icon preferences. To change these, Navigate to **File – Options – User Interface – Trayicon/Taskbar**.

Data Sources

Part



5 Data Sources

DESCRIPTION

The data sources are at the heart of Remote Desktop Manager, they are the container that holds entries.

SETTINGS

A data source can be a local file or a database (either local or shared). Multiple data sources can be managed at the same time as seen below.

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager' window with the 'Data Source' configuration tab selected. The window has a blue title bar and a toolbar with icons for adding, editing, deleting, and locking sources. The 'General' tab is active, showing fields for Name, Host, Username, Password, and authentication options. Below the form is a table listing existing data sources.

Type	Name	Locked
Database	Devolutions Server	
Local File	Windjammer local	

At the bottom, there is an 'On start up' section with a dropdown menu set to 'Use default data source' and a selection of 'Devolutions Server'. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Data Source

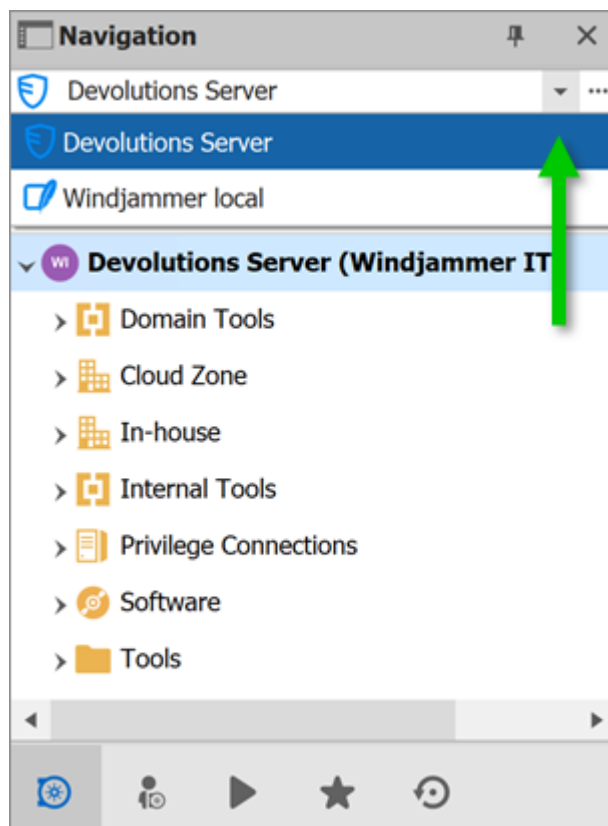
CREATE A DATA SOURCE

Please consult our [Create a new data source](#) topic for more information.

MULTIPLE DATA SOURCES

Multiple data sources can be configured, but there is only one active at a time.

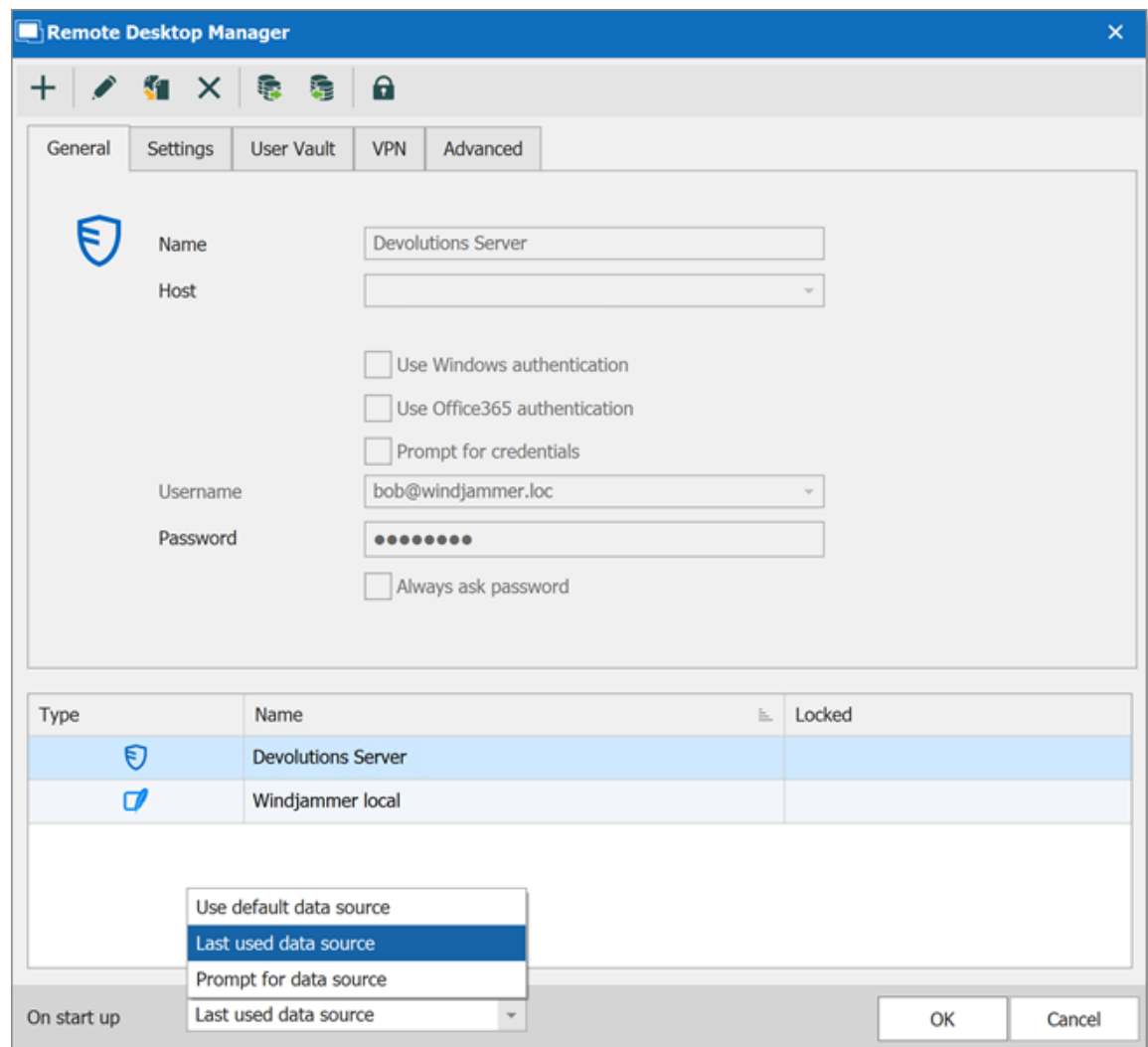
Switch from one data source to another by using the data source drop down list.



Select a Data Source

STARTUP DATA SOURCE

You may assign a data source to open automatically when Remote Desktop Manager starts.



Startup Data Source

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Use default data source	Select the data source to connect to when the application starts.
Last used data source	Connect to the last used data source.
Prompt for data source	Prompt the user to for a data source to connect to.

DATA SOURCE SETTINGS (SYSTEM SETTINGS)

[Advanced Data Sources](#) can manage a lot more settings related to the database and security. Those settings are saved directly in the database. For more information, please consult the [Data Source Settings \(System Settings\)](#) topic.

5.1 2-Factor Authentication

DESCRIPTION



This feature is only available for the following data sources: [Devolutions Server](#), [Microsoft Azure SQL](#), [Microsoft SQL Server](#) and [SQLite](#).

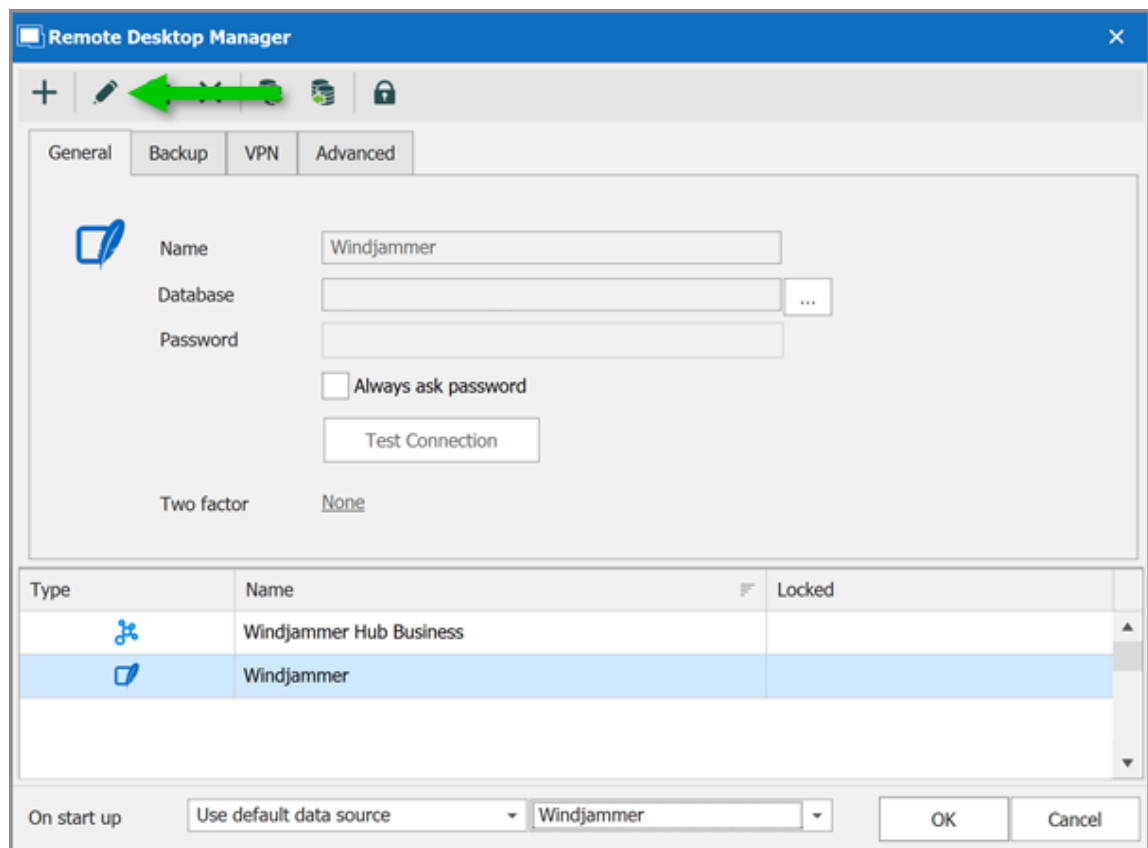
Two-factor authentication identifies users by two different components: something that the user knows (often a password) and something that the user possesses (e.g., a validation code sent to a mobile device).

If one of the components is missing or supplied incorrectly, the user's identity is not established with sufficient certainty and then access to the data source will remain blocked.

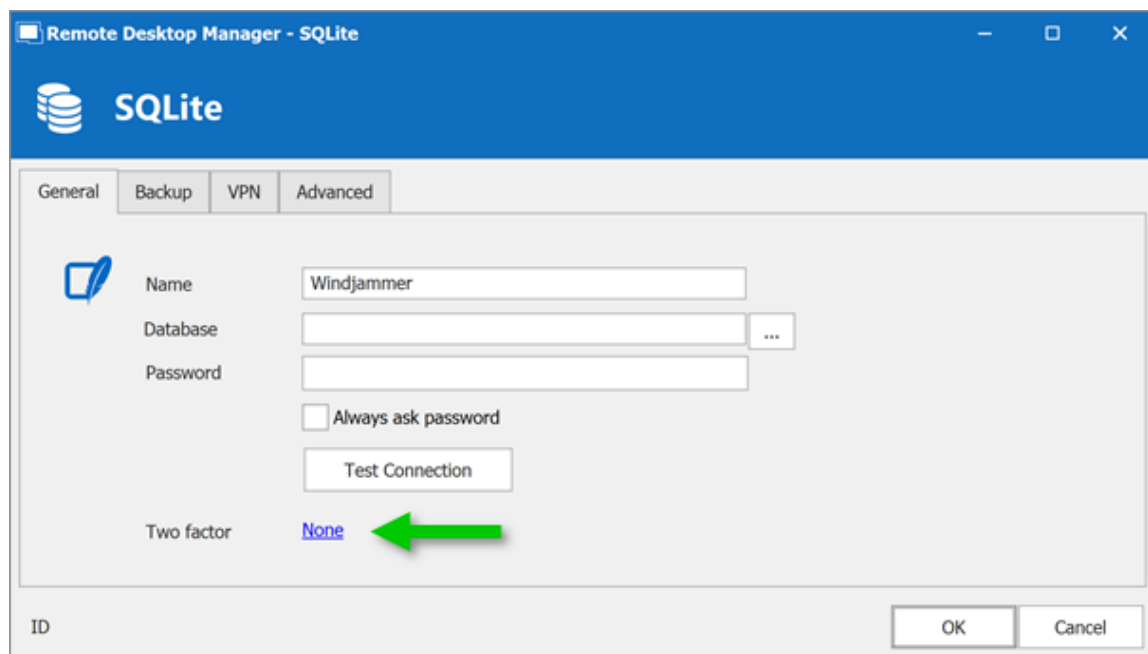
It is set at the Data Source level and Remote Desktop Manager supports [Authenticator \(TOTP\)](#), [Yubikey](#), and [Duo](#).

HOW TO CONFIGURE TWO-FACTOR AUTHENTICATION

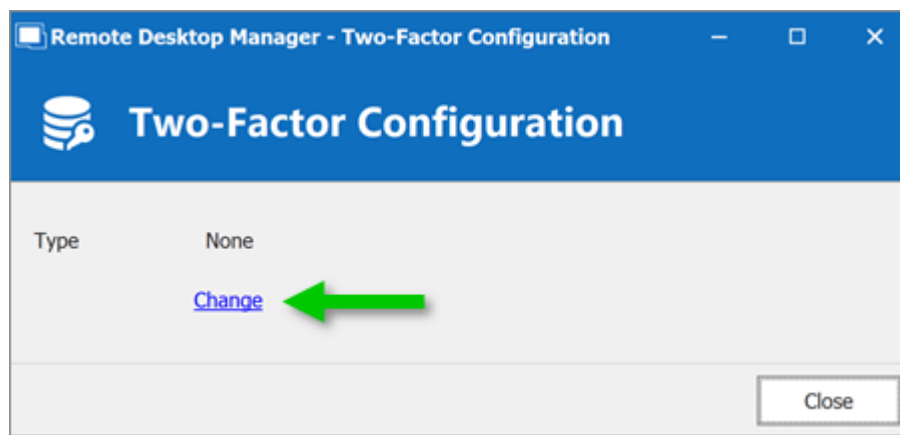
1. Click **File - Data Sources**.
2. Select your **Data source**.
3. Click the pencil  to **Edit Data Source**.



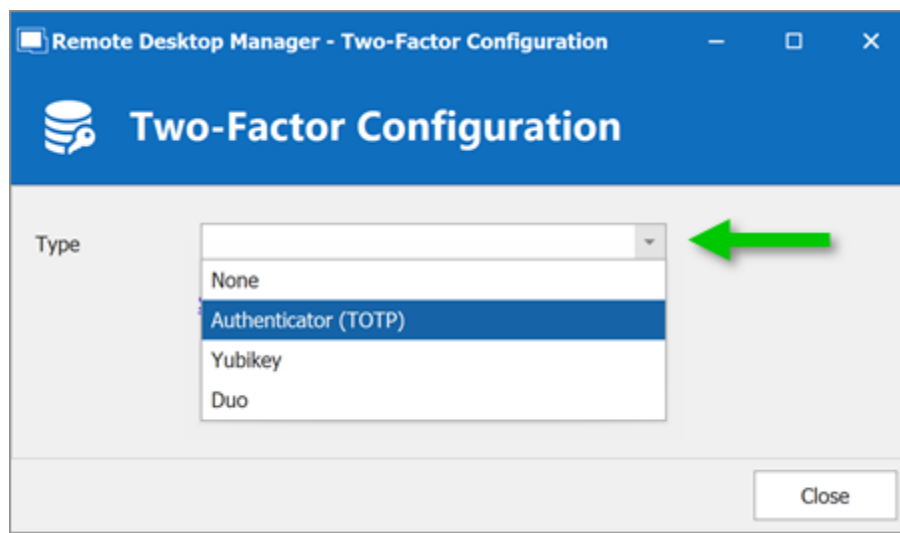
4. In the **General** tab click **None**.



5. Click **Change**.



6. Select your 2-Factor Authentication type.



7. Click **Save** to start the configuration.

To configure your specific 2FA, please select your type link:

- [Authenticator \(TOTP\)](#)
- [Yubikey](#)
- [Duo](#)

5.1.1 Authenticator (TOTP)

DESCRIPTION

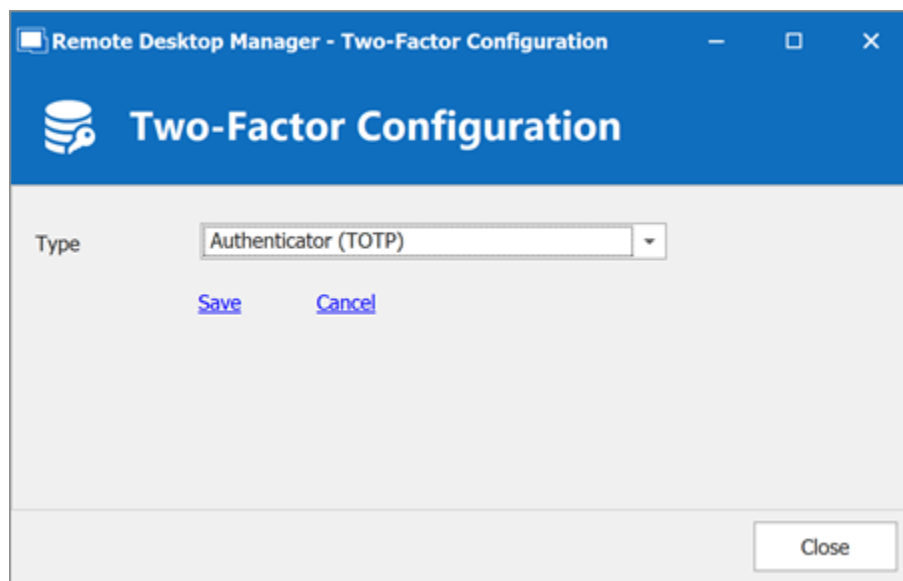
Remote Desktop Manager allows you to use an **Authenticator (TOTP)** such as Devolutions Workspace or Google Authenticator to provide an additional security layer when opening a data source.

SETTINGS



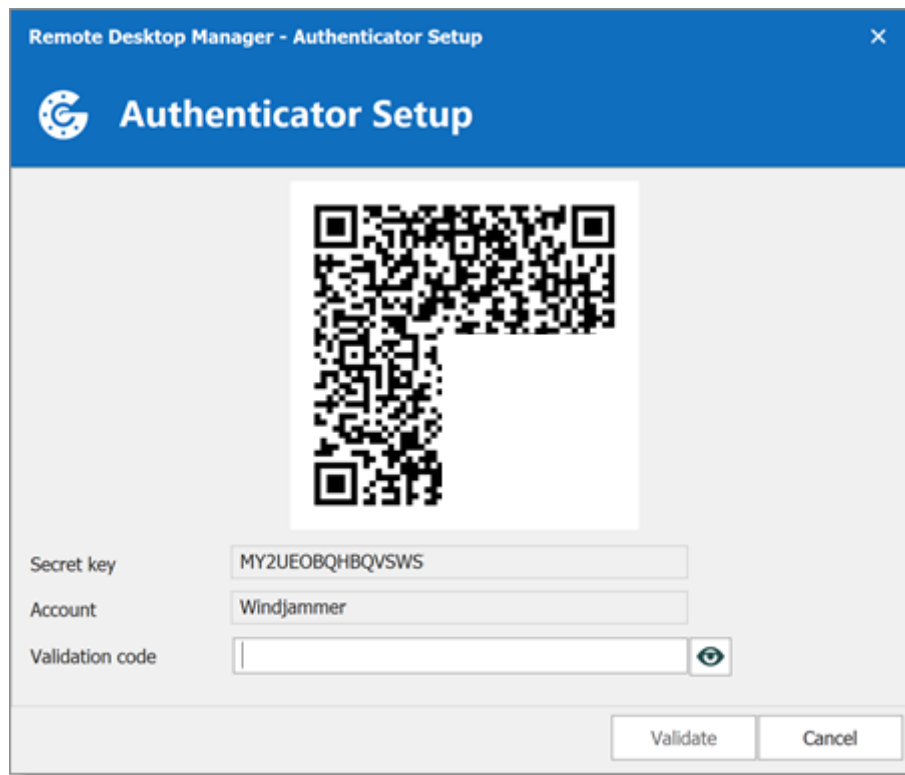
Before you start the configuration, make sure you have installed the Devolutions Workspace or Google Authenticator application on a supported device.

1. Select **Authenticator (TOTP)** as your **Type**.
2. Click **Save**.



3. Scan the **QR Code** with your device application.
4. Enter the **Validation code** provided by the **Authenticator (TOTP)** in Remote Desktop Manager.

5. Click **Validate**.



6. Relaunch Remote Desktop Manager to be prompted for the **Authenticator (TOTP)** code.

5.1.2 Yubikey

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager allows you to use a Yubikey to provide an additional security layer when opening a data source.



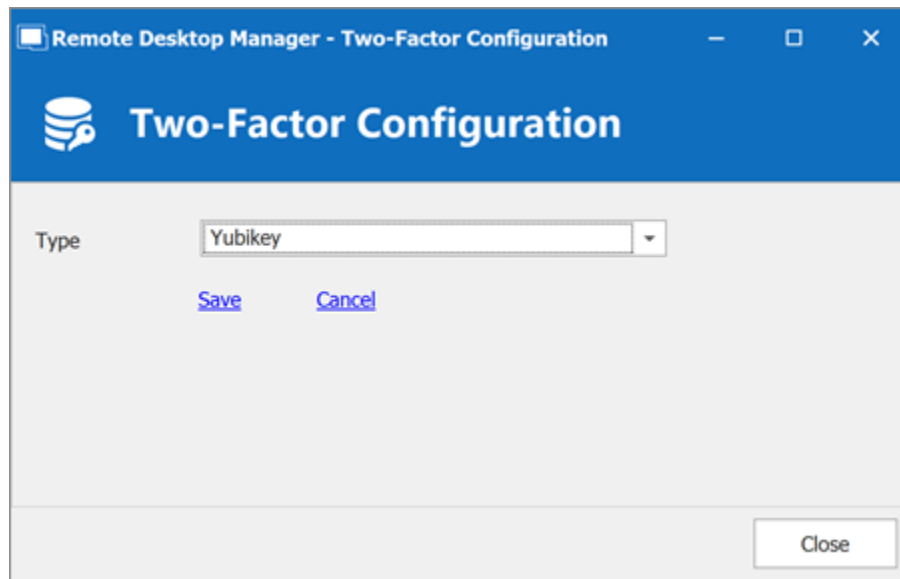
Remote Desktop Manager only support the Yubico OTP at this time.

SETTINGS

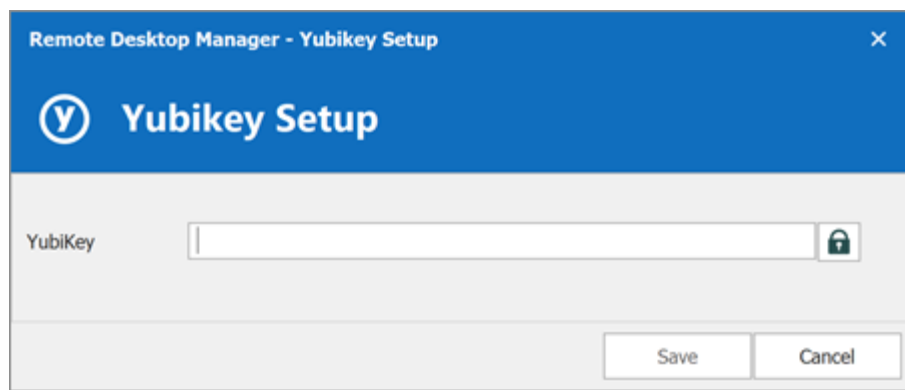


Before you start the configuration, make sure you have a Yubikey in your possession.

1. Select **Yubikey** as your **Type**.
2. Click **Save**.



3. Insert the Yubikey into a USB port of your computer
4. Hold the gold button on the Yubikey to have the code filled in the field
5. Click **Save**.



6. Relaunch Remote Desktop Manager to be prompted for a Yubikey code.

5.1.3 Duo

DESCRIPTION

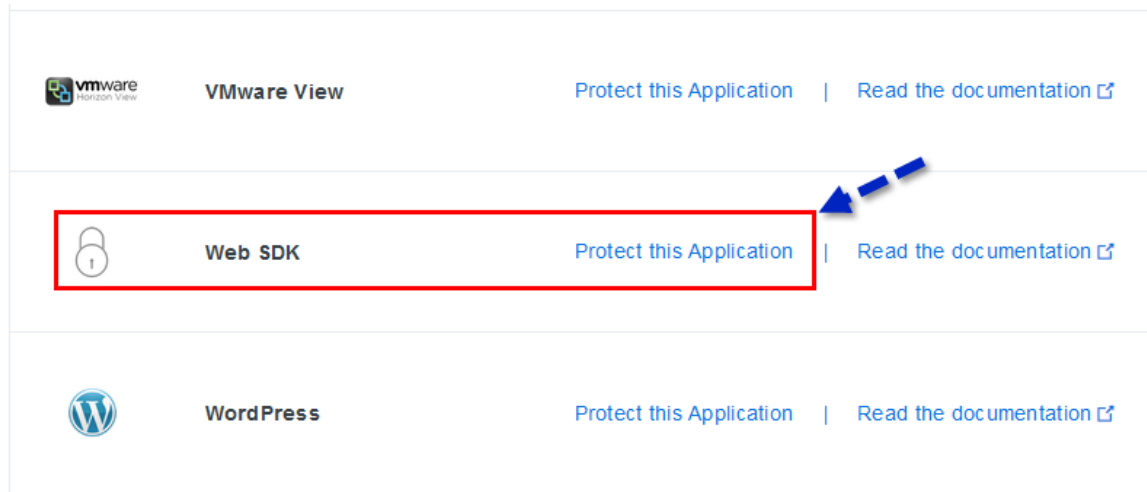
Remote Desktop Manager allows you to configure a Duo Authentication to provide an additional security layer when opening a data source.

SETTINGS



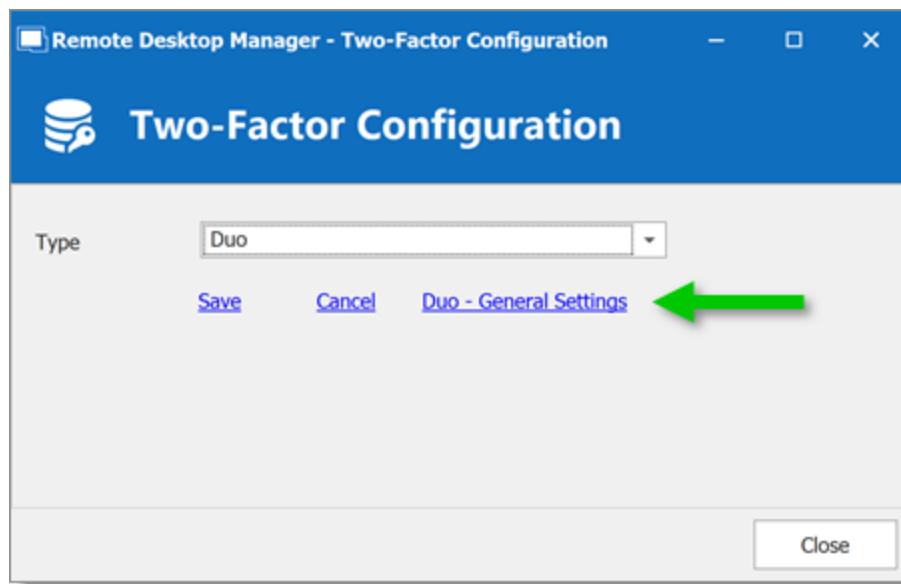
Before you start the configuration, make sure you have created yourself a Duo account and have also installed the Duo application on your compatible device.

1. In your Duo account, you will need to protect the application **Web SDK**.



Web SDK application

2. In Remote Desktop Manager select the **Type**.
3. Click **Duo - General Settings**.



4. All the information necessary to fill in the **Duo Settings** fields will be generated by your Duo account.

[Dashboard](#) > [Applications](#) > Web SDK

Web SDK

See the [Duo Web SDK Documentation](#) to integrate Duo into your custom web application.

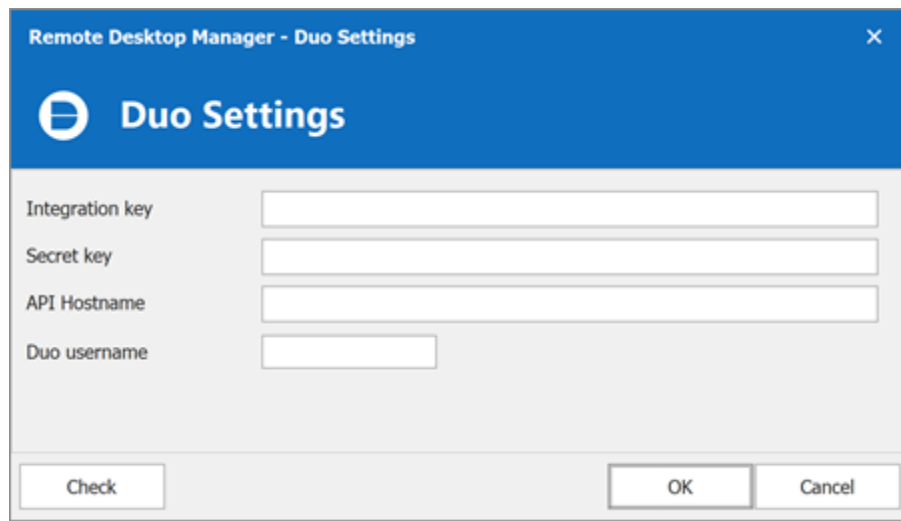
Details

Integration key	<input type="text" value="DIJCLD"/>	select
Secret key	<input type="text" value="QwMZ"/>	select
Don't write down your secret key or share it with anyone.		
API hostname	<input type="text" value="api-b8.duosecurity.com"/>	select

Duo Account - Web SDK

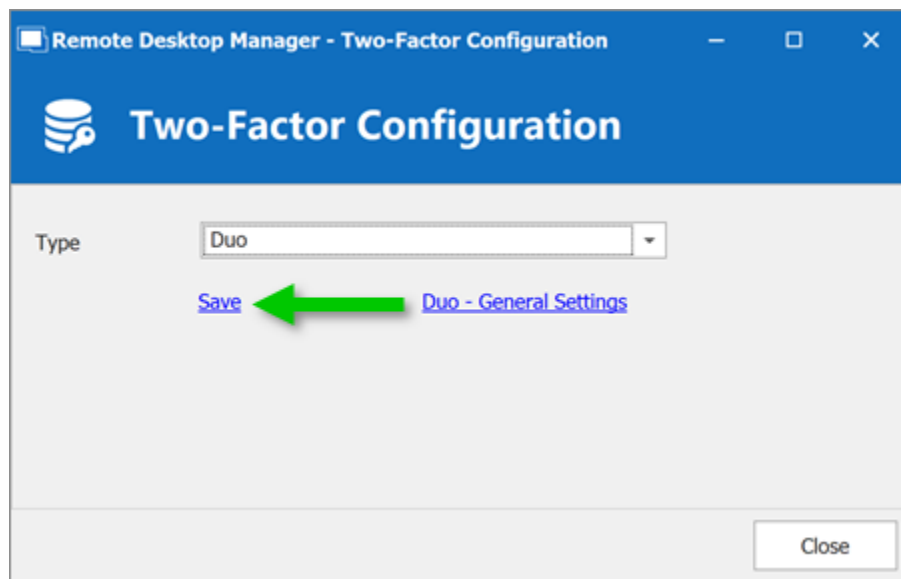
5. Copy and paste all the information.

6. Click **Check** to validate the information and **OK** when done.



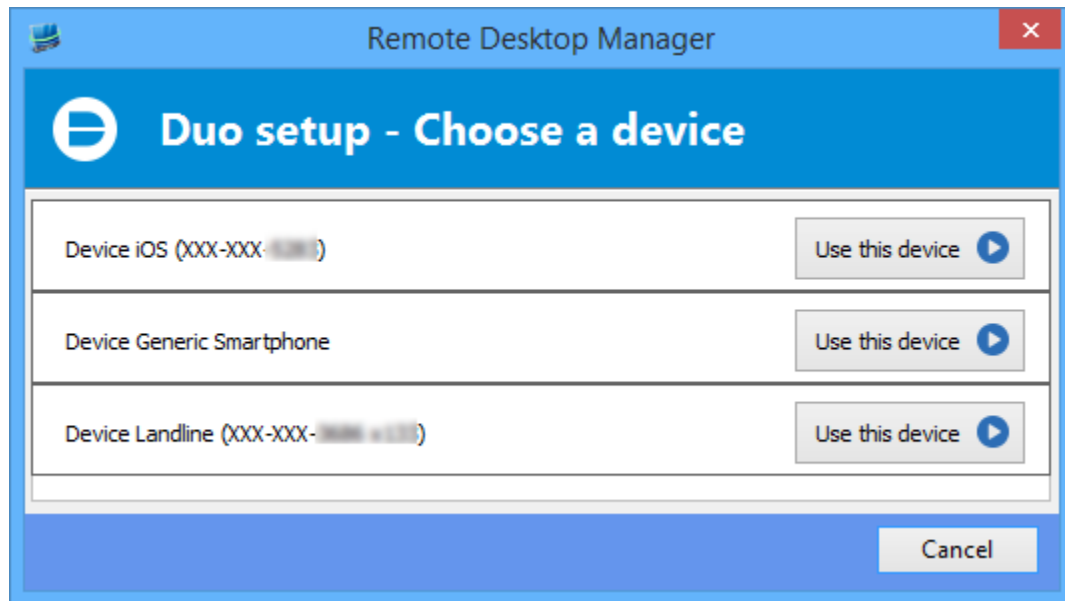
The image shows a dialog box titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Duo Settings". It has a blue header with the Duo logo and the text "Duo Settings". Below the header, there are four input fields: "Integration key", "Secret key", "API Hostname", and "Duo username". At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "Check", "OK", and "Cancel".

7. Click on **Save** to authenticate yourself.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Two-Factor Configuration". It has a blue header with a database icon and the text "Two-Factor Configuration". Below the header, there is a "Type" label and a dropdown menu showing "Duo". Below the dropdown, there are two links: "Save" and "Duo - General Settings". A green arrow points to the "Save" link. At the bottom right of the dialog, there is a "Close" button.

8. If you have more than one device connected to your Duo account, select the device you wish to use for your 2-Factor authentication.



9. Select the method by which you would like to receive your Duo Passcode.

- **Duo Push:** The code is "pushed" to your Duo application.
- **Send SMS:** You will receive the code by SMS on your registered phone number.
- **Phone:** You will receive a phone call and a computer generated voice will dictate the code to you.

Once you have completed all the steps, you will be prompted with the Duo Authentication every time you connect to your secured data source.

5.2 Caching

DESCRIPTION

The caching mode will determine how the client will refresh the content of the data source when changes are detected. On large data sources caching is essential as it increases performance significantly.



This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).



If the cache is outdated, press **CTRL + Refresh** or **CTRL + F5** to refresh the local cache. This will force the application to retrieve the entire content of the data source to recreate the cache.

SETTINGS

The **Caching mode** option can be accessed via the **File – Data Sources – Edit Data Source – Advanced tab** of an [Advanced Data Source](#).

Caching Mode

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	No client caching.
Intelligent	<p>Intelligent cache has the ability to handle many more sessions without experiencing performance degradation.</p> <p>In the case of intelligent cache each modification performs a token update on the server. When Remote Desktop Manager performs a refresh action it will query the data source for any changes (delta) of changes to be applied client side since it last checked the data source. The delta of the changes is then sent to the application and applied locally.</p> <p>When first opening the data source Remote Desktop Manager will load the session from the offline file then refresh to get the up-to-date information.</p>

LOCATION

The client cache is persisted to disk in **%LocalAppData%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager\[GUID:DataSourceID]**

There are three engines for the cache:

- SQLite (offline.db).
- MCDF (offline.mcdf).
- MCDF v2.0 (offline.mcdf2).

If using a version of Remote Desktop Manager prior to 11.2, the default engine will be the **SQLite**, in that case the database is encrypted using a non-portable computed key hash.

If using version 11.2 or newer of Remote Desktop Manager the default cache engine will be the **Microsoft Compound Document Format (MCDF)** files.



You can enhance the security of the offline file by setting the Enhanced security in **File – Options – Security – Offline Security**.

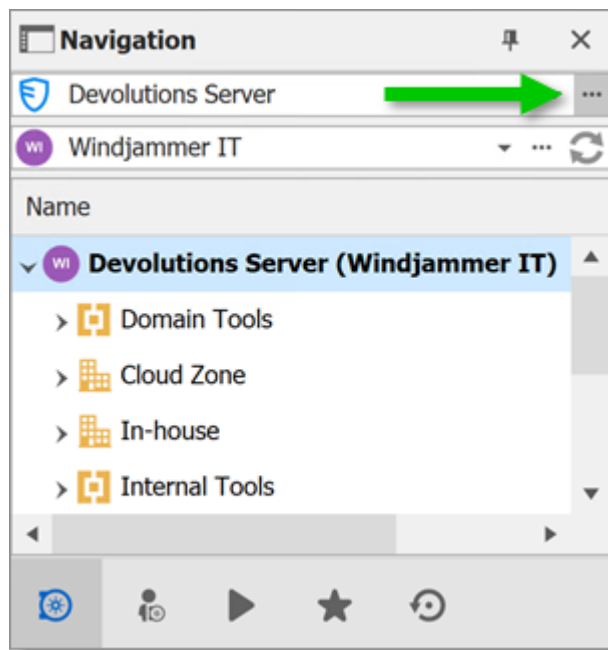


Depending on the configuration of the Caching mode & the [Offline mode](#) the offline file may still exist since the file servers as a dual purpose caching & offline line support.

5.3 Create a data source

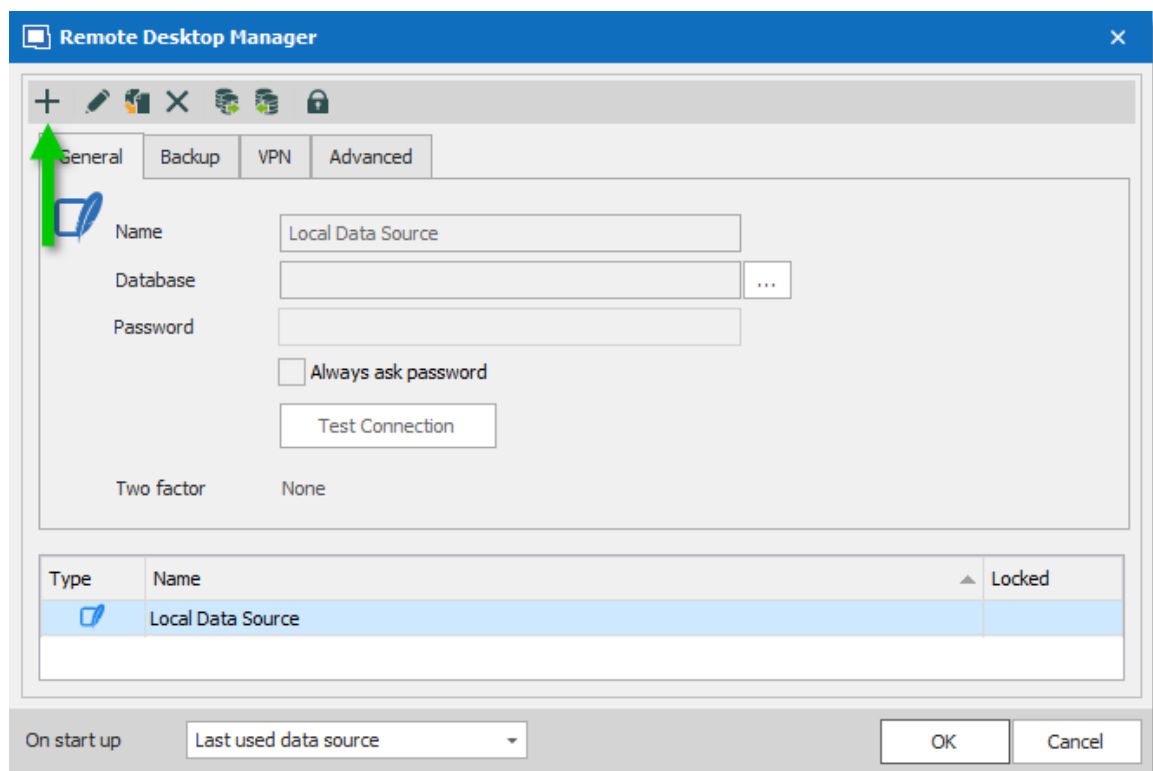
SETTINGS

1. Open the **Data Source Configuration** window in **File - Data Sources** or by clicking the **ellipsis** button (Will only show if you already have 2 existing data sources configured in Remote Desktop Manager) at the top of the Navigation Pane.



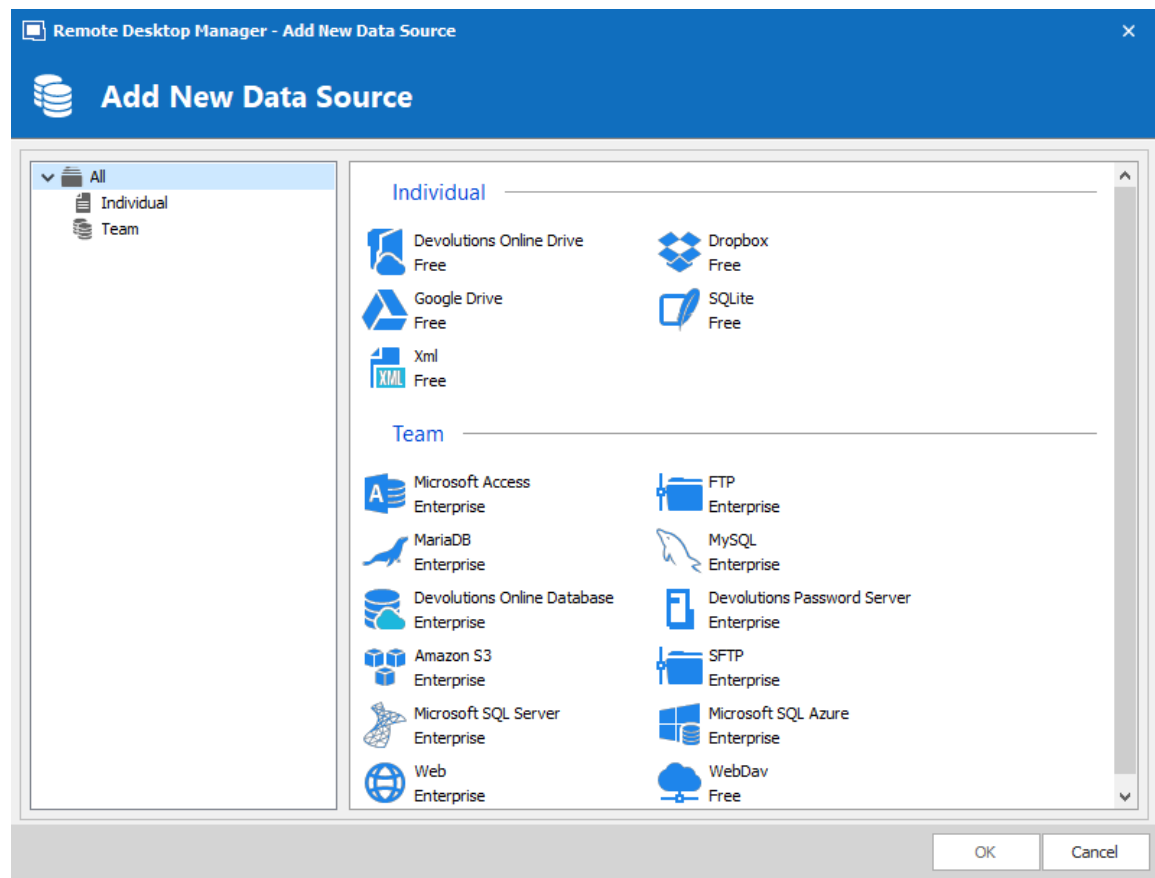
Open Data Source menu

2. Click the **Add a New data source**  button.



Add a new Data Source

3. Select the type of data source to create.



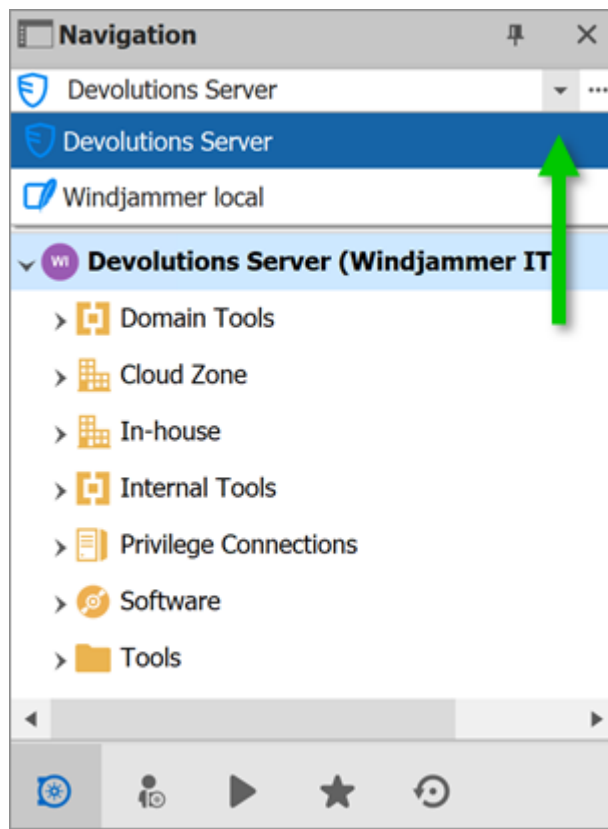
Select your Data Source type

4. Configure the connection settings. To validate the information, click the **Test Server** or **Test Connection** (depending on the type of data source being creating).

The screenshot shows the 'Microsoft SQL Server' connection configuration window. The window has a blue header with the title 'Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft SQL Server' and a Microsoft SQL Server logo. Below the header is a tabbed interface with 'General', 'Settings', 'Private Vault', 'Upgrade', 'VPN', and 'Advanced' tabs. The 'General' tab is active, showing fields for 'Name' (with a dropdown set to 'SQL Server'), 'Host', 'Login mode' (set to 'Database login'), 'Username', 'Password', 'Database', and 'Two factor' (set to 'None'). There are checkboxes for 'Always ask password' and 'Allow change username'. At the bottom right, there are 'Test Server' and 'Test Database' buttons, with 'Test Server' highlighted by a green rectangle. At the bottom left, there is an 'ID' field with the value '707CB610-6799-4562-9B62-EA06240A300F'. At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

SQL Server - Connection Tab

5. Once created, select the new data source by selecting it from the data source drop down list at the top of the Navigation Pane.



Select your Data Source

5.4 Data Source Types



DESCRIPTION



Remote Desktop Manager supports multiple types of data source. To start, decide which data source you'll be using.








Upon initial installation, you will be running from a local data source which is a SQLite database.

DATA SOURCE TYPES

NAME	DESCRIPTION	PROS AND CONS
Devolution s Online Drive 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses Devolutions Online Drive to store and synchronize your sessions. Access your sessions from anywhere using a simple Internet connection.</p> <p>For more information, please consult our Online Drive topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • The service is free. <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No possibility for sharing. • No security management.
Devolution s Server 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses Devolutions Server to store session information.</p> <p>For more information, please consult our Devolutions Server topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • Secure. • Supports all features, such as attachments, connection log, Offline Mode and User Management. • Active Directory integration. <p>Cons</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Installation required.
Dropbox	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses the Dropbox API to retrieve the XML file from the configured repository.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can be shared in read-only mode.

NAME	DESCRIPTION	PROS AND CONS
	<p>For more information, please consult our Dropbox topic.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Backups (by Dropbox) are automatic. • Storage infrastructure is free (if within your free storage quota). <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No security management. • There is a possibility for conflict or data corruption to occur. • Doesn't support all features, such as attachments, connection logs and User Management. • The Dropbox integration uses the Dropbox SDK, so any features that are exclusive to the Business or Enterprise editions are NOT supported.
Microsoft Azure SQL 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses the Microsoft cloud platform to save and manage all sessions.</p> <p>For more information, please consult our Azure SQL topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • Secure. • Supports all features, such as attachments, connection log, Offline mode and User Management. <p>Cons:</p>

NAME	DESCRIPTION	PROS AND CONS
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft Azure needs to be configured.
Microsoft SQL Server 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses SQL Server to save and manage all sessions. This is one of the available data source for a multi-user environment.</p> <p>For more information, please consult our SQL Server (MSSQL) topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • Secure. • Supports all features, such as attachments, connection log, Offline mode and User Management. • SQL Server Express is free. <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SQL Server must be installed.
Devolution's Password Hub Business 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager connects to the Devolutions Password Hub Business vault.</p> <p>Note that there are different subscription levels for this product.</p> <p>For more information, please see the products features and highlights and consult our topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • Secure. • Shareable. <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cannot be hosted on premises. • No offline mode

NAME	DESCRIPTION	PROS AND CONS
Devolutions Password Hub Personal 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses Devolutions Password Hub Personal to store and synchronize your sessions. Access your sessions from anywhere using a simple Internet connection.</p> <p>For more information, please consult our Password Hub Personal topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • The service is free. <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No possibility for sharing. • No offline mode
SQLite 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager uses a SQLite database to store session information.</p> <p>For more information, please consult our SQLite topic.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick. • Reliable. • The database is free. • Supports all features, such as attachments & connection logs. <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No possibility for sharing. • No security management.
XML 	<p>Remote Desktop Manager saves the settings directly in a file with the XML format.</p>	<p>Pros:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Easy backup. • Can be edited manually or by an external system.

NAME	DESCRIPTION	PROS AND CONS
	For more information, please consult our XML topic.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Nothing to install. <p>Cons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• No possibility of sharing.• No security management.• There is a possibility for conflict or data corruption to occur.• Doesn't support all features, such as attachments, connection logs and User Management.

5.4.1 Advanced Data Sources

DESCRIPTION

Advanced Data Sources are highly configurable data sources, typically running on an advanced management system, such as a database management system or our own online services.

Advanced Data Sources greatly increase the set of managing features available to administrators, such as:

- Document uploads and Entry Attachments
- Auditing and logging
- Advanced security with [User management](#) and [User Groups based security system](#)
- [Offline mode](#)

- [Multi-Factor Authentication](#)

Currently the Advanced Data Sources are:

- [Devolutions Server](#)
- [Microsoft Azure SQL](#)
- [Microsoft SQL Server \(MSSQL\)](#)
- [Devolutions Password Hub Business](#)

5.4.1.1 Devolutions Server

DESCRIPTION



Devolutions Server (DVLS) allows to control access to privileged accounts and manage sessions through a secure solution. For more information, consult the product's web site [here](#).

HIGHLIGHTS

- Highly secured server for your company.
- Shared connection and credentials with multiple users.
- Installed on-premises; can be deployed online.
- Support Windows authentication and Active Directory group integration.
- Optimized client and server side caching.



Devolutions Server supports **Microsoft SQL Server** and **Microsoft Azure SQL** as a data store.

For more information, please consult these topics:

- [Devolutions Server installation instructions](#)
- [Devolutions Server Security Checklist](#)

CONFIGURE THE SERVER DATA SOURCE ON ALL YOUR CLIENT MACHINES

Enter a name of the data source and the URL for the Host. Ensure you use the correct protocol if SSL is required by the server (https).

Export the data source, then import the file in your client workstations as described [Import/Export Data Source](#).

SETTINGS

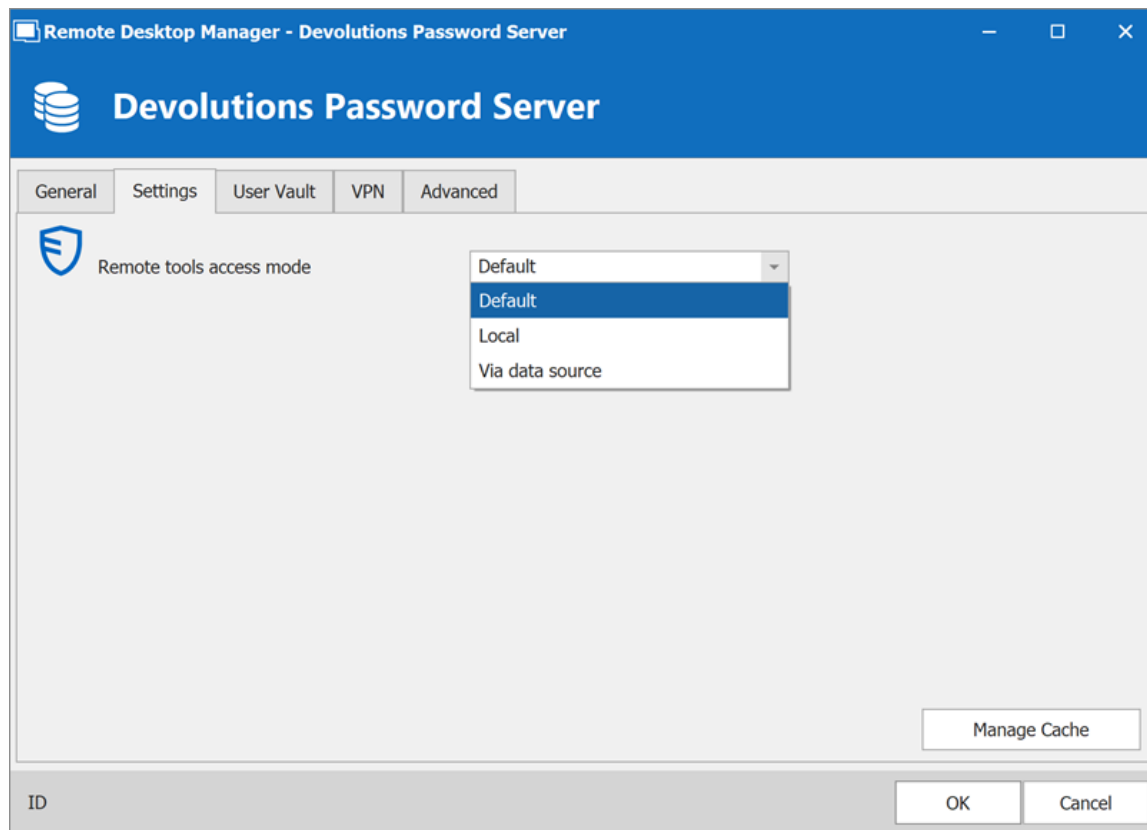
GENERAL

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - Devolutions Password Server' window. The title bar is blue with the Devolutions logo and the text 'Devolutions Password Server'. Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with 'General', 'Settings', 'User Vault', 'VPN', and 'Advanced' tabs. The 'General' tab is active, showing a shield icon and several input fields: 'Name' (text box), 'Host' (dropdown menu), 'Username' (dropdown menu), and 'Password' (text box). There are also three checkboxes: 'Use Windows authentication', 'Use Office365 authentication', and 'Prompt for credentials'. At the bottom of the 'General' tab is an 'Always ask password' checkbox. A 'Test Connection' button is located at the bottom right of the 'General' tab. At the very bottom of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Devolutions Server - General

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name for the data source.
Host	Enter the URL of the DVLS instance. Example: <code>http://<hostname or IP address>/<instance name></code>
Use Windows authentication	Use the same credentials as your current Windows user.
Use Office365 authentication	Use the same credentials as your current Office365 user. Choose an authentication option: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default: Create a new authentication token each time and keeps it in the memory only.• Persistent: Takes the saved token, if it does not exist, will create a new one and save it.• Linked account: Takes a saved token from Windows (registry).
Always prompt for credentials	Always ask for the username and password when connecting to the data source.
Username	Enter the username to connect to the data source.
Password	Enter the password to connect to the data source.
Always ask password	Always ask for the password when connecting to the data source.
Test Connection	Test the connection with Devolutions Server to validate the credentials.

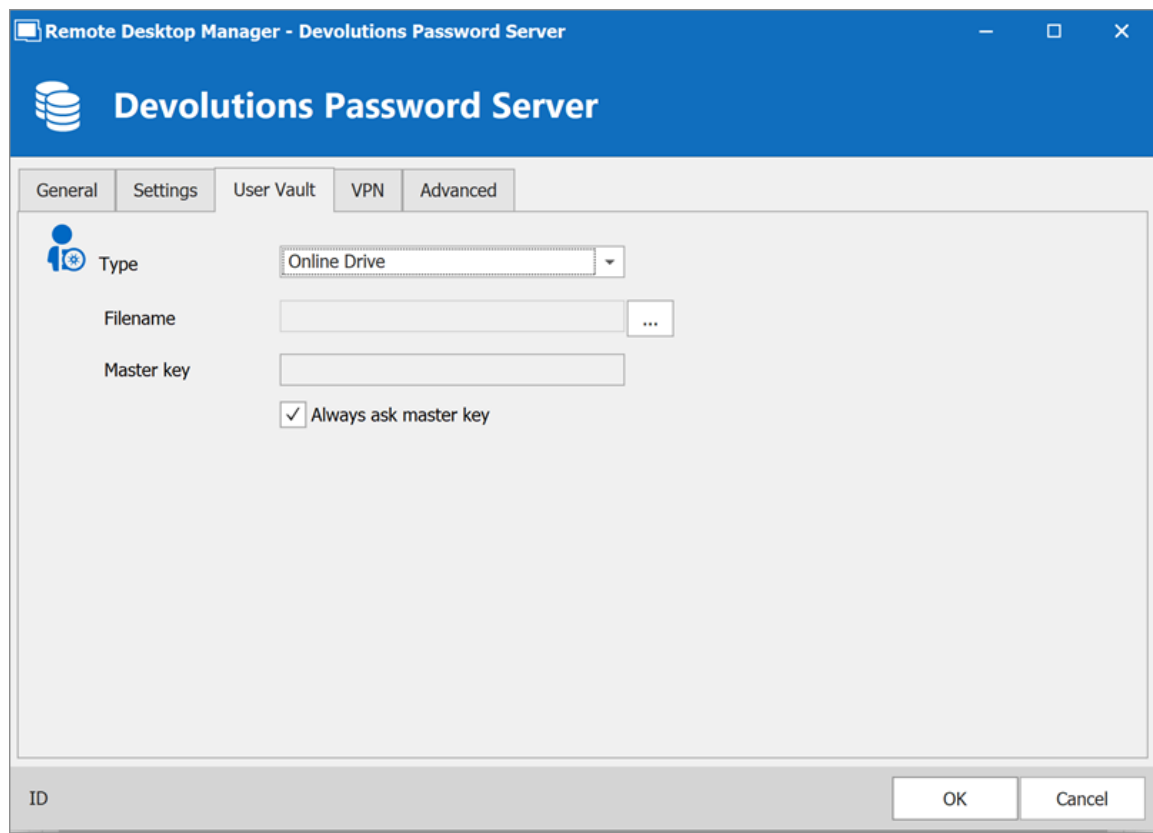
SETTINGS



Devolutions Server - Settings

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Remote tools access mode	Select whether the Remote Tools will be accessed locally or through the host.
Manage Cache	Manage the data source cache. On large data sources caching is a must and will increase performance significantly. For more information, please consult the Manage Cache topic.

USER VAULT

*Devolutions Server – User Vault*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Type	Select the type of User Vault to use. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default: use the default User Vault, which is stored in the database.• None: disable the User Vault for all users.• Online Drive: use a Devolutions Online Drive file (*.dod) as a User Vault.


VPN


Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **Devolutions Server**.

Remote Desktop Manager - Devolutions Password Server

Devolutions Password Server

General Settings User Vault VPN Advanced

Type On first connect 

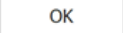

RDM File 

☐ Override credentials

Username

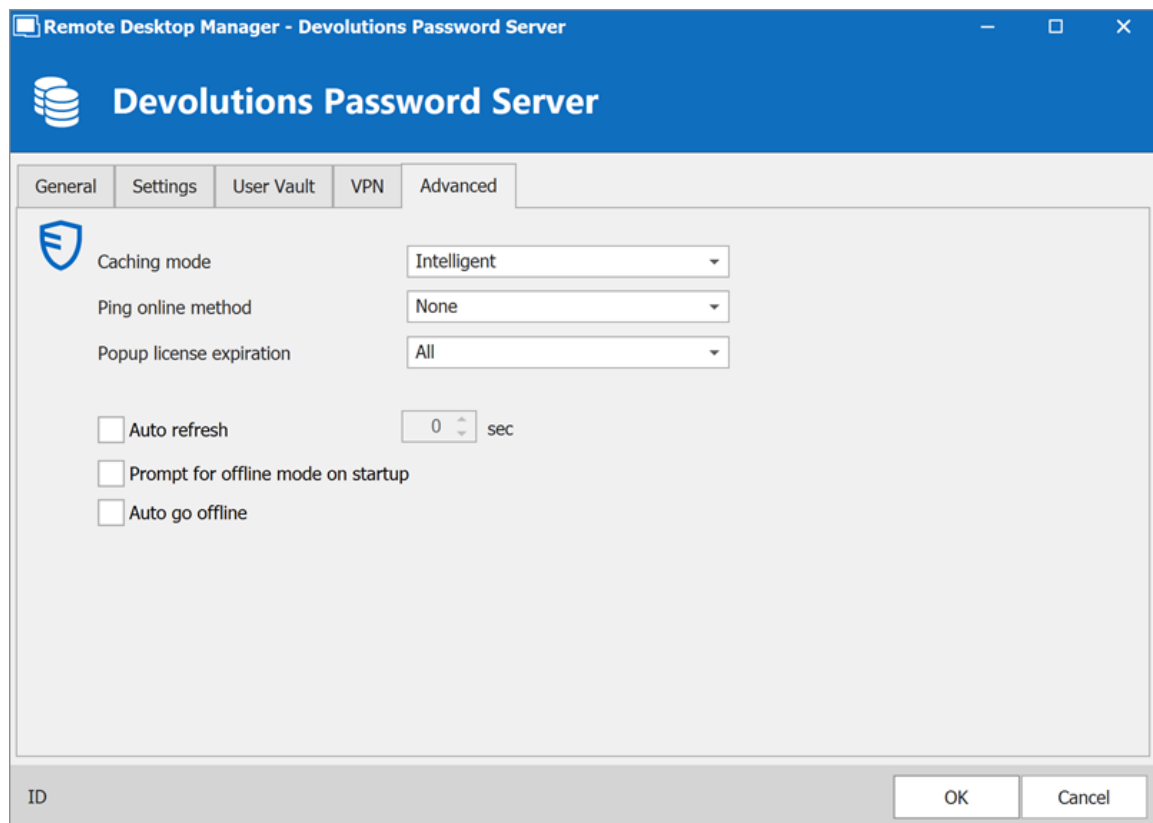
Domain

Password

ID  

Devolutions Server - VPN

ADVANCED

*Devolutions Server - Advanced*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Caching mode	Determines how the entries will be reloaded in the data source. For more information, please consult the Caching topic.
Ping online method	Indicate the preferred ping online method. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None • Web request
Popup license expiration	Determine how the application advises of the license expiration. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All • Only Administrator(s)

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disabled
Auto refresh	Set the interval for the automatic refresh.
Prompt for offline mode on startup	Ask to use the data source in offline mode when the user connects to the data source.
Auto go offline	Use the data source in offline mode when the ping method does not respond.
Disable lock	Disable the option to lock the data source directly. The application still can be locked but the user is not prompted for the data source password when unlocking the application.

5.4.1.2 Microsoft SQL Server

DESCRIPTION



With the Microsoft SQL Server data source, Remote Desktop Manager uses the power of Microsoft SQL Server to save and manage entries.

Supported Microsoft SQL Server:

- 2019 on Windows and Linux (all editions)
- 2017 on Windows and Linux (all editions)
- 2016 Service Pack 2
- 2014 Service Pack 3
- 2012 Service Pack 4

The following features are also supported:

- **Always on availability group.**
- **Clustering.**
- **Log Shipping.**
- **Database mirroring.**

HIGHLIGHTS

- Supports user management with a superior security model.
- Supports [Offline mode](#) for when the server or network is unavailable.
- Supports full entry logs and attachments.
- Supports Vaults to organize thousands of entries.



A proper database backup strategy should be implemented to prevent possible data loss. Please refer to the Backups topic.



Depending on the Recovery Model of the underlying database, some maintenance operations may have to be scheduled to run regularly in order to maintain the health of the database. Please consult [Recovery Model](#).



Using either **Database Login** or **Integrated Security** is inherently less secure because it means that the end user can connect directly to the database using any tool available. We do have table and column level security, but security conscious organizations will consider this unacceptable. It is recommended to use our **Custom login** model.



Creating Contained Database Users as mentioned in this [article](#) is the supported method with SQL Always On availability group.

CONFIGURATION

Consult the [Configure SQL Server](#) topic for more information on the configuration.

SETTINGS

GENERAL

Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft SQL Server

Microsoft SQL Server

General Settings User Vault Upgrade VPN Advanced

Name Microsoft SQL Server

Host ...

Login mode Database login

Username

Password

☐ Always ask password

☐ Allow change username

Database ...

Two factor [None](#)

Test Host

Test Database

ID

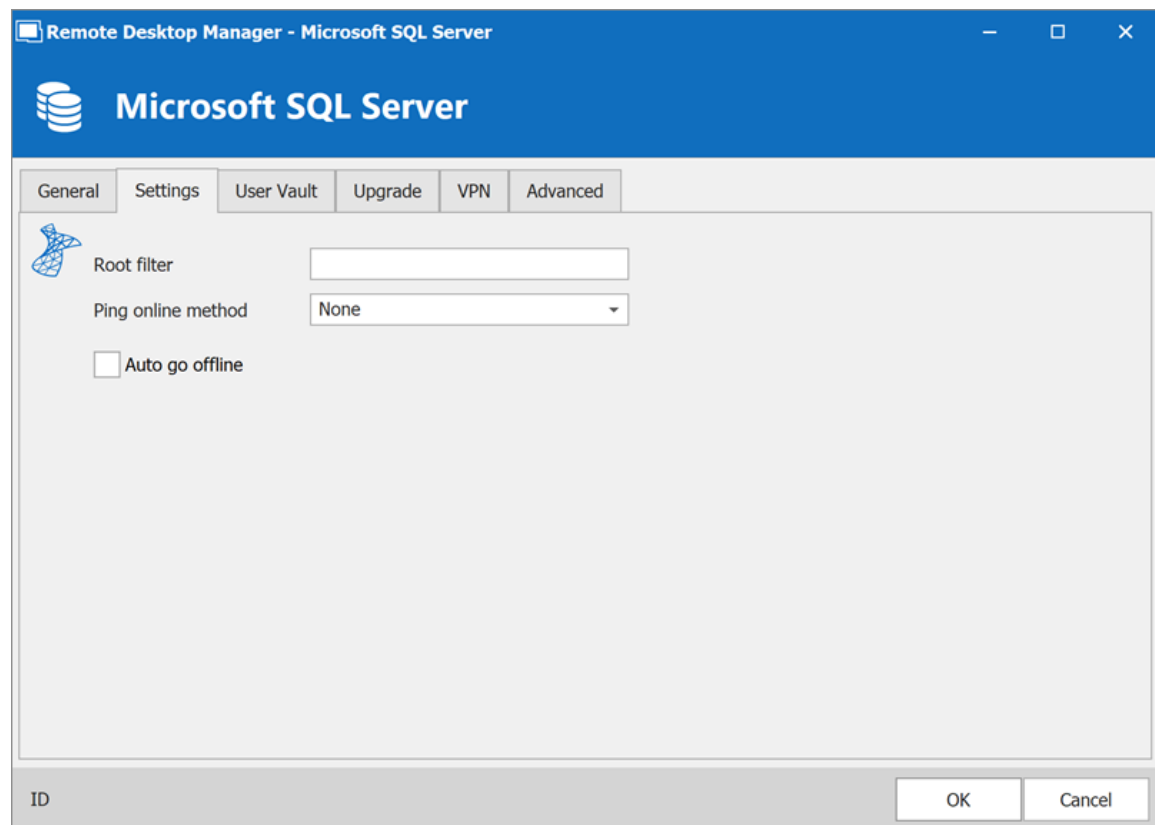
OK Cancel

Microsoft SQL Server - General Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name for the data source.
Host	Enter the server hostname or IP address.
Login mode	Specify the authentication mode to use. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Database login • Integrated Security (Active directory) • Custom Login
Username	Enter the username to access the Azure SQL database.
Password	Enter the password to access the Azure SQL database.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Always ask password	Prompt for the password when a user connects to the data source.
Allow change username	Allow the username to be edited when connecting to the data source. (Only with Always ask password enabled)
Database	Enter the name of the Azure SQL database.
Two factor	Enable the 2-Factor Authentication .
Test Server	Test the connection with the server to validate if the proper information has been provided.
Test Database	Test the connection with the database to validate if the proper information has been provided.

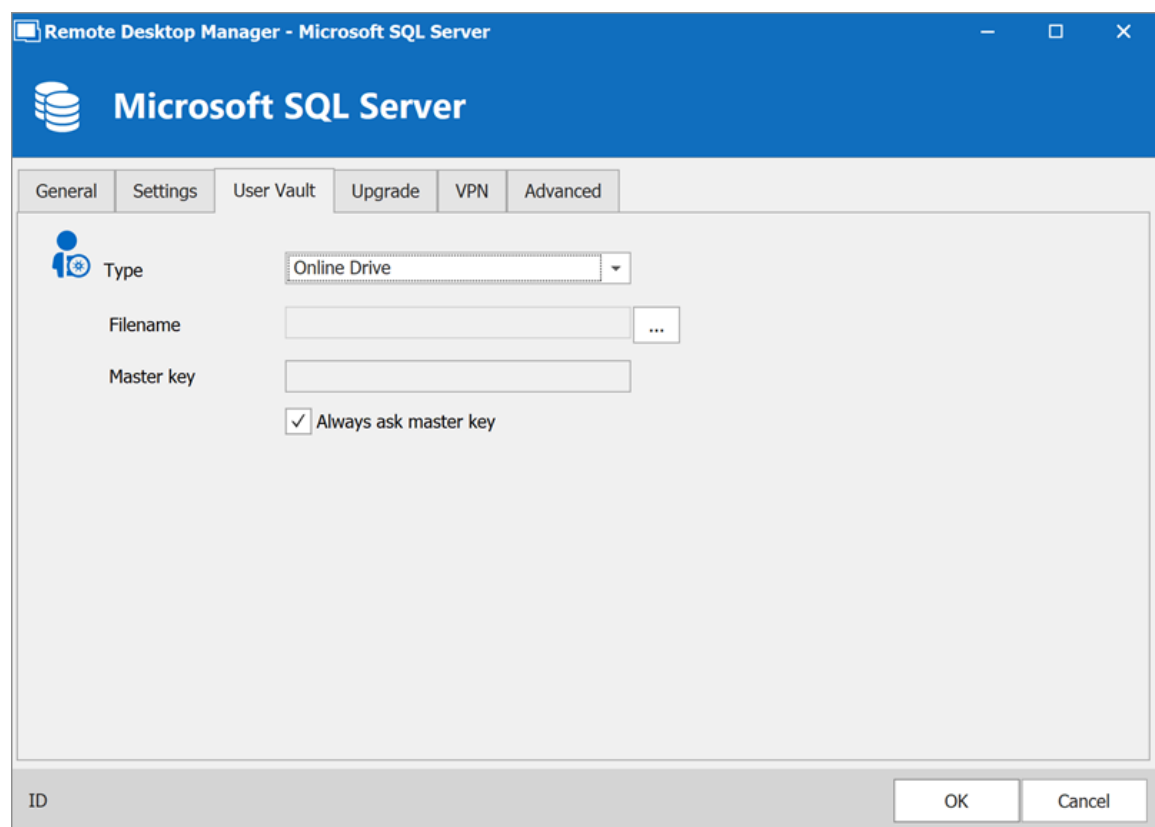
SETTINGS

*Microsoft SQL Server - Settings Tab*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Root filter	Enter the name of a root level folder to display only the entries contained in that folder.
Ping online method	Indicate the preferred ping online method. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• None• Ping• Port Scan
Auto go offline	Use the data source in offline mode when the ping method does not respond.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Disable lock	Disable the option to lock the data source directly. You can still lock the application but you won't be prompted for the data source password if this option is disabled.

USER VAULT

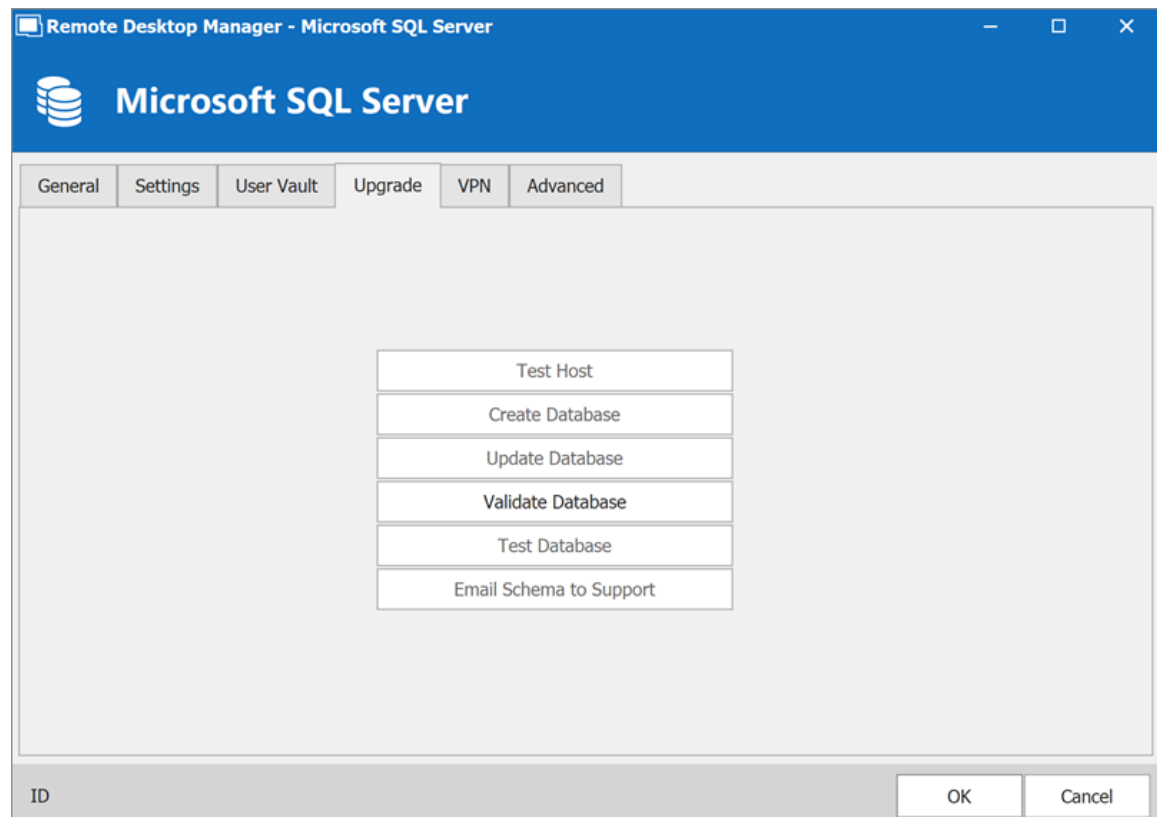


Microsoft SQL Server - User Vault Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Type	Select the type of User Vault to use. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default: use the default User Vault, which is stored in the database.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None: disable the User Vault for all users. • Online Drive: use a Devolutions Online Drive file (*.dod) as a User Vault.

UPGRADE



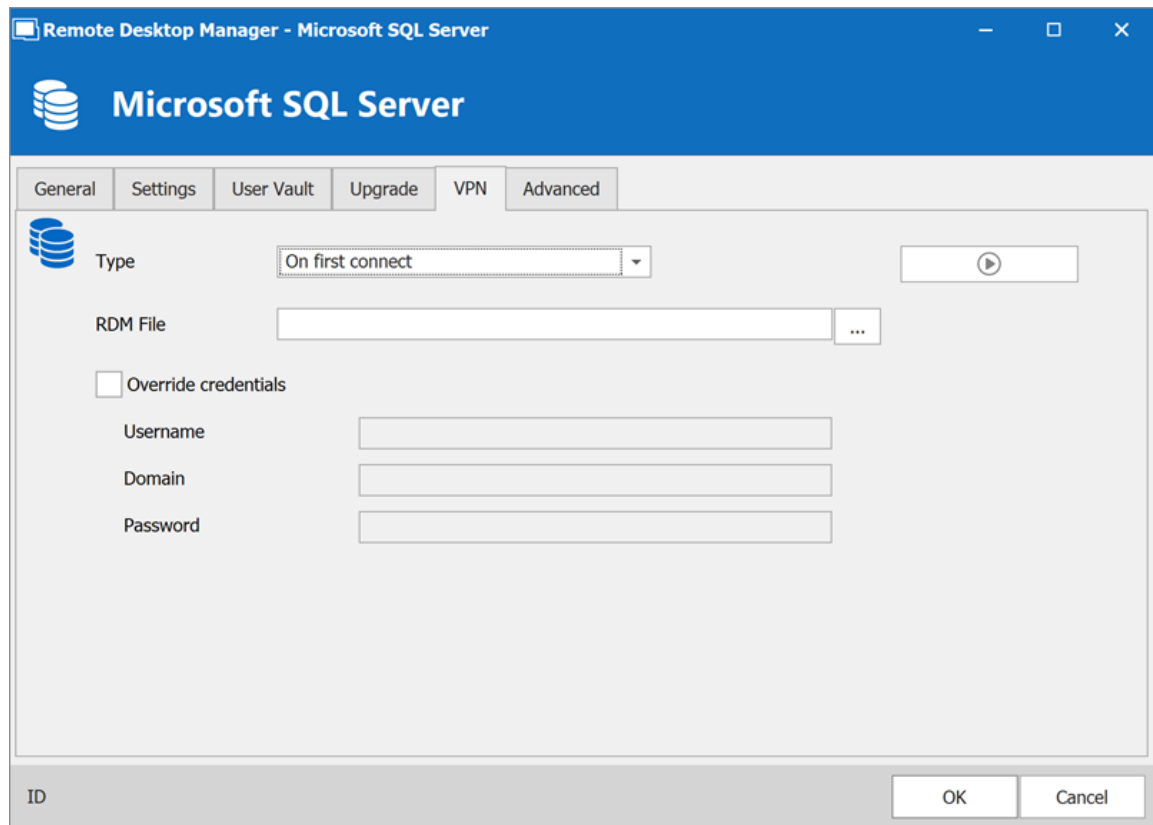
Microsoft SQL Server - Upgrade Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Test Server	Test the connection with the server to validate if the proper information has been provided.

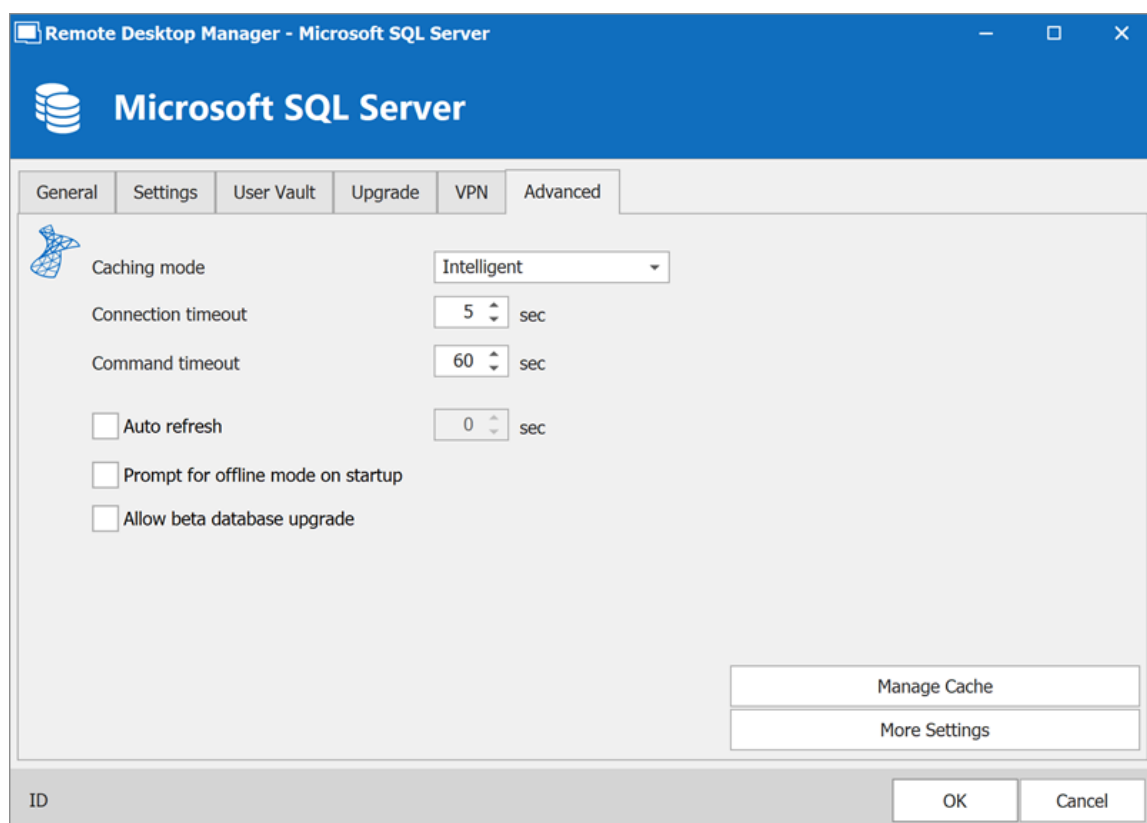
OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Create Database	Create the database on the SQL server.
Update Database	Update the database on the SQL server.
Test Database	Test the connection with the database to validate if the proper information has been provided.
Email Schema to Support	Send your schema to the Devolutions support team.

VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **Microsoft SQL Server**.

*Microsoft SQL Server - VPN Tab*

ADVANCED



Microsoft SQL Server - Advanced Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Caching mode	Determines how the entries will be reloaded in the data source. For more information, please consult the Caching topic.
Connection timeout	Set the delay of the connection timeout.
Command timeout	Set the delay of the command timeout.
Auto refresh	Set the interval for the automatic refresh.
Prompt for offline mode	Ask to use the data source in offline mode when the user connects to the data source.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
on startup	
Allow beta database upgrade	Allow beta upgrade of the database (when using a beta version of Remote Desktop Manager).
Manage Cache	Manage the data source cache. On large data sources caching is a must and will increase performance significantly. For more information, please consult the Manage Cache topic.
More Settings	Edit the connection string values directly.

5.4.1.2.1 Configure SQL Server

DESCRIPTION

1. Install **Microsoft SQL Server** or **Microsoft SQL Server Express**.



Newly installed Microsoft SQL Server instances do not allow remote connections. Please follow the directions in SQL Server.

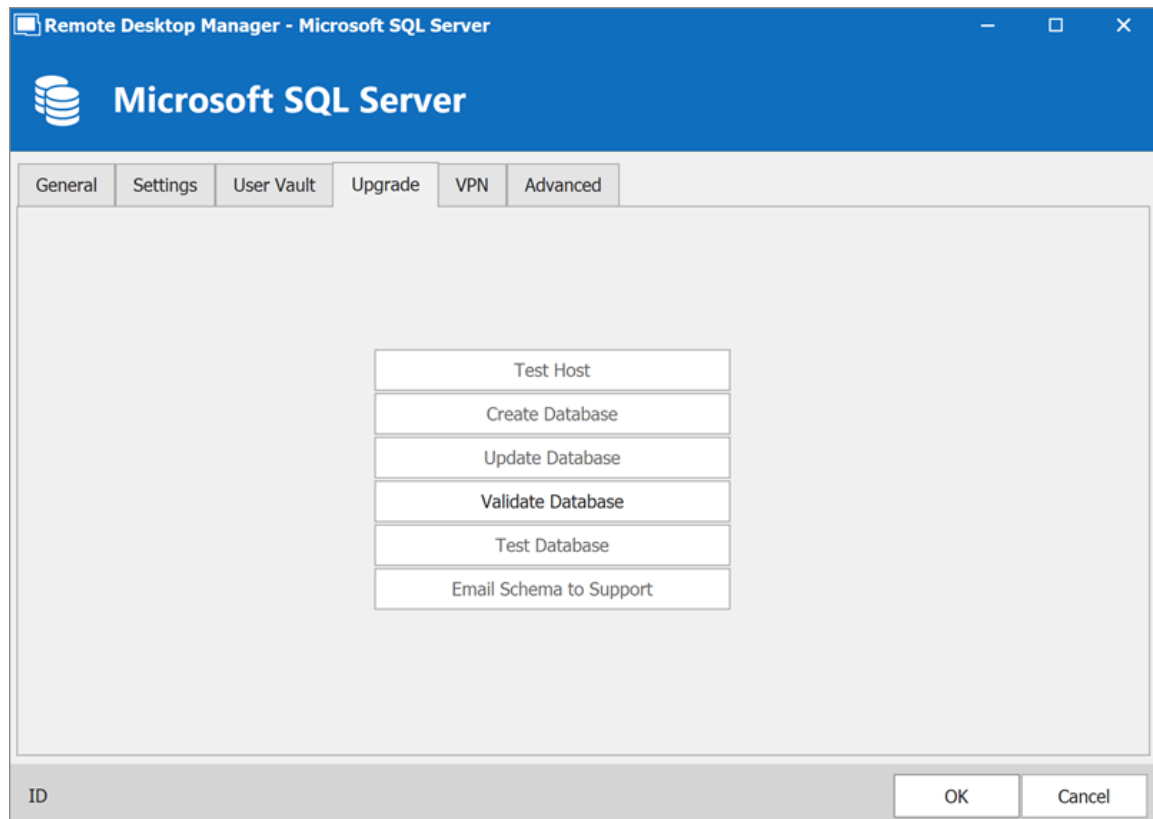


For added security, you can enable SSL Encryption to communicate with your instance of SQL Server. However, due to a framework limitation, this is not compatible with our iOS and Android versions of Remote Desktop Manager.

Please follow directions on <https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/316898>

2. Follow the steps in the [Create a data source](#) topic. On Step 4, before testing server or otherwise verifying the connection, continue with the steps below.

3. Select the **Upgrade** tab and click the **Create Database** button. If the database is already created on the Microsoft SQL Server, click the **Update Database** button to add the appropriate tables to the database.

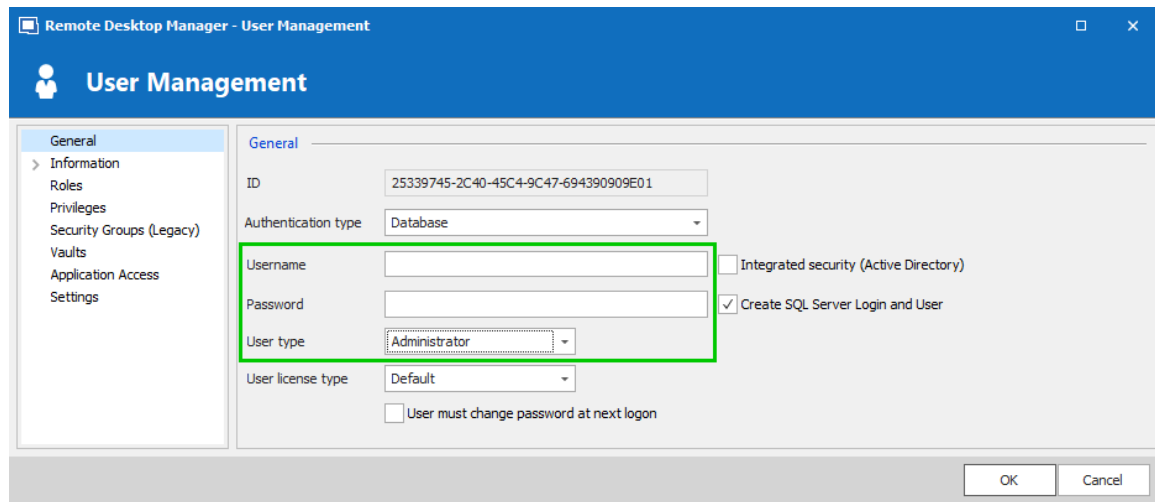


Upgrade Tab

4. Once the database is created, create an administrator account for the database via the [Administration - Users](#) menu.



If the database is created using a system administrator (example: SA), we recommend to keep this user only for the database creation and the [database upgrade](#). A Remote Desktop Manager administrator account must be created first. Then, regular users are created with this administrator account.



Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

Information
Roles
Privileges
Security Groups (Legacy)
Vaults
Application Access
Settings

General

ID: 25339745-2C40-45C4-9C47-694390909E01

Authentication type: Database

Username: [text box]

Password: [text box]

User type: Administrator

User license type: Default

☐ Integrated security (Active Directory)

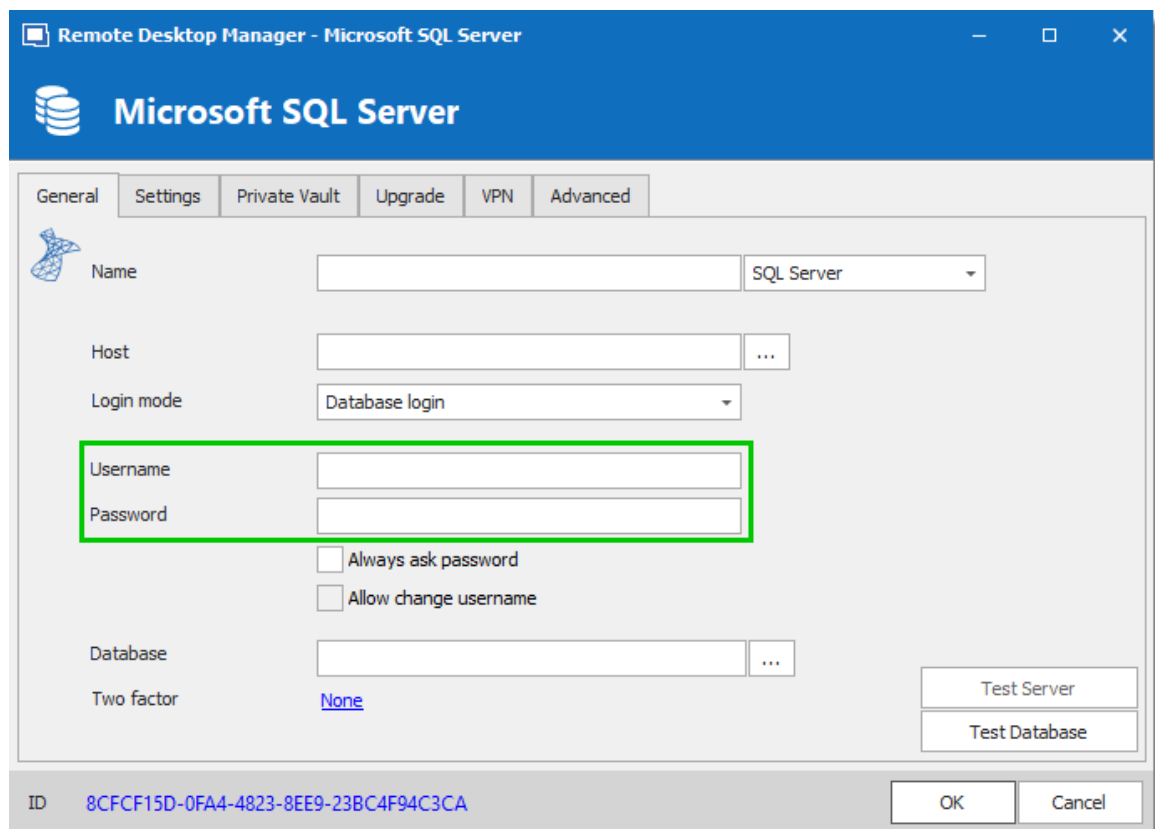
☒ Create SQL Server Login and User

☐ User must change password at next logon

OK Cancel

Create a Remote Desktop Manager Administrator Account

5. Connect to the Microsoft SQL Server database with the Remote Desktop Manager administrator account. To do so, edit the data source used to create the database and change the login information for the administrator account created with Remote Desktop Manager.



Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft SQL Server

Microsoft SQL Server

General Settings Private Vault Upgrade VPN Advanced

Name: [text box] SQL Server

Host: [text box] ...

Login mode: Database login

Username: [text box]

Password: [text box]

☐ Always ask password

☐ Allow change username

Database: [text box] ...

Two factor: None

Test Server

Test Database

ID: 8CFCF15D-0FA4-4823-8EE9-23BC4F94C3CA

OK Cancel

Connection to the Database with the RDM Administrator Account

The Microsoft SQL Server data source is now correctly configured.

5.4.1.2.2 Recovery Model

DESCRIPTION

Microsoft SQL Server backup and restore operations occur within the context of the recovery model of the database. Recovery models are designed to control transaction log maintenance. A recovery model is a database property that controls how transactions are logged, whether the transaction log requires (and allows) backing up, and what kinds of restore operations are available. Three recovery models exist: **simple**, **full**, and **bulk-logged**. Typically, a database uses the full recovery model or simple recovery model. A database can be switched to another recovery model at any time.



If the Recovery Model is set to Full, it is critical that regular backups of BOTH the database and the transaction log are performed. Not performing these backups will result in the database files to increase in size at an alarming rate. This will severely impact the performance in the long run.



For further information regarding SQL Recovery Models, refer to <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-CA/library/ms189275.aspx>.

5.4.1.2.3 Encrypting Connections to SQL Server

DESCRIPTION

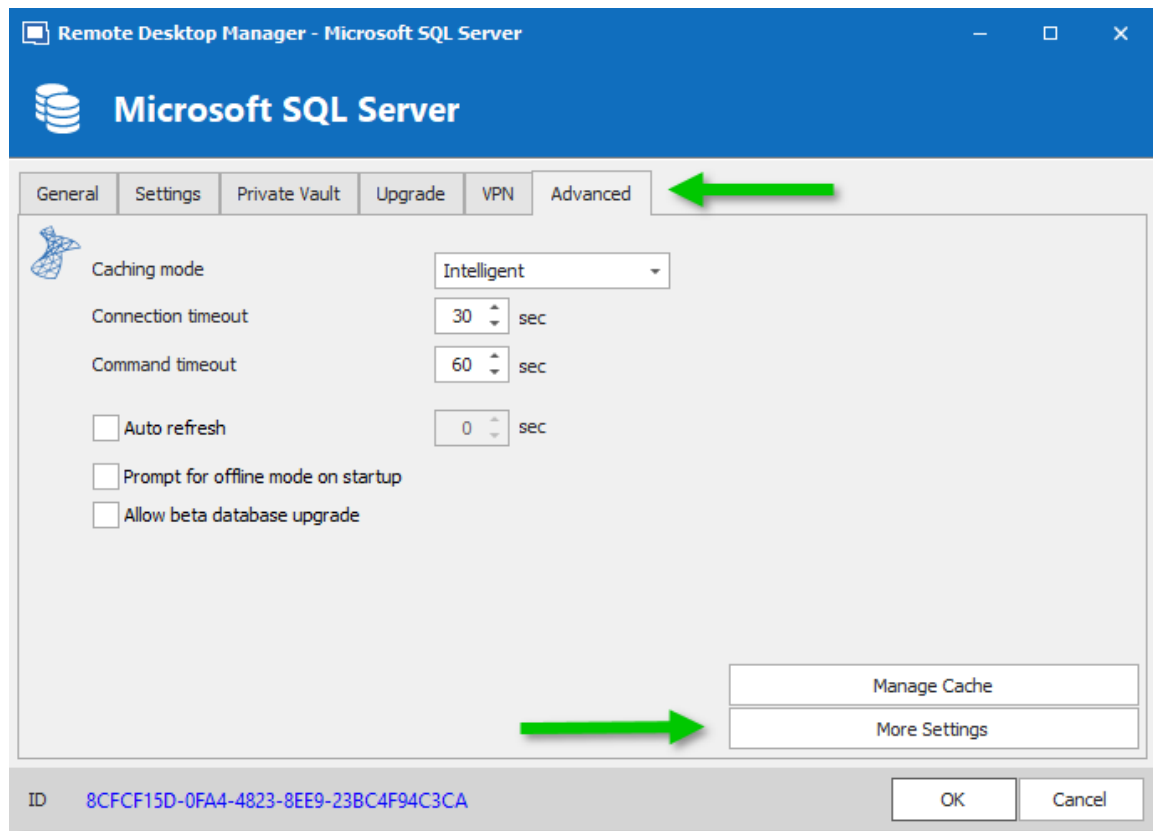
To ensure that the communication between Remote Desktop Manager and the Microsoft SQL Server database is encrypted, an extensive procedure must be followed on the Microsoft SQL Server instance.

Please consult this Microsoft technet article that provides detailed instructions: [Encrypting Connections to SQL Server \(technet\)](#).

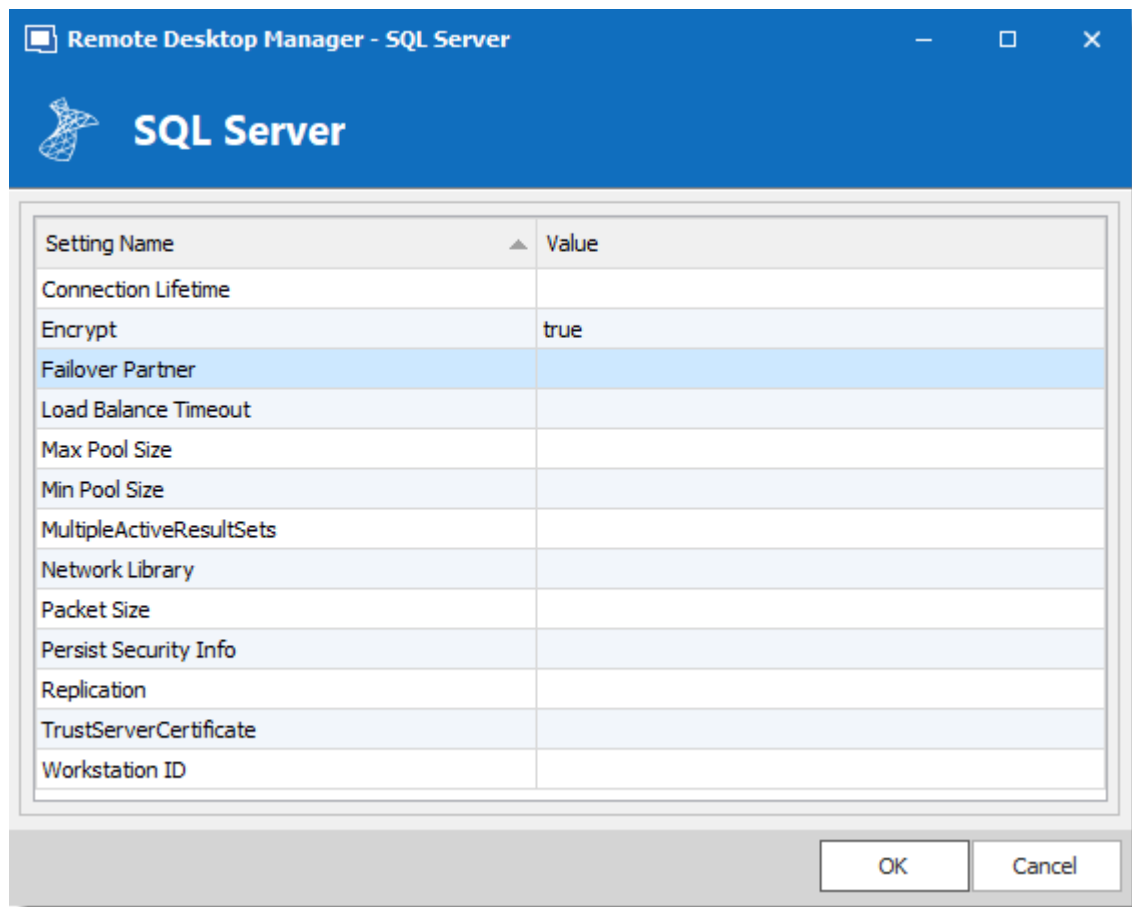
After it has been properly configured, the only modification to perform in Remote Desktop Manager is to set a property in the **More Settings** of the data source.

PROCEDURE

1. Create or edit an Microsoft SQL Server data source, access the **Advanced** tab and click the **More Settings** button.



2. Set the **Encrypt** property value to **true**. Click **OK** to validate.



5.4.1.3 Microsoft Azure SQL

DESCRIPTION



With the Microsoft Azure SQL data source, Remote Desktop Manager uses the Microsoft cloud platform to save and manage entries.

The following features are also supported:

- **Always on availability group**
- **Clustering**
- **Log shipping**
- **Database mirroring**

MINIMUM REQUIREMENT FOR AZURE SQL DATABASE FOR RDM

Microsoft Azure SQL offers different service tier in their purchase model for DTUS.

We recommend at minimum a Standard tier package S0 for 5 users and more.

Visit their website for more information.

HIGHLIGHTS

- Supports [User Management](#) with a superior security model.
- Supports [Offline mode](#) for when the server or network is unavailable.
- Supports entry logs and attachments.
- [Get more information on Microsoft Azure SQL.](#)



For Azure AD authentication, download and install the “Microsoft Active Directory Authentication Library for Microsoft SQL Server”.

Please download it here :
<https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=48742>.



A proper database backup strategy should be implemented to prevent possible data loss. Please refer to the Backups topic.

CONFIGURATION

Consult the [Configure Azure SQL](#) topic for more information on the configuration.


SETTINGS

GENERAL

Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft SQL Azure

Microsoft SQL Azure

General Settings User Vault Upgrade VPN Advanced

 Name Microsoft SQL Azure

Host ...

Login mode Database login

Username

Password

☐ Always ask password

☐ Allow change username

Database ...

Two factor [None](#)

Test Database

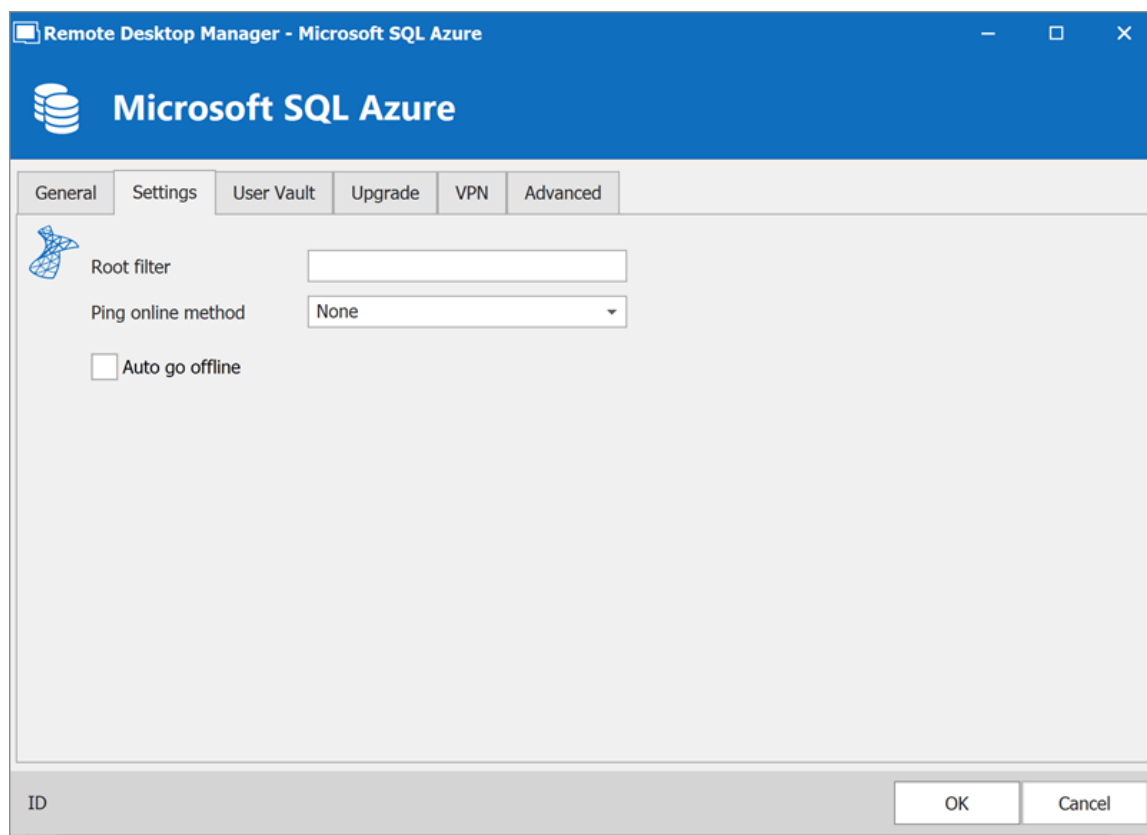
ID OK Cancel

Microsoft Azure SQL - General

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name for the data source.
Host	Enter the server hostname or IP address.
Login mode	Specify the authentication mode to use. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Database login• Custom login• Active Directory Password• Active Directory Integrated

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Active Directory Interactive (with MFA support)
Username	Enter the username to access the Azure SQL database.
Password	Enter the password to access the Azure SQL database.
Always ask password	Prompt for the password when a user connects to the data source.
Allow change username	Allow the username to be edited when connecting to the data source. (Only with Always ask password enabled)
Database	Enter the name of the Azure SQL database.
Two factor	Enable the 2-Factor Authentication .
Test Database	Test the connection with the database to validate if the proper information has been provided.

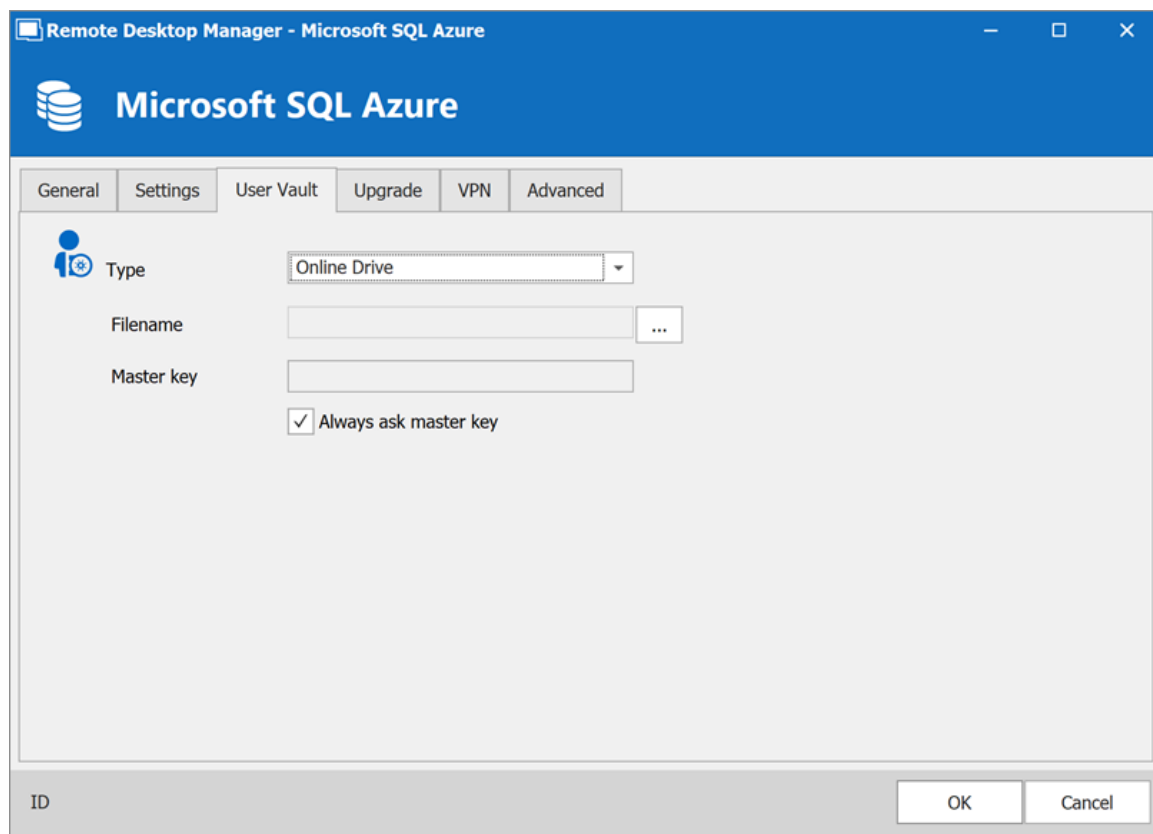
SETTINGS

*Microsoft Azure SQL - Settings Tab*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Root filter	Enter the name of a root level folder to display only the entries contained in that folder.
Ping online method	Indicate the preferred ping online method. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• None• Ping• Port Scan
Auto go offline	Use the data source in offline mode when the ping method does not respond.
Disable lock	Disable the option to lock the data source directly. You can still lock the application but you won't be prompted for the

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	data source password if this option is disabled.

USER VAULT

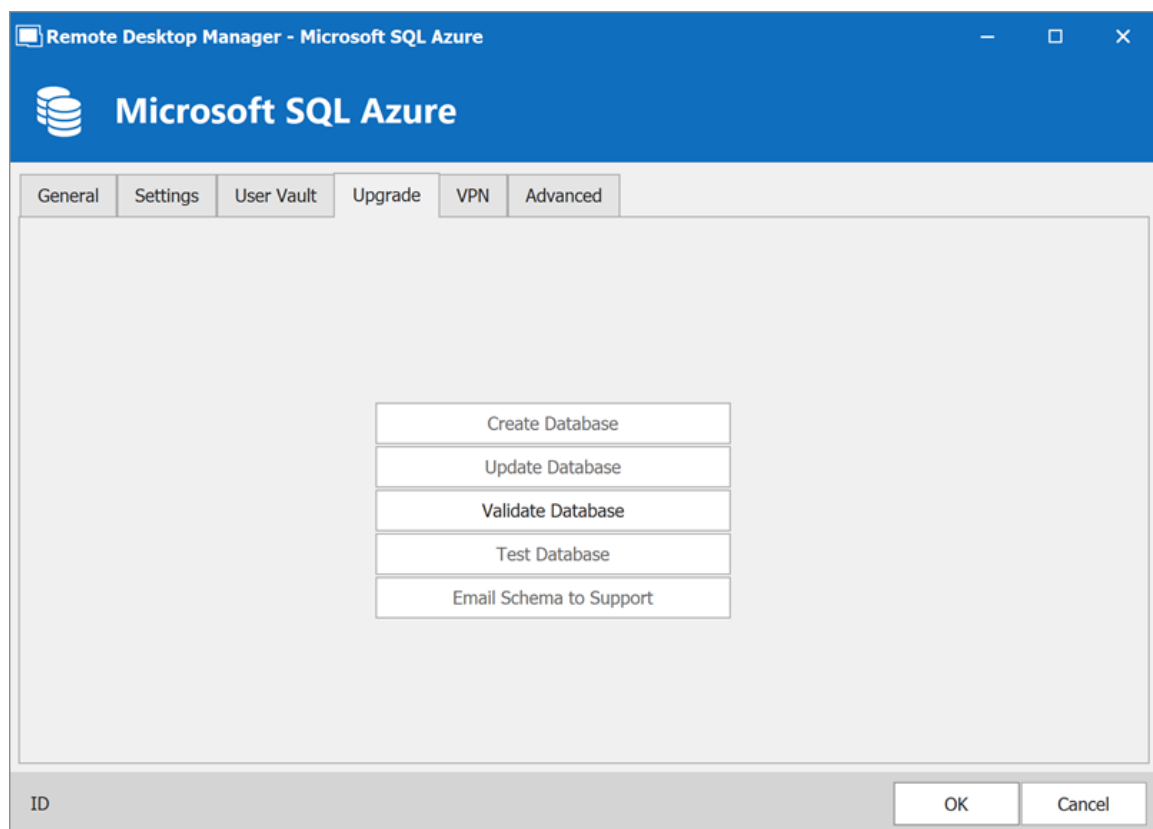


Microsoft Azure SQL - User Vault Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Type	<p>Select the type of User Vault to use. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default: use the default User Vault, which is stored in the database. • None: disable the User Vault for all users.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Online Drive: use a Devolutions Online Drive file (*.dod) as a User Vault.

UPGRADE



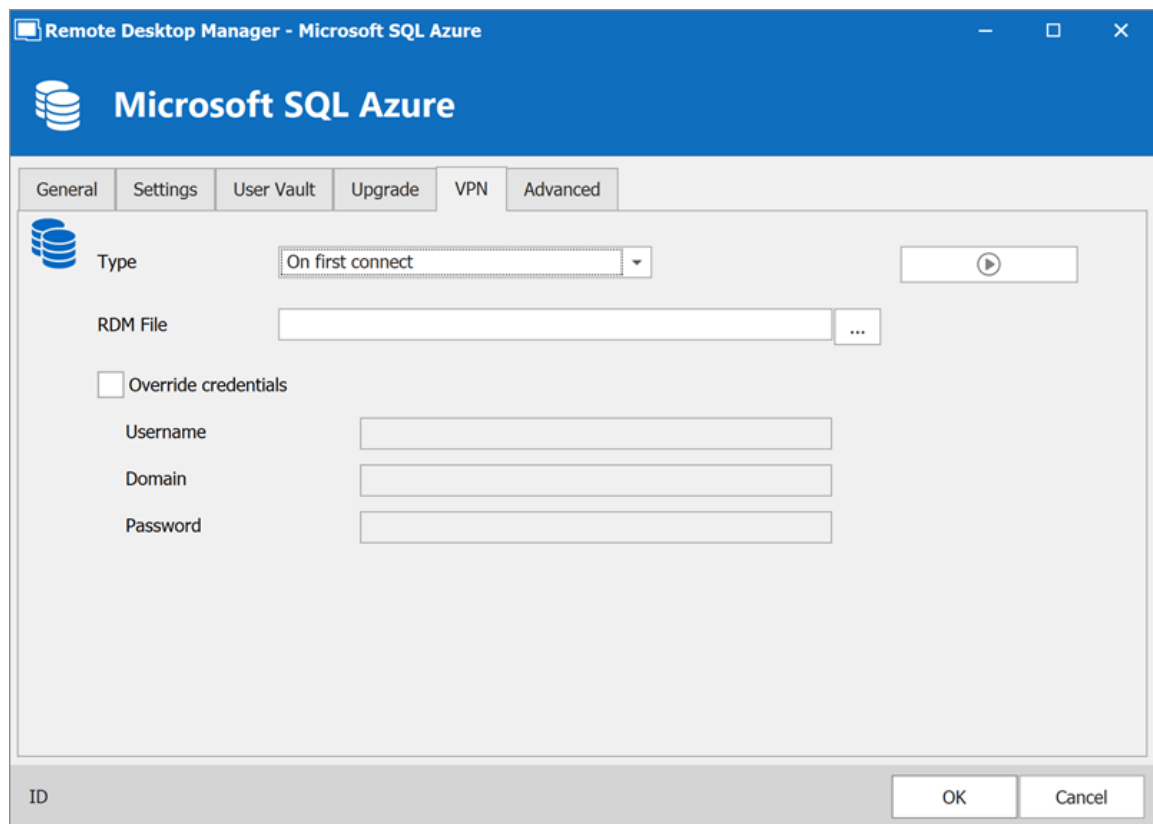
Microsoft Azure SQL - Upgrade Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Create Database	Create the database on the SQL server to use Remote Desktop Manager.
Update Database	Update the database on the SQL server, if required to use Remote Desktop Manager.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Test Database	Test the connection with the database to validate if the proper information has been provided.
Email Schema to Support	Send your schema to the Devolutions Support team.

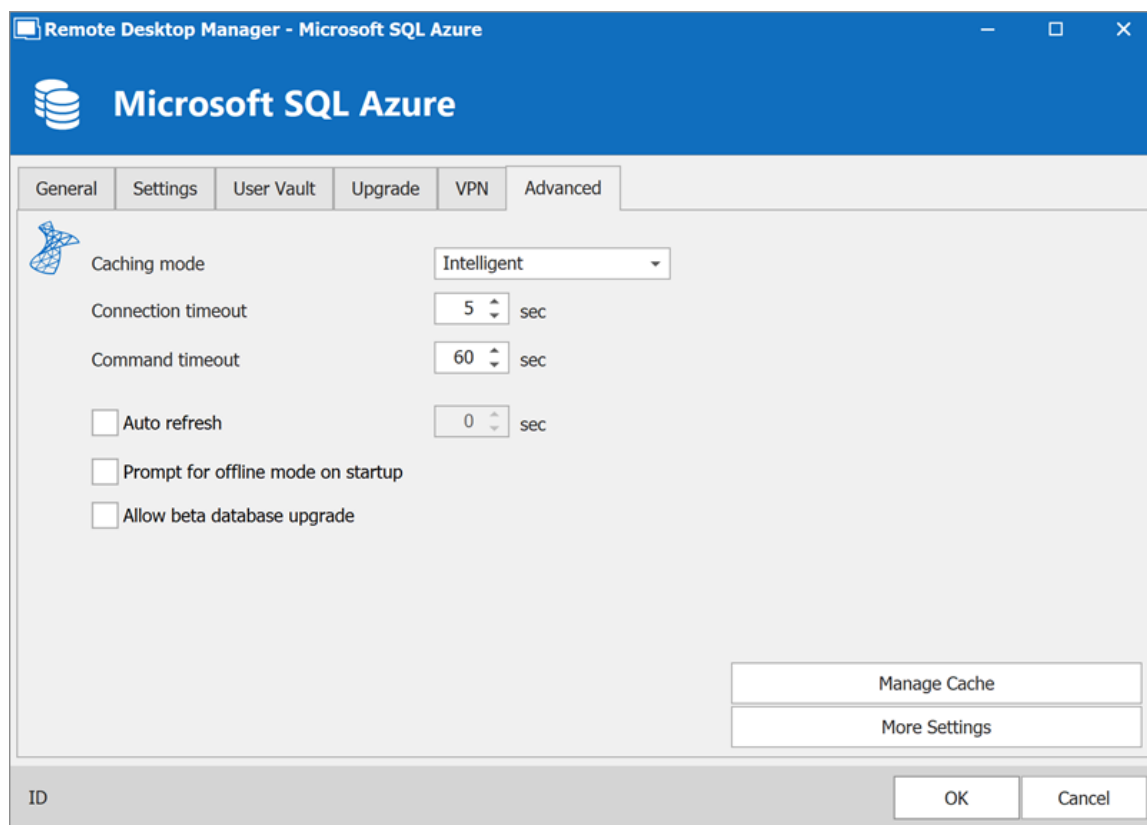
VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **Microsoft Azure SQL** database.



Microsoft Azure SQL - VPN

ADVANCED



Microsoft Azure SQL - Advanced Tab

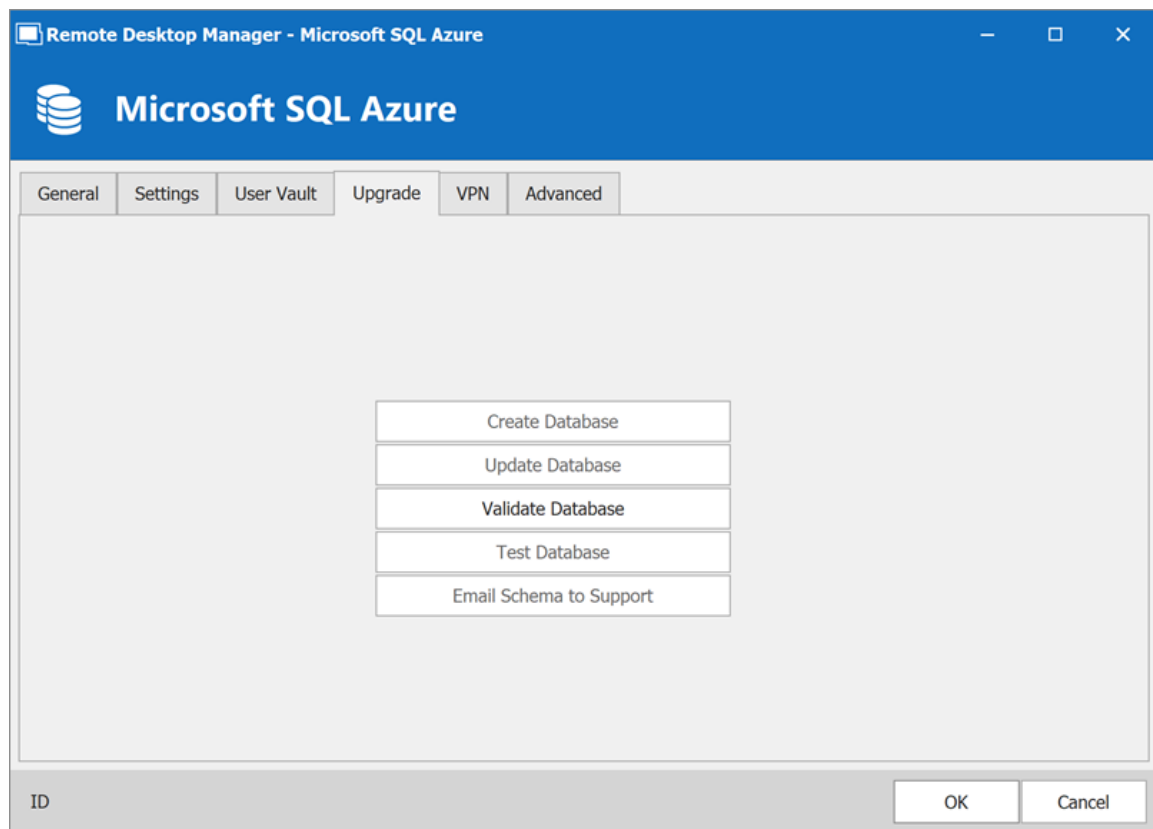
OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Caching mode	Determines how the entries will be reloaded in the data source. For more information, please consult the Caching topic.
Connection timeout	Set the delay of the connection timeout.
Command timeout	Set the delay of the command timeout.
Auto refresh	Set the interval for the automatic refresh.
Prompt for offline mode	Ask to use the data source in offline mode when a user connects to the data source.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
on startup	
Allow beta database upgrade	Allow beta upgrade of the database (when using a beta version of Remote Desktop Manager).
Manage Cache	Manage the data source cache. On large data sources caching is a must and will increase performance significantly. For more information, please consult the Manage Cache topic.
More Settings	Edit the connection string values directly.

5.4.1.3.1 Configure Azure SQL

DESCRIPTION

1. Make sure that you have a valid **Microsoft Azure SQL** subscription to be able to create your database.
2. Follow the steps in the [Create a data source](#) topic. On Step 4, before testing server or otherwise verifying the connection, continue with the steps below.
3. Select the **Upgrade** tab and click the **Create Database** button. If the database is already created on the Microsoft Azure SQL Server, click the **Update Database** button to add the appropriate tables to the database.

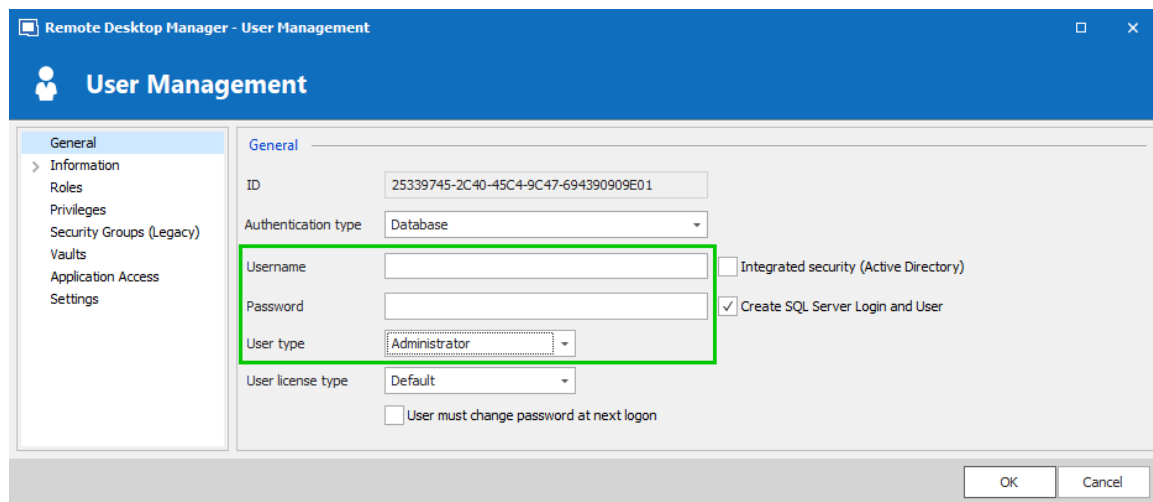


Upgrade Tab

4. Once the database is created, create an administrator account for the database via the [Administration - User Management](#) menu.



If the database is created using a system administrator (example: SA), we recommend to keep this user only for the database creation and the [database upgrade](#). A Remote Desktop Manager administrator account must be created first. Then, regular users are created with this administrator account.



Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

ID: 25339745-2C40-45C4-9C47-694390909E01

Authentication type: Database

Username: [Text Box]

Password: [Text Box]

User type: Administrator

User license type: Default

☐ Integrated security (Active Directory)

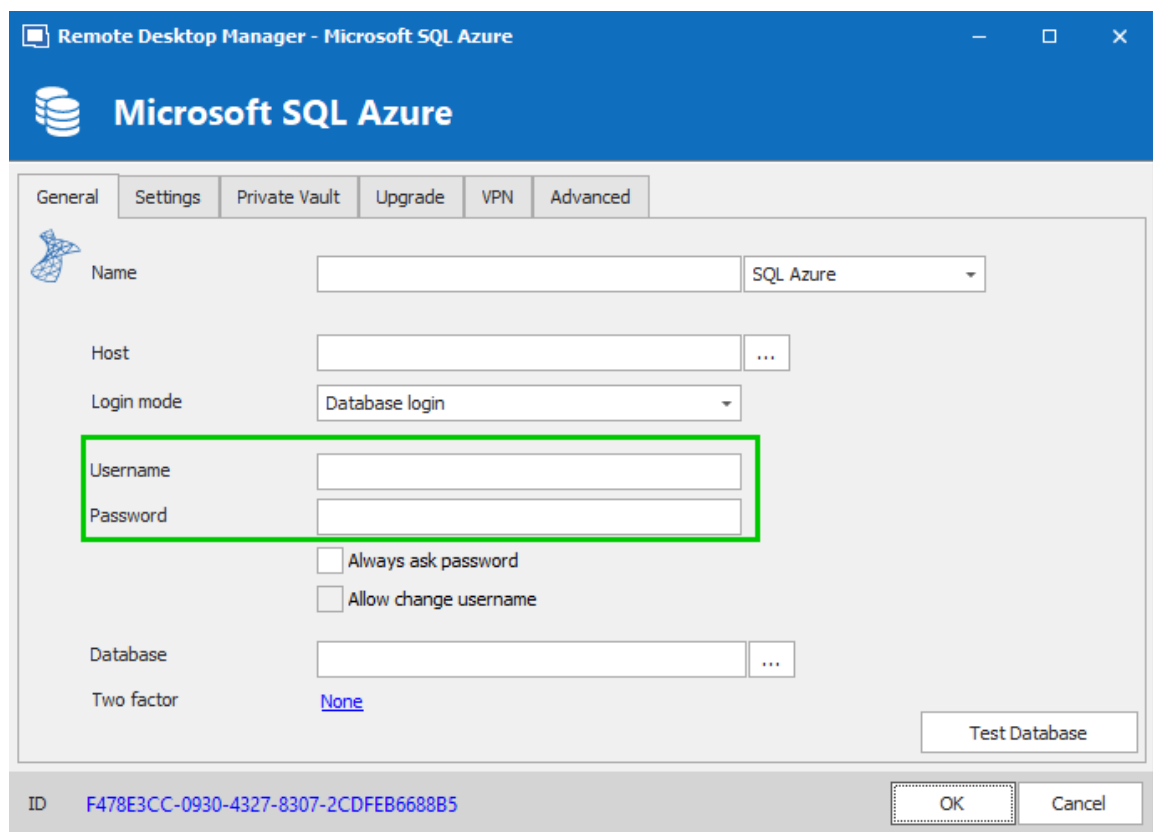
☒ Create SQL Server Login and User

☐ User must change password at next logon

OK Cancel

Create a Remote Desktop Manager Administrator Account

5. Connect on the Microsoft Azure SQL database with the Remote Desktop Manager administrator account. To do so, edit the data source used to create the database and change the login information for the administrator account that you have created.



Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft SQL Azure

Microsoft SQL Azure

General Settings Private Vault Upgrade VPN Advanced

Name: [Text Box] SQL Azure

Host: [Text Box] ...

Login mode: Database login

Username: [Text Box]

Password: [Text Box]

☐ Always ask password

☐ Allow change username

Database: [Text Box] ...

Two factor: None

Test Database

ID: F478E3CC-0930-4327-8307-2CDFEB6688B5

OK Cancel

Connection to the Database with the RDM Administrator Account

The Microsoft Azure SQL data source is now correctly configured.

5.4.1.3.2 Enable Azure Active Directory Authentication

5.4.1.3.2.1 Configure the Active Directory Admin

DESCRIPTION

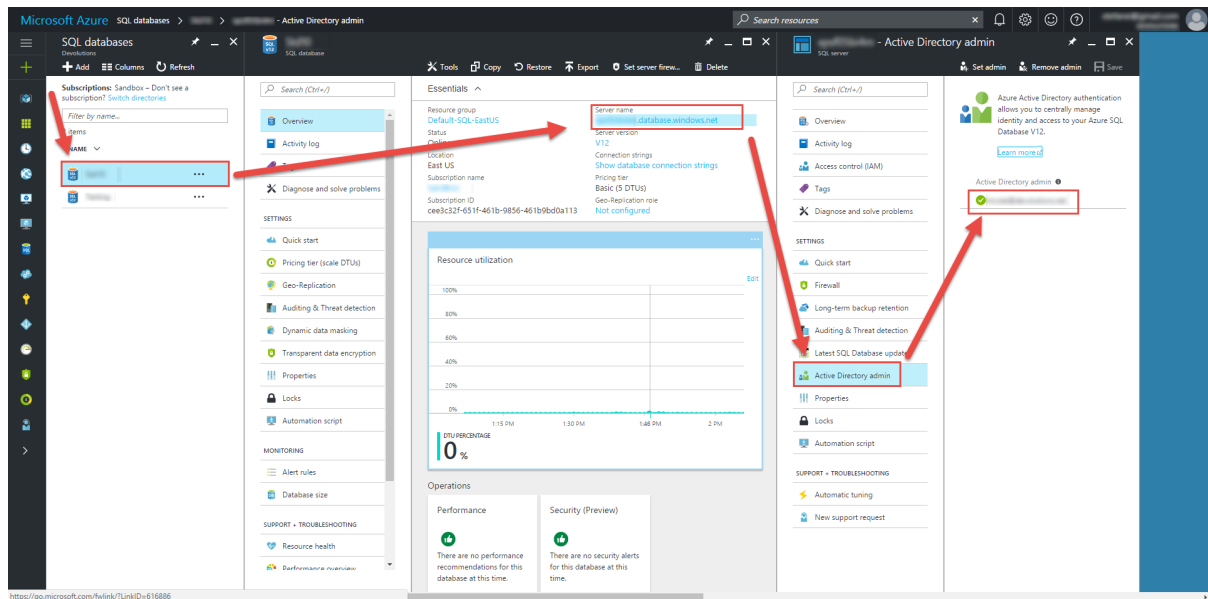
To enable SQL Server Azure Active Directory Authentication you must first configure the Azure Active Directory admin of the server.



It may take a few minutes for this change to propagate. You might experience a time delay before being able to connect with this Active Directory account.

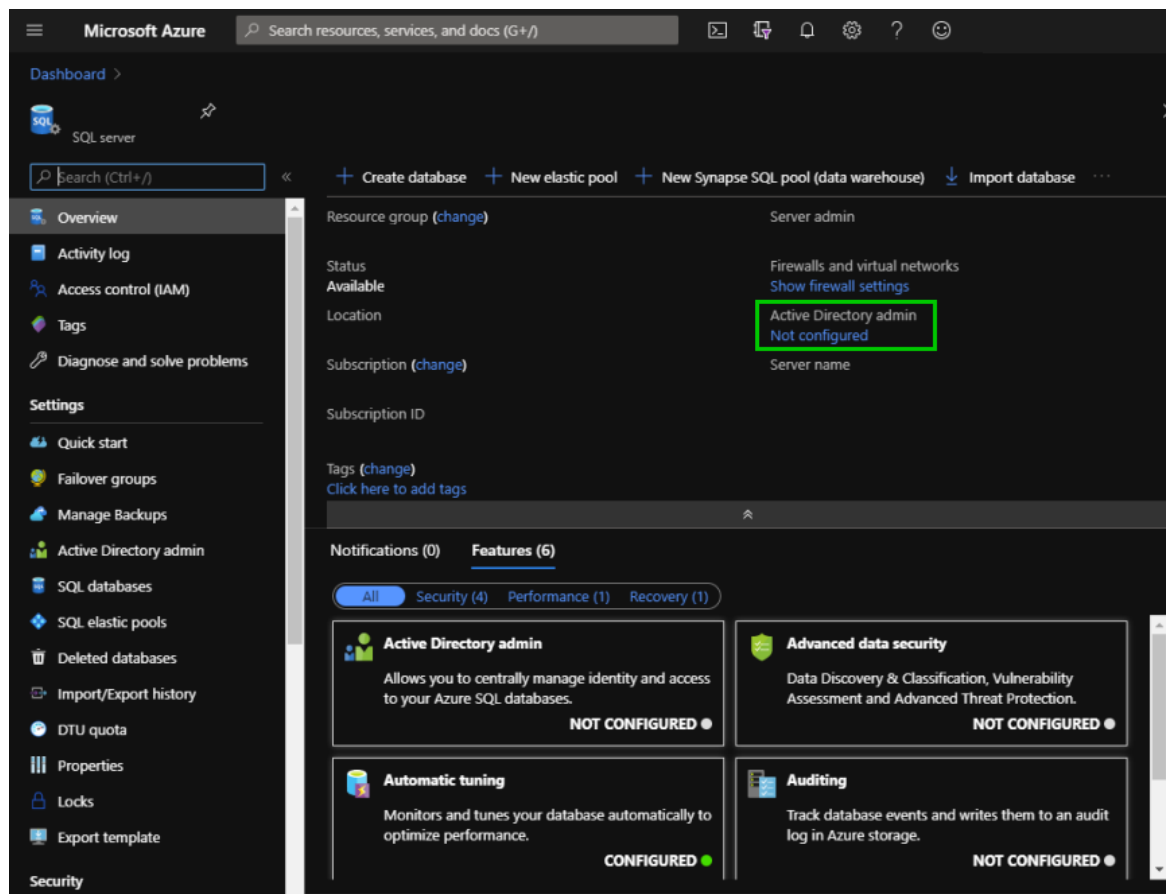


You can use an existing Microsoft Azure account if you already have one created. It is not necessary to create another to perform the following steps.

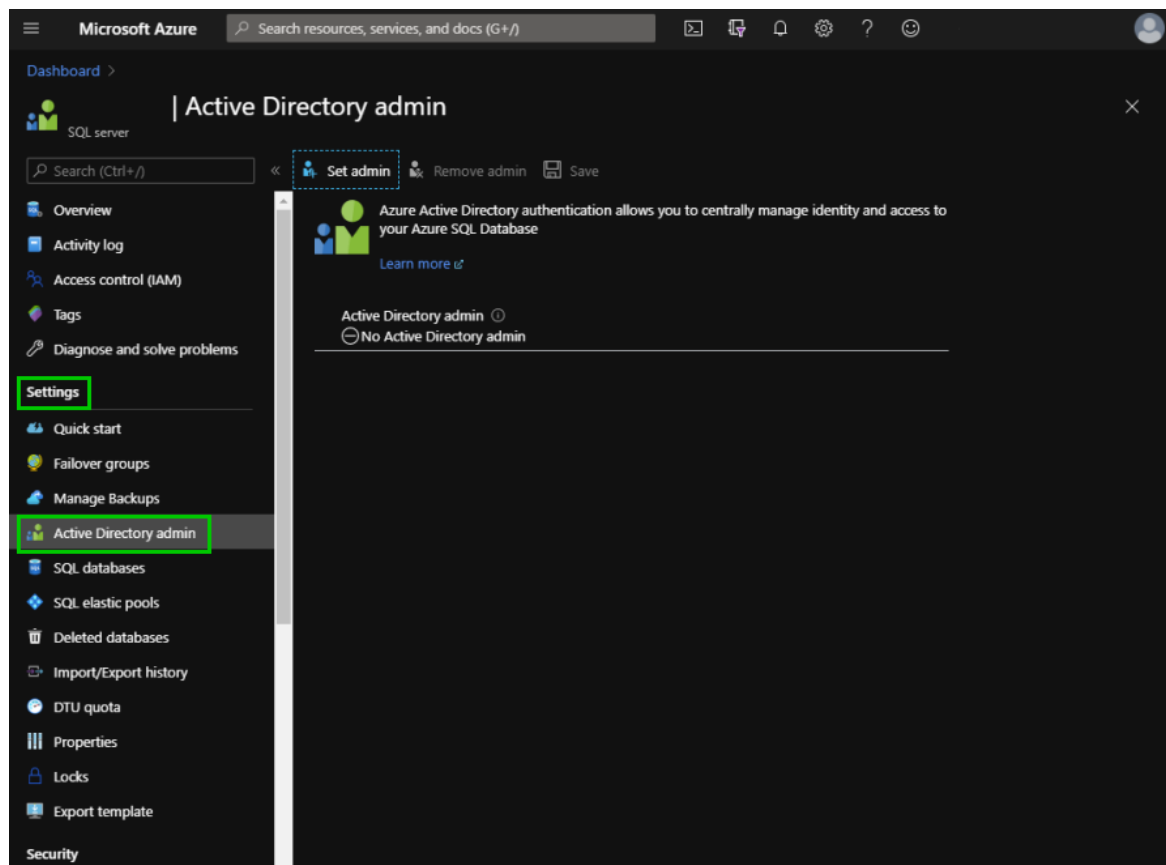


Azure AD Portal

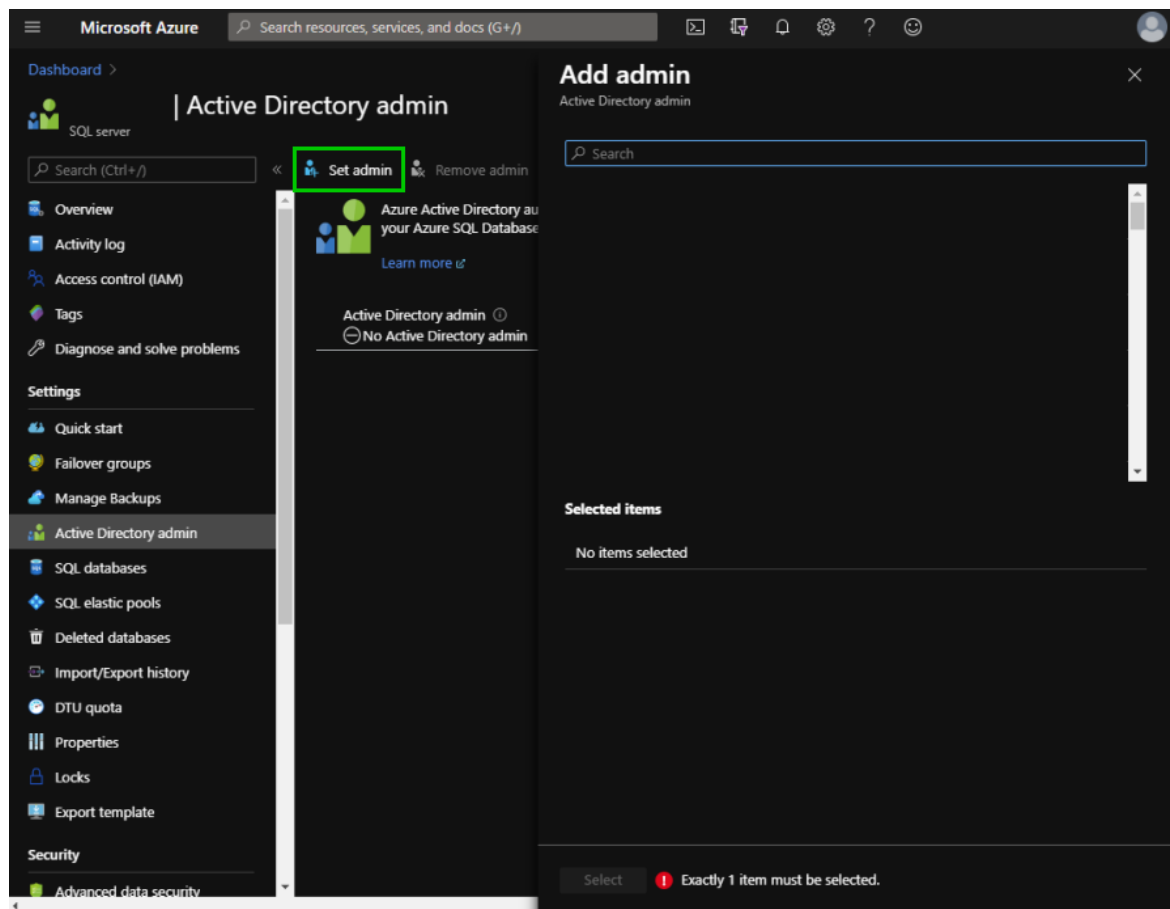
1. Has show in the **Overview** tab the **Active Directory admin** is set to **Not configured**.



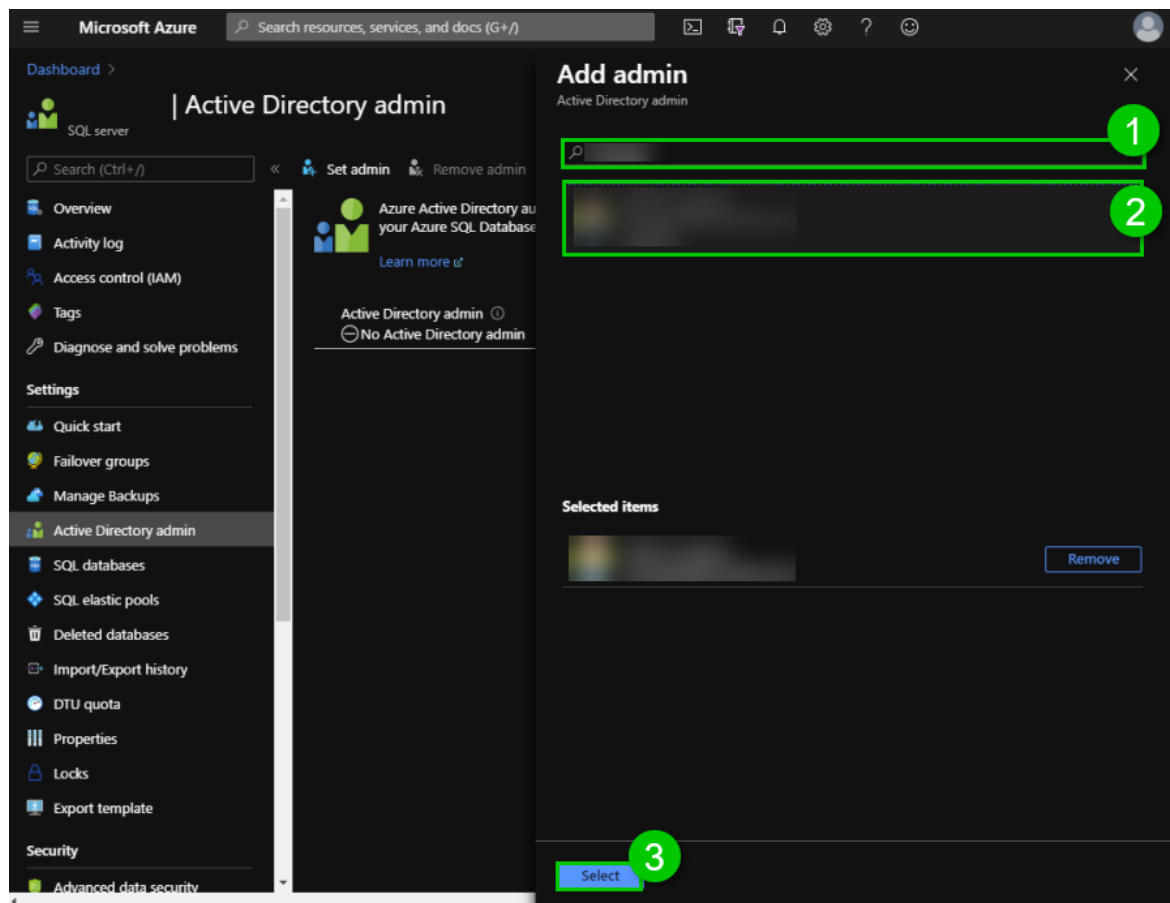
2. Click on **Active Directory admin** under **Settings** in the left menu.



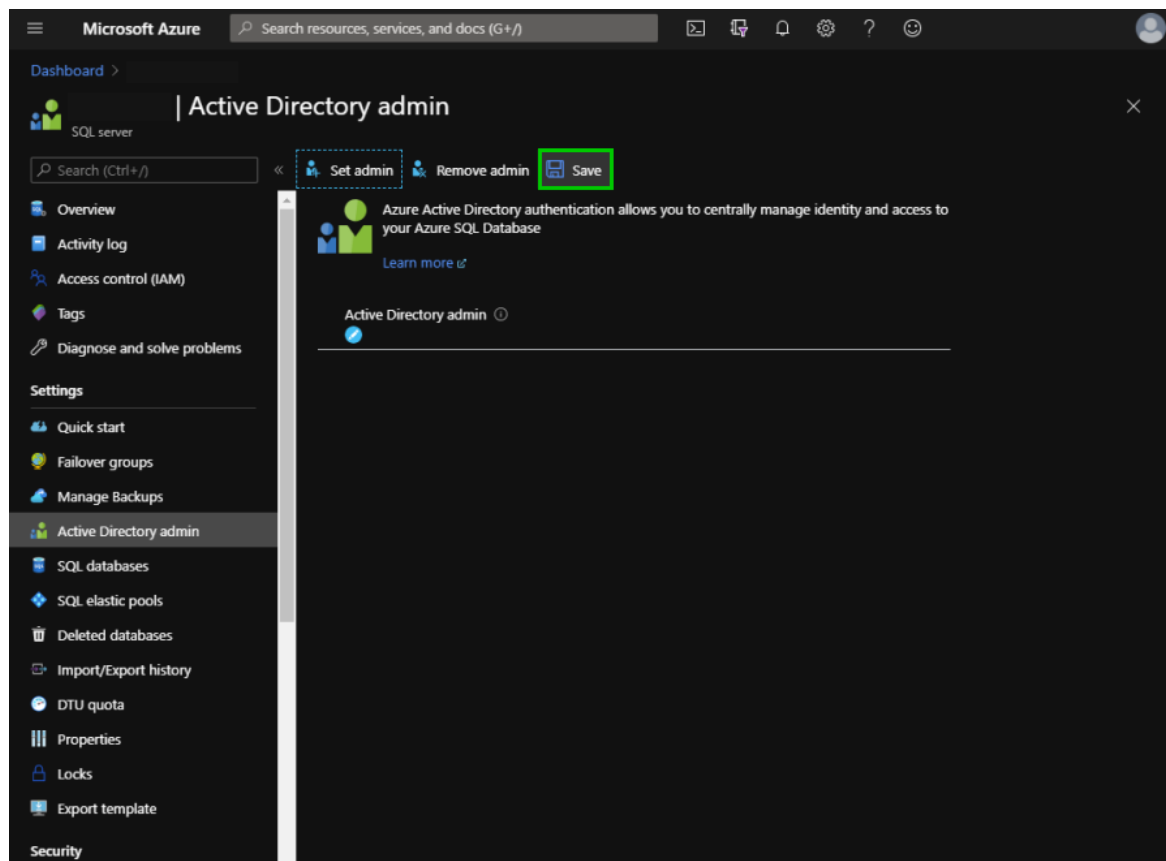
3. Click on **Set admin** to search for the admin.



4. Type the admin name in the **Search** field, click on the admin in the list provided and then **Select**.



5. To finish the process click on **Save**.



6. Copy the **Active Directory admin** email, it is essential for the next steps.

5.4.1.3.2.2 Create an Azure Active Directory App Registration

DESCRIPTION

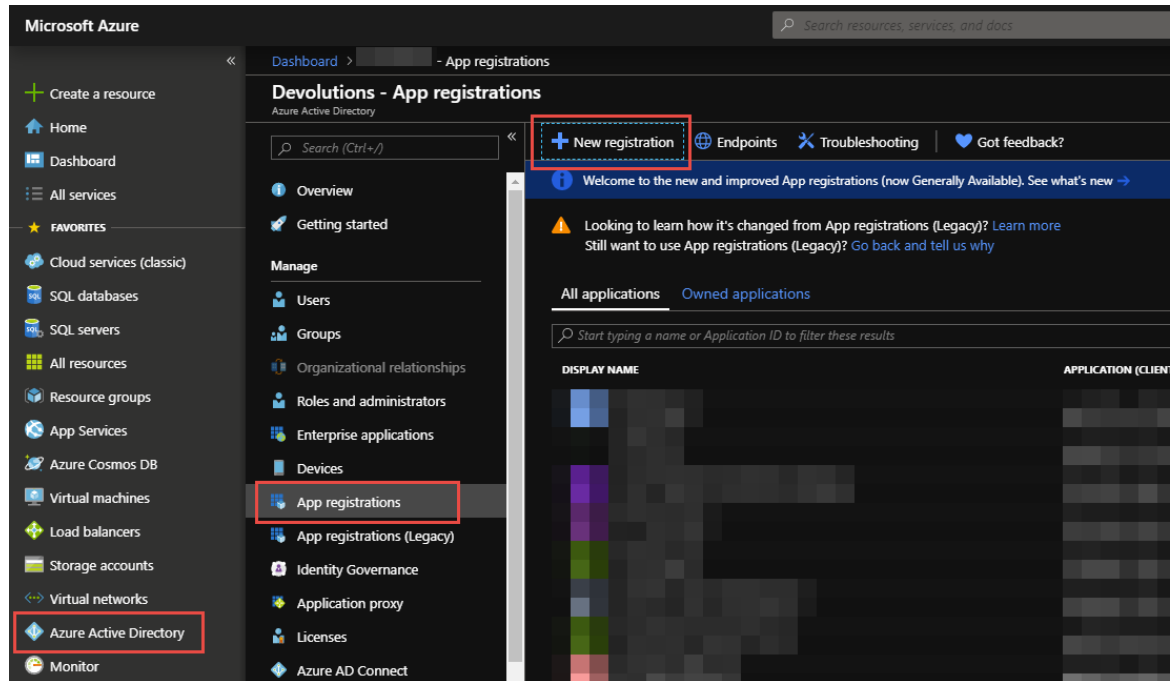


This step is optional and not required if your Remote Desktop Manager version is 2022.1 and higher.

To be able to use the **Active Directory Interactive (with MFA Support)** authentication method in Remote Desktop Manager, a new app registration needs to be registered in the Microsoft Azure SQL console (Azure Active Directory) with the appropriate API permissions.

SETTINGS

1. Login on [Azure Portal](#).
2. In the **Azure Active Directory** section, select **App registrations** and then, **New registration**.



App Registration

3. Configure the **Name**.

A screenshot of the 'Register an application' form in the Azure portal. The form has a title 'Register an application' and a section for 'Name'. The 'Name' field is highlighted with a red rectangle and contains the text 'RDM-App-Registration'. Below the field is a green checkmark icon. The text below the field reads: 'The user-facing display name for this application (this can be changed later).'

4. Select the **Supported account types**.

Supported account types

Who can use this application or access this API?

- ☒ Accounts in this organizational directory only (Devolutions only - Single tenant)
- ☐ Accounts in any organizational directory (Any Azure AD directory - Multitenant)
- ☐ Accounts in any organizational directory (Any Azure AD directory - Multitenant) and personal Microsoft accounts (e.g. Skype, Xbox)

[Help me choose...](#)

5. Configure the **Redirect URI** as indicated below and click **Register**.



The **Redirect URI** setting MUST be configured **Public client/native (mobile & desktop)**.



In our example the **Redirect URI** is set to `https://mycompany.com`, but we suggest you personalize it to the domain of your company home page. This will be necessary in the authentication step of the topic [Configure RDM Active Directory Interactive \(with MFA\)](#).

Redirect URI (optional)

We'll return the authentication response to this URI after successfully authenticating the user. Providing this now is optional and it can be changed later, but a value is required for most authentication scenarios.

Public client/native (mobile ...

`https://mycompany.com`

6. Select **APIs my organization uses**, then type **Azure** and select **Azure SQL Database**.

Request API permissions

Select an API

[Microsoft APIs](#) **[APIs my organization uses](#)** [My APIs](#)

Apps in your directory that expose APIs are shown below

NAME	APPLICATION (CLIENT) ID
Azure Analysis Services	4ac7d521-0382-477b-b0f8-7e1d95f85ca2
Azure Container Registry	6a0ec4d3-30cb-4a83-91c0-ae56bc0e3d26
Azure Data Lake	e9f49c6b-5ce5-44c8-925d-015017e9f7ad
Azure DevOps	499b84ac-1321-427f-aa17-267ca6975798
Azure Key Vault	cfa8b339-82a2-471a-a3c9-0fc0be7a4093
Azure Media Services	374b2a64-3b6b-436b-934c-b820eacca870
Azure Pipelines Hub (Prod)	4a01d87e-8a5d-464d-b2c4-b79c37359a12
Azure Pipelines Hub (Staging)	602e6588-03e5-4c84-ad02-9552a6521637
Azure SQL Database	022907d3-0f1b-48f7-badc-1ba6abab6d66
Azure Storage	e406a681-f3d4-42a8-90b6-c2b029497af1
AzureDatabricks	2ff814a6-3304-4ab8-85cb-cd0e6f879c1d

APIs my organization uses

7. Select **Delegated permissions – user_impersonation** and click **Add permissions**.

Request API permissions

< All APIs

AS Azure SQL Database
https://database.windows.net/

What type of permissions does your application require?

Delegated permissions
Your application needs to access the API as the signed-in user.

Application permissions
Your application runs as a background service or daemon without a signed-in user.

Select permissions expand all

Type to search

PERMISSION	ADMIN CONSENT REQUIRED
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> user_impersonation Access Azure SQL DB and Data Warehouse ⓘ	-

Add permissions Discard

user_impersonation

8. The **API permissions** should look like this. You will see the new permission we just added and the preexisting Microsoft Graph.

API permissions

Applications are authorized to use APIs by requesting permissions. These permissions show up during the consent process where users are given the opportunity to grant/deny access.

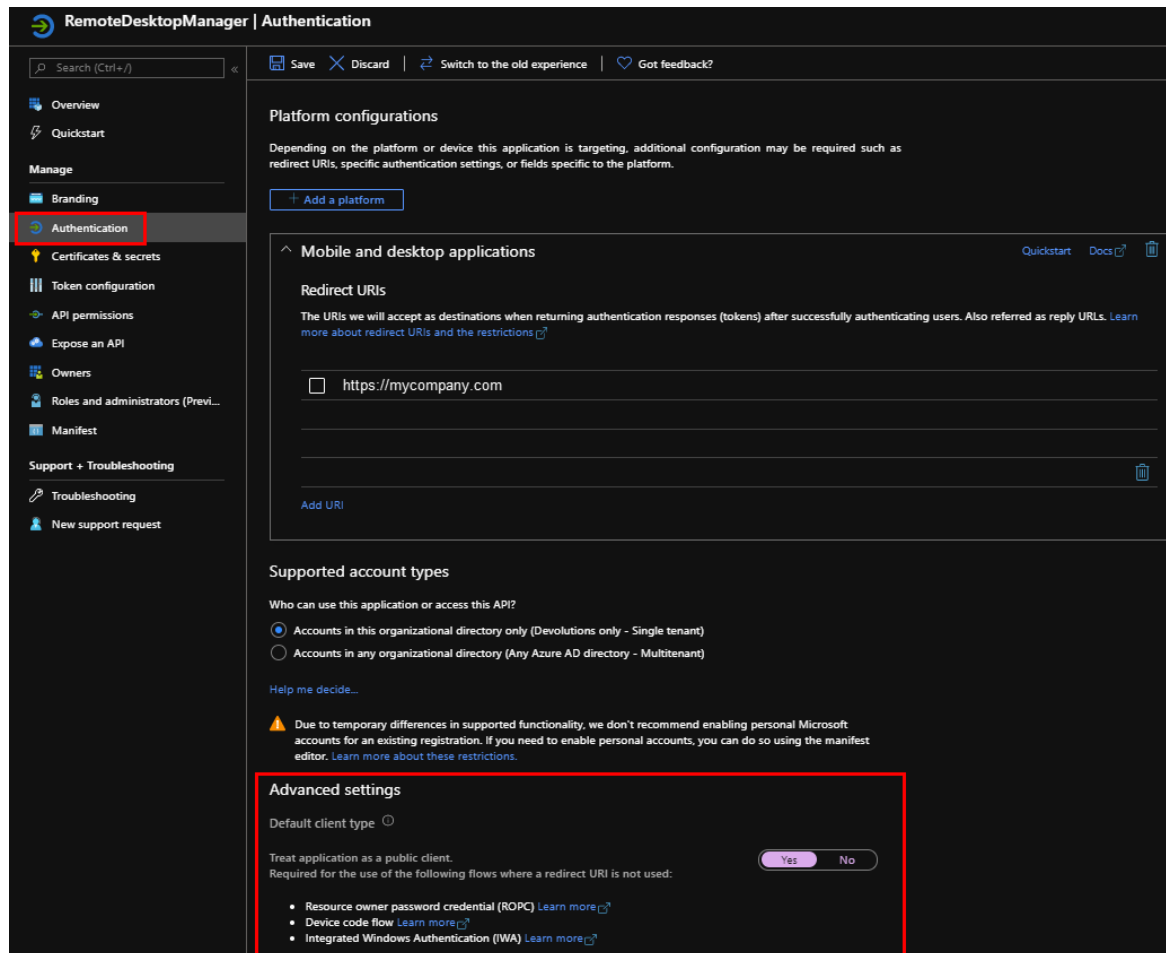
[+ Add a permission](#)

API / PERMISSIONS NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	ADMIN CONSENT REQUIRED
▼ Azure SQL Database (1)			
user_impersonation	Delegated	Access Azure SQL DB and Data Warehouse	-
▼ Microsoft Graph (1)			
User.Read	Delegated	Sign in and read user profile	-

These are the permissions that this application requests statically. You may also request user consent-able permissions dynamically through code. [See best practices for requesting permissions](#)

API / Permissions Name

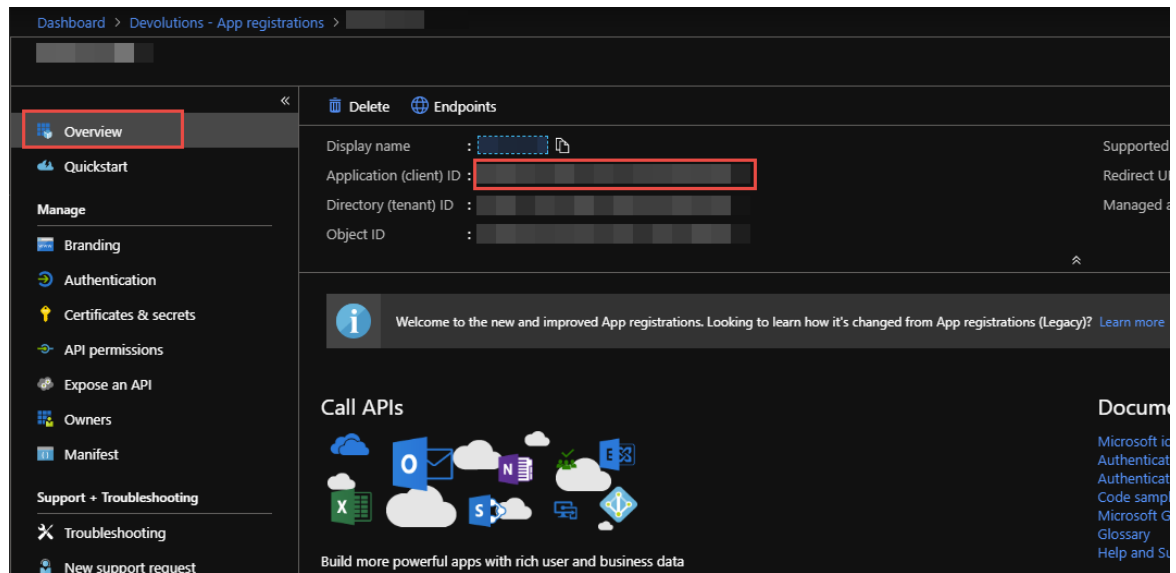
9. **Optional step:** Click on the **Authentication** section and switch to **Yes**, if you desire the **Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA)** option



Authentication

10. Your **Azure Active Directory App Registration** is now completed.

11. Copy the **App Registration's Application (client) ID** needed in Remote Desktop Manager in the next step.



Application (client) ID

5.4.1.3.2.3 Configure RDM Active Directory Interactive (with MFA)

DESCRIPTION



This topic is for Remote Desktop Manager version 2022.1 and higher. If you are using an older version please follow this [topic](#) instead.

Active Directory Interactive (with MFA Support) allows you to authenticate on your [Microsoft Azure SQL](#) data source using your Office365 account + MFA.



When creating SQL Active Directory users, you must be logged in with an Azure Active Directory user. Otherwise it will fail and you will be notified of the error.

Use the servers defined Azure Active Directory Admin to create your first RDM admin users. Once you've created, you can use this new account to create other users.

SETTINGS

Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft Azure SQL

Microsoft Azure SQL

General Settings User Vault Upgrade VPN Advanced

Name: Windjammer Microsoft Azure SQL

Host: windjammer.database.windows.net ...

Login mode: Active Directory Interactive (with MFA support)

Username: admin@windjammer.com

☐ Allow change username

Database: RDM

Two factor: [None](#)

Test Database

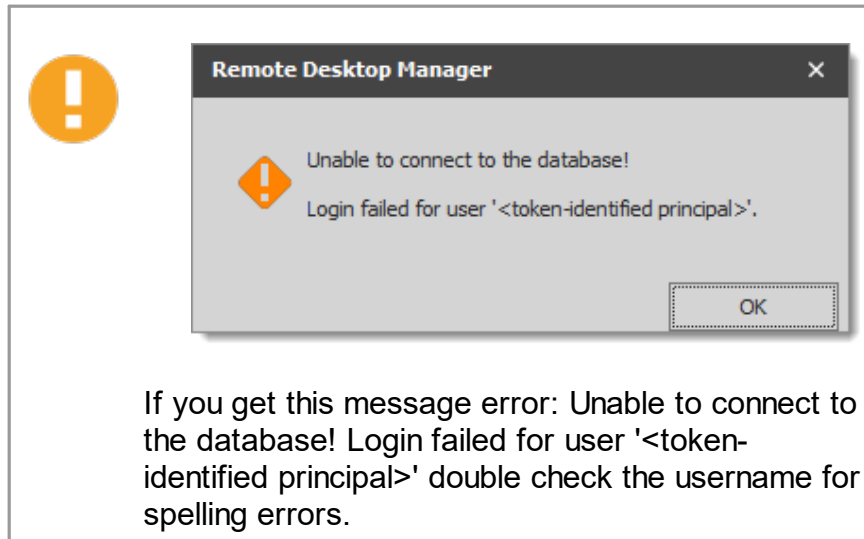
OK Cancel

Azure with MFA

1. Select **Active Directory Interactive (with MFA Support)** from the **Login mode** dropdown menu.
2. In the **Username** field, paste the **Active Directory admin** email you created in the Microsoft Azure SQL databases.



On first connect, the username must be the Active Directory Admin as defined in the [Configure the Active Directory Admin](#). Once you add other AD user in RDM they will be able to connect.



3. Configure the database to authenticate in the **Database** field.

5.4.1.3.2.4 Configure RDM Older Version AD Interactive (with MFA)

DESCRIPTION



This topic is for Remote Desktop Manager versions lower than 2022.1. If you are using 2022.1 and higher please follow this [topic](#) instead.

Active Directory Interactive (with MFA Support) allows you to authenticate on your [Microsoft Azure SQL](#) data source using your Office365 account + MFA.



For Azure AD authentication, download and install the Microsoft **Active Directory Authentication Library for Microsoft SQL Server** on every client computer.

This install the required Microsoft libraries that will enable Azure AD authentication. Please download it here : <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=48742>.



When creating SQL Active Directory users, you must be logged in with an Azure Active Directory user. Otherwise it will fail and you will be notified of the error.

Use the servers defined Azure Active Directory Admin to create your first RDM admin users. Once you've created, you can use this new account to create other users.

SETTINGS

Remote Desktop Manager - Microsoft SQL Azure

Microsoft SQL Azure

General Settings User Vault Upgrade VPN Advanced

Name: Windjammer Microsoft SQL Azure

Host: windjammer.database.windows.net

Login mode: Active Directory Interactive (with MFA support) Automatic

Username: admin@windjammer.com

Azure App Settings: [Configured](#)

☐ Allow change username

Database: RDM

Two factor: [None](#)

Test Database

ID OK Cancel

1. Select **Active Directory Interactive (with MFA Support)** from the **Login mode** dropdown menu.
2. You can specify how you want RDM to interact with Azure AD during the authentication.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Default	<p>This is the default mode.</p> <p>The user will be prompted for credentials even if there is a token that meets the requirements already in the cache.</p>
Automatic (Shared in older versions)	<p>Azure AD will prompt the user for credentials only when necessary. If a token that meets the requirements is already cached then the user will not be prompted.</p>

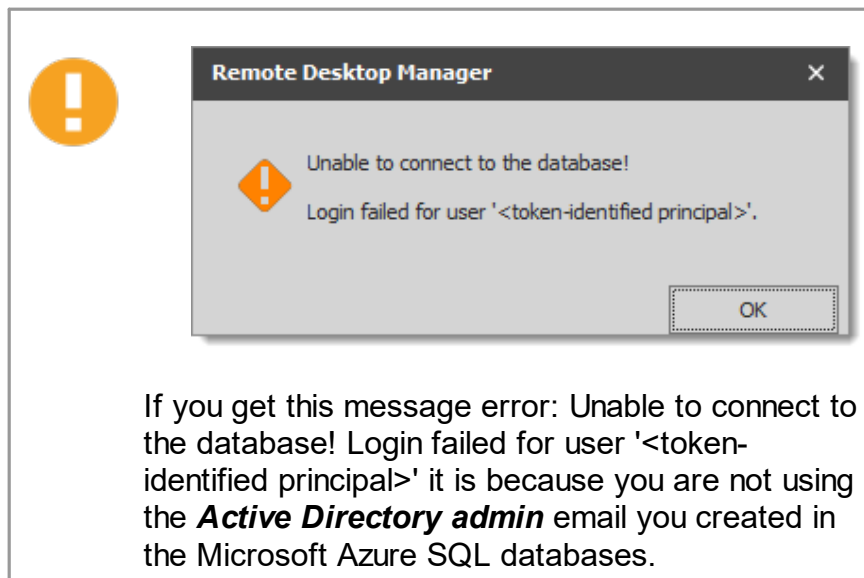


When it comes to Azure AD joined devices (registered devices). Azure AD may or may not prompt for MFA. **This is entirely controlled by Azure AD**, there is nothing we can do in RDM to force or bypass the MFA other than the **Default** or **Automatic** options mentioned above.

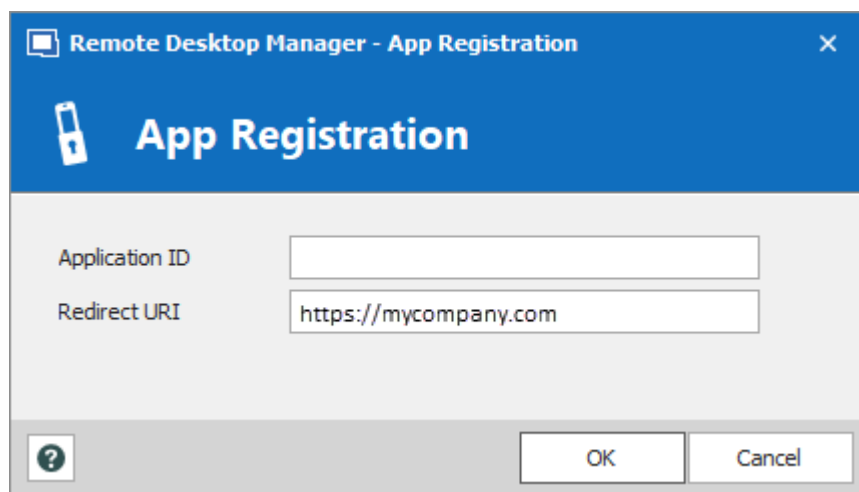
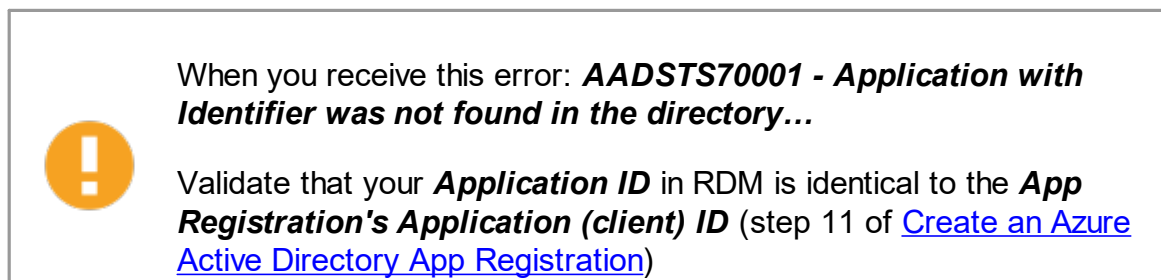
3. In the **Username** field, paste the **Active Directory admin** email you created in the Microsoft Azure SQL databases.



On first connect, the username must be the Active Directory Admin as defined in the [Configure the Active Directory Admin](#). Once you add other AD user in RDM they will be able to connect.



4. Click on **Configure** to set the [Azure App Settings](#) and enter the application ID from the Azure Active Directory App Registration and the corresponding Redirect URI.



App Registration

5. Configure the database to authenticate in the **Database** field.

5.4.1.3.2.5 Configure Azure Active Directory user in RDM

DESCRIPTION

From Remote Desktop Manager navigate to **Administration – Users**, and add a new user.

In the **Authentication type** select **Office365/Azure AD** and enter in the **Username** field the email of the user, click **Ok**.



If **Office365/Azure AD** is not available in the drop down menu of **Authentication type**, please validate that all the steps have been done as per this [topic](#).

Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

- General
- Information
- Roles
- Privileges
- Security Groups (Legacy)
- Vaults
- Application Access
- Settings

General

ID: A6AA8F25-332B-4F2B-A265-473CF02308C9

Authentication type: Office 365/Azure AD

Username:

Domain:

☐ Is guest/federated user

☒ Contained database user (recommended) ?

User type: User

User license type: Default

OK Cancel

Set the Authentication type to Office365/Azure AD



The option ***Is guest/federated user*** should only be checked in rare and special cases where the account is guest or federated. If that is the case, you will be required to enter a full domain that should resemble this: `azuresubscriptionprefix.onmicrosoft.com`



If you do not receive the MFA prompt. Please validate your Azure logs in ***Authentications Details - Result detail***. If this message appears: ***MFA requirement was skipped due to registered device***, we currently have no way to force and MFA prompt on registered devices and that's why you are not getting the MFA prompt in that case.

Details						
Basic info	Location	Device info	Authentication Details	Conditional Access	Report-only	Additional Details
Date	Authentication method	Authentication method detail	Succeeded	Result detail	Requirement	
12/6/2020, 9:53:33 PM	Password	Password in the cloud	true		Primary authentication	
12/6/2020, 9:53:33 PM	Previously satisfied		true	MFA requirement skipped due to registered device	User	

5.4.1.4 Password Hub Business

DESCRIPTION

Devolutions Password Hub Business, for businesses who need to share passwords and credentials within their organization.

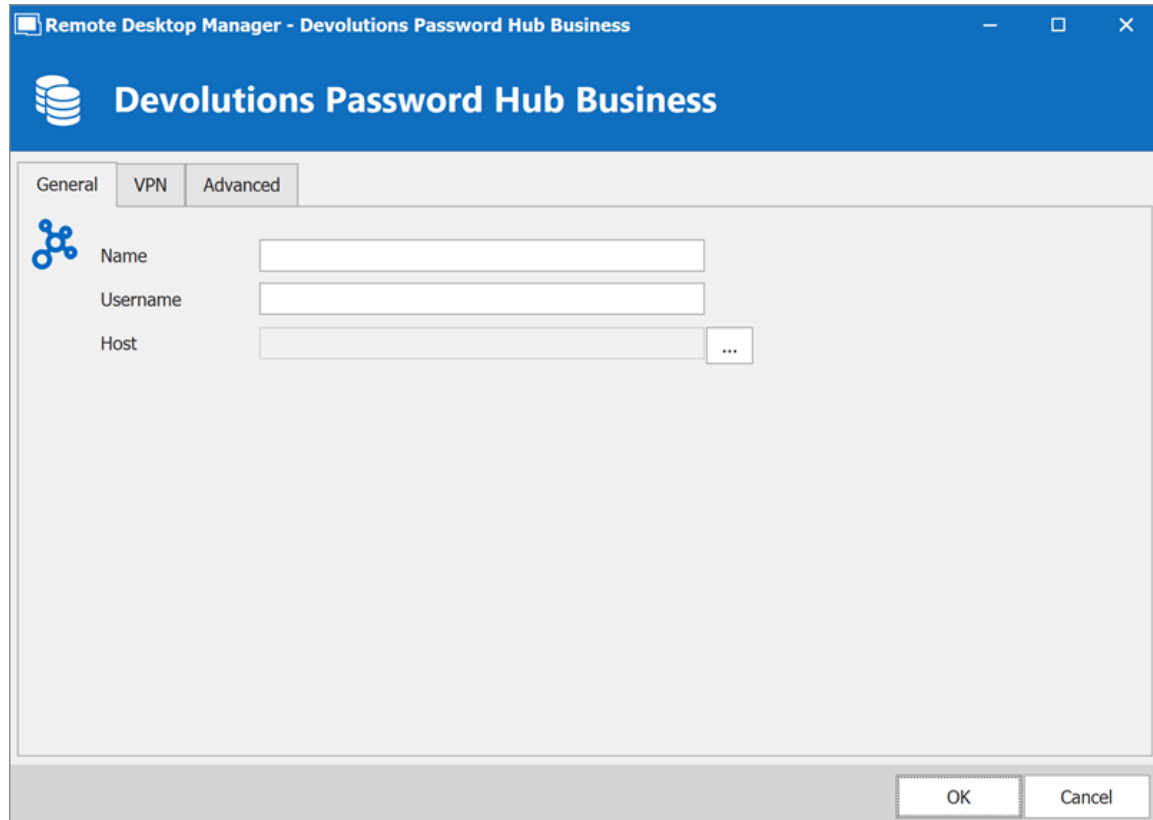
Please consult our [website](#) for more information on this service.



To start your free Devolutions Password Hub Business trial today click [here](#).

SETTINGS


GENERAL



Remote Desktop Manager - Devolutions Password Hub Business

Devolutions Password Hub Business

General VPN Advanced

 Name

Username

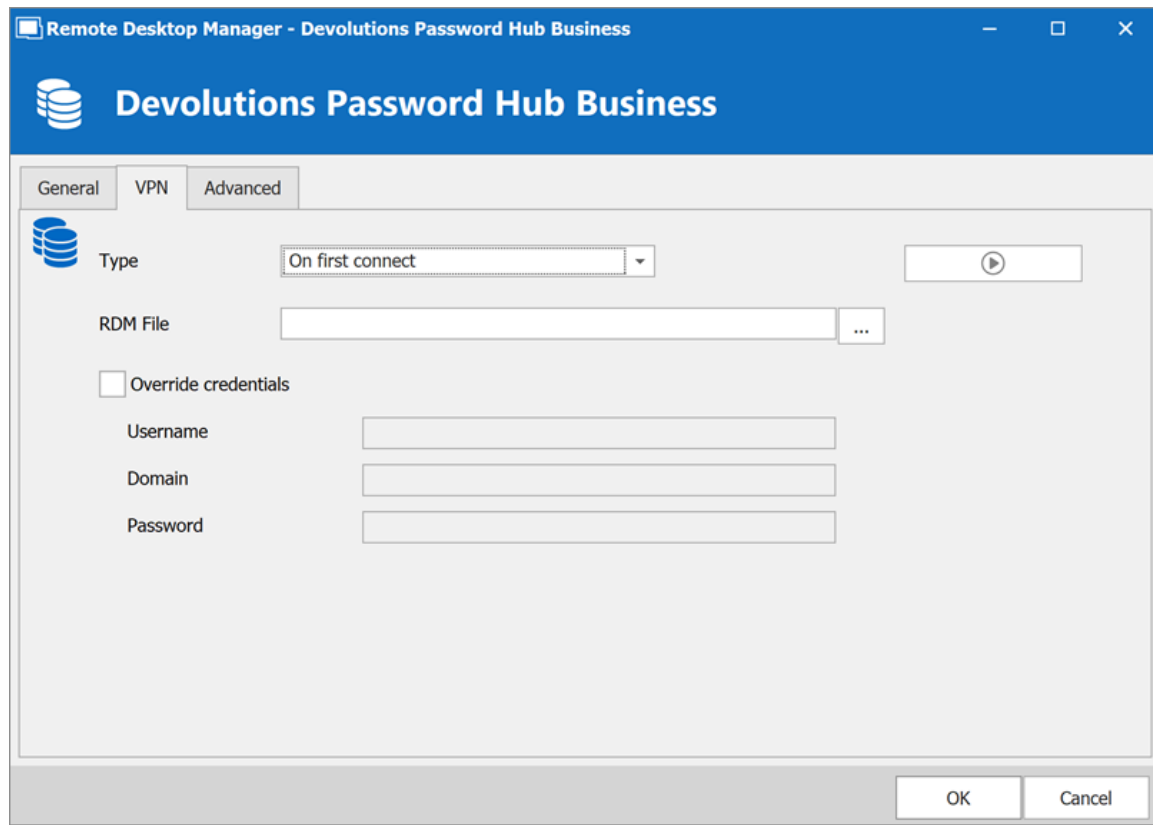
Host ...

OK Cancel

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Name of the data source.
Username	Your Devolutions Account email address.
Host	Copy in the Host your Devolutions Password Hub Business URL (ex: https://windjammer.devolutions.app/) or click on the 3 dots to get a drop down list to select from.

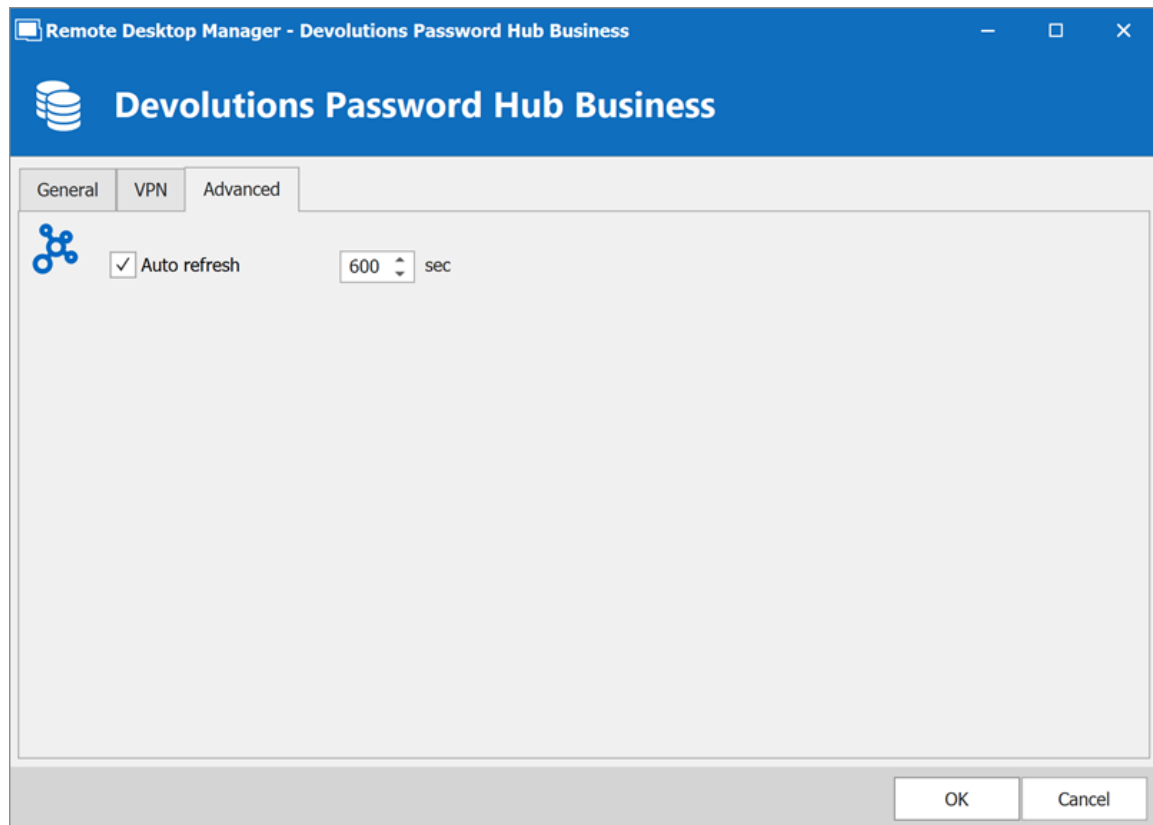
VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your Devolutions Password Hub.



ADVANCED

Set the interval for the automatic refresh.

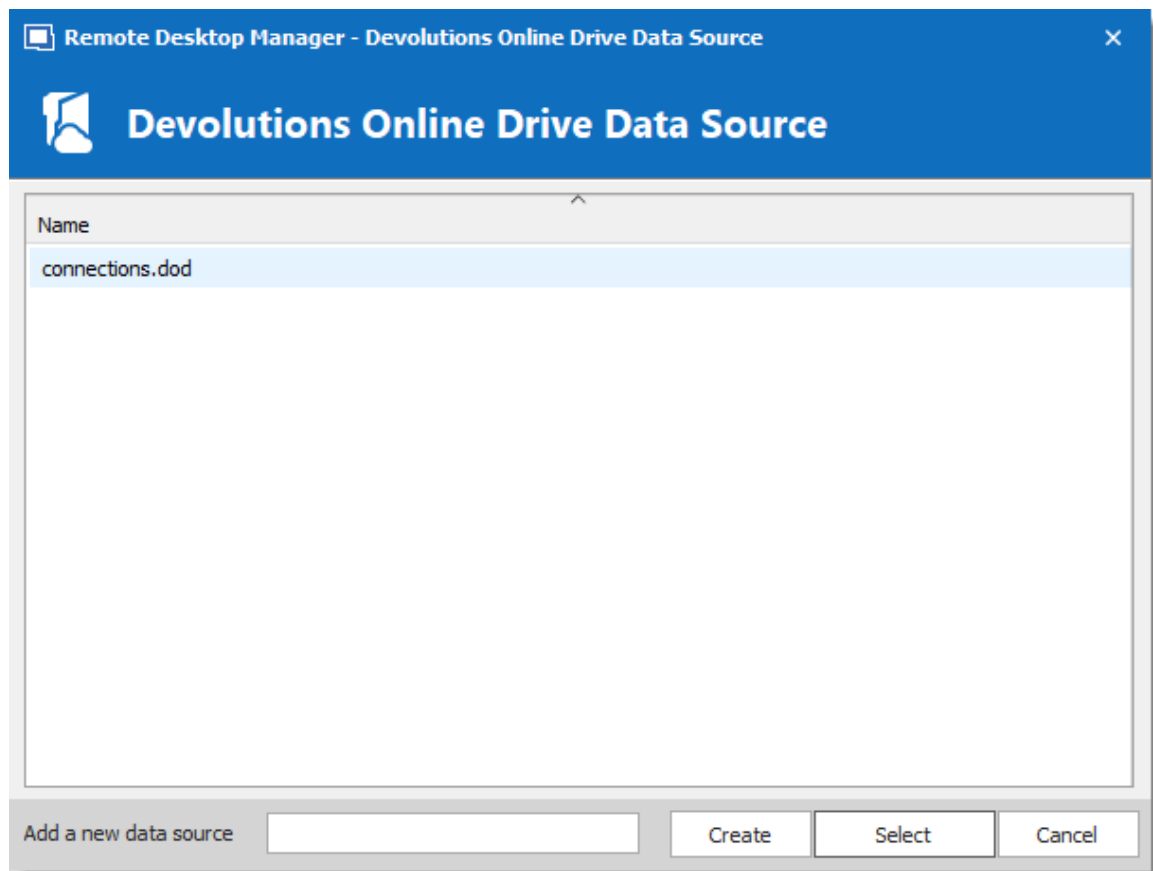


5.4.1.5 User Vault

DESCRIPTION

The **User Vault** allows you to connect a personal Vault stored in a **Devolutions Online Drive** file directly to your **Advanced Data Source**, thus allowing you to store information that only you can have access to. For more information about the User Vault please follow this [link](#).

1. In the **User Vault** tab of your Advanced Data Source, select **Online Drive** in the **Type**.
2. Click on the **ellipsis** next to the **Filename** field. A list containing your pre-existing Devolutions Online Drive files will prompt. You may choose to use an existing file (.dod) or if you wish you can enter a name in the **New data source field** and click on **Create** to automatically create a new Devolutions Online Drive file.



Devolutions Online Drive Data Source

5.4.2 DropBox

DESCRIPTION



Remote Desktop Manager uses the Dropbox API to retrieve a XML file from the configured repository. There is no need to install the Dropbox client on the machine to open the data source. It is also possible to configure more than one Dropbox account on the same machine.



The Dropbox integration uses the Dropbox SDK, so any features that are exclusive to the Business or Enterprise editions are NOT supported.

HIGHLIGHTS

- This data source can be shared over the Internet between multiple locations.
- The data source supports auto refresh.
- This is a file-based data source, based on the XML data source.
- To avoid data corruption, the session list should be modified in one location at a time.
- No need to have the Dropbox client installed to use the Dropbox data source.
- Each Dropbox data source can use a different Dropbox account.



Although it can be shared between multiple locations, there is no conflict management for the configuration. If you share with other users you may get update conflicts and run into issues. This data source type is meant for **a single user using multiple computers, not multiple users.**

SETTINGS

GENERAL

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - Dropbox' window with the 'General' tab selected. The window has a blue header with the Dropbox logo and title. Below the header are three tabs: 'General', 'VPN', and 'Advanced'. The 'General' tab contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text field containing 'Dropbox'.
- Mode:** A dropdown menu set to 'Local'.
- Local path:** A text field with a dropdown arrow.
- Full local path:** A text field containing 'connections.xml'.
- Master key:** A text field.
- Always ask master key:** A checked checkbox.
- Dropbox directory:** A text field.
- Filename:** A text field containing 'connections.xml'.
- Compress database file:** An unchecked checkbox.

At the bottom of the window, there is an 'ID' field with the value 'AAAC170C-C03C-4077-BC4F-28A717C3CB4C' and two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

Dropbox - General Tab



Remote Desktop Manager supports the 2-Factor Authentication of Dropbox. When the button **Validate with Dropbox** is pressed and the 2-Factor Authentication is enabled in Dropbox, a window prompt will open and ask for the Dropbox account password, then a second prompt will open for the security code. The security code can be received by SMS or generated by Google Authenticator.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Name of the data source.
Mode	<p>Select the mode that is preferred to configure the data source. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Account

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Local
Local path (Local Mode)	Contains the local path where the Dropbox files are accessible.
Email (Account Mode)	Contains the email address associated with the Dropbox account.
Validate with Dropbox (Account Mode)	Button to validate the email address with the Dropbox account.
Master key	Add an additional layer of security to your data source by using master key.
Always ask master key	Connecting to the data source will always prompt for the master key.
Dropbox directory	Indicate the folder in Dropbox. It should not contains any drive since it's stored online. Leave it empty to use the default Dropbox root.
Filename	Indicate the filename used to store the data on the data source.
Compress database file	Activate this option if you wish to compress your database file.

VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **Dropbox**.

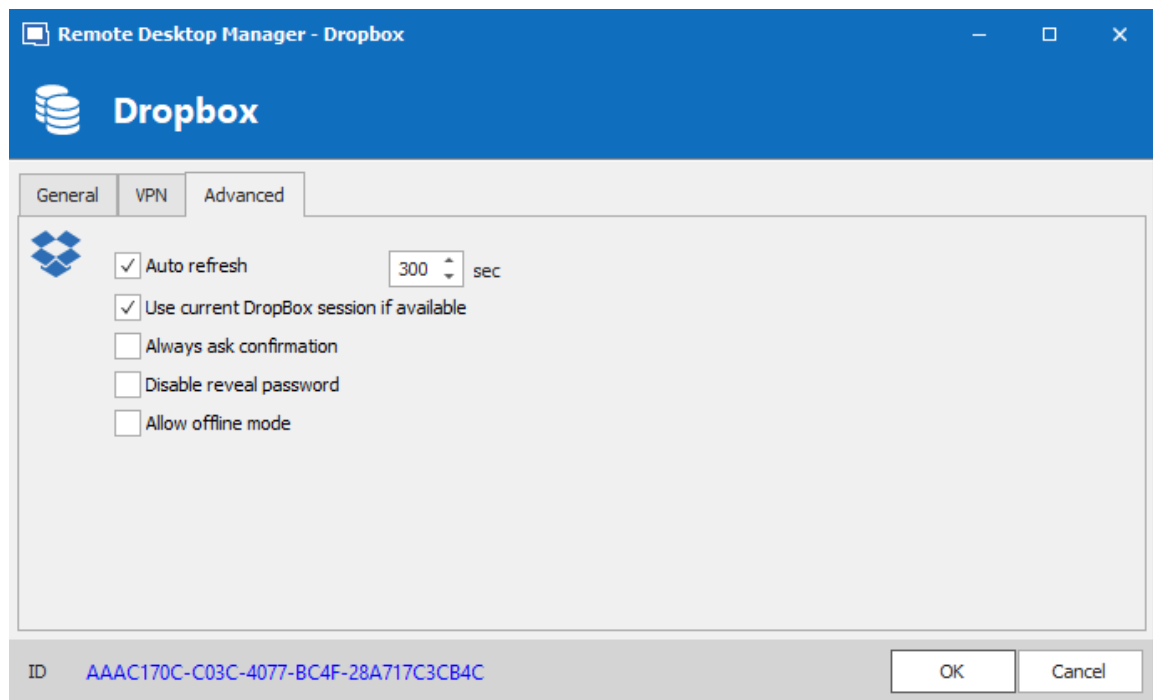
The screenshot shows a window titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Dropbox". The window has a blue header bar with the Dropbox logo and name. Below the header, there are three tabs: "General", "VPN", and "Advanced". The "VPN" tab is currently selected. The "VPN" tab contains the following fields and controls:

- Type:** A dropdown menu set to "On first connect" with a play button icon to its right.
- RDM File:** A text input field with a browse button (three dots) to its right.
- Override credentials:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Username:** A text input field.
- Domain:** A text input field.
- Password:** A text input field.

At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar showing the ID "AAAC170C-C03C-4077-BC4F-28A717C3CB4C" and two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

Dropbox - VPN Tab

ADVANCED



Dropbox - Advanced Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Auto refresh	Set the interval to use between each automatic refresh.
Use current Dropbox session if available	This option will use the Dropbox account who has been already validated without any other validation.
Always ask for confirmation	Always ask for confirmation when connecting to the data source.
Disable reveal password	Disable the reveal password feature when a user access this data source.
Allow offline mode	Allow the data source to be used in Offline mode .

5.4.3 Google Drive

DESCRIPTION



Remote Desktop Manager downloads and uploads the session settings directly from file located on an FTP site.

GENERAL

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - Google Drive' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The dialog has a blue header with the Google Drive logo and title. Below the header, there are two tabs: 'General' and 'VPN'. The 'General' tab contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Email:** A text input field.
- Password:** A text input field.
- Always ask password:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Account status:** Displays the text 'The account is not validated yet.' with a 'Validate Google Drive' button below it.
- Master key:** A text input field.
- Always ask master key:** A checked checkbox.
- Filename:** A text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog, there is an 'ID' field showing the value 'B90C0576-E259-4C83-B929-6381577FC0A2' and two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

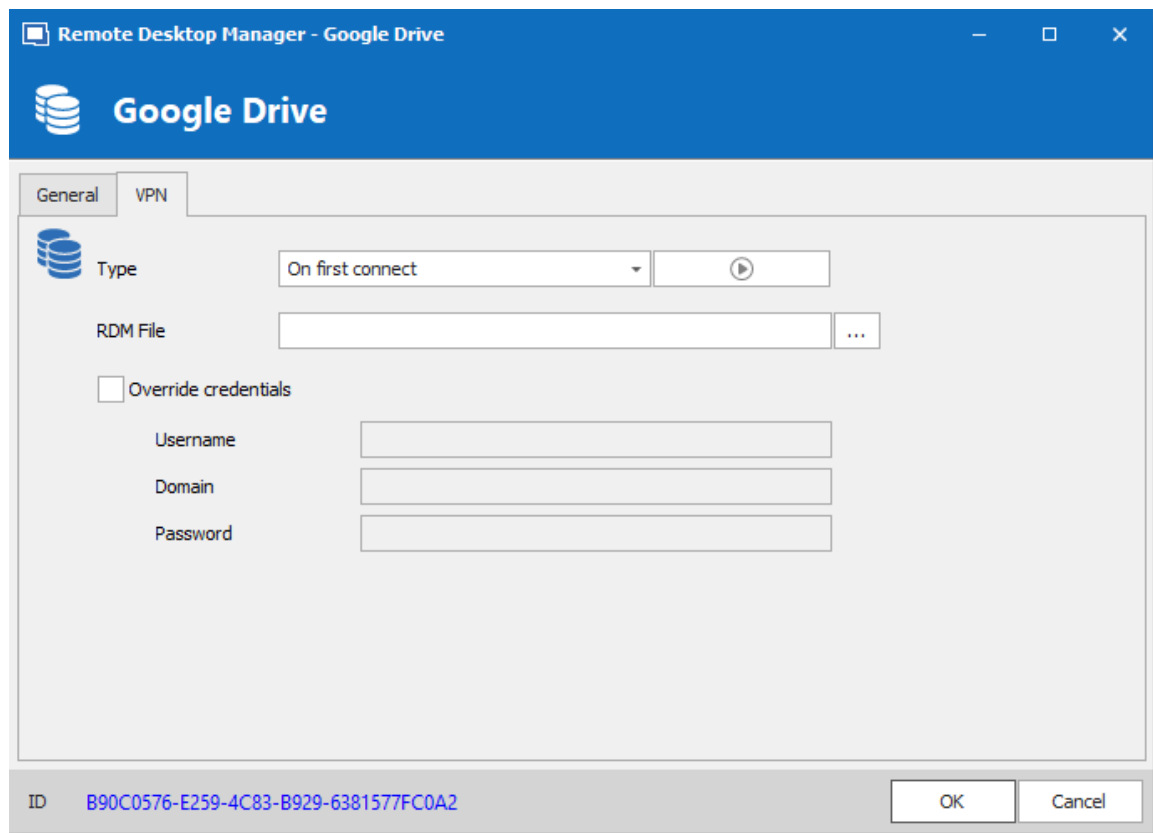
Google Drive - General Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter the name of the data source.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Email	Enter the Google email to access Google Drive.
Password	Enter the password of the Google account.
Always ask password	Always ask for the password when connecting to the data source.
Account status	Indicated if the account has been validated with Google Drive. Credentials must be validated before using the data source.
Validate Google Drive	This contextual button attempts validates the credentials currently in use (or removes currently validated credentials).
Master key	Enter the master key of the data source (If enabled).
Always ask master key	Enabling this option will prompt for a master key whenever you are connecting to the data source.
Filename	Enter the Google Drive path of the data source's file.

VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **Google Drive**.

*Google Drive - VPN Tab*

5.4.4 Devolutions Online Drive

DESCRIPTION

The Devolutions Online Drive stores and synchronizes your remote connections and credentials data in our Cloud services. You can access your sessions from anywhere via an Internet connection.

It is an online file storage service dedicated to a single file type, Remote Desktop Manager's connection list. Devolutions Online Drive is completely free and has no limitations as to how many sessions you might have, it is for **single users** as it cannot share files.

Please consult the [Online Drive](#) topic for information on this service.



Since this service is hosted in the cloud, we strongly recommend that you further encrypt your data by applying a Master key. This will ensure that the file will be unreadable by no one but you.



Even though this is a cloud service, you **MUST** use our [Online Backup](#) service to keep history of your data. Devolutions offers a free backup service, and we do not maintain multiple versions of the Online Drive content. This makes it critical that you enable the backup feature. This service will keep multiple versions of your file and is the best option.

SETTINGS

GENERAL

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - Devolutions Online Drive' window with the 'General' tab selected. The window has a blue header bar with the Devolutions logo and title. Below the header, there are four tabs: 'General', 'Backup', 'VPN', and 'Advanced'. The 'General' tab is active, showing a list of settings on the left and their values on the right. The settings include: Name (Devolutions Online Drive), Username (empty), Connection mode (Application password), Application password (empty), Filename (connections.dod), Master key (empty), and a checkbox for 'Always ask master key' which is checked. A link 'Create an account for free' is visible next to the Name field. The window has standard Windows window controls (minimize, maximize, close) in the top right corner. At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

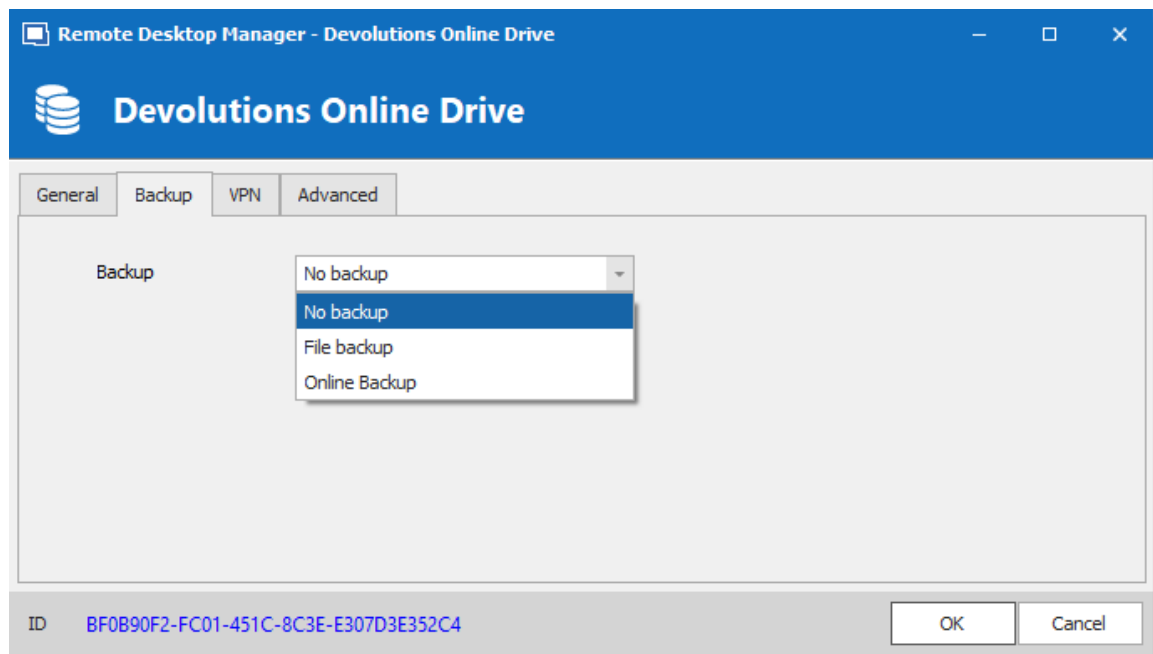
Setting	Value
Name	Devolutions Online Drive Create an account for free
Username	
Connection mode	Application password
Application password	
Filename	connections.dod
Master key	
Always ask master key	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Devolutions Online Drive - General Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter the name of the data source.
Create an account for free	Create a new Devolutions Account.
Username	Enter your Devolutions Account username.
Connection mode	Choose the Default or Application password method.
Application password	Enter your Application password .
Always ask password (default only)	Prompts for the password every time a connection to the Devolutions Online Drive is attempted.
Filename	Indicate the filename used to store the data on the Devolutions Online Drive.
Master key	Contains a master key to access the data source.
Always ask master key	Ask for the master key every time a connection to the Devolutions Online Drive is attempted.

BACKUP

Please consult the [Online Backup](#) topic for information on this service.

*Devolutions Online Drive - Backup Tab*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Backup	<p>Choose the backup mode. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• None: No backup of the data source will be created.• File backup: The backup will be saved to a local file when a modification occurs in the data source.• Online Backup: An Online Backup (using the Online Backup) will automatically be created when a modification occurs in the data source.

VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **Devolutions Online Drive**.

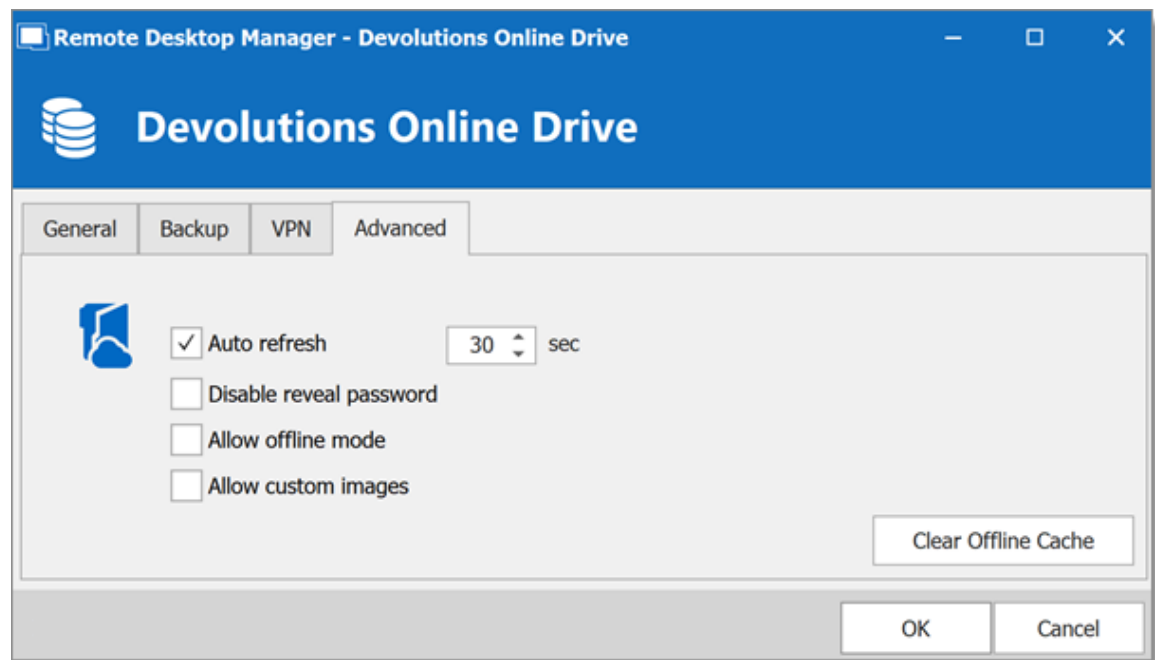
The screenshot shows a window titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Devolutions Online Drive". The window has a blue header bar with the Devolutions logo and the text "Devolutions Online Drive". Below the header, there are four tabs: "General", "Backup", "VPN", and "Advanced". The "VPN" tab is currently selected. The main area of the window contains the following fields and controls:

- Type:** A dropdown menu set to "On first connect" with a play button icon to its right.
- RDM File:** A text input field with a browse button (three dots) to its right.
- Override credentials:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Username:** A text input field.
- Domain:** A text input field.
- Password:** A text input field.

At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar showing the ID "BF0B90F2-FC01-451C-8C3E-E307D3E352C4" and two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

Devolutions Online Drive - VPN Tab

ADVANCED



Devolutions Online Drive - Advanced Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Auto refresh	Set the interval to use between each automatic refresh.
Disable reveal password	Disable the reveal password feature when a user access the data source.
Allow offline mode	Allows the data source to be used in Offline mode .
Allow custom images	Allows the use of custom images.
Clear Offline Cache	Clear the offline cache on the local computer. This can be very helpful when encountering offline issues.

5.4.5 Password Hub Personal

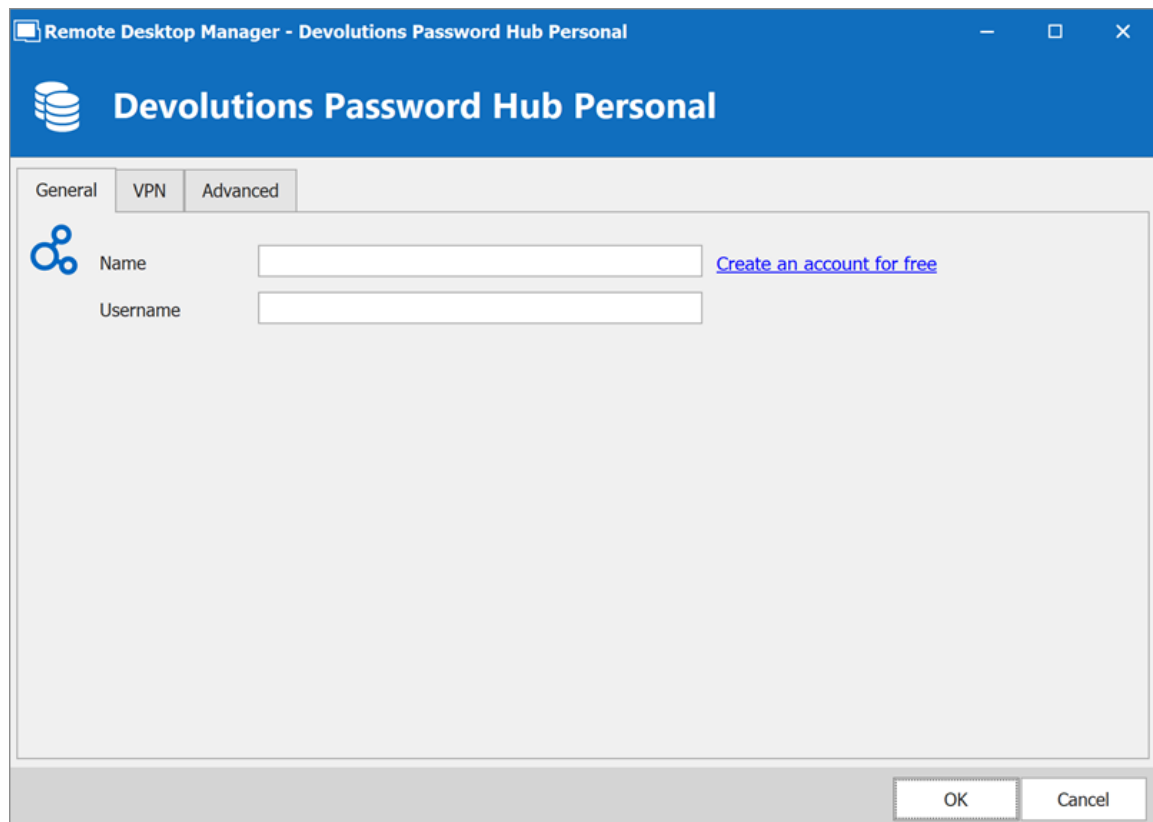
DESCRIPTION

Devolutions Password Hub Personal, for individual users who want to secure personal passwords in a secure vault for free.

Please consult our [website](#) for more information on this service.

SETTINGS

GENERAL

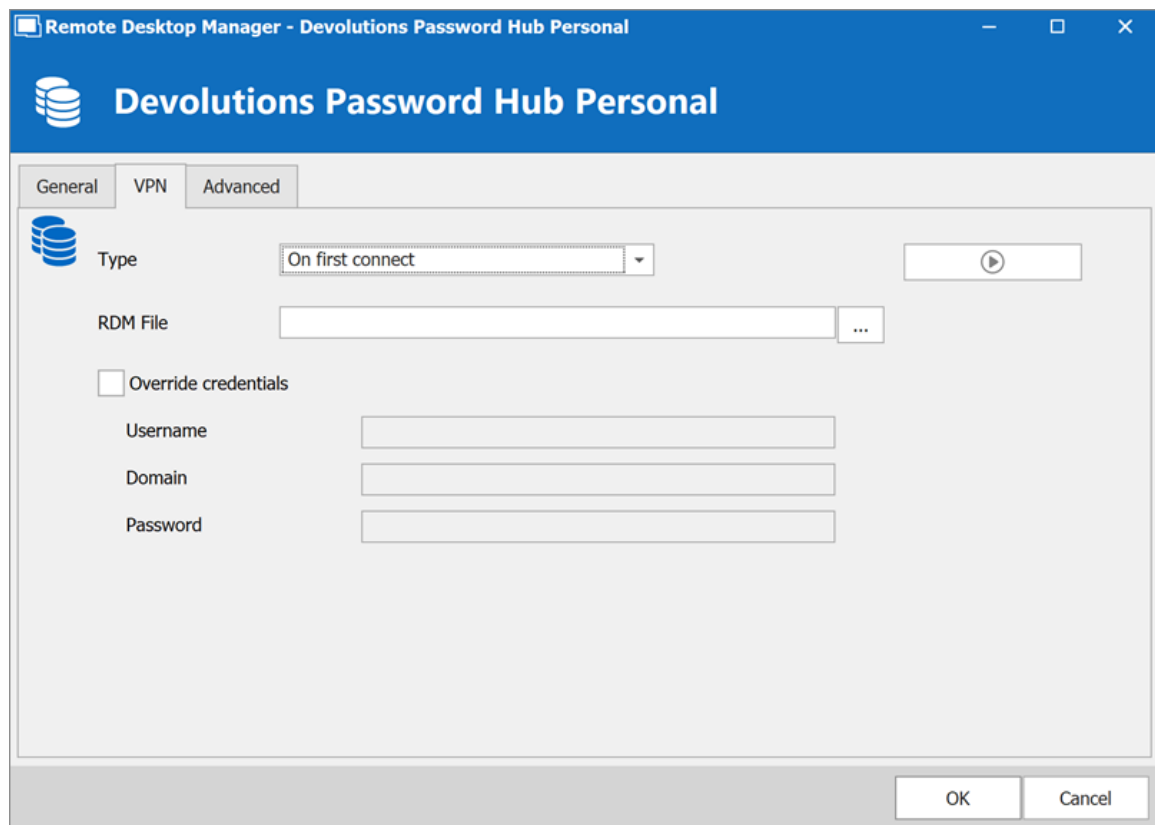


The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Devolutions Password Hub Personal". The dialog has a blue header bar with the Devolutions logo and the text "Devolutions Password Hub Personal". Below the header, there are three tabs: "General", "VPN", and "Advanced". The "General" tab is selected. In the "General" tab, there is a Devolutions logo on the left. To the right of the logo, there are two input fields: "Name" and "Username". To the right of the "Name" field, there is a link that says "Create an account for free". At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Name of the data source.
Username	Your Devolutions Account email address. You can create one for free, just follow the link provided.

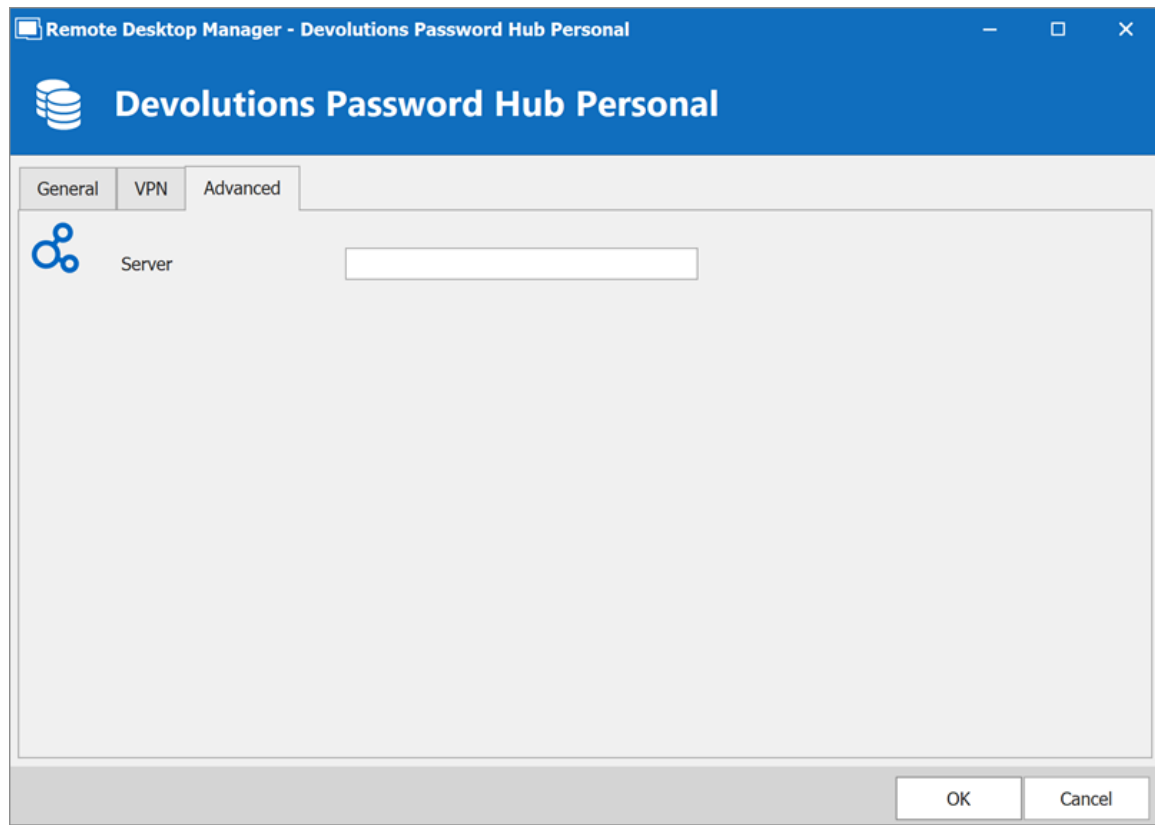
VPN

Open a **VPN** to access your data prior to connecting to your Devolutions Password Hub.



ADVANCED

This is the **Server** address.



5.4.6 SQLite

DESCRIPTION



Remote Desktop Manager's SQLite data source is ideal for single user and stand-alone situations. More powerful and more flexible than the XML file format, it also supports a few of the Advanced Data Source options like Logs and Attachments.

HIGHLIGHTS

- Full connection log and attachments support
- The [Online Backup Service](#) is available for this data source



All passwords are encrypted by default by Remote Desktop Manager. You can specify a custom password to fully encrypt the content of the SQLite database.



Password recovery is not possible, the data will be unrecoverable if you cannot authenticate. Please ensure you backup the password in a safe place.

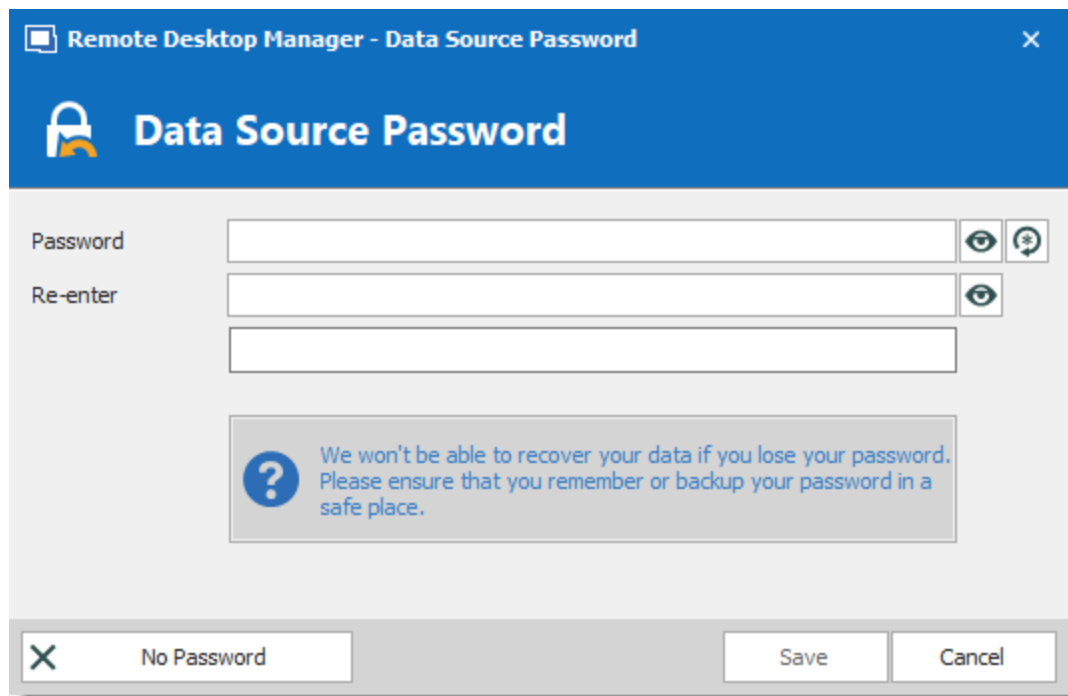


SQLite supports an unlimited number of simultaneous readers, but will only allow one writer at any instant in time. For this reason Remote Desktop Manager does not support sharing a SQLite data source between several users by storing it on a network drive. If you want to share your data and work in a team environment with your colleagues, please use one of the [Advanced Data Sources](#). Please consult [SQLite.org](https://www.sqlite.org) for more information.

PASSWORD MANAGEMENT

You can specify a password to further encrypt your data. Specify it at creation time. If the data source already exists you can modify the password by using the **File – Manage Password** dialog.

Change or clear the password of a SQLite data source.

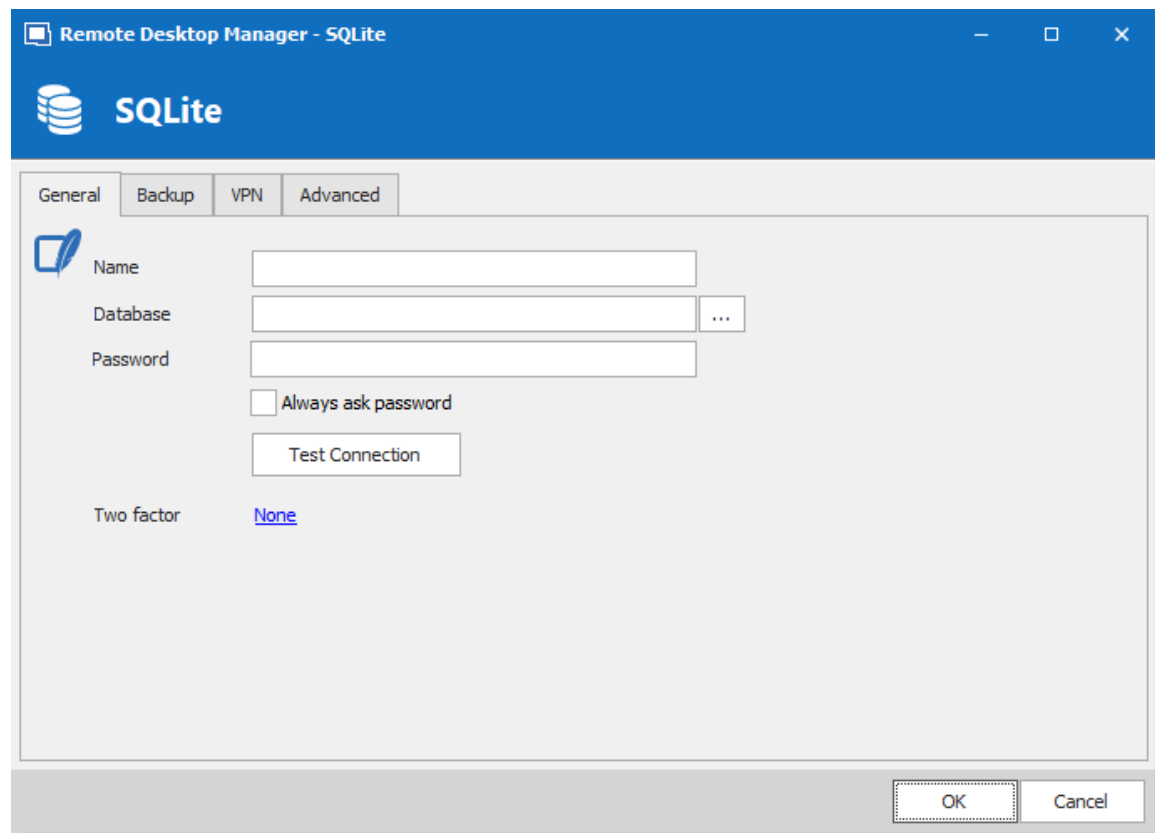


The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Data Source Password". The dialog has a blue header bar with a lock icon and the title "Data Source Password". Below the header, there are two input fields: "Password" and "Re-enter". The "Password" field has a toggle icon (an eye with a slash) and a copy icon. The "Re-enter" field has a toggle icon. Below the input fields, there is a warning box with a question mark icon and the text: "We won't be able to recover your data if you lose your password. Please ensure that you remember or backup your password in a safe place." At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "No Password" (with a close icon), "Save", and "Cancel".

Manage password dialog

SETTINGS

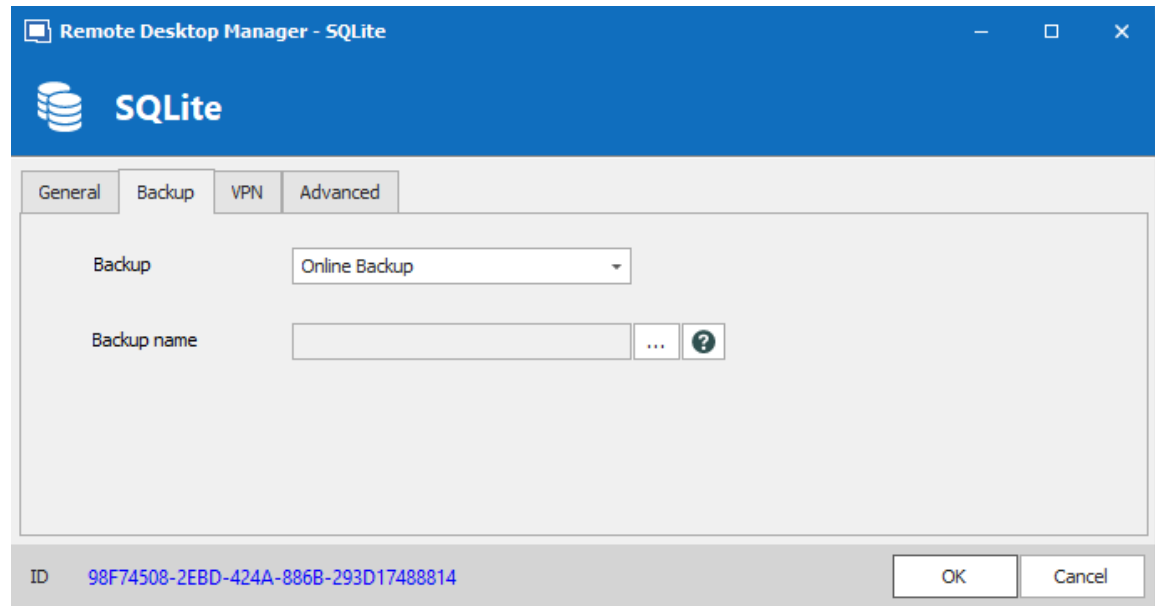
GENERAL



SQLite - General Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Name of the data source.
Database	Indicates the filename of the SQLite database (.db).
Password	Specify a password to further encrypt your data source.
Always ask password	Always ask for the password when connecting to the data source.
Test Connection	Test the current database path and password for connection.
Two factor	Enable the 2-Factor Authentication to access your data source.

BACKUP

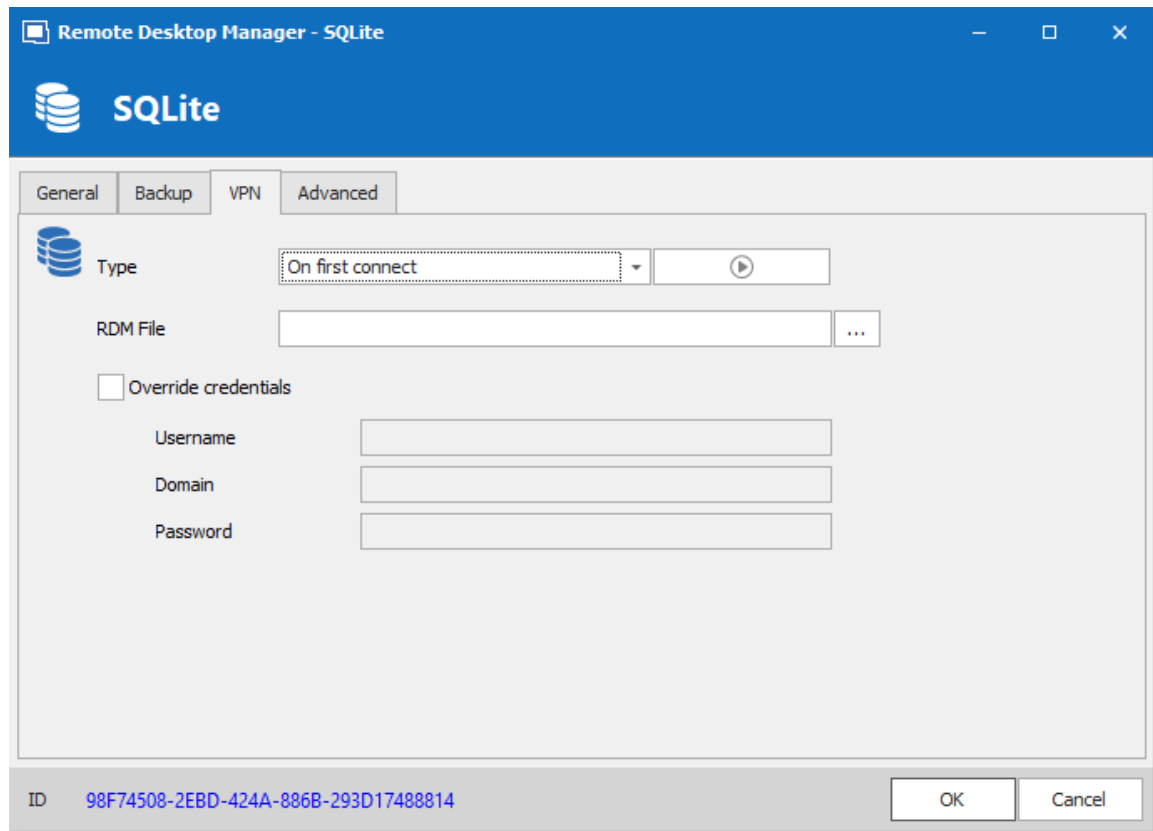


SQLite - Backup Tab

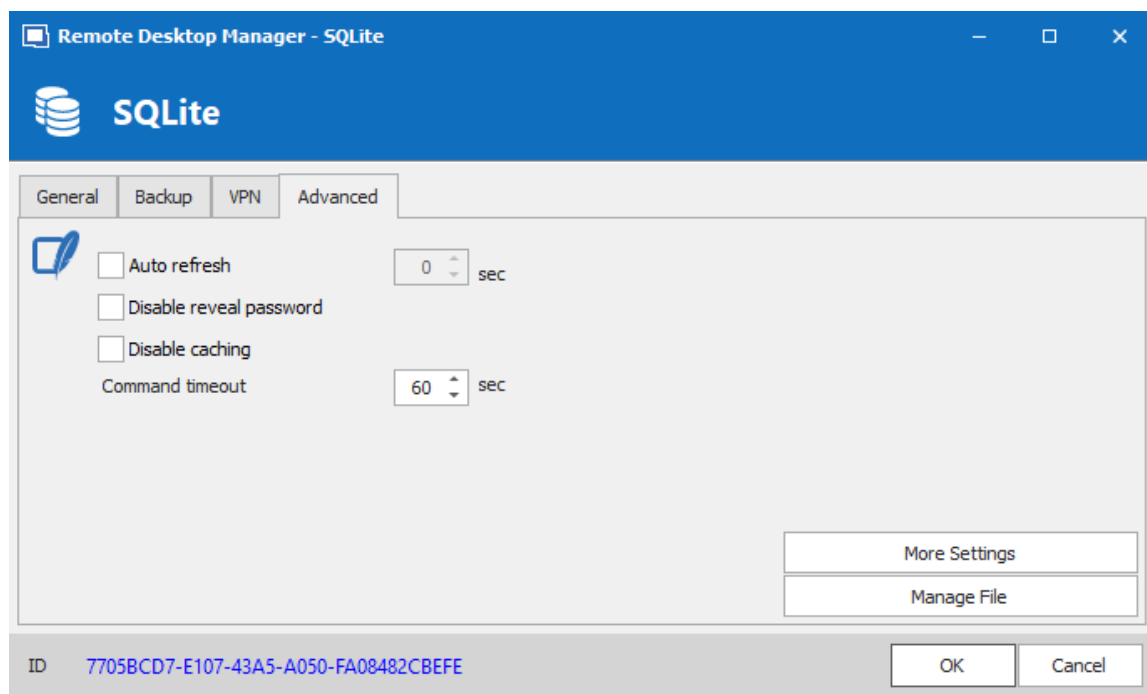
OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Backup	<p>Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• None: No backup of your data source will be created.• File backup: Your backup will be saved to a chosen file but will not automatically do backup every 30 seconds.• Online Backup: An Online Backup (using Online Backup) will automatically be created.

VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **SQLite**.

*SQLite - VPN Tab*

ADVANCED



SQLite - Advanced Tab

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Auto refresh	Set the interval for the automatic refresh.
Disable reveal password	Disable the reveal password feature when a user access this data source.
Disable caching	Entries will be reloaded in Simple mode in the data source. See Caching topic for more information.
Command timeout	Waiting time before a command timeout.
More Settings	Use to directly modify the connection string value.
Manage File	Contains multiple SQLite commands to facilitate managing. You should usually only access these when our support teams demands it.

5.4.7 XML

DESCRIPTION



Remote Desktop Manager saves the settings directly in an XML file format.

HIGHLIGHTS

- It is possible to configure an auto refresh interval.
- The [Online Backup](#) is available for this data source.



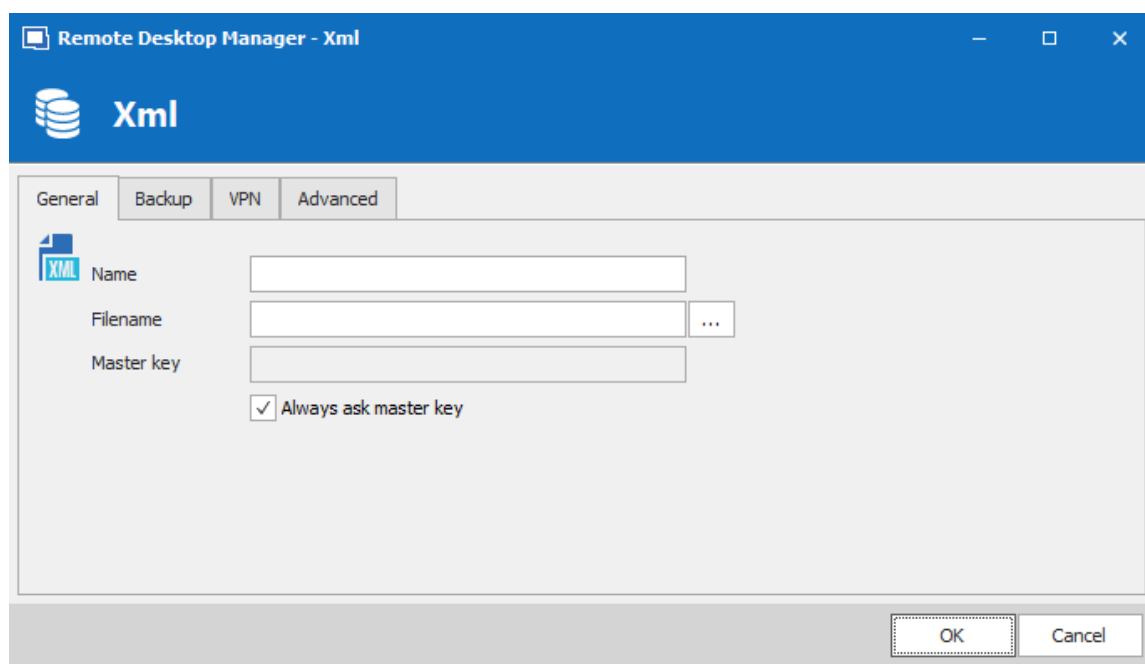
Although it can be shared between multiple locations, there is no conflict management for the configuration. If you share with other users you may get update conflicts or otherwise run into issues. This data source type is meant for a single user using multiple computers, not multiple users.



All passwords are encrypted by default. You can specify a custom password (master key) to fully encrypt the content of the file. It is impossible to recover the data if the master key is lost. Please make sure to remember or backup the master key in a safe place.

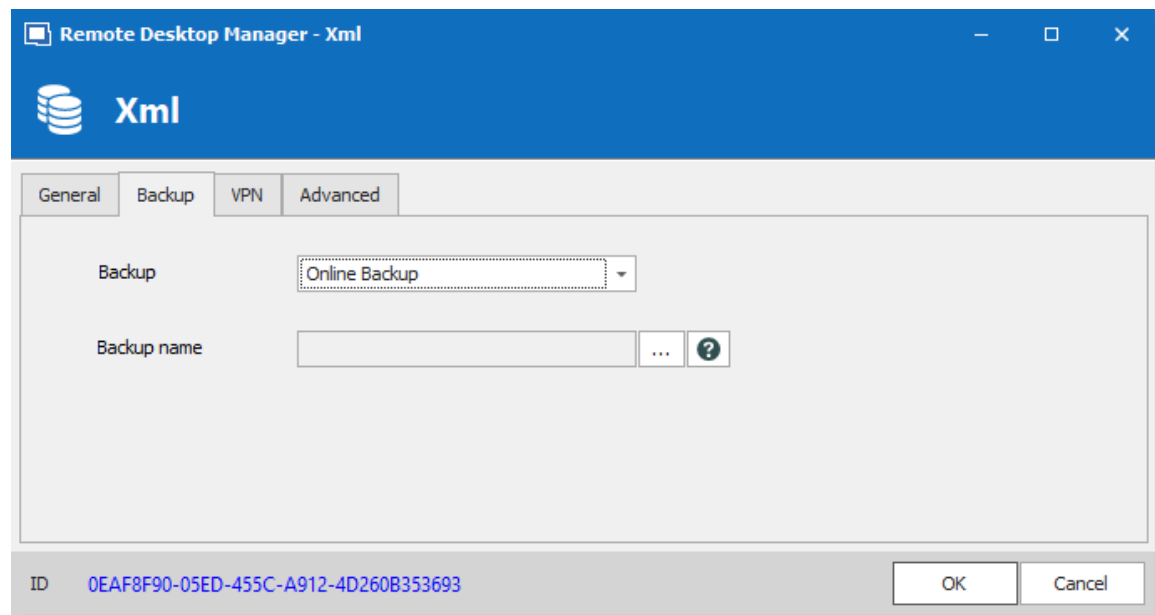
SETTINGS

GENERAL

*XML - General Tab*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Name	Name of the data source.
Filename	Specify the full path of the XML file used to save the data. Relative paths and environment variables can be used as well.
Master key	Add an additional layer of security by encrypting your data source with a master key.
Always ask master key	Always prompts for the master key when connecting to the data source.

BACKUP

*XML - Backup Tab*

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Backup	Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• None: No backup of your data source will be created.• File backup: Your backup will be saved to a chosen file but will not automatically do backup every 30 seconds.• Online Backup: An Online Backup (using Online Backup) will automatically be created.
Backup name	Specify the backup name that will allow you to automatically save your sessions in a safe online storage space and restore them in the event of problems.

VPN

Open a VPN to access your data prior to connecting to your **XML**.

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - Xml' window with the 'VPN' tab selected. The window has a blue header bar with the title and standard window controls. Below the header, there are four tabs: 'General', 'Backup', 'VPN', and 'Advanced'. The 'VPN' tab is active, displaying a configuration area with a database icon and the following fields: 'Type' (a dropdown menu set to 'On first connect' with a play button), 'RDM File' (a text box with a browse button), and an 'Override credentials' checkbox. Below the checkbox are three text boxes for 'Username', 'Domain', and 'Password'. At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar showing an 'ID' and a long alphanumeric string, and two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

Remote Desktop Manager - Xml

Xml

General Backup VPN Advanced

Type On first connect

RDM File

☐ Override credentials

Username

Domain

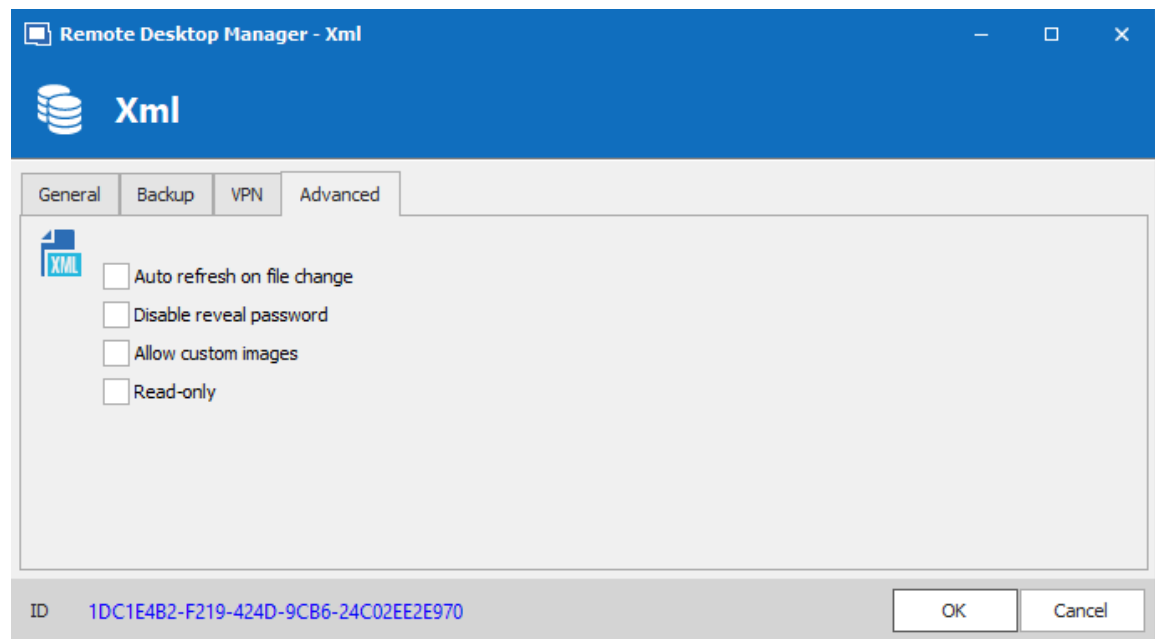
Password

ID 1DC1E4B2-F219-424D-9CB6-24C02EE2E970

OK Cancel

XML - VPN Tab

ADVANCED

*XML - Advanced Tab*

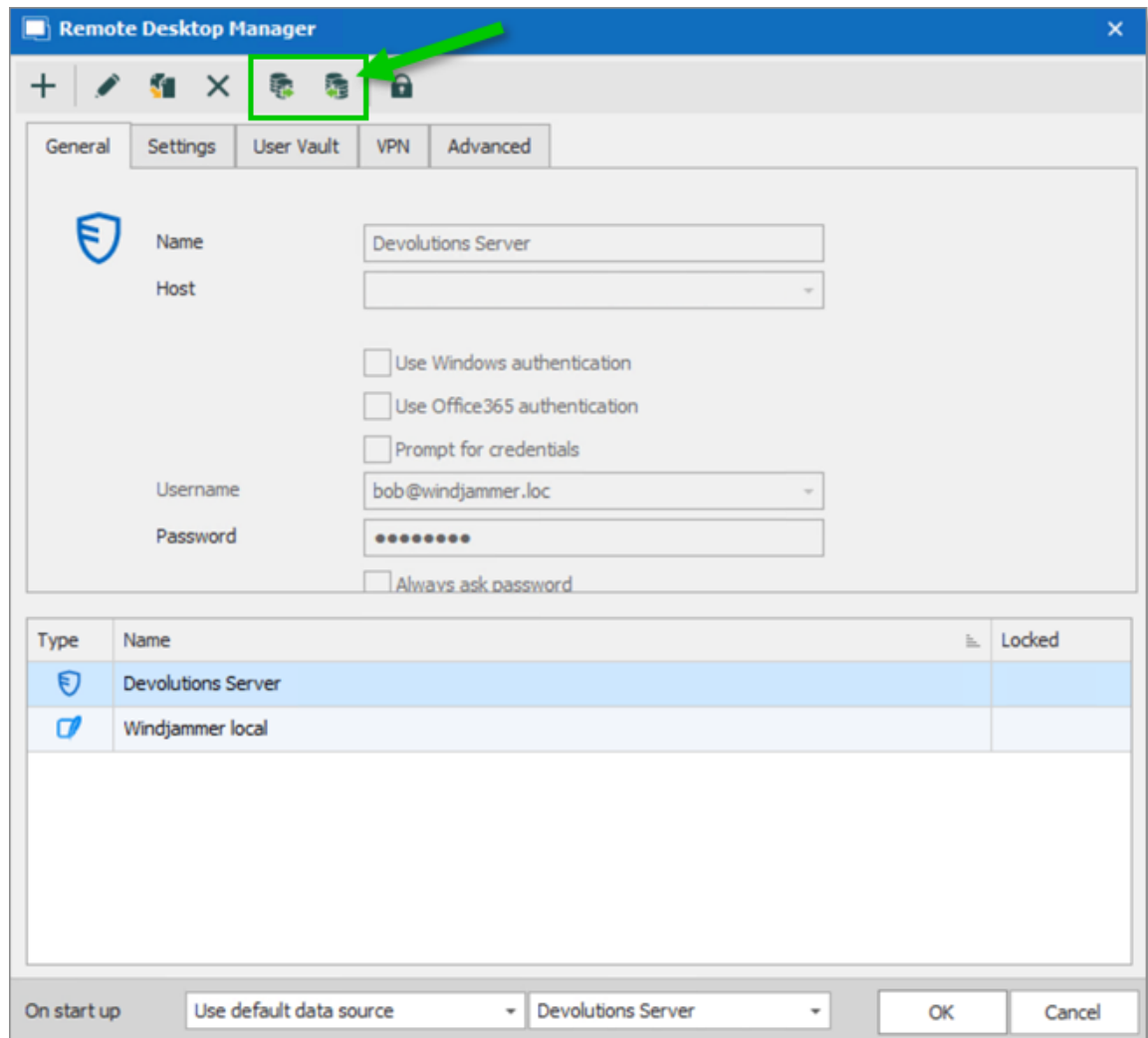
OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Auto refresh on file change	Indicate if the application monitor the file changes to automatically refresh the data source.
Disable reveal password	Disable the reveal password feature when a user accesses this data source.
Allow custom images	This will enable the loading of any custom images in the tree view.
Read-only	Set the data source in read only. No new entry can be created and the existing data cannot be edit.

5.5 Import and Export Data Source

DESCRIPTION

To simplify deployment for multiple users, it is possible to export and import data source configurations. The generated .rdd file contains all the information to recreate the configuration. Please note that the .rdd file does not include the database content. Only the configuration is exported. Use the entries's [Export](#) functionality to backup or copy the database's content.

Use **File – Data Sources** to access the import or export functionality.



Data Sources - Import and Export



Whether or not users can **Read/Write** in [Offline mode](#) is first decided at the data source's [Caching mode](#) level. **This cannot be changed remotely.** If you wish to prevent or allow remote users the Read/Write offline feature, you should do so before exporting your data source.



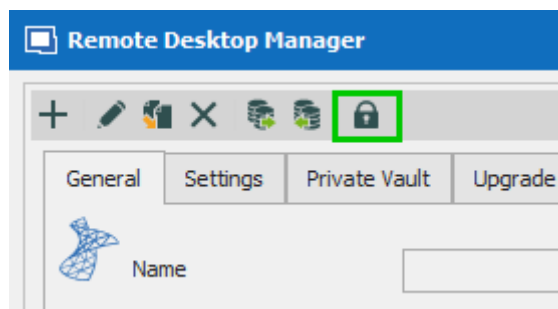
A locked data source can be exported and imported, but the content will be locked unless a password is entered when the data source is selected. See [Lock Data Source](#) for more information.

5.6 Lock Data Source

LOCK DATA SOURCE

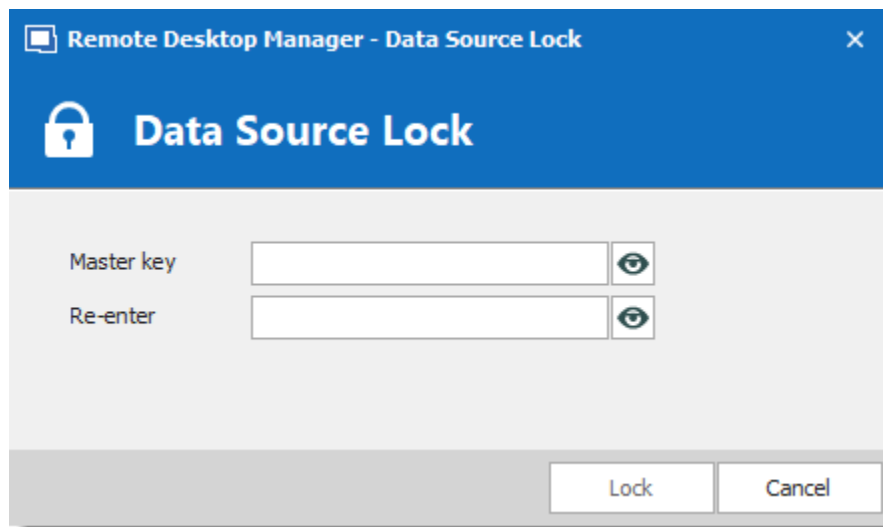
To protect sensitive data in your data source configuration (e.g. server URL or credentials), you may wish to lock the data source configuration before you deploy it to your users. You can do it by using the Lock/Unlock button from the toolbar.

SETTINGS



Lock Data Source toolbar

The locked data source will require a password. The password must be specify when the lock is applied. Use the same password to unlock it or to modify the data source configuration.



Lock Data Source dialog



There is **NO way** of unlocking the data source if the password is lost or forgotten. In such an event, you will need to configure a new data source. However the content of the database will not be lost.

5.7 Offline mode

DESCRIPTION

The offline mode connects to a local copy of the data source when you are not connected to the data source. This is useful when working from a remote location and the network is unreachable or if there is any kind of connectivity issue.

The read/write offline mode adds to users the possibility to manipulate entries while disconnected from the data source. This is useful for off-site personnel or when working in environments that have sporadic network availability.



This feature is not available for all data sources, please consult the help topic of the respective data source to know if it supports offline mode.



The offline cache is first encrypted using our own private key mixed with some information taken from the local computer. This makes it impossible for a copy on another machine to be readable. By default it is also encrypted with Windows NTFS encryption, in which case there is no key saved anywhere.

For added security, offline files are set to expire after a delay. The default expiry is set to 7 days but can be modified via the [System Settings](#).

Remote Desktop Manager will prompt for offline mode when the application is unable to reach the data source but the offline mode can be toggled manually with **File – Go Offline**.

Several features are not available in offline mode, such as:

- Attachments and logs.
- [User management](#) (Add/Edit/Delete users).

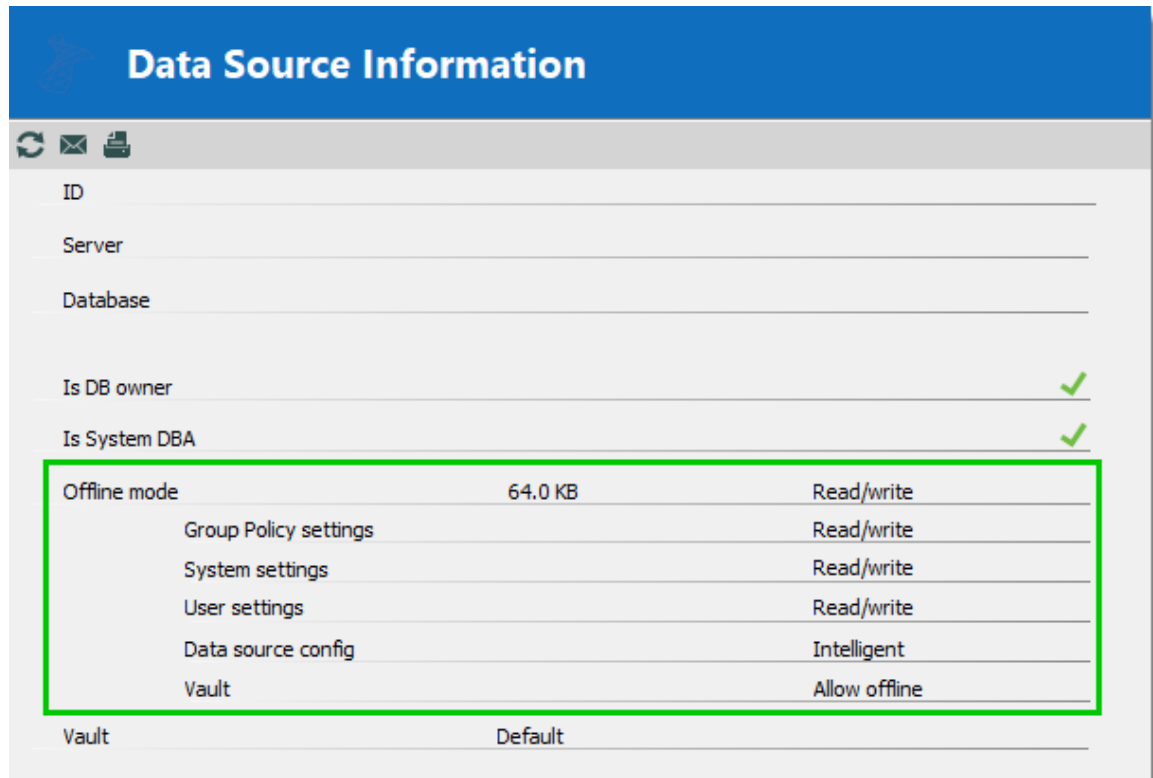
AVAILABILITY

The offline mode availability relies on several settings:

- The data source offline cache must be enabled in **File - Data Sources - Advanced - Caching Mode - Intelligent**. (This step needs to be done before you export your data source to other computers)
- The user's account must be enabled in **Administration - Users - Edit - Settings - Offline mode**.
- The user groups policies (only for the DVLS data source) in **Administration - User groups - Edit - Settings - Offline mode**.
- The data source System Settings in **Administration - System Settings - Offline - Offline mode** and **Expiration**.
- For each Vault **Administration - Vault Settings - Security Settings - Allow offline**.

The lowest setting (in terms of security) prevails over the others, which may prevent you from using the offline mode. If the **Go Offline** button is not available, please consult your administrator.

The [Data Source Information](#) displays the size of the offline cache file along with the effective modes (disabled, read-only or read/write).



The screenshot shows the 'Data Source Information' window. It has a blue header with the title. Below the header is a toolbar with icons for refresh, email, and print. The main area contains several input fields for ID, Server, and Database. Below these are two checkboxes: 'Is DB owner' and 'Is System DBA', both of which are checked and marked with green checkmarks. A table is highlighted with a green border, showing the offline mode settings. The table has three columns: the setting name, its size, and its mode. The settings listed are Offline mode (64.0 KB, Read/write), Group Policy settings (Read/write), System settings (Read/write), User settings (Read/write), Data source config (Intelligent), and Vault (Allow offline). At the bottom of the window, there are two tabs: 'Vault' and 'Default'.

Setting	Size	Mode
Offline mode	64.0 KB	Read/write
Group Policy settings		Read/write
System settings		Read/write
User settings		Read/write
Data source config		Intelligent
Vault		Allow offline

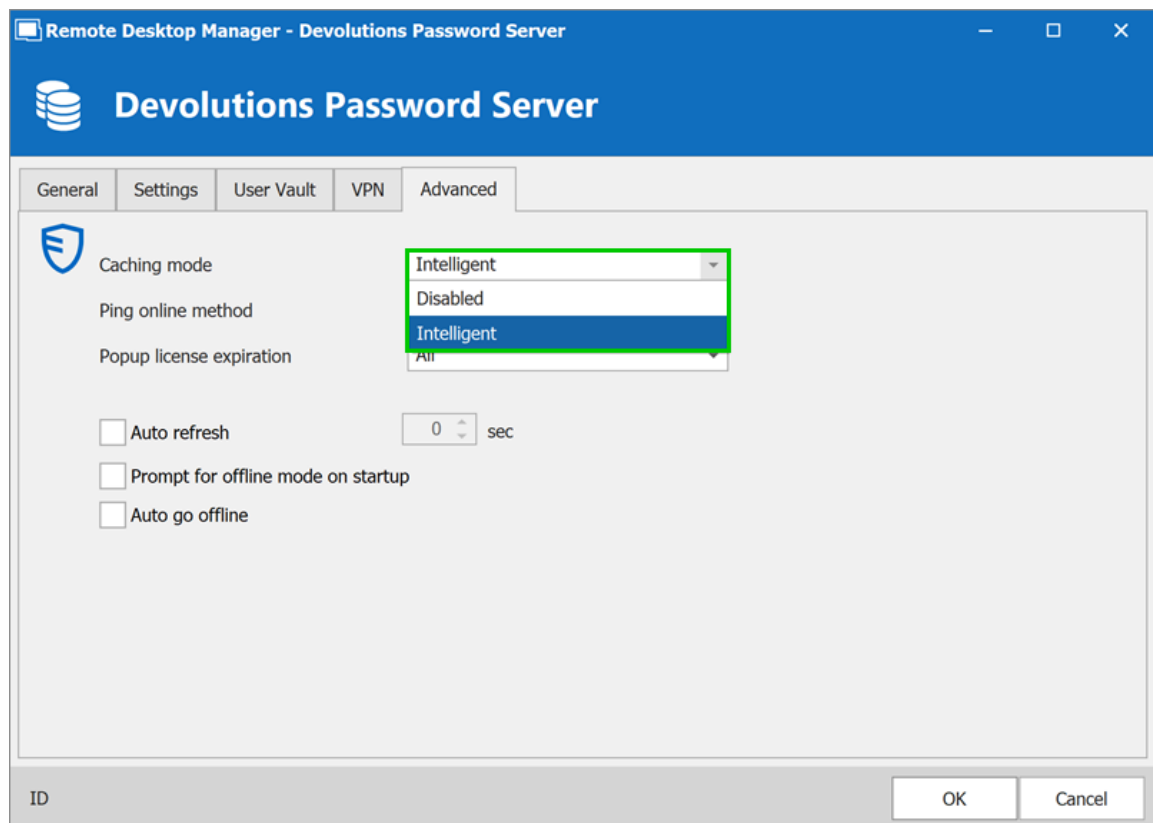
My Data Source Information - Offline mode

CACHING MODE

The caching mode must be set to **Intelligent** to enable the offline mode.



This step cannot be modified remotely once you have exported your data source settings. You should take a moment and think about the needs of your data source and select what is appropriate before moving on to exporting.



Data Source configuration – Advanced – Caching mode

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	Prevent an offline cache from being used.
Intelligent	Use the offline cache only for recent changes.



Some features of Remote Desktop Manager are unavailable while offline. Even with read/write access mode, you may not be able to perform all actions, such as adding attachments or managing users since these features are not cached locally. On the other hand, note that the [User Vault](#) is still available in offline mode.

GRANT/DENY OFFLINE

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	Prevents an offline cache from being used.
Read-only	Allow to view and use entries only. The content of the data source cannot be modified.
<u>Read/Write</u>	Allow to view, use, and edit entries. Conflicts caused by offline modifications are managed when back online.

Beyond the group policies, the Offline mode is controlled on multiple levels:

- User permissions.
- System Settings.
- In a Vault's setting.

A user must be granted Read/Write at all levels to allow read/write privileges.

USER PERMISSIONS	SYSTEM SETTINGS	Vault SETTINGS	EFFECTIVE ACCESS
Disabled or Read-only or Read/write	Disabled or Read-only or Read/write	Allow offline disabled	Disabled
Disabled or Read-only or Read/write	Disabled or Read-only or Read/write	Allow offline enabled	Disabled
Disabled or Read-only or Read/write	Disabled	Allow offline enabled	Disabled
Disabled	Disabled or Read-only or Read/write	Allow offline enabled	Disabled
Read-only or Read/write	Read-only or Read/write	Allow offline disabled	Disabled

USER PERMISSIONS	SYSTEM SETTINGS	Vault SETTINGS	EFFECTIVE ACCESS
Read-only or Read/write	Read-only or Read/write	Allow offline enabled	Read-only
Read-only or Read/write	Read-only	Allow offline enabled	Read-only
Read-only	Read-only or Read/write	Allow offline enabled	Read-only
Read/write	Read/write	Allow offline enabled	Read/write



You want to know the current effective Offline mode while connected? See [My Data Source Information](#).

5.7.1 Offline Read/Write

DESCRIPTION

The **Read/Write** offline mode allows the user to add, edit and delete entries while the data source is offline. Those changes are saved locally and synchronized with the data source once it is back online.



Some functionalities are not available while offline and you may not be able to perform all actions. Note that the [User Vault](#) is still available in offline mode.

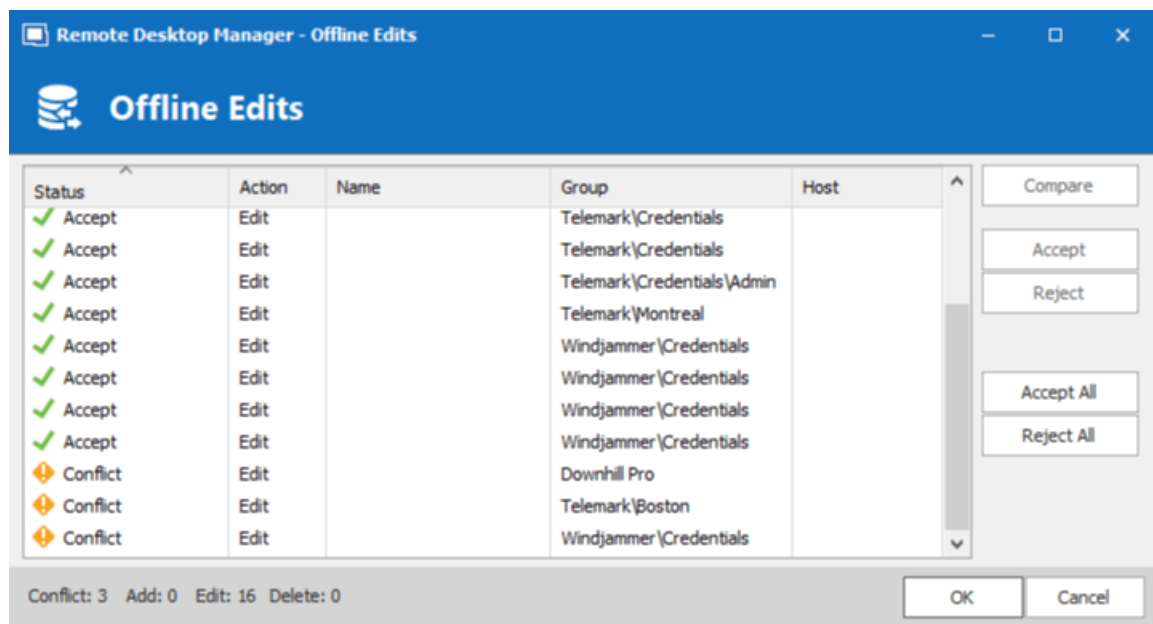
Once offline, the users security settings still applies. Add/Edit/Delete privileges granted by the administrator are still in effect. See [User Management](#).

When an entry is edited by an online user while another user is offline, the local version of the entry stored in the offline cache becomes different from the online version. This causes a conflict when the offline user gets back online.

OFFLINE EDITS WORKFLOW

- Connect to the data source.
- Go offline with File – Go Offline.
- Edit any entry.
- Go back online with File – Go Online.

The **Offline Edits** window is displayed:



Offline Edits

Use this dialog to accept/reject your offline changes.

You can use the **Compare** action to have a side by side comparison of your changes with the current live entry.

Entries will be marked:

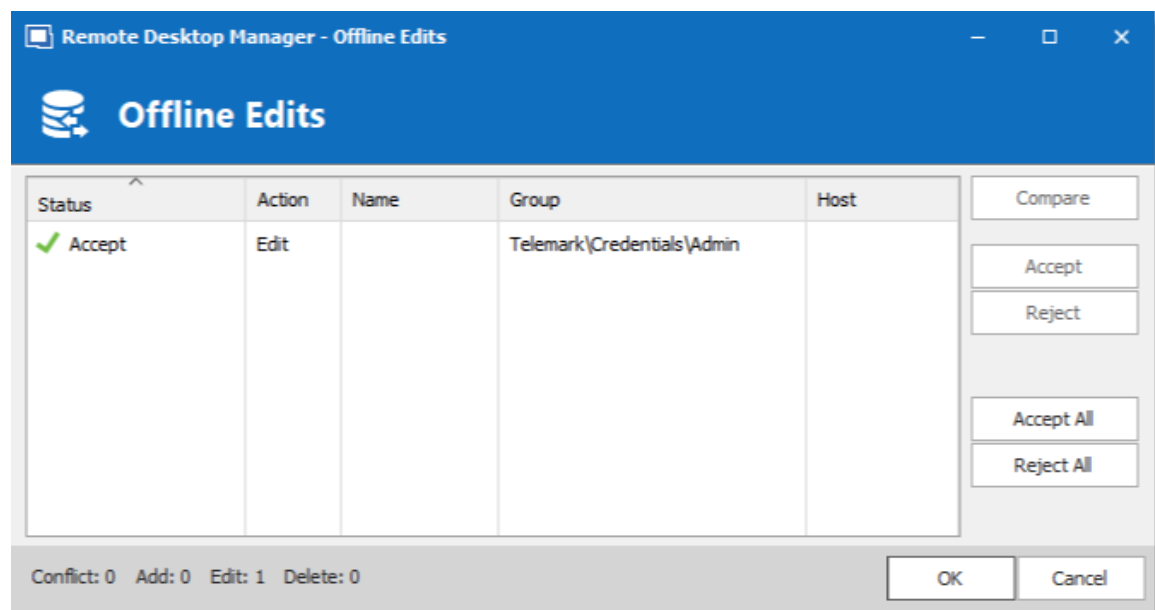
- Accept - when no outside changes have been detected.
- Conflict - when outside changes have been detected since you were last connected.

MULTIPLE OFFLINE EDITS

When multiple users edit the same entry offline simultaneously, a conflict occurs when the second user is back online.

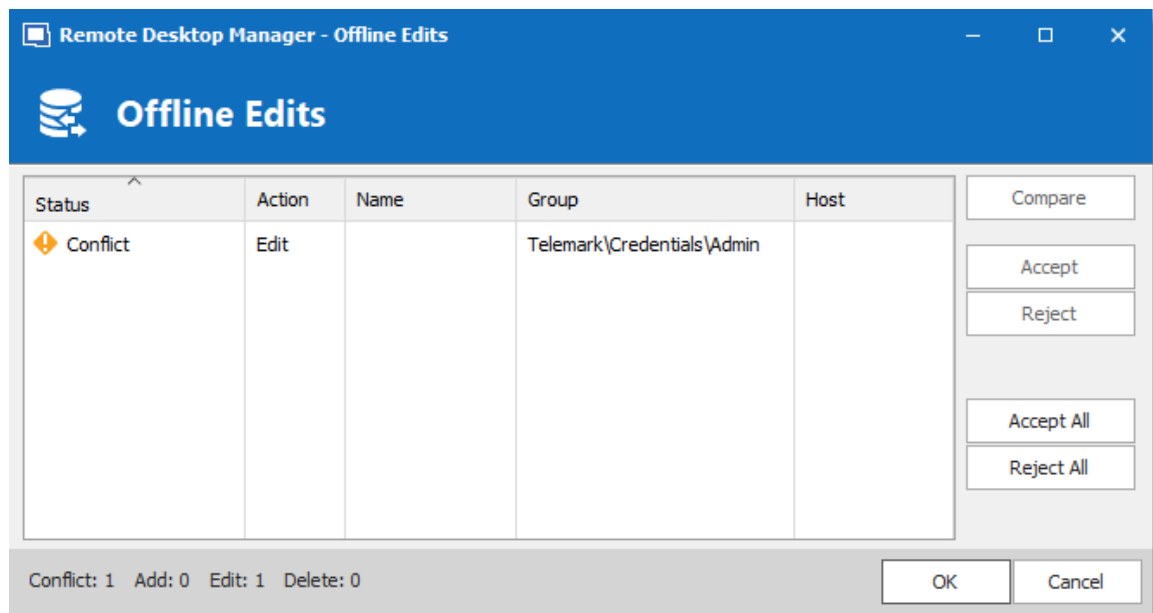
Here is an example of such a case to help resolving conflicts properly:

When the first user returns online, the **Offline Edits** window is displayed. Changes are accepted by default.



Offline Edits For The First User Back Online

When a second user returns online, a conflict occurs and the **Offline Edits** window is displayed.



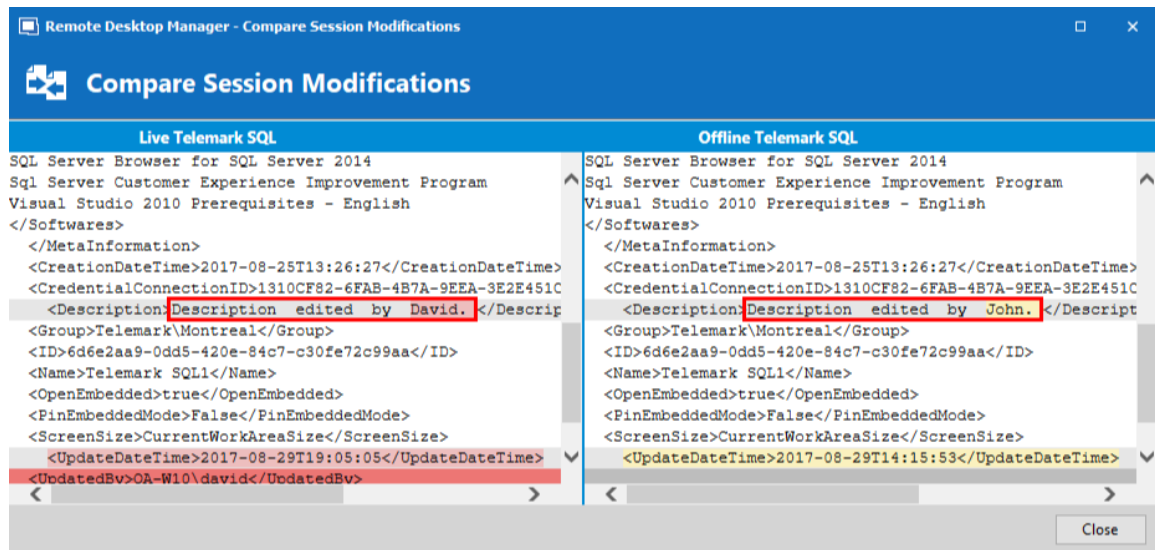
Offline Edits For The Second User Back Online

When the conflict occurs, the user must decide to accept or reject the changes. The different versions of the entry can be compared to view which changes has been made.

COMPARE VERSIONS OF AN ENTRY

Click the **Compare** button to compare the versions of a conflicted entry. Analyze the XML structure of the entry to decide to **Accept** or **Reject** the changes.

The content on the left represents the entry retrieved online, and the content on the right represents the local version of the entry, edited in Offline mode.



Compare Session Modification

5.8 Manage Cache

DESCRIPTION

This option allows you to manage your cache which decides how the client will re-load entries when changes are detected. On large data sources caching is a must and will increase performance significantly.



This feature is only available when the offline engine is set to use SQLite. We are phasing out this engine because of multiple issues reported by customers. We recommend you use **MCDFv2**.

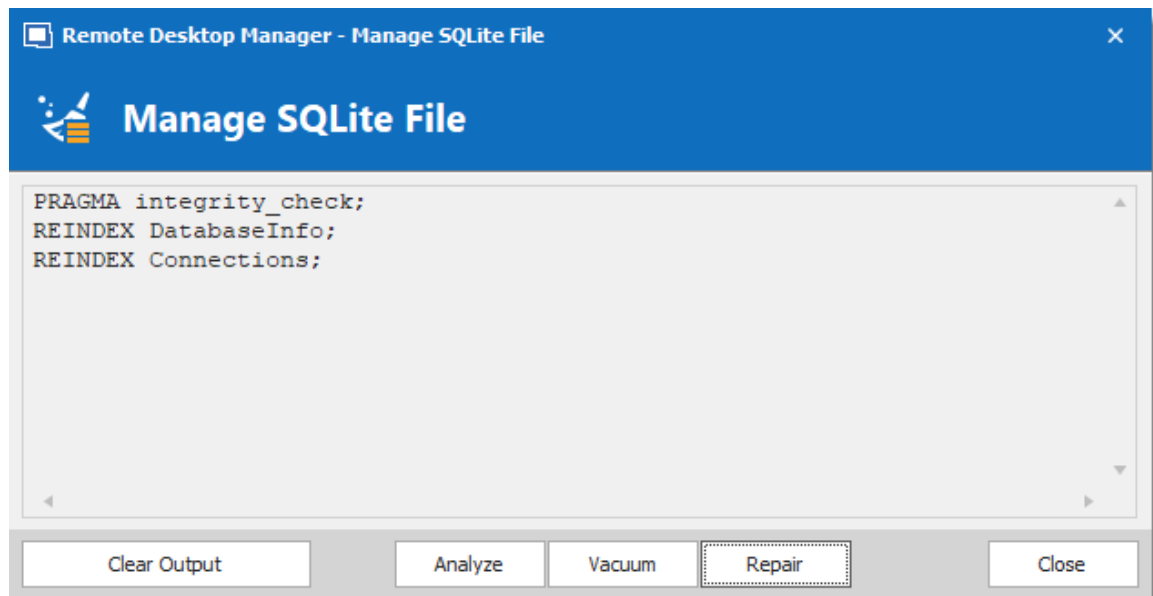


The Manage Cache options should usually only be used **upon request from our Support Team** when experiencing cache issue.

SETTINGS



The Manage Cache options will only be available when using an SQLite cache.



Manage Cache

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Clear output	Clear the output window.
Analyze	Analyze will generate a report of everything that is contained in the cache. It will read the offline data and perform a read/write test to verify if the offline file is valid.
Vacuum	This will run an SQLite command to reduce your cache size. The Vacuum should only be used after trying to execute a Repair of your cache. If the repair hasn't solved your issue running a Vacuum will usually solve issues when dealing with a corrupted cache.
Repair	The repair will run four different SQLite commands to repair a corrupted cache: <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ PRAGMA integrity_check

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ REINDEX DatabaseInfo▪ REINDEX Connections▪ REINDEX Properties

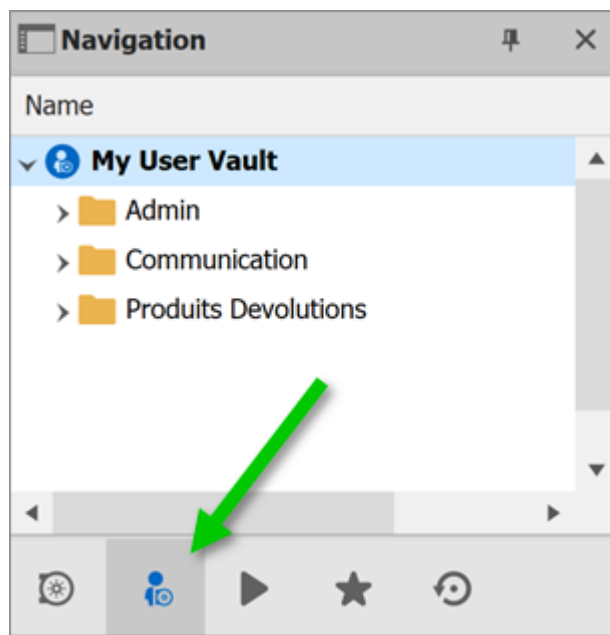
5.9 User Vault

DESCRIPTION

The **User Vault** is a user centric Vault for entries of any type. It allows each user to create entries that only them can access.



The User Vault is available for all [Advanced Data Sources](#).



Navigation Pane – User Vault

A NOTE ON CREDENTIALS

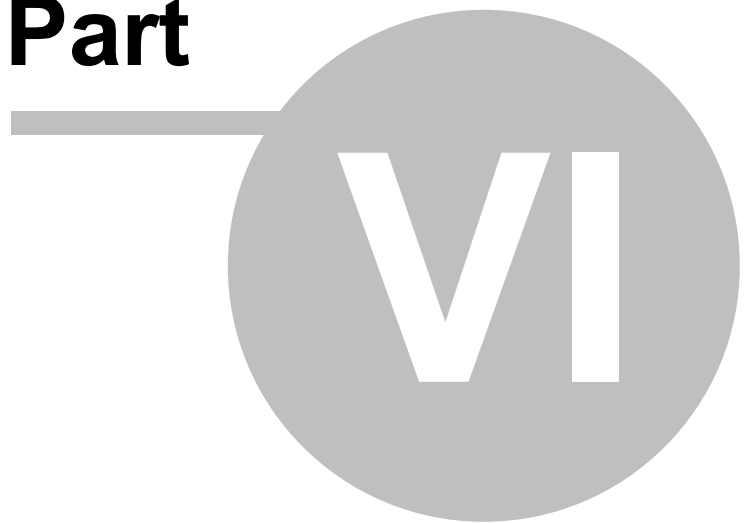
Credentials in the User Vault can be used in two ways:

1. From a session using the **User Vault search**.
2. When using the [User Specific Settings](#) feature.

These restrictions can easily be understood when you keep in mind that the User Vault is in fact contained in the user area of the database. It must be used from within the User Vault, or by using our extension mechanism that is user specific.

Commands

Part

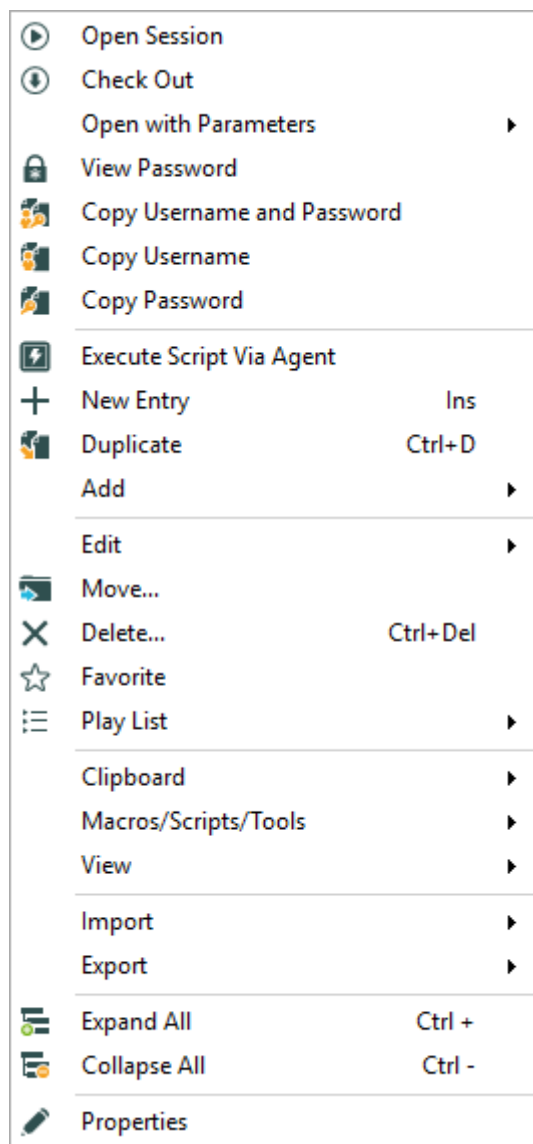


6 Commands

6.1 Context Menu

DESCRIPTION

The **Context Menu** contains several entry-specific actions. The available actions depend on which type of entry is selected. Right click on an entry to display the context menu.

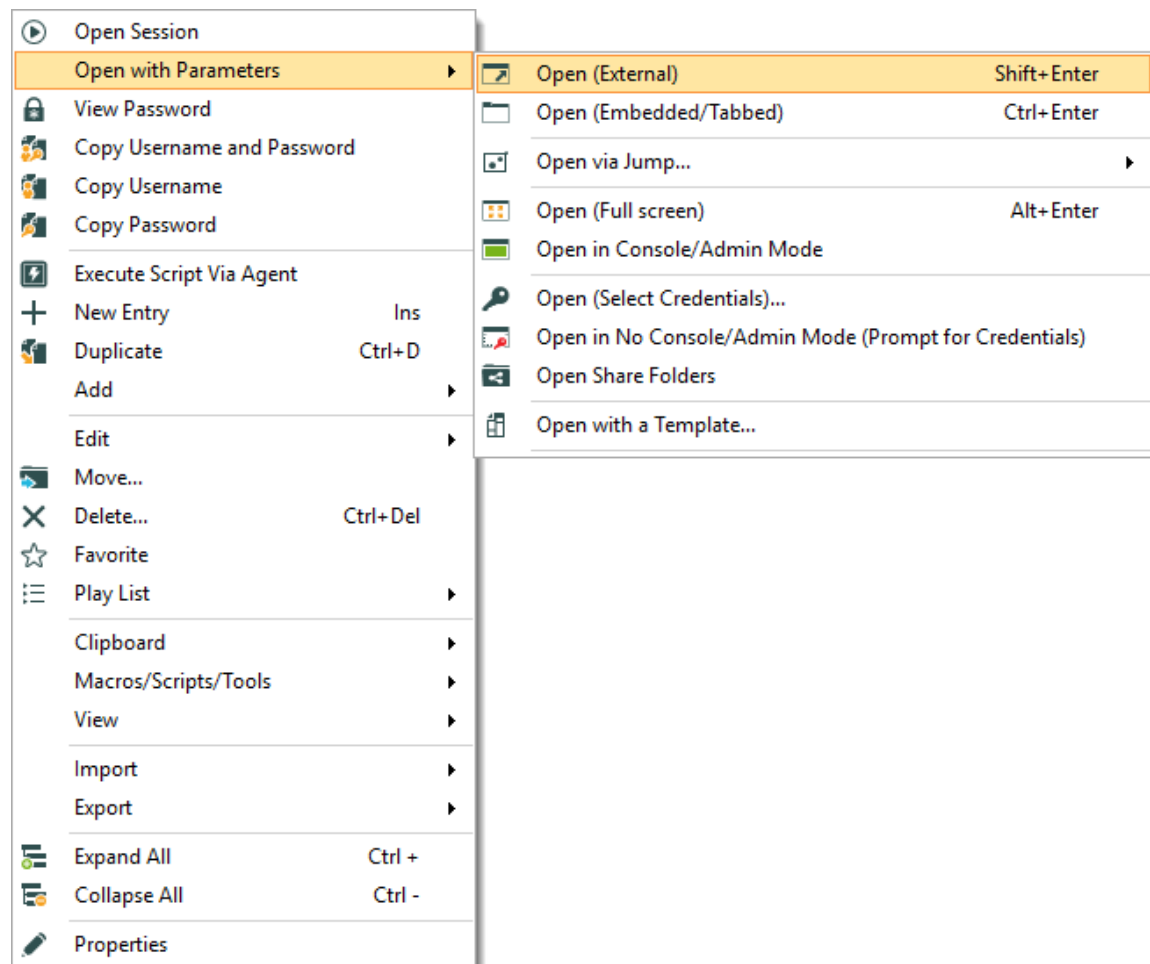


Context Menu

6.1.1 Open with Parameters

DESCRIPTION

The **Open with Parameters** menu all options available to open a session.



Open with Parameters

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Open (External)	Open a session as an external process, with no direct link to Remote Desktop Manager.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Open (Embedded/Tabbed)	Open the session within the confines of the Remote Desktop Manager dashboard and display tabs at the top of the window.
Open via Jump...	Open the session through a Jump host.
Open (Full Screen)	Open the session with the full screen display mode.
Open in Console/Admin Mode	Connect to the console session of a server using Remote Desktop for Administration.
Open (Select Credentials)...	Prompts you with the list of the credentials link to your Data Source to allow you to chose the one needed to open your session.
Open in No Console/Admin Mode (Prompt for Credentials)	Open your session normally and prompt your for your credentials to connect.
Open Share Folders	Open the shared folders of the remote computer.
Open with a Template...	Open from a template that you have already created.
VPN	Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Open (Without VPN).• Open VPN Only.• Close VPN Only.

6.1.2 Documentation

DESCRIPTION

The **Documentation** feature allows for storing information about resources in the data source. To access an entry's documentation, select an entry in the [Navigation Pane](#), then select the **Documentation** tab in the dashboard. Alternatively, right-click an entry in the Navigation Pane, then select **View – Documentation**.

The documentation is written using [Markdown](#), a plain text formatting syntax.



This feature is available with Devolutions Server and SQL Server data sources.

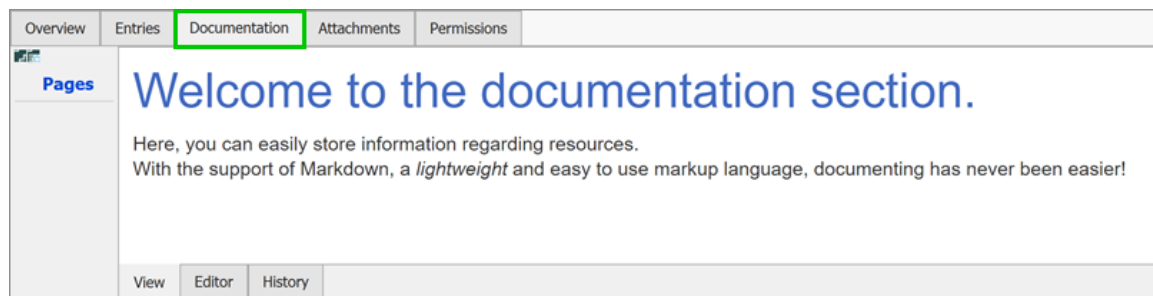


The **Documentation** feature is encrypted **only** for the data source Devolutions Server. If you are using data sources like SQL Server or Azure SQL, the **Documentation** feature is **not** encrypted.



The feature for using **Documentation** in offline mode is available for documents that are stored in the database.

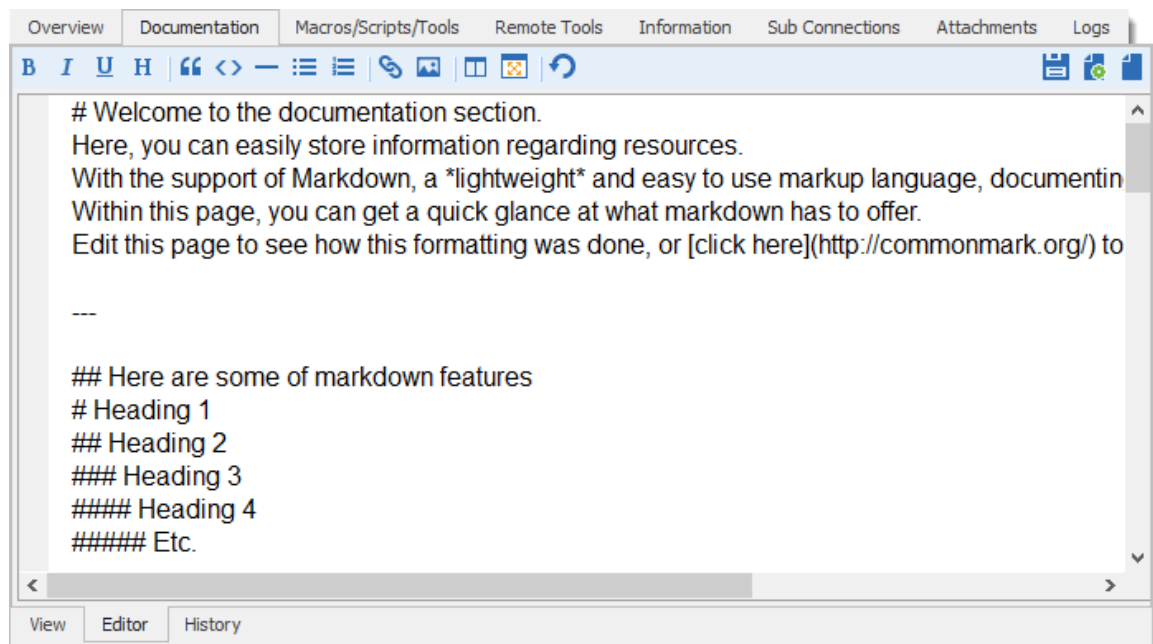
Enable the **Synchronize document to offline** in the **Security Settings**. This property is set to be inherited by default.



6.1.2.1 Editor

DESCRIPTION

The documentation editor is a simple plain text editor. The text is formatted using the Markdown text formatting syntax. Markdown is a markup language designed to be as easy-to-read and easy-to-write as possible.



Documentation editor

MARKDOWN FORMATTING TAGS

- [Paragraphs](#)
- [Emphasis](#)
- [Headers](#)
- [Lists](#)
- [Horizontal rulers](#)
- [Links](#)
- [Images](#)

- [Blockquotes](#)
- [Code examples](#)

PARAGRAPHS

A paragraph is one or more consecutive lines. Normal paragraphs should not be indented with spaces or tabs.

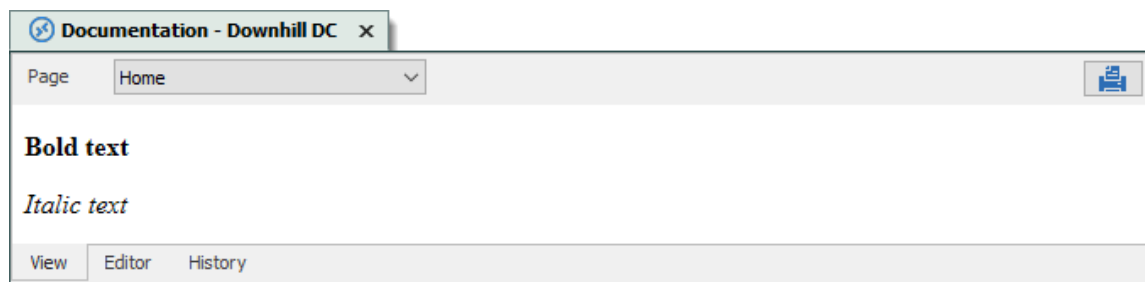
EMPHASIS

Two methods of text emphasis are available:

****Bold text****

Italic text

Output:



HEADERS

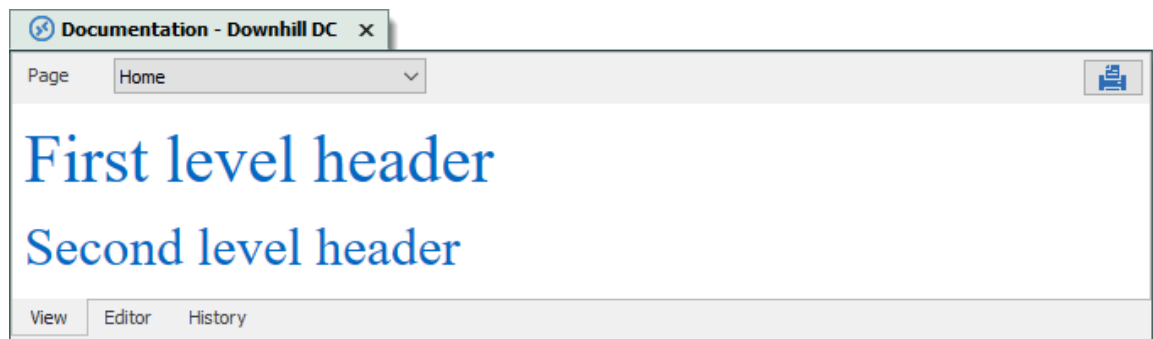
There are two ways of creating headers with Markdown.

First and second level can be created by "underlining" the text with equal signs (=) and hyphens (-).

First level header
=====

Second level header

Output:



More levels of headers can be created by using one to five hash symbol (#) at the beginning of the line.

```
# First level header
```

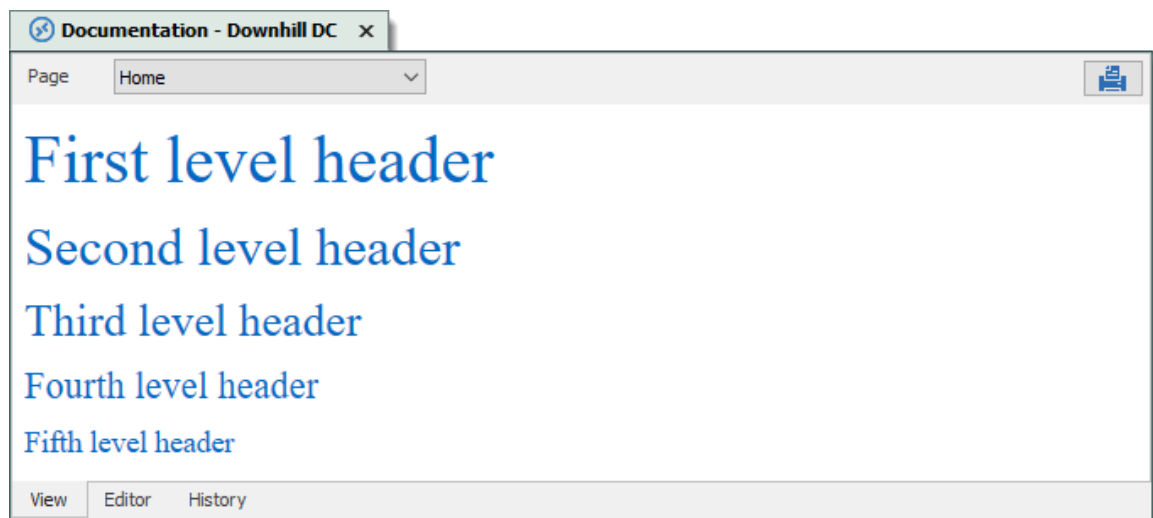
```
## Second level header
```

```
### Third level header
```

```
#### Fourth level header
```

```
##### Fifth level header
```

Output:



LISTS

Use asterisks, pluses, and hyphens to create an unordered bulleted list. These three markers are interchangeable.

- * Item 1
- * Item 2
- * Item 3

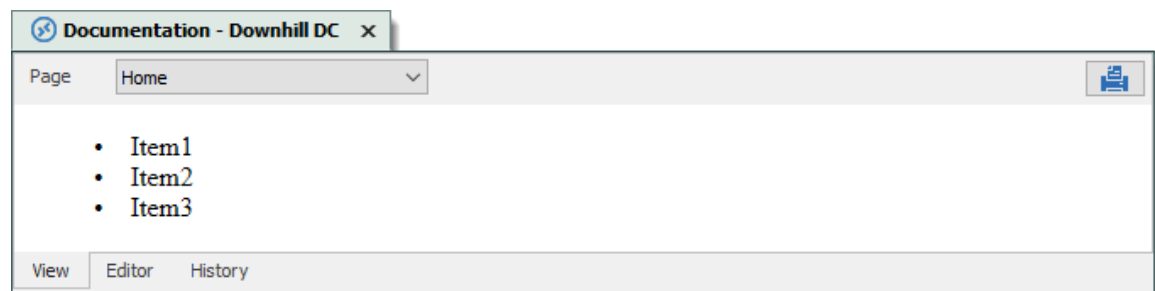
or

- + Item 1
- + Item 2
- + Item 3

or

- Item 1
- Item 2
- Item 3

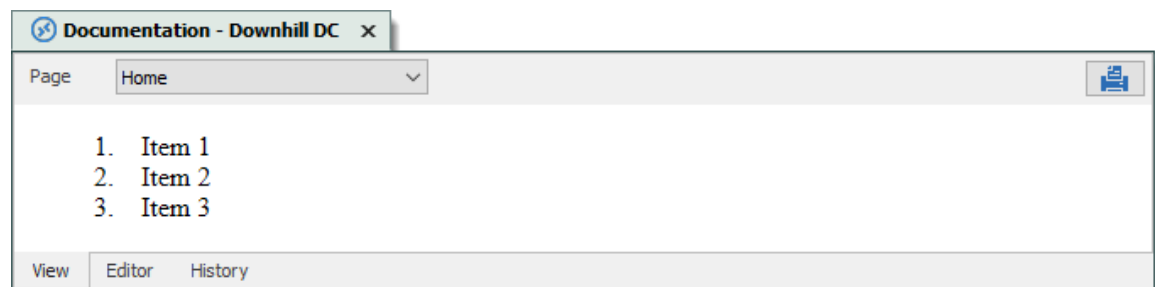
Output:



Use regular numbers, followed by periods, to create an ordered bulleted list.

1. Item 1
2. Item 2
3. Item 3

Output:



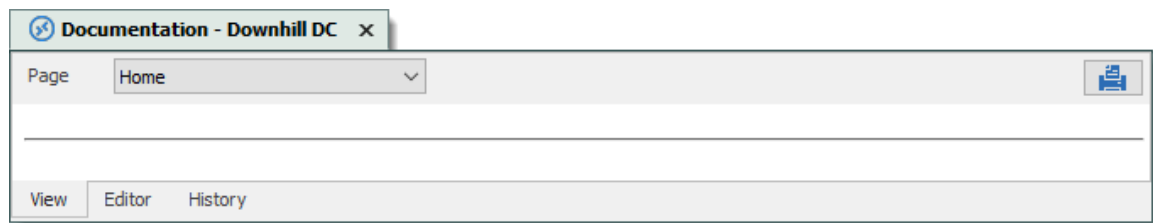
HORIZONTAL RULERS

Use three underscores, asterisks, or hyphens to create a horizontal ruler.

or

or

Output:



LINKS

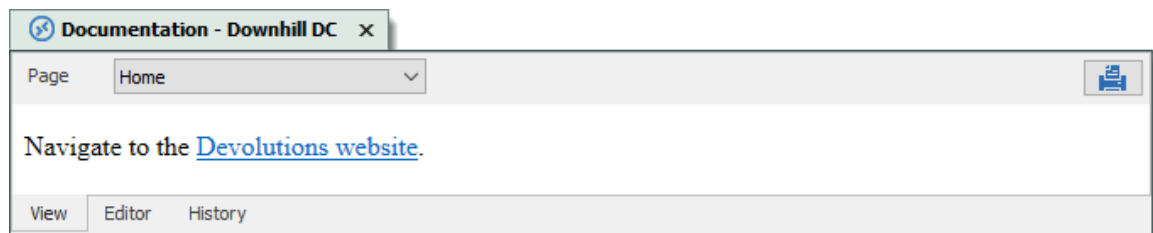
Use square brackets to delimit the text you want to turn into a link.

There are two ways of creating links: inline and reference.

Use parentheses immediately after the link text for inline-style links:

Navigate to the [Devolutions website](https://devolutions.net).

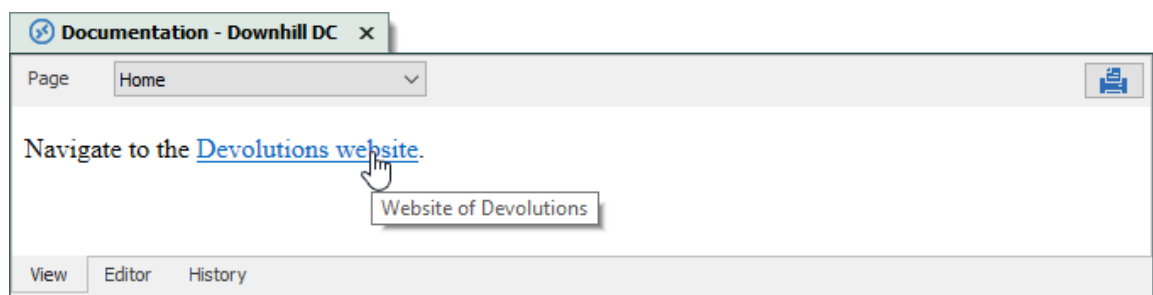
Output:



Optionally a title attribute may be included in the parentheses.

Navigate to the [Devolutions website](https://devolutions.net "Website of Devolutions").

Output:



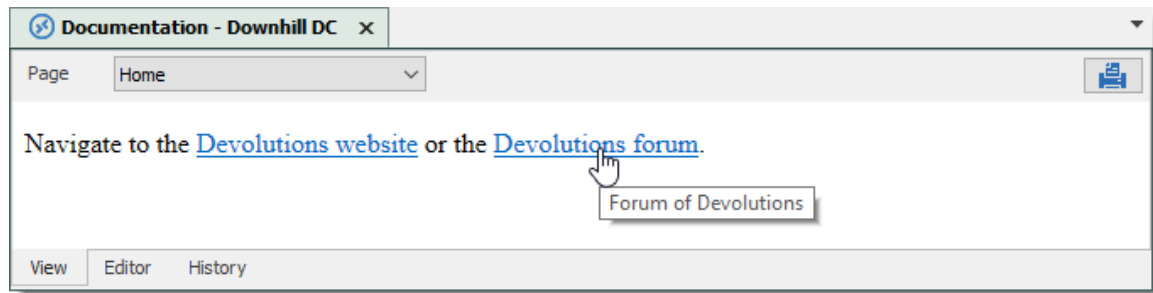
For reference-style links, define the links elsewhere in the document, then refer to a link by its name in another set of square brackets.

Navigate to the [Devolutions website][mainwebsite] or the [Devolutions forum][forumwebsite].

[mainwebsite]: https://devolutions.net/ "Website of Devolutions"

[forumwebsite]: https://forum.devolutions.net/ "Forum of Devolutions"


Output:

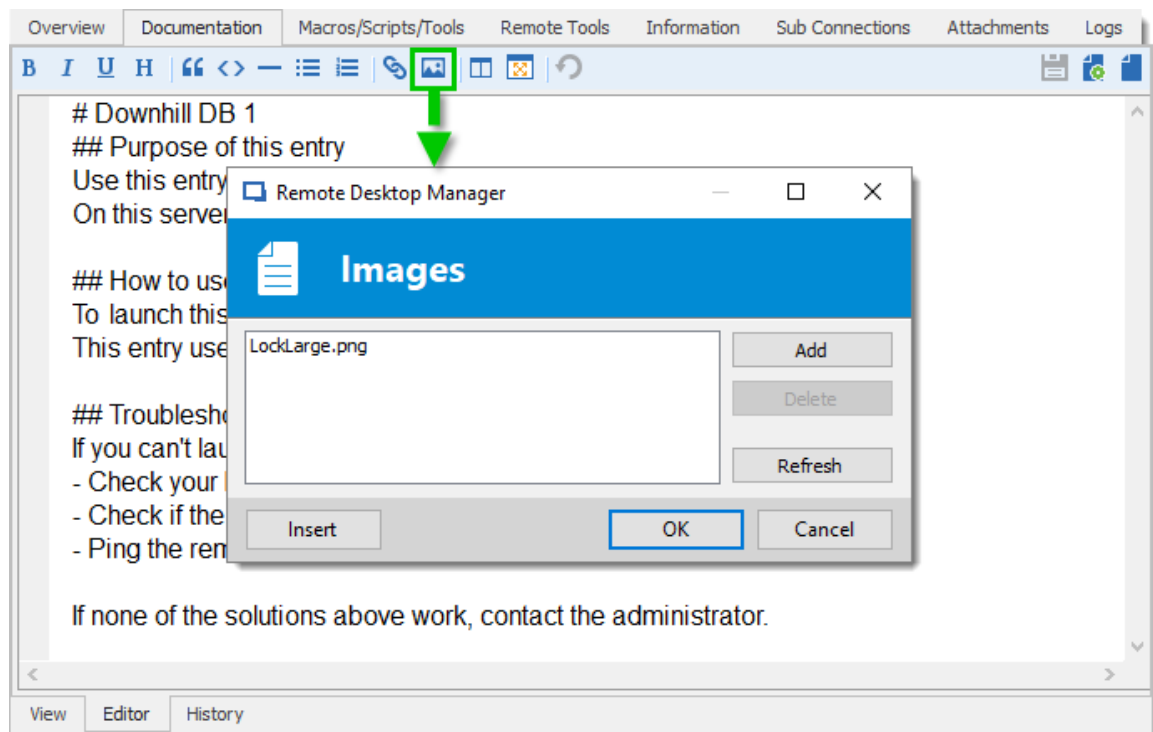


The title attribute is optional again. Link names may contain letters, numbers and spaces, but are not case sensitive.

IMAGES

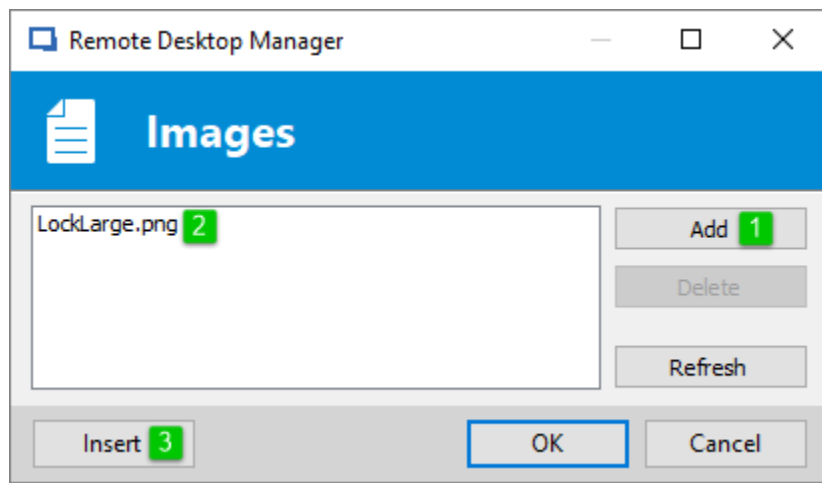
Image syntax is very similar to link syntax. Images must be added in the image manager before referencing them.

To add images in the image manager, click the **Manage images**  button.



Documentation editor – Image manager

Click **Add** to select an image from the computer. Select the image in the list, and click **Insert** to place the image in the text.



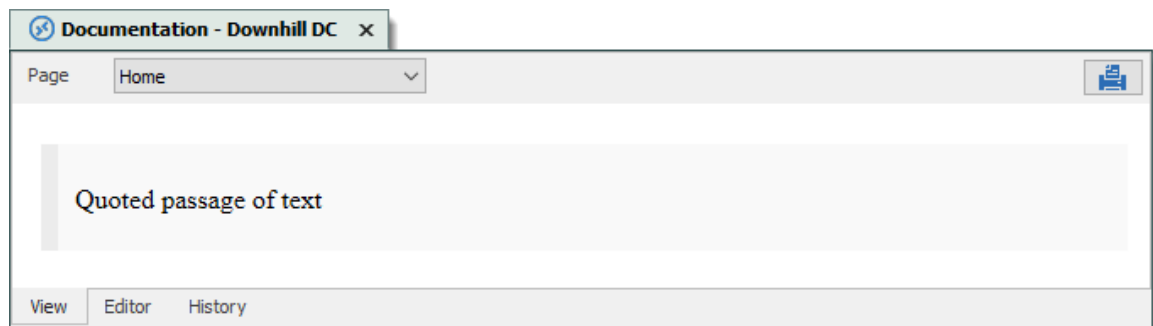
Documentation editor - Add an image

BLOCKQUOTES

Quote a passage of text by inputting a greater-than (>) symbol at the beginning of the line of text.

> Quoted passage of text

Output:

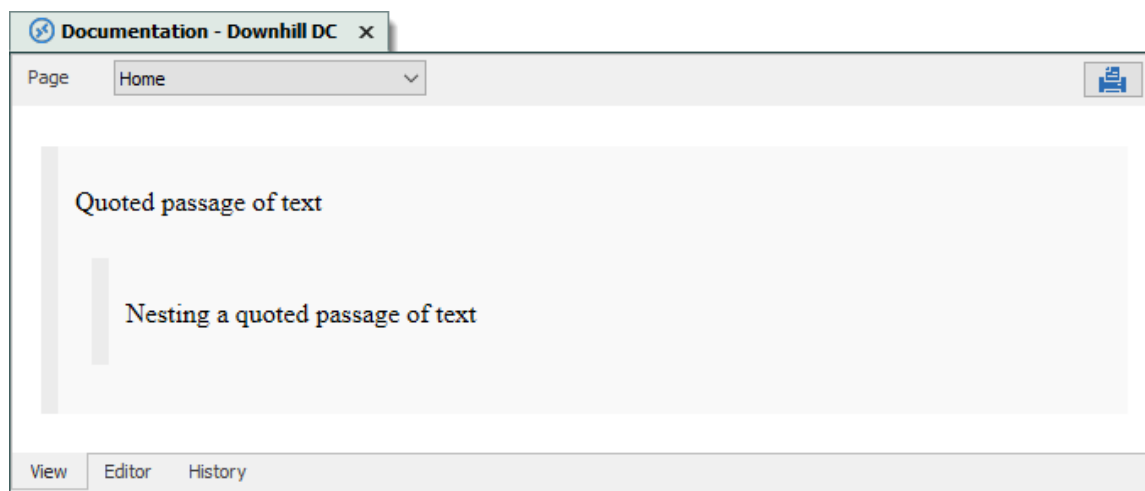


Blockquotes can easily be nested.

> Quoted passage of text

>> Nesting a quoted passage of text

Output:

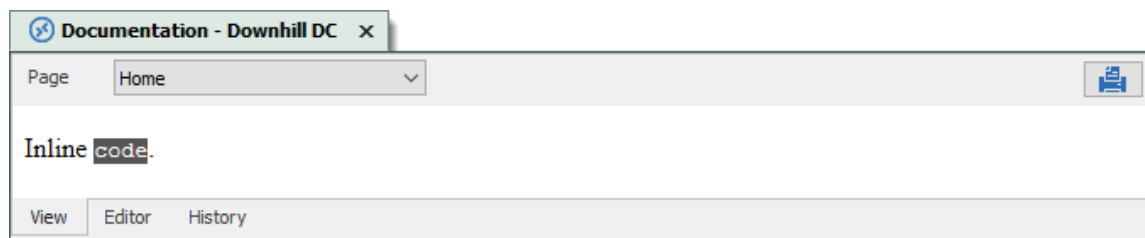


CODE EXAMPLES

Inline code is created by enclosing the text in backticks (`).

Inline ``code``.

Output:



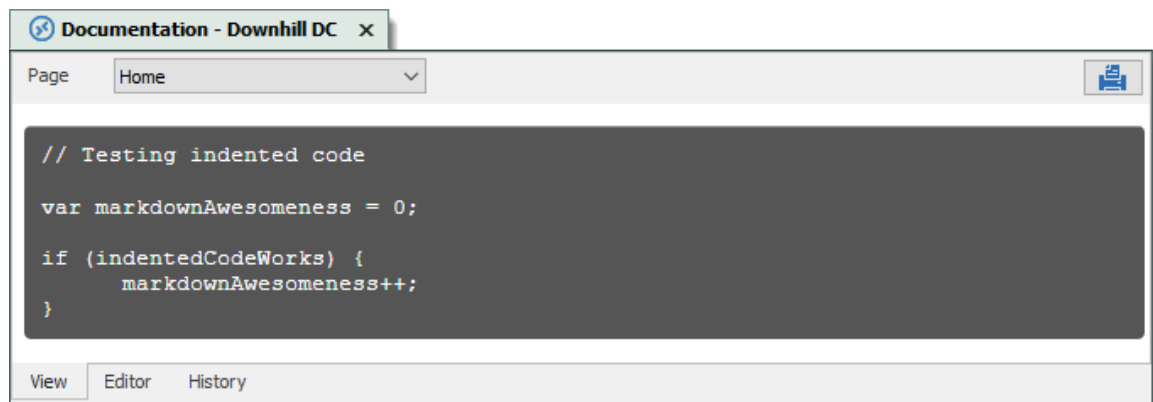
Code blocks are created by indenting the text with four spaces at the beginning of each line. There must be an empty line before.

```
// Testing indented code

var markdownAwesomeness = 0;

if (indentedCodeWorks) {
    markdownAwesomeness++;
}
```

Output:



A specific syntax highlighting can be specified as well.

```
```javascript  
var s = "JavaScript syntax highlighting";
alert(s);
```
```

Output:



6.1.3 Entry History

DESCRIPTION

Entry History feature allows you to view details regarding different version of your sessions and also gives you the option of performing compares between different versions.

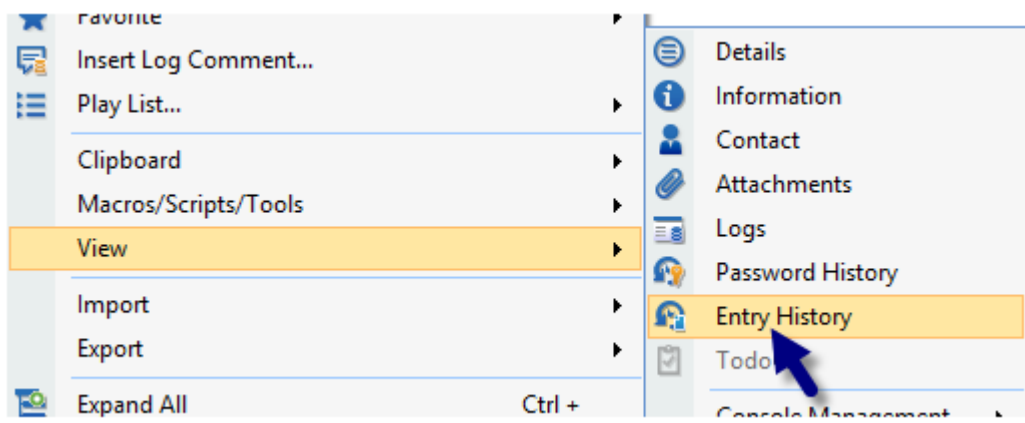


This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



You must be an administrator of the data source to perform this action.

SETTINGS

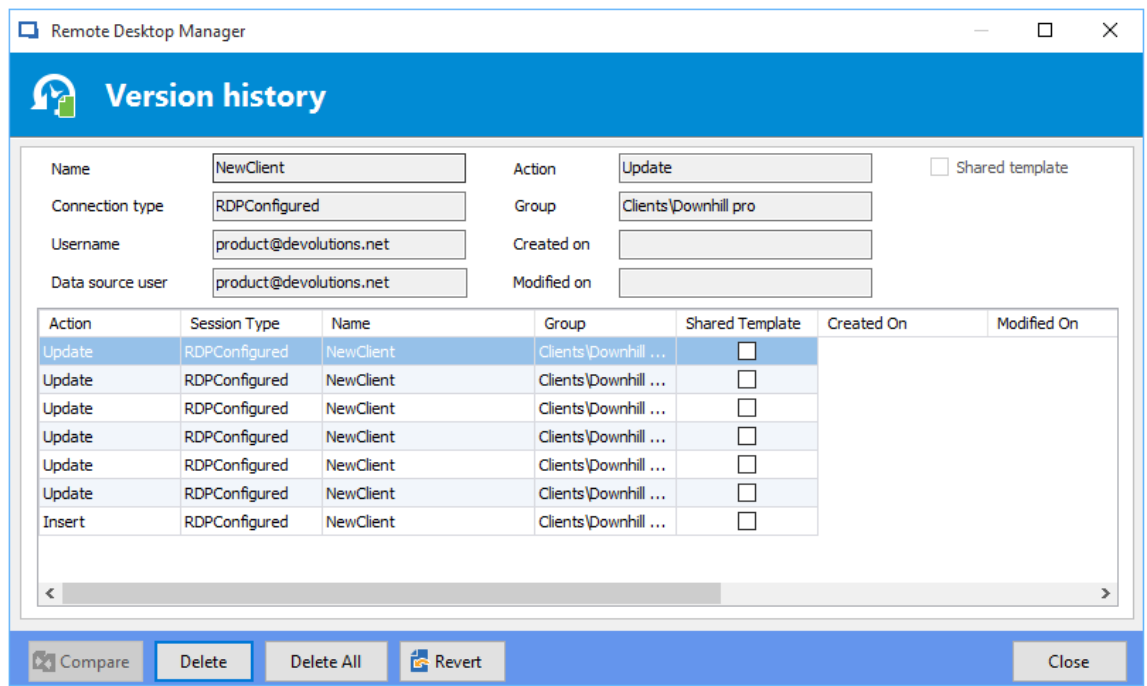


Home - Entry History

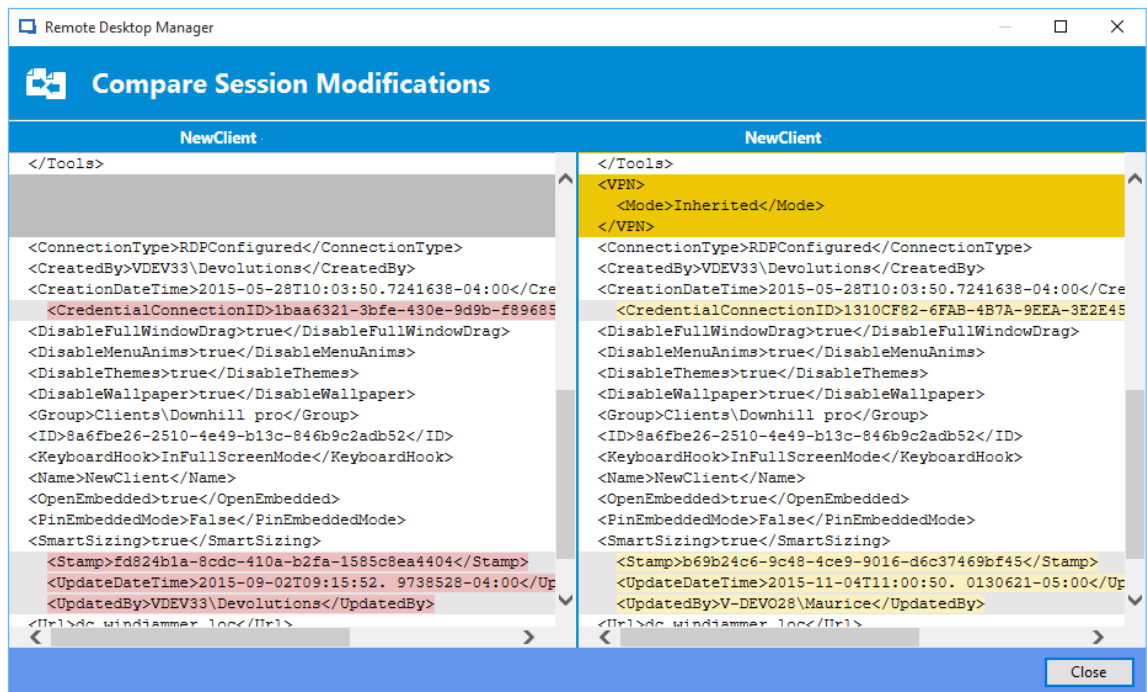
To display the entry history, **right-click** on an entry and select **View - Entry History**.

ENTRY HISTORY VIEW

The entry history view dialog allows you to compare two entries and manage history revisions. To compare simply select any two entries then use the **Compare** button. You can delete any history revision or the entire history using the **Delete** and **Delete All** buttons.



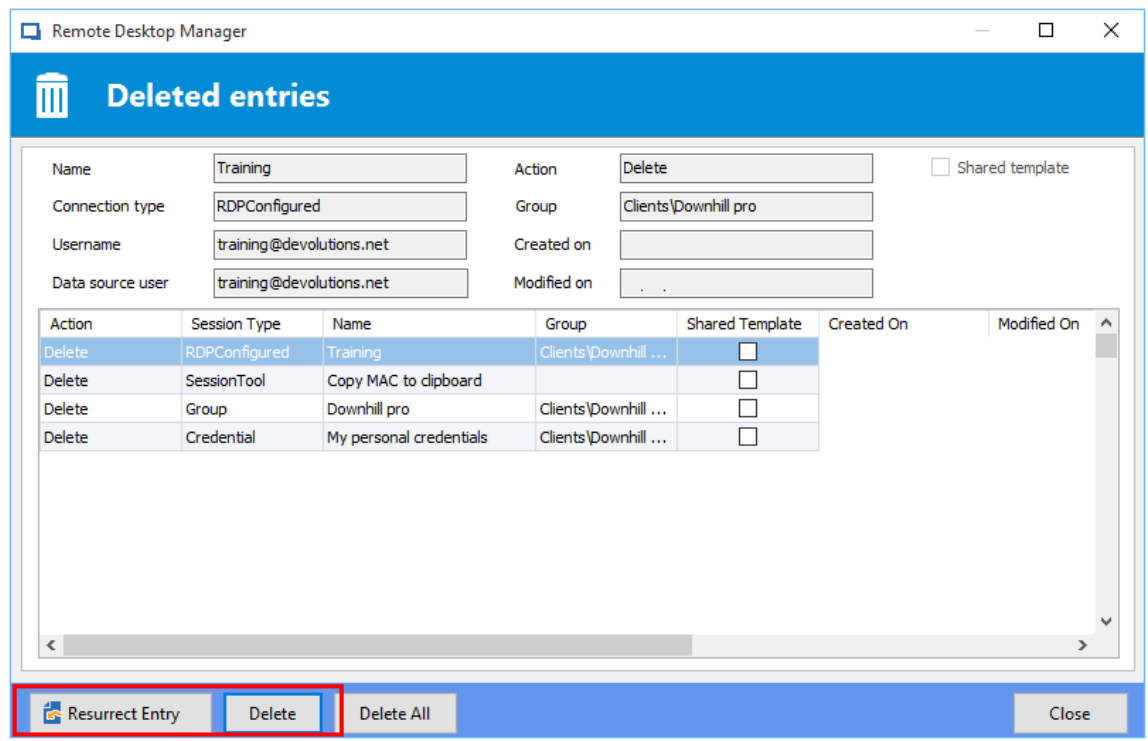
Entry history view



Compare session modifications

VIEW DELETED ENTRIES

Use the **Administration - [View Deleted](#)** to manage and resurrect deleted entries.

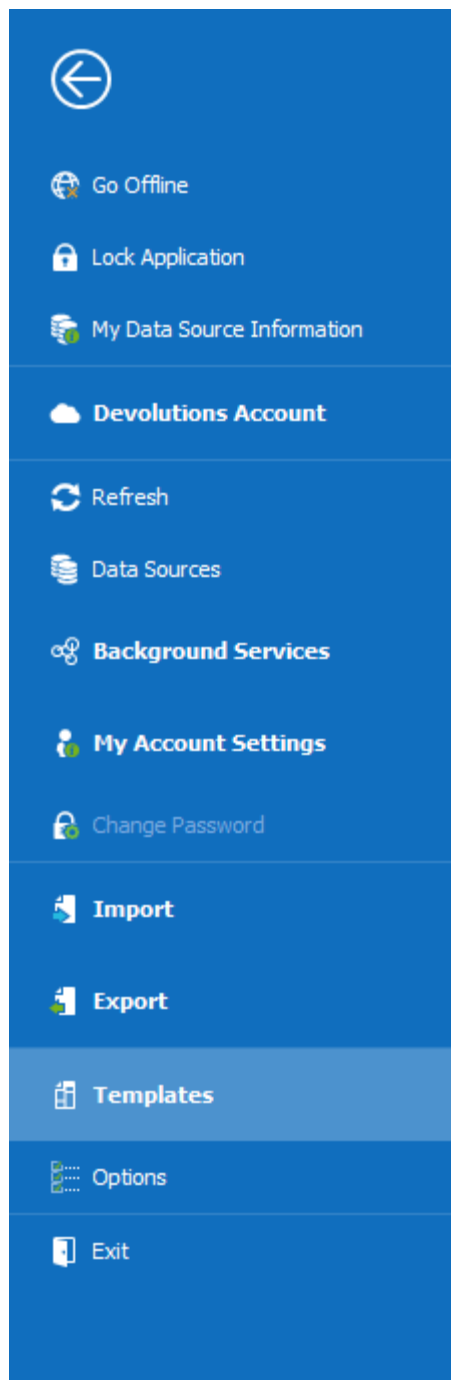


Deleted Entries

6.2 File

DESCRIPTION

The **File** menu contains many actions regarding the application and the data source. This menu is contextual and depends on the connected data source.



File

GO OFFLINE/ONLINE

Toggle the data source offline mode.

For more information, please consult the [Offline mode](#) topic.

LOCK APPLICATION

Lock and minimize the application.

The user is prompted for the data source password when the application is restored (if required by the configuration).

MY DATA SOURCE INFORMATION

Display configuration information relative to the current data source.

For more information, please consult the [My Data Source Information](#) topic.

DEVOLUTIONS ACCOUNT

Connect to a Devolutions Account, create custom installer for Remote Desktop Manager, manage license serials, and more.

For more information, please consult the [Devolutions Account](#) topic.

REFRESH

Refresh the data source and retrieve the most recent data.

For more information, please consult the [Refresh](#) topic.

DATA SOURCES

Open the data source configuration screen.

For more information, please consult the [Data Sources](#) topic.

BACKGROUND SERVICES

View and execute synchronizers.

For more information, please consult the [Background Services](#) topics.

MY ACCOUNT SETTINGS

View information about the current user and edit personal credentials.

For more information, please consult the [My Account Settings](#) topic.

CHANGE MASTER KEY

Prompts to change the current Master Key

For more information, please consult the [Change Master Key](#) topic.

IMPORT

Import entries in the data source.

For more information, please consult the [Import](#) topic.

EXPORT

Export entries from the data source.

For more information, please consult the [Export](#) topic.

OPTIONS

Edit the application options.

For more information, please consult the [Options](#) topic.

TEMPLATES

Edit templates and default settings for entries.

For more information, please consult the [Templates](#) topic.

6.2.1 Go Offline/Online

DESCRIPTION

Toggle the data source [Offline Mode](#).

Use the offline mode to connect to a local copy of the data source when the remote database is unavailable. This is useful when working from a remote location and the network is unreachable or if there is any kind of connectivity issue.



There are security considerations to take into account when enabling the offline mode.

The offline mode availability relies on several settings, refer to the [Offline Mode](#) topic.

The lowest setting (in terms of security) prevails over the others, which may prevent you from using the offline mode. If the **Go Offline** button is not available, please consult your administrator.

The [Data Source Information](#) displays the size of the offline cache file along with the effective modes (disabled, read-only or read/write).

| Offline mode | Size | Access |
|-----------------------|---------|---------------|
| Offline mode | 64.0 KB | Read/write |
| Group Policy settings | | Read/write |
| System settings | | Read/write |
| User settings | | Read/write |
| Data source config | | Intelligent |
| Vault | | Allow offline |

Data Source Information - Offline mode

Several features are not available in offline mode, such as:

- Attachments and logs.
- [User management](#) (Add/Edit/Delete users).


6.2.2 My Data Source Information

DESCRIPTION




The **Data Source Information** displays various information related to the current data source, such as the current user and security access.



The **My Data Source Information** view can be different depending on the [Data Source Type](#). This topic uses an SQL Server data source.



Data Source Information

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| Server | |
| Database | |
| Is DB owner | ✓ |
| Is System DBA | ✗ |
| Offline mode | Read/write |
| Group policy settings | Read/write |
| System settings | Read/write |
| User settings | Read/write |
| Data source config | Intelligent |

General

Entries

User Groups

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------|
| Database user | |
| User | |
| Description | |
| User vault | Default |
| Is administrator | ✓ |
| Allow offline mode | ✓ |
| Allow drag-and-drop | ✓ |
| Is Auto Refresh | ✗ |
| Auto refresh interval | 0 sec |
| Is Two Factor Configuration | ✗ |

File – My Data Source Information

USER AND SECURITY

GENERAL

The General tab displays information about the current user and data source configuration.

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------|-------------|---------|
| General | Entries | User Groups | |
| Database user | | | |
| User | | | |
| Description | | | |
| User vault | | | Default |
| Is administrator | | | ✓ |
| Allow offline mode | | | ✓ |
| Allow drag-and-drop | | | ✓ |
| Is Auto Refresh | | | ✗ |
| Auto refresh interval | | 0 | sec |
| Is Two Factor Configuration | | | ✗ |

My Data Source Information - General

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| Database user | The name of the user currently logged to the database. |
| User | The actual windows user. |
| Description | Display the description of the user connected to the data source. |
| Is administrator | Indicates if the user is an administrator. |
| Allow offline mode | Indicates if the user can use the data source in offline mode. |
| Allow drag-and-drop | Indicates if the user can drag-and-drop entries in the data source. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Is Auto Refresh | Indicates if the data source auto refreshes. |
| Auto refresh interval | Indicates the delay for the auto refresh to occur. |
| Is Two Factor Configuration | Indicates if the data source is configured with a second factor of authentication. |

ENTRIES

| General | Entries | User Groups |
|---------|--------------------------------|-------------|
| | Add entries | ✓ |
| | Edit entries | ✓ |
| | Delete entries | ✓ |
| | View information section | ✓ |
| | Import entries | ✓ |
| | Export entries | ✓ |
| | Allow add entry in root folder | ✓ |

My Data Source Information – Entries

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Add, Edit and Delete entries | Indicates if the user has the right to add, edit, or delete entries. |
| View information section | Indicates if the user can view the information section of entries. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Import and Export entries | Indicates if the user has the privilege to import or export entries. |
| Allow add entry in Vault folder | Indicates if the user can add entries in the Vault of the data source. |

USER GROUPS

The **User Groups** tab displays the user groups that the user is a member of and the rights related to those user groups.



This feature is only available with an [SQL Server/Azure SQL](#) and a [Devolutions Server \(DVLS\)](#) data source.

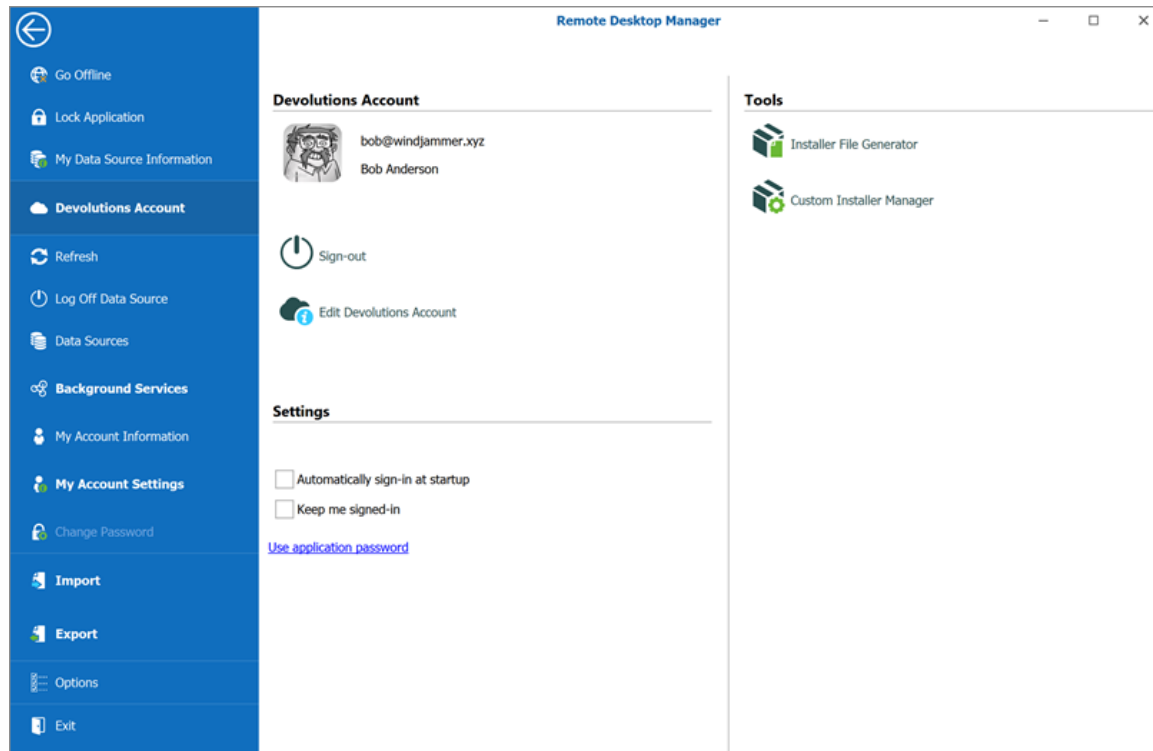
| | | |
|---------|---------|-------------|
| General | Entries | User Groups |
|---------|---------|-------------|

Name

6.2.3 Devolutions Account

DESCRIPTION

In **File - Devolutions Account** create and connect your Remote Desktop Manager to your Devolutions Account. The Devolutions Account is free for customers and includes access to the **Custom Installer Manager**.



Devolutions Account

DEVOLUTIONS ACCOUNT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Sign-in or Sign-out | Sign-in or out with your Devolutions Account. |
| Create a New Devolutions Account | Create a new Devolutions Account. |
| Edit Devolutions Account | Edit your Devolutions Account. |

SETTINGS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Automatically sign-in at startup | Automatically sign-in to your Devolutions Account at the startup of the application. |
| Keep me signed-in | Keep a token in memory to remain signed into your Devolutions Account. |
| Use application password | Use the Application password to connect to your Devolutions Account. |

TOOLS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Installer File Generator | Create a Remote Desktop Manager Installer File (.rdi). Consult topic Installer File Generator . |
| Custom Installer Manager | Consult topic Custom Installer Manager . |

6.2.4 Backup

DESCRIPTION

Please consult topic [Online Backup](#) for information on this service.

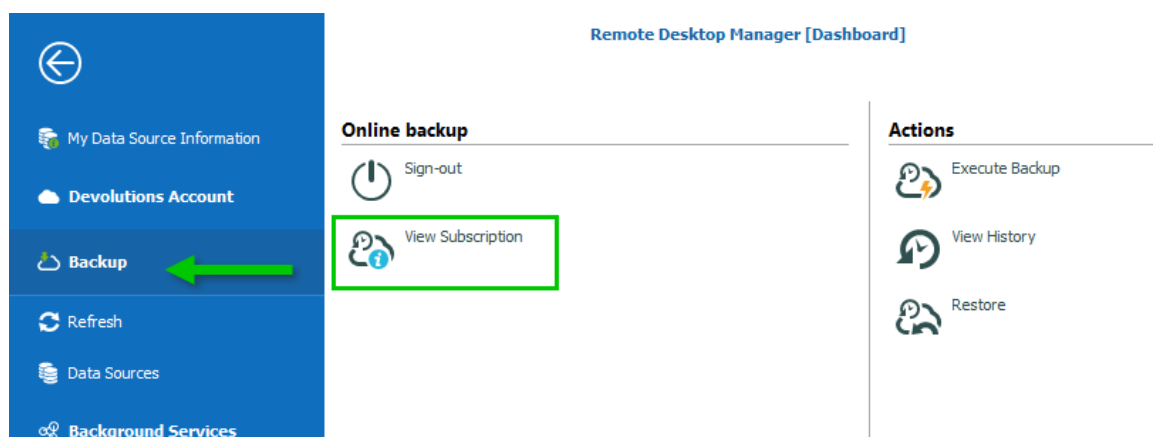
6.2.4.1 Settings

DESCRIPTION

The [Online Backup](#) allows you to backup your [Devolutions Online Drive](#), [SQLite](#) or [XML](#) data sources in a safe online storage. The backup option is available through **File – Backup** menu.

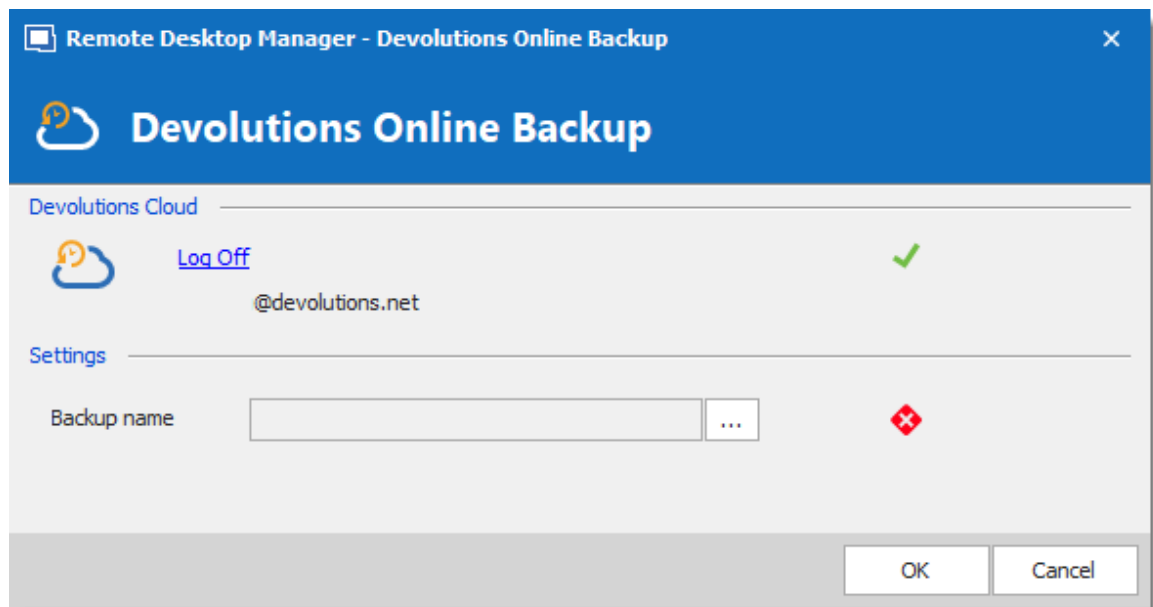
SETTINGS

1. Click on **File – Backup** to Sign-in with your [Devolutions Account](#).
2. Click on **View Subscription**.



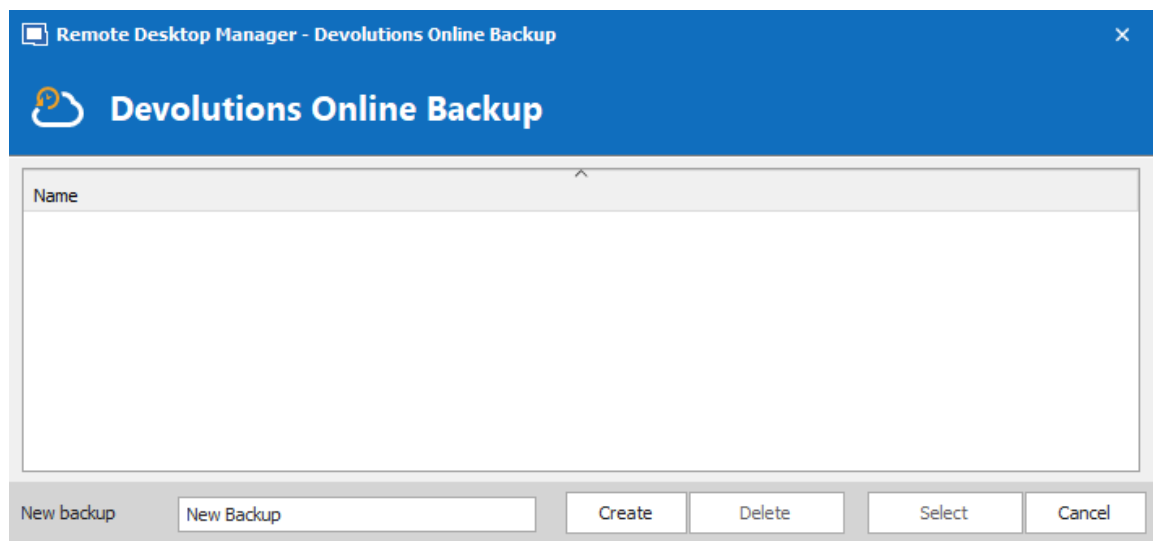
Online Backup - View Subscription

3. Click on the ellipsis to enter your **Backup name**.



Backup Name

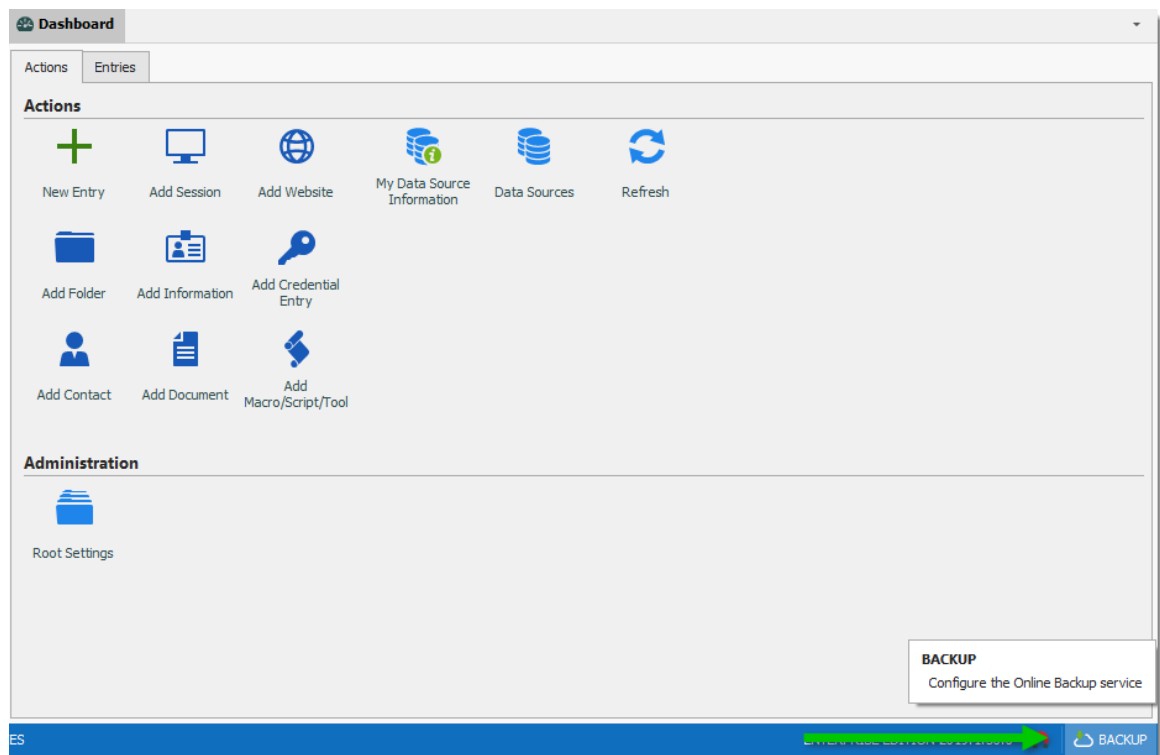
4. You will need to specify a unique backup name in the field **New backup** for each of your data source which will then be used to backup and restore the data source. Click on **Create** to automatically create your Online Backup.



Create Backup

5. Once you've completed all the steps, perform a change in the data source to properly activate the Online Backup.

6. The backup logo will display a green arrow meaning your backup is now enabled.



Online Backup Activated



You must perform this for all your [Devolutions Online Drive](#), [SQLite](#) or [XML](#) data sources in order to be fully protected!



The automatic backup is executed in the background 30 seconds after any modification is made to the data source content.

6.2.4.2 Restore

DESCRIPTION

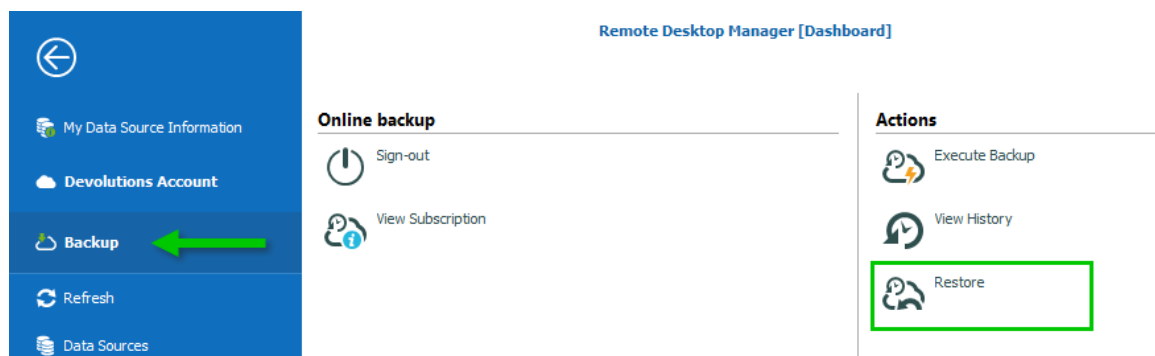


Before being able to restore a backup, you **MUST** create an empty data source and define the backup name before being able to use it. You need to create a new SQLite, XML or Online Drive data source in **File – Data Sources**.

At some point, you may need to restore a backup of your [Devolutions Online Drive](#), [SQLite](#) or [XML](#) data sources. The restore option is accessible from the menu **File – Backup – Restore**.

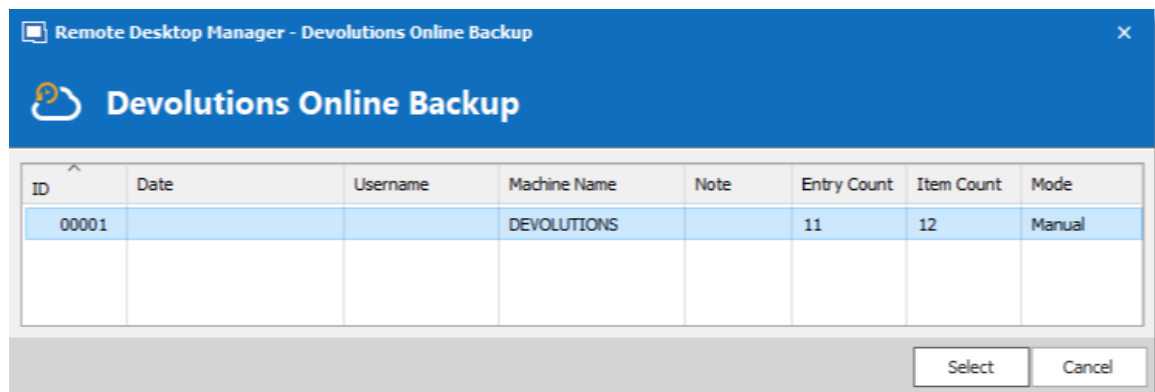
SETTINGS

1. To restore a data source from a backup, select it as the current data source.
2. Click on **File – Backup – Restore**.



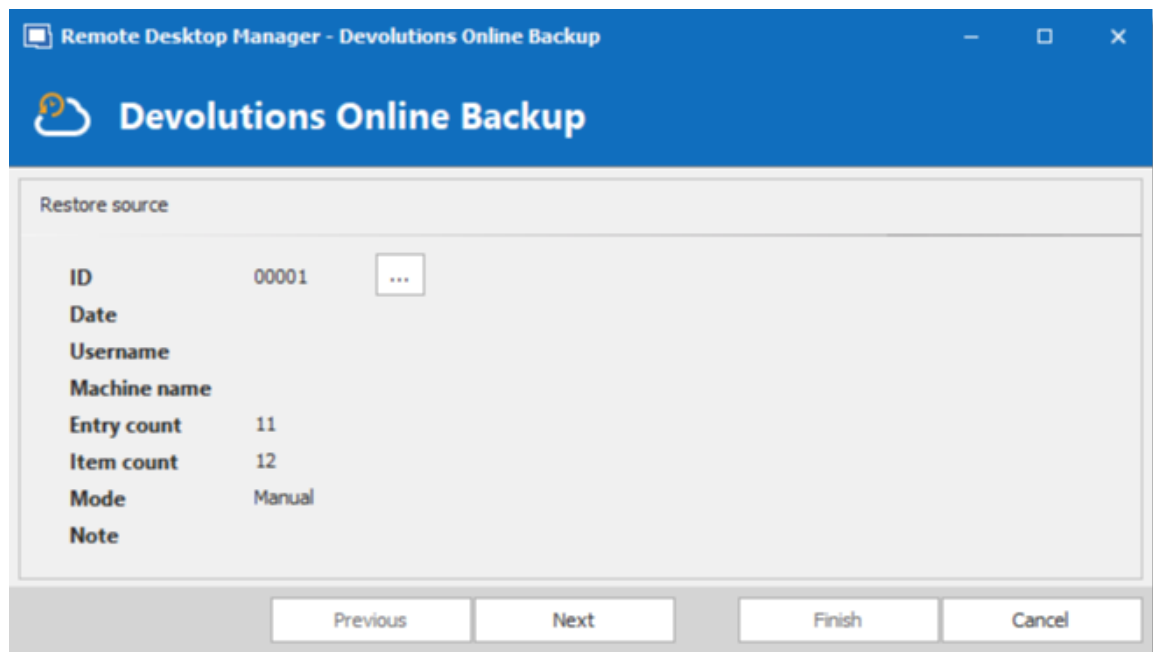
Backup Restore

3. Select the backup that you wish to restore from the list and click on **Select**.

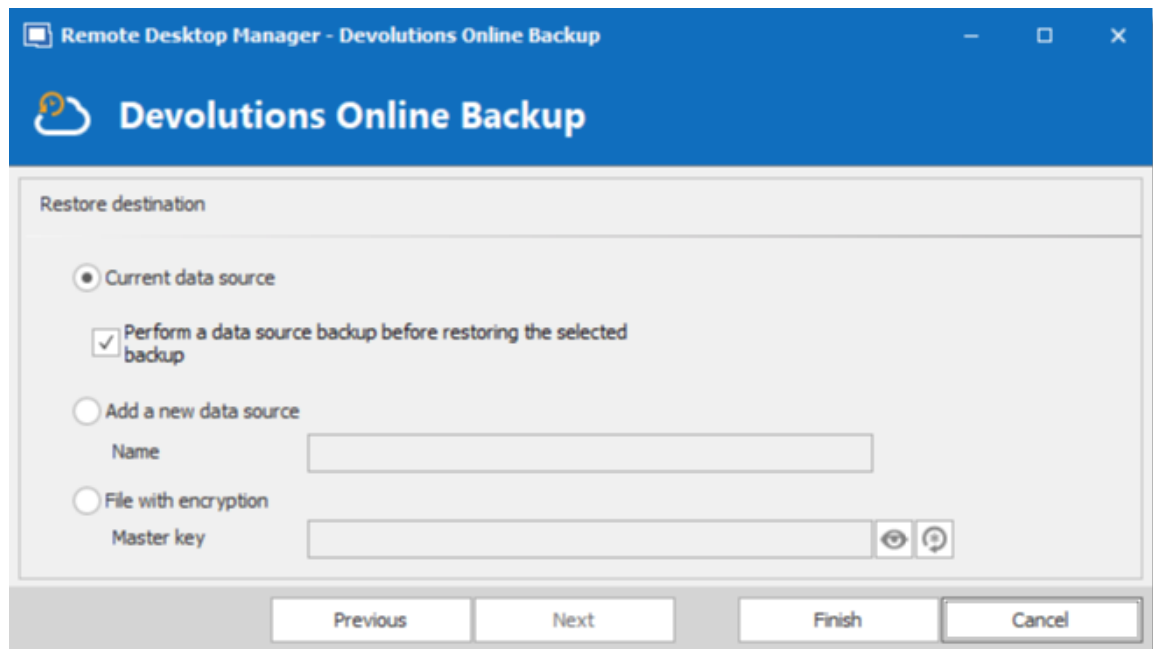


Select your Backup

4. The Online Backup wizard will display a brief description of the backup. Click on **Next**.

*Backup Wizard*

5. Select the restore destination. It is not necessary to select the option **Perform a backup data source before restoring the selected backup** since it is empty.

*Restore Destination*

6. Click on **Finish** to perform your backup restore.


6.2.5 Refresh

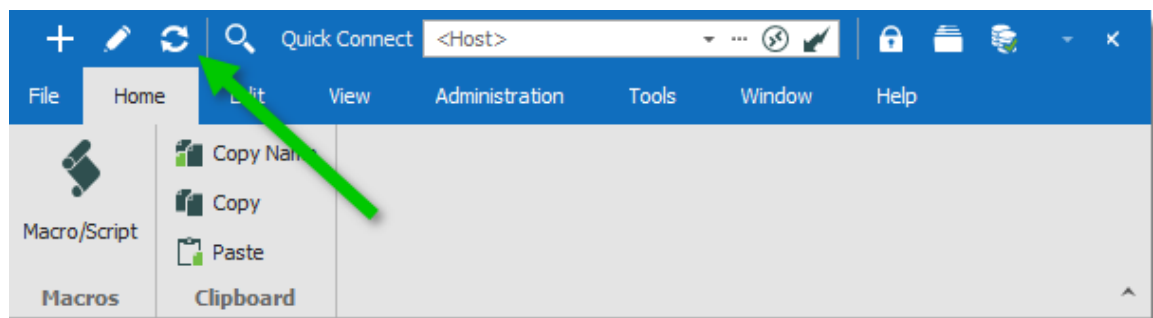
DESCRIPTION

Refreshing the data source allows for updating its content. Data sources are usually refreshed automatically after a set period of time.

To refresh the data source, use **File – Refresh**. Do a refresh to make sure that the data source is up to date.


SIMPLE REFRESH

A simple refresh updates the data source to retrieve only the modified content. Use the above-mentioned **File – Refresh** or the refresh  button in the Quick Access Toolbar.



Refresh the Data Source

LOCAL CACHE REFRESH

A refresh of the local cache resets the local cache of the data source. All the content is retrieved from the database and the local cache file is recreated. Click the refresh  button while holding the **Ctrl** key or use the **Ctrl+F5** key combination. A local cache refresh may also help when experiencing [Cache](#) issues.

6.2.6 Change Master Key

DESCRIPTION

Use **File – Change Master Key** to encrypt the data source.

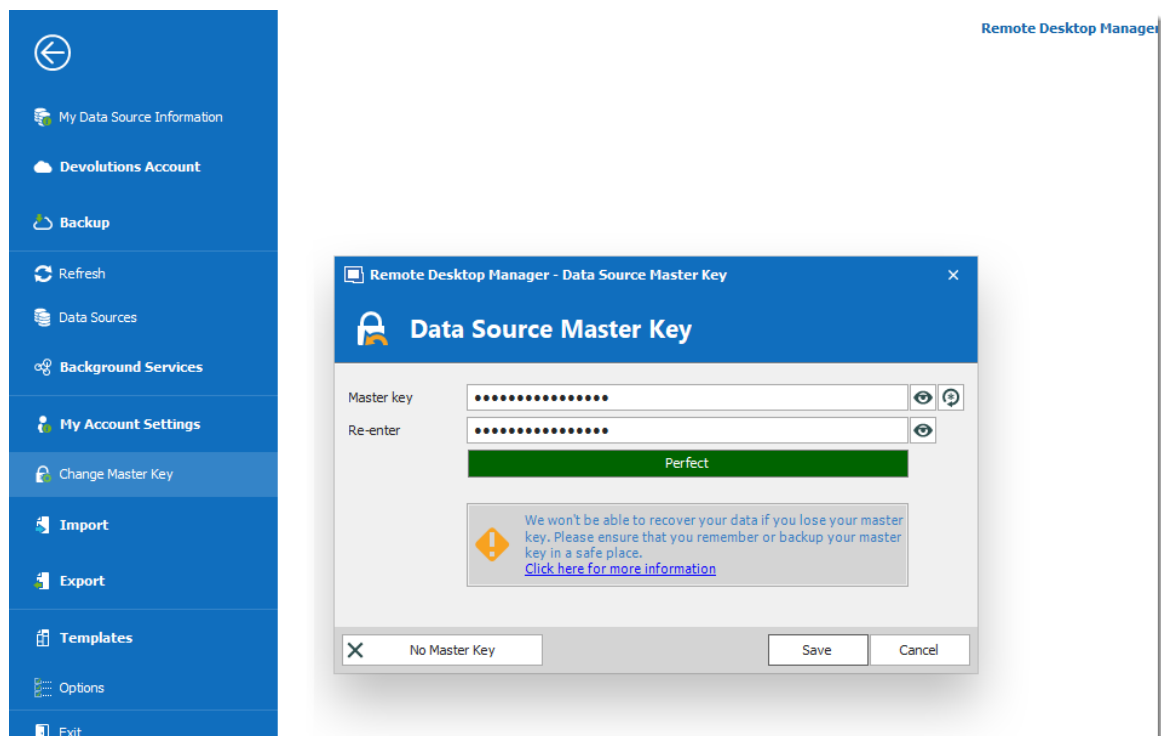
The master key prevents unauthorized users to access the data source without knowing the master key. It is highly recommended to apply a master key to the data source if you're using Remote Desktop Manager in a portable environment (i.e. USB Flash Drive, USB Hard Drive).

A master key can be used with the following data sources:

- Devolutions Online Drive
- Dropbox
- Google Drive
- XML



Since version 14.0.4.0, the user is automatically prompted to add a master key when connecting to one of the above mentioned data sources for the first time. The master key is completely optional (yet highly recommended).



Change Master Key

6.2.7 Data Sources

DESCRIPTION

Use **File – Data Sources** to manage data sources. Remote Desktop Manager supports multiple types of data source. Most are available only with an Enterprise Edition of Remote Desktop Manager.

Please refer to the [Data Source Types](#) topic for more information on all supported types of data sources.

Remote Desktop Manager

General Settings User Vault VPN Advanced

Name: Devolutions Server

Host: [Dropdown]

☐ Use Windows authentication

☐ Use Office365 authentication

☐ Prompt for credentials

Username: bob@windjammer.loc

Password: [Masked]

☐ Always ask password

| Type | Name | Locked |
|---------------|--------------------|--------|
| Shield icon | Devolutions Server | |
| Document icon | Windjammer local | |

On start up: Use default data source [Dropdown] Devolutions Server [Dropdown]

OK Cancel




Data Source

SETTINGS

ADD A NEW DATA SOURCE

Use the **Add** button  to create a data source configuration.


EDIT/DUPLICATE/DELETE DATA SOURCE

Use the  –  –  buttons to respectively edit, duplicate or delete the selected data source configuration.




Only the configuration will be deleted but the actual file or database will still be available.


IMPORT/EXPORT DATA SOURCE CONFIGURATION

Use the  –  buttons to respectively import or export the selected data source configuration. The configuration is exported as a **.RDD** file.

LOCK DATA SOURCE

Use the **lock** button  to lock the data source with a password to prevent any modification to a data source configuration. This is useful when having sensitive credentials that you wish to protect from other users.

UNLOCK DATA SOURCE

Use the **unlock** button  to unlock a data source locked with a password.

ON START UP

Choose which data source to connect to when the application starts.

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| Use default | Set the data source that you always want to open at start up. |

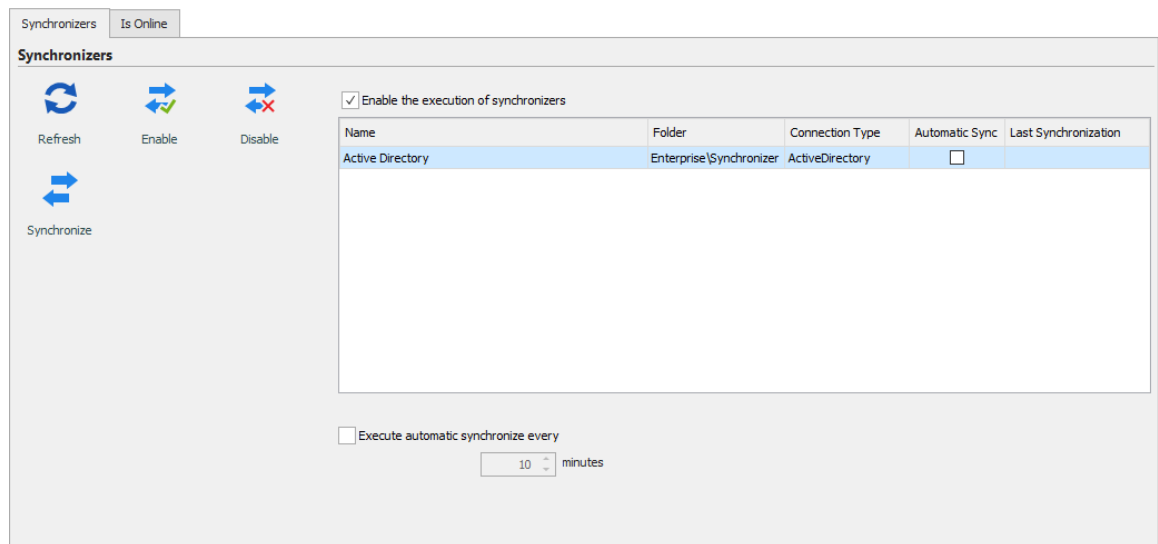
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|---|
| data source | |
| Last used data source | Open with the last used data source. |
| Prompt for data source | A message box will open on startup for the data source selection. |

6.2.8 Background Services

SYNCHRONIZERS

Synchronizers centralizes all your synchronizers entry in one place.

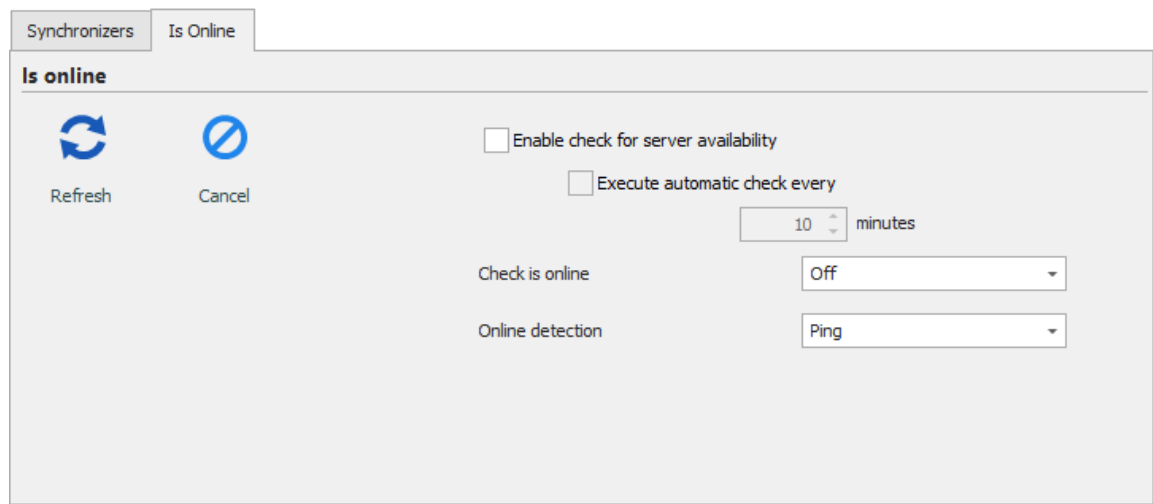
When experiencing a performance degradation with Remote Desktop Manager you will be able to verify if a synchronizer is running in the background causing the system to slow down.



Synchronizers

IS ONLINE

Is Online allows you to verify and change the settings of your server's online availability.



Is Online

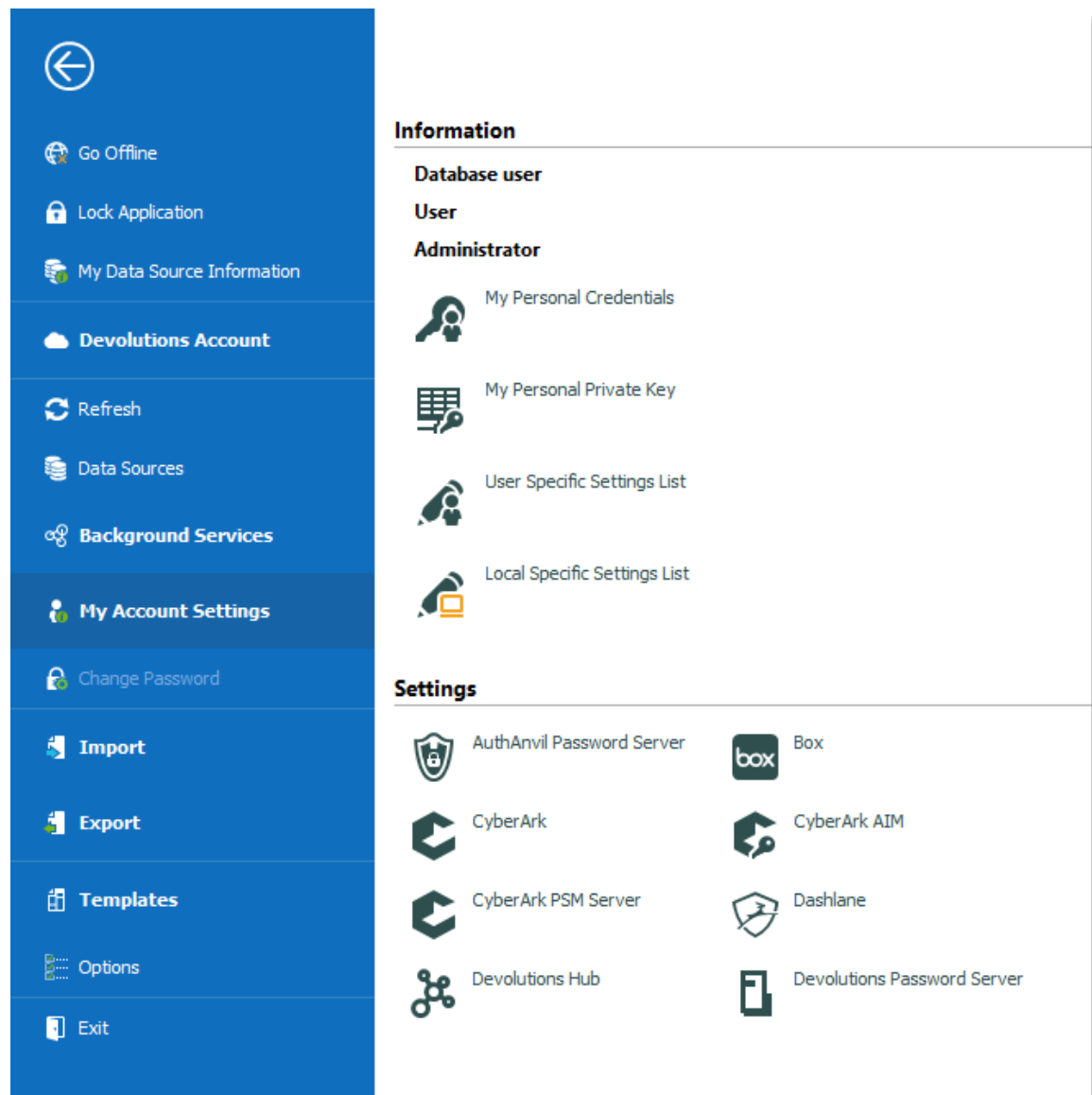
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Enable check for server availability | Server is ping to determine if they are available. Server will be displayed in "red" in the tree view if not available. |
| Execute automatic check every | Execute the online check automatically each determined amount of minutes. |
| Check is online | If the option is On the application will verify if the server is online. |
| Online detection | <p>If Check is online option is enable, select the detection method between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ping • Port scan |

6.2.9 My Account Settings

DESCRIPTION

Use **File – My Account Settings** to configure accounts that connect to different web platforms. Set up account settings one time and use it in entries as many time as required. This section also allows to manage **Personal Credentials**, **Personal Private Key** and **Specific Settings** lists.

SETTINGS



My Account Settings

INFORMATION

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--|
| Database user | Indicates the current user connected to the application. |
| User | Indicates the user of the current Windows session. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Administrator | Indicates if the current user is administrator or not. |
| My Personal Credentials | Please consult My Personal Credentials topic for more information. |
| My Personal Private Key | Configure a personal private key for further use in sessions. |
| User Specific Settings List | Provide a list of all the User Specific Settings configured in Remote Desktop Manager. |
| Local Specific Settings list | Provide a list of all the Local Specific Settings configured in Remote Desktop Manager. |

SETTINGS

We support a specifics settings for a variety of Credentials, explore to your heart's content!

6.2.9.1 My Personal Credentials

DESCRIPTION

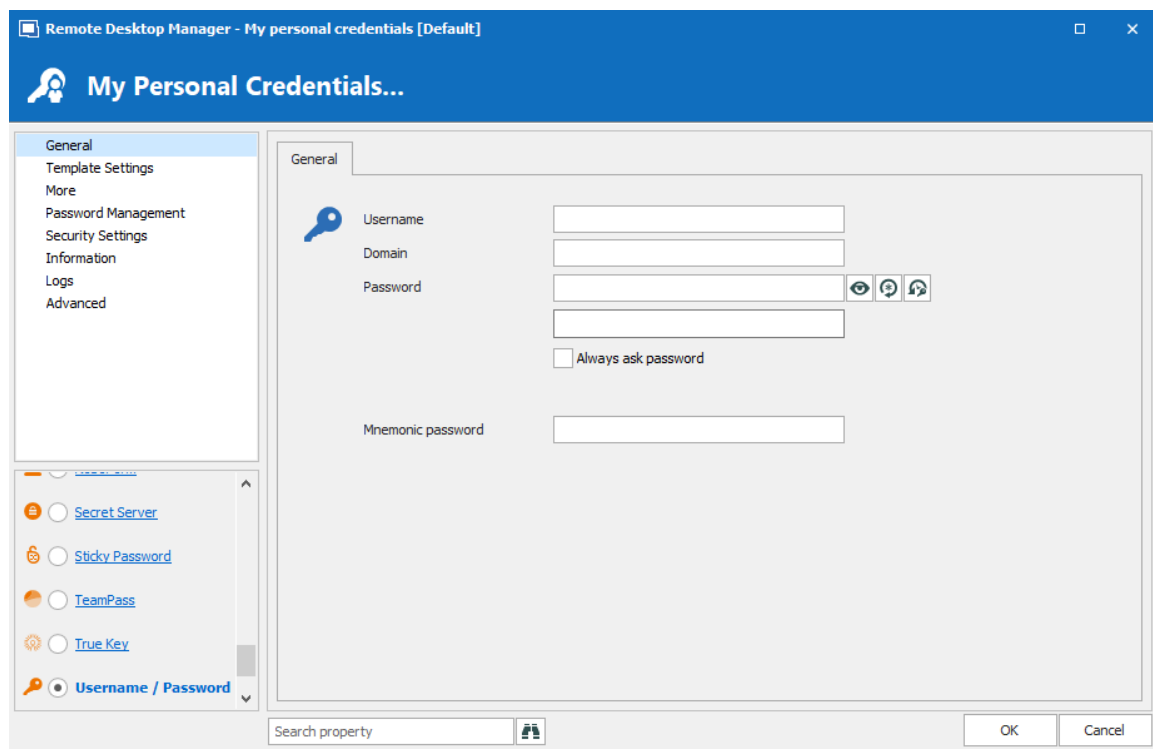
The **My Personal Credentials** feature is a single credential entry which is locally stored on your computer in your Windows profile.

It is typically used to hold the Windows credentials for your running sessions because Remote Desktop Manager can't access them. If you can't use integrated security then you must store your credentials in **My Personal Credentials**.

This allows you to centralize one special credential to replace or emulate the ones for your Windows session. When a password change is needed you simply need to change it once in **My Personal Credentials**.

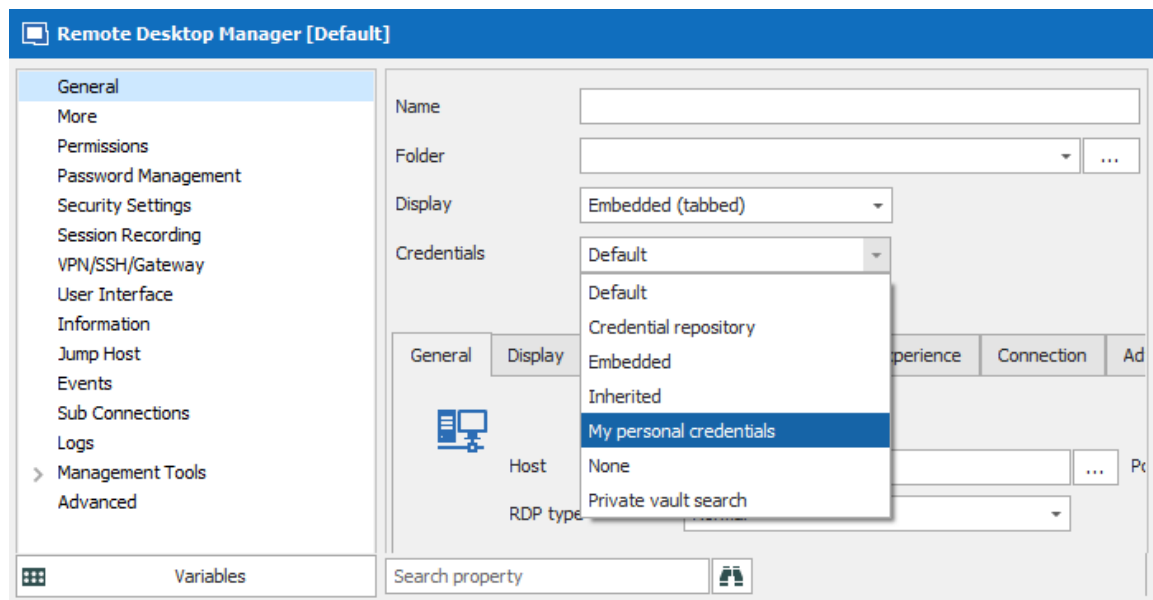


If you want to change the credential type, go in %**LOCALAPPDATA% (Default) or %APPDATA% (Remote Desktop Services)** **\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager** and delete the **Credentials.rdt** file to reset it.



My Personal Credentials

My Personal Credentials can be selected in your entries under **Credentials**.

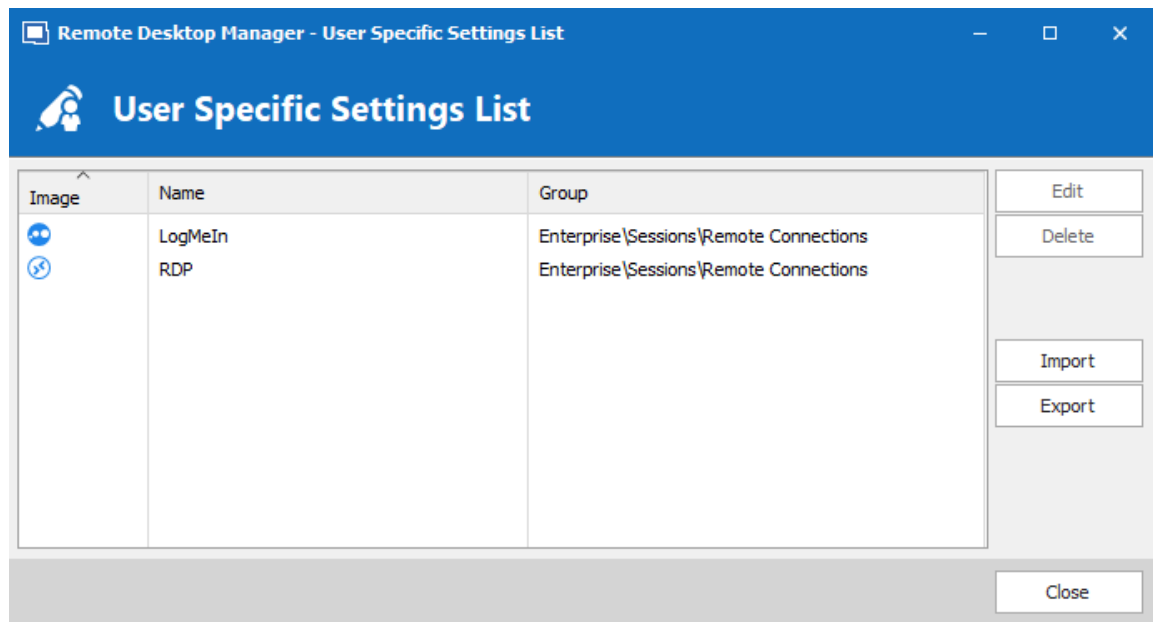


Credentials - My personal credentials

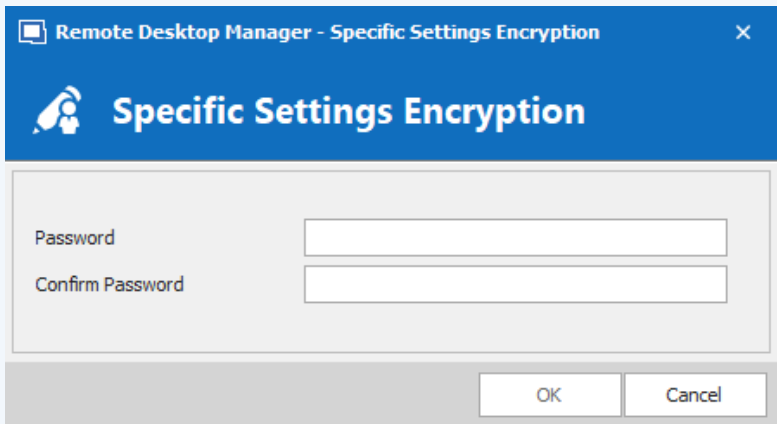
6.2.9.2 User Specific Settings List

DESCRIPTION

The **User Specific Settings List** feature will provide all entries that are overridden with user Specific Settings.



User Specific Settings List dialog

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|--|
| Edit | Edit the selected User Specific Settings . |
| Delete | Delete the selected User Specific Settings . |
| Import | Import a list of user Specific Settings from a .rds file. As this file is encrypted using a mandatory password, you will have to provide the password to successfully import the content of the .rds file. |
| Export | Export a list of user Specific Settings into a .rds file. A password is required to encrypt the .rds file.
 |

6.2.10 Import

DESCRIPTION

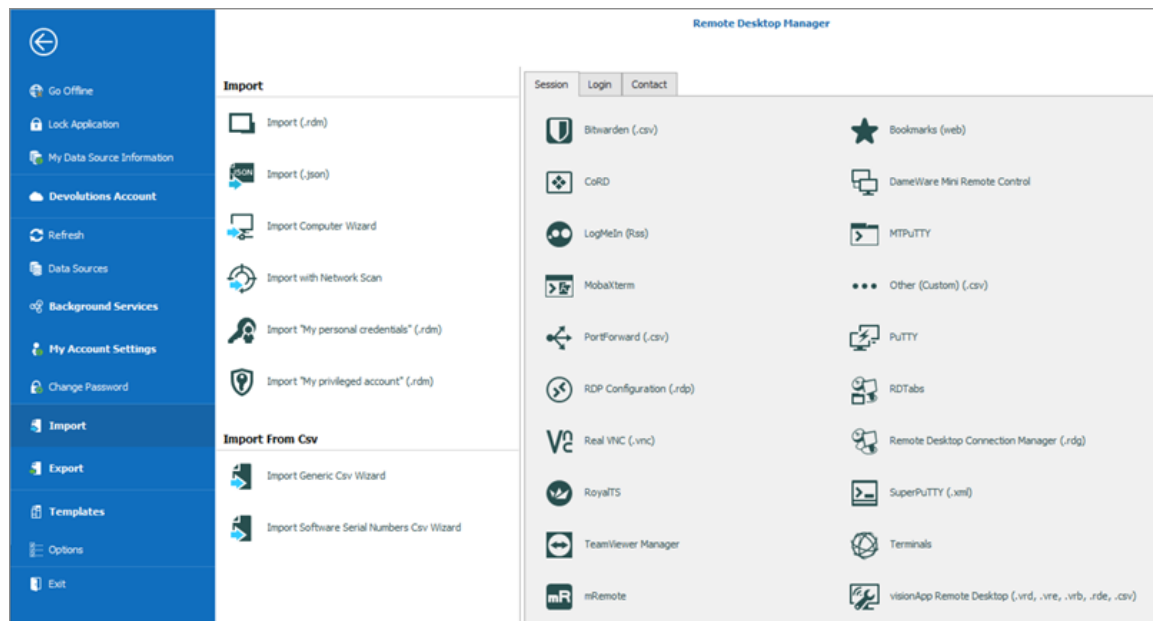
Use the **File - Import** to import entries in Remote Desktop Manager. You can import entry types from multiple sources.

We support native import formats from many popular tools on the market. In case we don't support the native format, or don't support the third party, we have wizards to import from a csv file.



The import feature is only active if the import **Privileges** has been enabled inside the user account.

SETTINGS



IMPORT (.RDM)

Import is used to import sessions stored in .rdm files who is Remote Desktop Manager native export format.

IMPORT (.JSON)

Import sessions from a .json file format.

IMPORT COMPUTER WIZARD

You can import session from computers from different sources. These sources include:

- Network neighborhood
- Active Directory
- Host list

Please refer to [Import Computer Wizard](#) for more information.

IMPORT WITH NETWORK SCAN

The **Import with Network Scan** allows you to perform a network scan based on a predefined range of IP address to find sessions to import. Consult the topic [Import with Network Scan](#) to learn more about this option.

IMPORT "MY PERSONAL CREDENTIALS" (.RDM)

Import your **My Personal Credentials** from a .rdm file.

IMPORT FROM CSV

Import entries from a .csv file. Please refer to [Import Generic CSV Wizard](#) for more information and strategies.

IMPORT SESSIONS, LOGINS AND CONTACTS

- [Import Sessions](#)
- [Import Logins](#)
- [Import Contacts](#)

6.2.10.1 Import Computer Wizard

DESCRIPTION



This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).

The **Import Computer Wizard** allows you to create sessions for computers using one of the following sources:

- [Network neighborhood](#).
- [Active directory](#): Your current domain or another domain on your network.
- [Host list](#): List of computers from a file.

OVERVIEW

The wizard has a few major-steps:

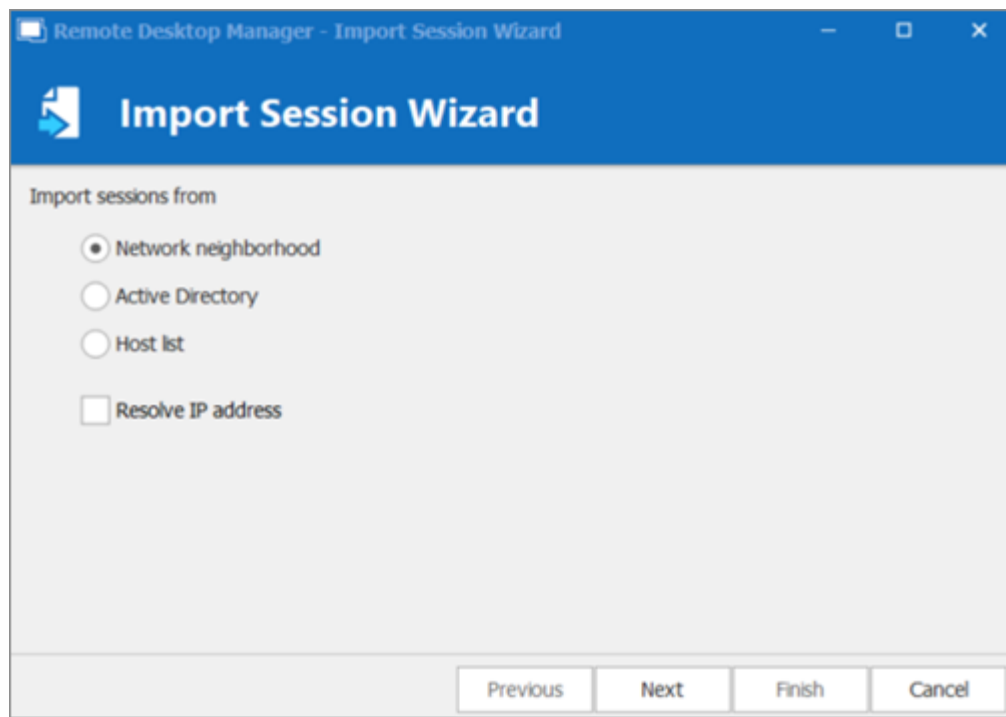
1. Select computers by using one of the three sources;
2. Optionally apply a template from which to base new sessions on; and
3. Optionally edit each newly created session prior to them being saved.

The template selection should not be overlooked, in fact, it is probably the most important step to ensure your newly created sessions are usable right after being created. You should divide the sessions in batches based on which template you need to apply and import one batch at a time.

WORKFLOW

Upon launching the wizard, you are prompted for the source to use.

The **Resolve IP address** option must be checked if you want to use the IP address in the host field of your sessions instead of the host name.

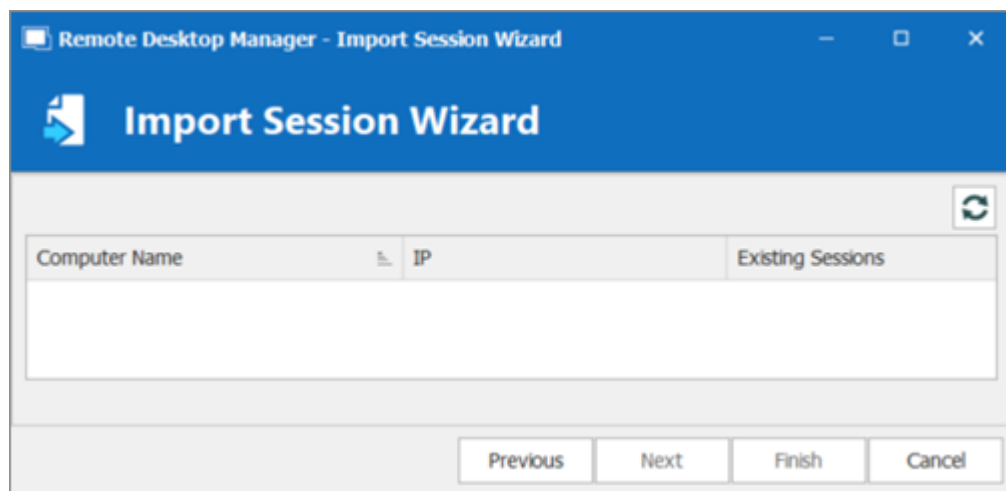


Import Session Wizard

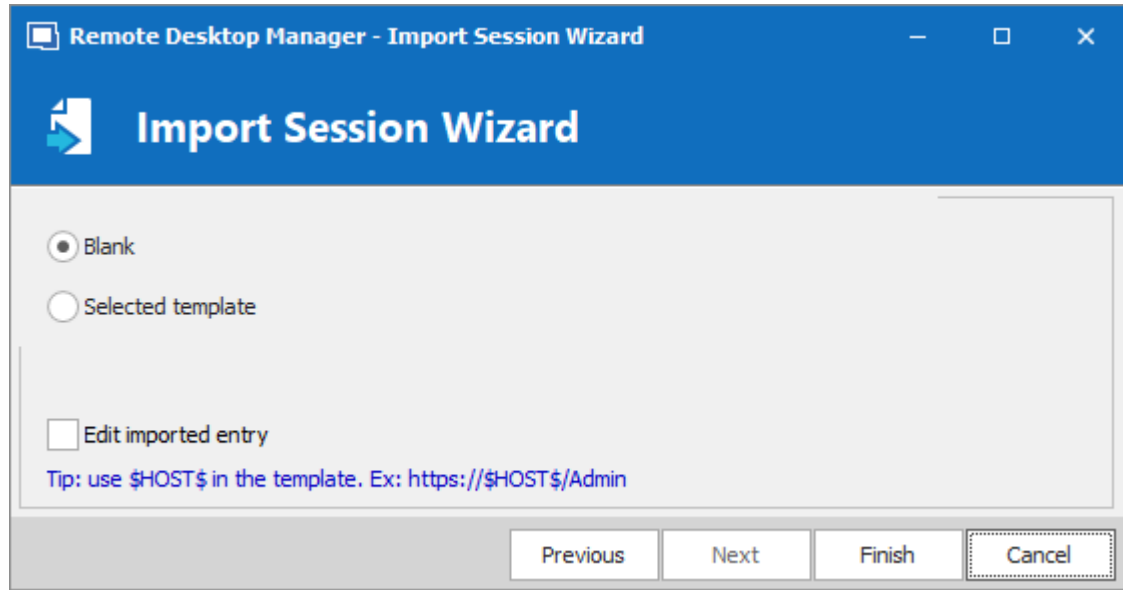
Refer to the sections below depending on the chosen source.

NETWORK NEIGHBORHOOD

The next screen will immediately be populated with the result of the network discovery.

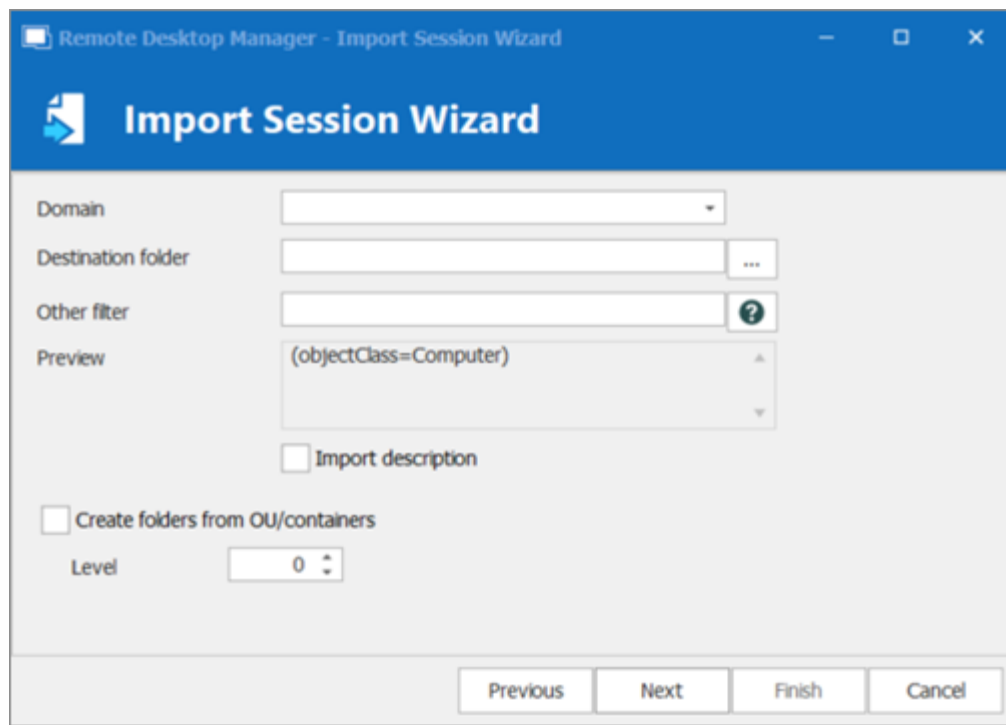


If you prefer your sessions to use the IP address instead of the Host name to connect to the devices, check the **Select by IP address** option. This requires that the **Resolve by IP address** was selected in the first screen of the wizard. Select the computers for which you want to create session and proceed to [Template Selection](#) below. Multi-select is allowed by using CTRL-click and SHIFT-click.



ACTIVE DIRECTORY

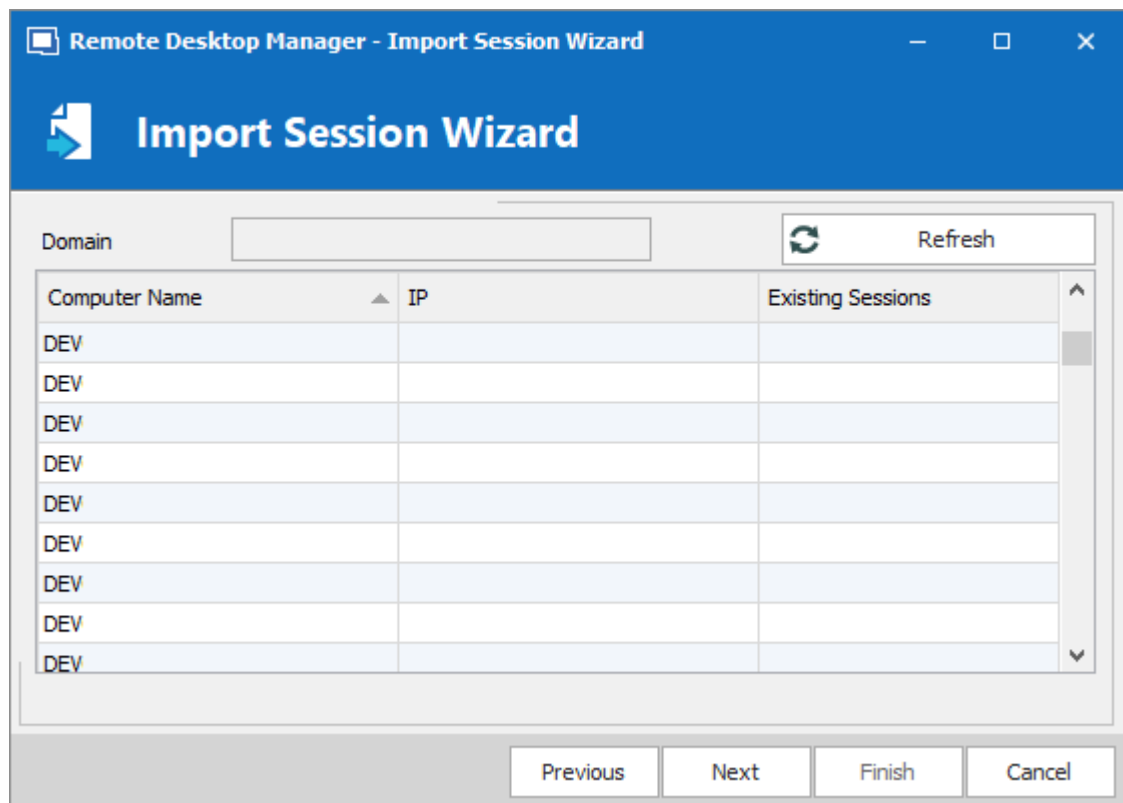
The following screen allows you to select the domain to interrogate after which you must press refresh to load the list of computers that are available.



The dialog box is titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Import Session Wizard" and "Import Session Wizard". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Domain: A text box with a dropdown arrow.
- Destination folder: A text box with a browse button (...).
- Other filter: A text box with a help button (?).
- Preview: A text box containing "(objectClass=Computer)".
- ☐ Import description
- ☐ Create folders from OU/containers
- Level: A text box containing "0" with up and down arrows.
- Buttons: Previous, Next, Finish, Cancel.

After the query is executed, the results are displayed in the grid.



The dialog box is titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Import Session Wizard" and "Import Session Wizard". It contains the following fields and controls:

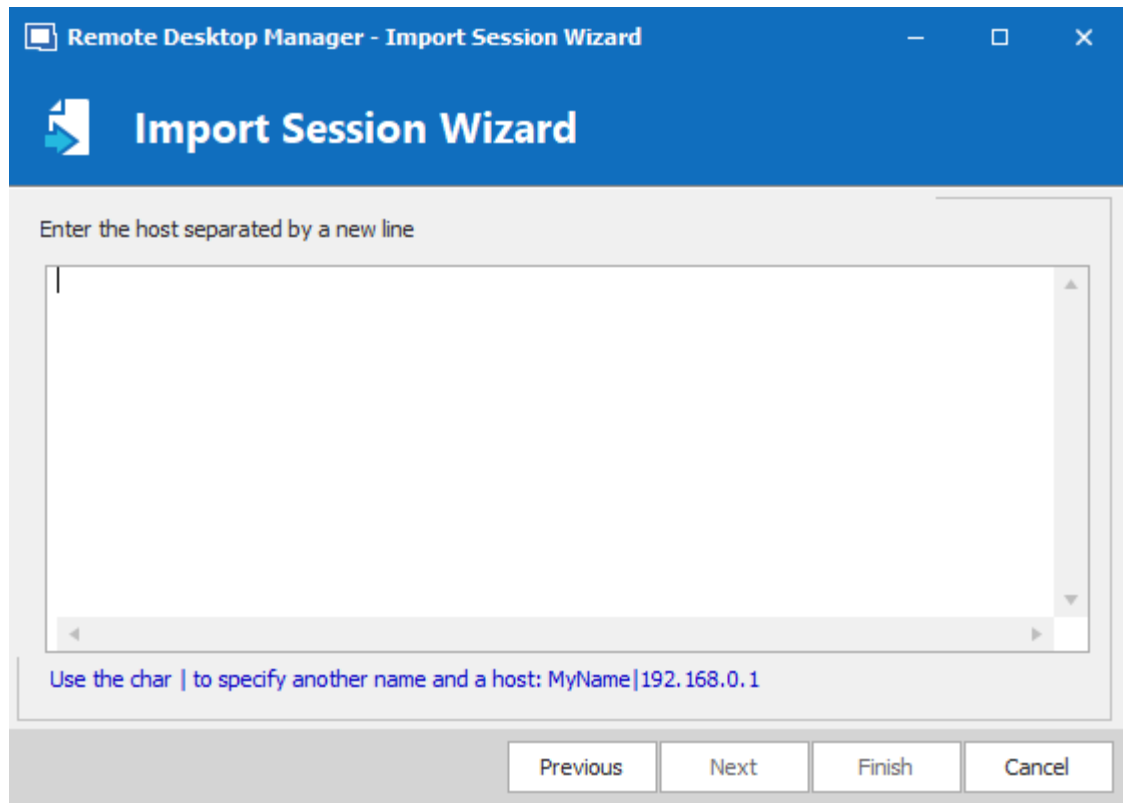
- Domain: A text box.
- Refresh: A button with a circular arrow icon.
- Table with 3 columns: Computer Name, IP, Existing Sessions.
- Buttons: Previous, Next, Finish, Cancel.

| Computer Name | IP | Existing Sessions |
|---------------|----|-------------------|
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |
| DEV | | |

If you prefer your sessions to use the IP address instead of the Host name to connect to the devices, check the **Select by IP address** option. This requires that the **Resolve by IP address** was selected in the first screen of the wizard. Select the computers for which you want to create session and proceed to [Template Selection](#) below. Multi-select is allowed by using CTRL-click and SHIFT-click.

HOST LIST

The following screen allows you to enter a list of hosts in an Edit control. If you prefer that your sessions use the IP address to connect to the hosts, you must enter the host name, a pipe, then the IP address.



Proceed to [Template Selection](#) below.

TEMPLATE SELECTION

The template selection is an optional step, but it's the only way that you have to choose a protocol type other than RDP. It also allows you to set your preferences and

have them used by all the created sessions. In fact, we recommend you to import in batches for each of the session type that you need to import.

If you intend to modify each of your imported sessions as they are created, check the **Edit** imported entry option. Note that each session will be displayed sequentially so you can perform your modification and save. A [Batch Edit](#) is probably preferable if you have more than a few sessions to import.

6.2.10.2 Import Generic CSV Wizard

DESCRIPTION

The **Generic CSV Wizard** has been greatly enhanced to support not only all entries general fields but also subfields. This gives you access to all properties, even for types provided by add-ons, therefore unknown by Remote Desktop Manager.



For a review on the CSV file format, and the impact of decisions made in this entry, please consult [Import Strategies and File Format](#)

SETTINGS

1. In your **Navigation pane**, select the **Vault** you want to import the sessions in.
2. Go to **File - Import - Import Generic Csv Wizard**.
3. Select the CSV file to import and click **Next**.
4. Validate and click **Finish**.

The import will proceed using your chosen settings.

6.2.10.2.1 Import Strategies and File Format

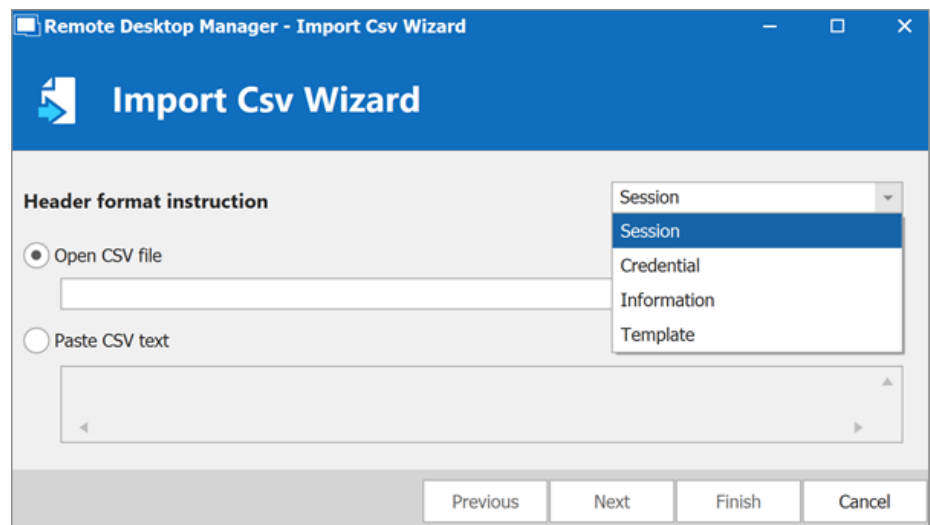
DESCRIPTION

The most important decision is about **if** and **how** to apply a template as part of the process.

Both methods of importing from CSV allows you to choose a template for newly created entries. If you do choose a template as part of the process, it will be apply to **ALL** entries created from that batch. Sometimes, it may be a good strategy to split the entries in different CSV files by grouping them by type of entries you wish to create.

If you need finer control, you can specify the template to use in a **Template** column of the CSV file. But since you're able to specify the entry type from within the CSV file it may not be necessary.

In **File - Import**, we recommend you use the **Import Generic Csv Wizard** option first. You can modify, if needed, the **Header format instruction**.



COLUMNS



Some validations on entry settings are not in the business layer but rather in the property dialogs. This means that using the import process can result in invalid entries that trigger errors. Please validate the resulting entries carefully.

In the CSV file, the **Host** and the **Name** field are mandatory. If no template is specified, the RDP type will be used as a fallback type.

We cannot provide the list of all supported fields for all entry types because Remote Desktop Manager uses an open architecture and therefore is not even aware of all the fields of entry types that are provided by our Add-On system. A good method of finding out the field structure is to create an entry of the desired type and to use **Clipboard – Copy**, then paste the content in your favorite editor. You will see the structure and the field names.



Default values for fields are **NOT** serialized. This means that they are simply left out of the serialized structure.



Implementing support for all fields comes at a cost. The import process is time consuming because of all the dynamic field access that takes place. A massive initial import of entries should be separated in batches of manageable size. Please perform trials and tune the number of entries to achieve acceptable performance.

All of our entries share a basic set of fields, the rest are tied to the specific technology being interfaced with (RDP, SSH, etc). Some fields are grouped in structures like the Information Tab for instance. This means that those fields are accessible only when providing the structure name as a prefix, for example: "**MetalInformation\OS**" or "**MetalInformation\PurchaseDate**"



Note that the content of the CSV file can contain our variables and they will be resolved upon saving. For instance you could use the **\$HOST\$** variable in fields like **Description**, **URL**, **Putty\CustomSessionName**, etc. It will be replaced by the corresponding value.

Here is a list of some relevant fields.

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Host | Host name of the device, this is a mandatory field. |
| Name | Name of the entry, this is a mandatory field. |
| ConnectionType | Token representing the connection type. It is best to use the <i>Clipboard-Copy</i> method to obtain the acceptable values. |
| Group | Destination folder. Note that if the import process itself had a Destination Folder defined as well, the folder listed here would be created below the one from the process. |
| Description | Description of the entry. |
| Open (Embedded) | Boolean value (true or false) that indicates to open the session embedded. The default value is false, meaning that the native client will be used depending on the technology. MSTSC.EXE for instance. |
| Username | Username used to open a session to the device. |
| Domain | Domain used to open a session to the device. |
| Password | Password used to open a session to the device. Please note that this field is encrypted and stored into another field upon being imported. |
| MetalInformation\SerialNumber | Serial Number of the device. |
| MetalInformation\ServiceTag | Service Tag of the device |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| MetalInformation\PurchaseDate | Purchase date in a ISO8601 format, i.e. yyyy-mm-dd |

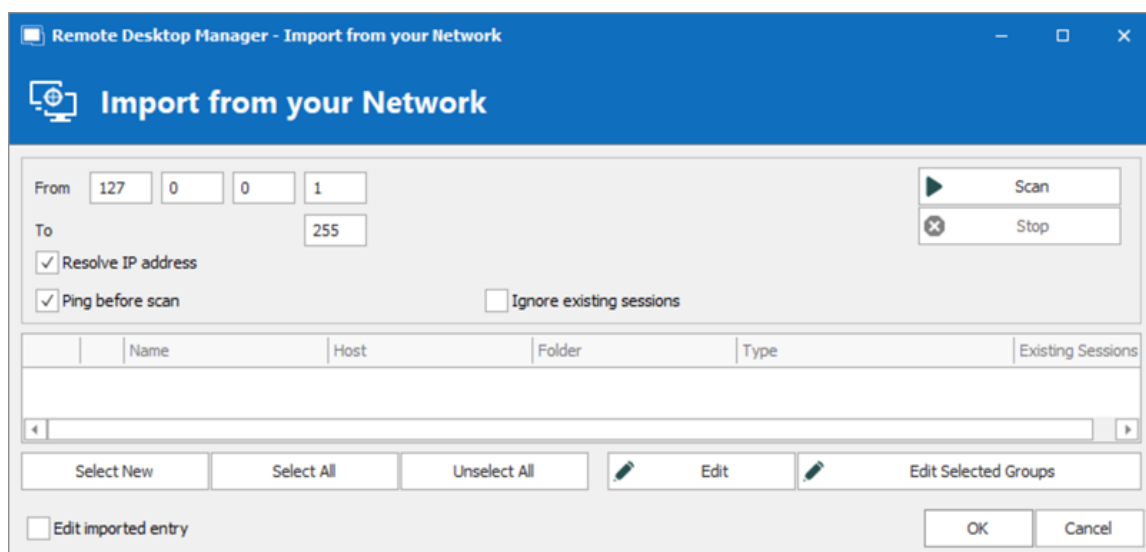
6.2.10.3 Import with Network Scan

DESCRIPTION

The **Import with Network Scan** allows you to perform a network scan based on a predefined range of IP address to find sessions to import.

Once the scan is completed select the sessions, you wish to import (by default every session will be selected) and click on **OK** to import those sessions in your data source.

If you wish to review each and every session as they are imported you can check the **Edit imported entry**. However we do not recommend this for large number of sessions.



6.2.10.4 Import Sessions

DESCRIPTION

Use **File - Import - Session** to import sessions from other software into Remote Desktop Manager.



The import feature is only active if the import **Privileges** has been enabled inside the user account.

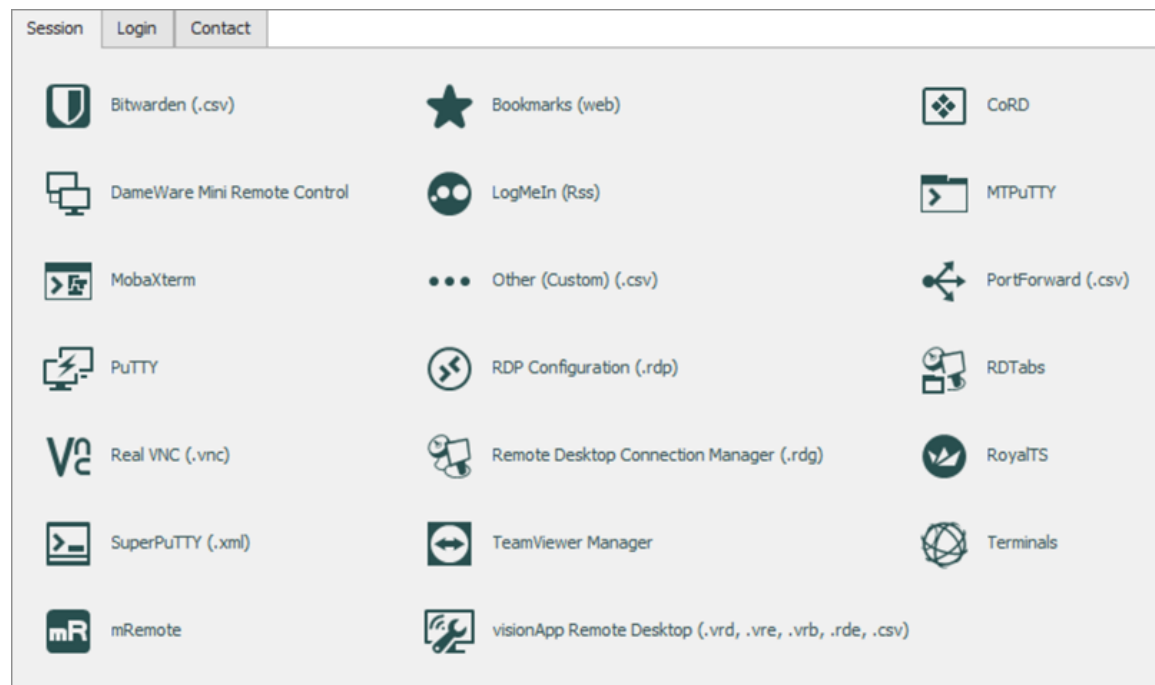
You can import your sessions from an existing application or an existing file format. Some application encrypt the data but it must be in plain text to allow the application to parse the content.



All entries will be imported in the current folder.



For some applications it's not possible to extract the password.



6.2.10.5 Import Logins

DESCRIPTION

Use **File - Import - Login** to import different logins or credentials from other software into Remote Desktop Manager.

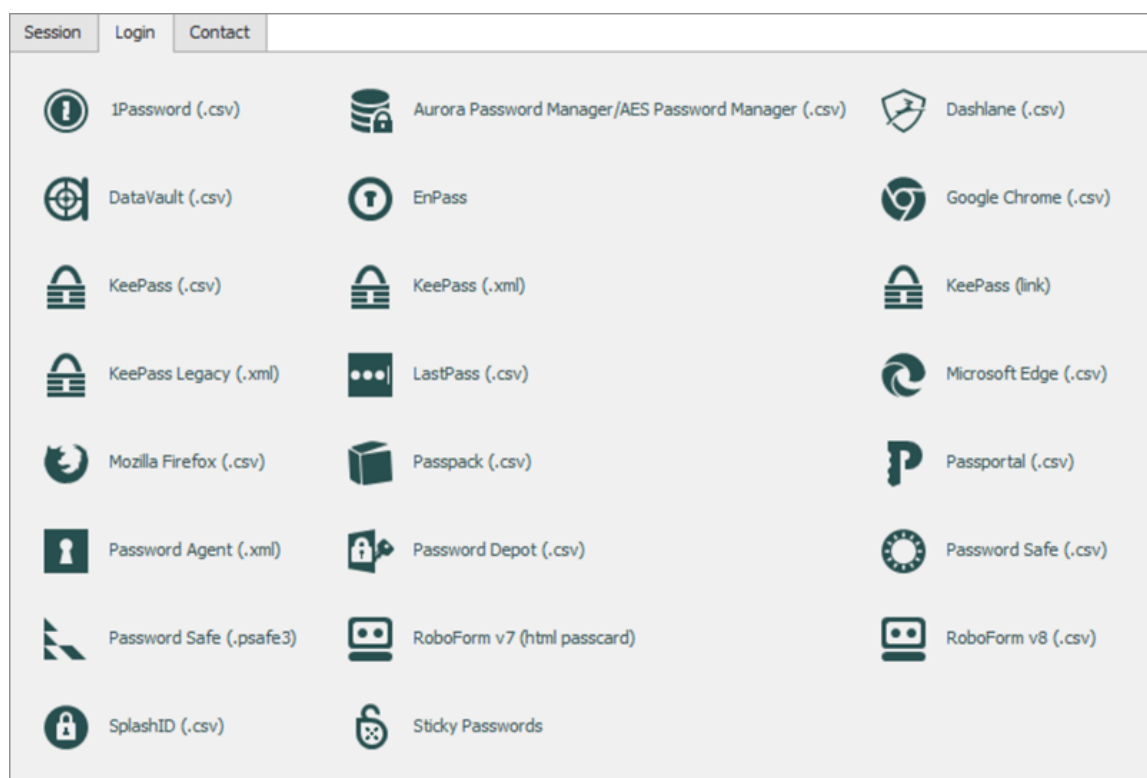


The import feature is only active if the import **Privileges** has been enabled inside the user account.

You can import the credentials from a wide array of formats exported by various password management solutions. The export content must not be encrypted in order to parse the content.



All the entries will be imported in the current folder.



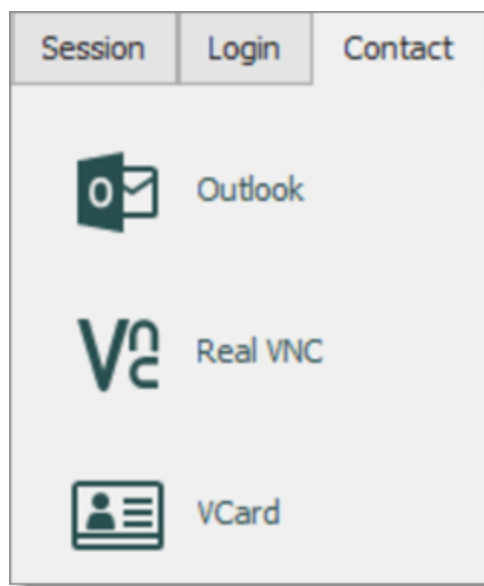
6.2.10.6 Import Contacts

DESCRIPTION

Use **File - Import - Contact** to import contacts from other software into Remote Desktop Manager.



The import feature is only active if the import **Privileges** has been enabled inside the user account.



IMPORT FROM CONTACT

It's possible to import the contact from different sources:

- Outlook
- Real VNC
- VCard



All the entries will be imported in the current folder.



Outlook contacts subfolders are also supported.

6.2.11 Export

DESCRIPTION

Use **File - Export** to export vaults from Remote Desktop Manager.

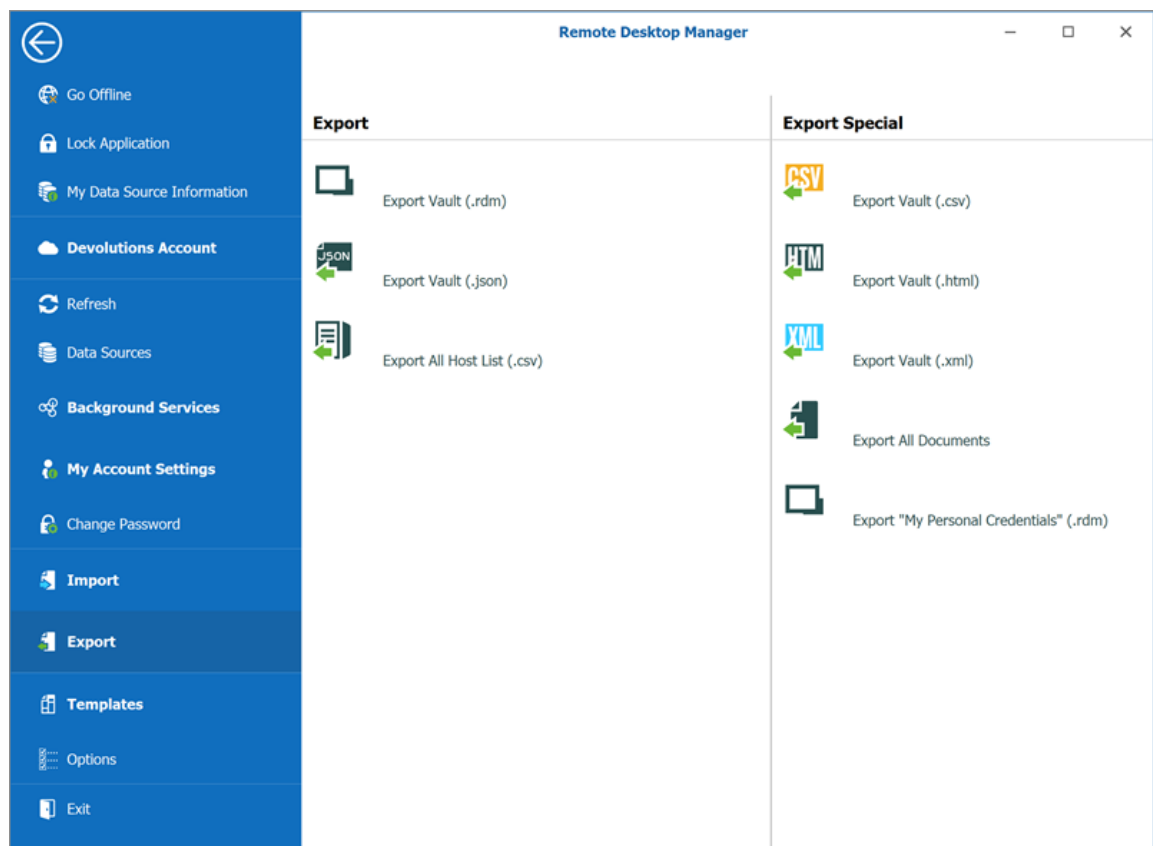


The export feature is only active if the **Import** and **Export Privileges** has been enabled inside the **User Management** account.



The only appropriate format to import vaults back into Remote Desktop Manager is the .rdm format.

SETTINGS



File - Export



When using an [Advanced Data Source](#), export capabilities can be disabled via security policies at the data source level (no one can export) or at a user level (particular users can't export).

EXPORT VAULT (.RDM)

Export a vault in a .rdm file that can be imported into any Remote Desktop Manager data source. You can also include credentials in this export format and secure your file with a master key.



By default the credentials are NOT included. It's critical to check the **Credentials** option in order for the exported data to include the credentials.



Specifying a **Master key** will encrypt the whole content of the .rdm file to protect its content. It is highly recommended as a backup measure, but the key is absolutely necessary for decryption. Preserve this as well in a separate storage device for safekeeping.

Remote Desktop Manager - Export Entries

Export Entries

☐ Remove all folders

☒ Include credentials ☐ Include attachments and documents

☐ Encrypt with master key

Export file version

2

OK Cancel

EXPORT VAULT (.JSON)

Export a vault in a .json file format. You can also include credentials in this export format and secure your file with a master key.

EXPORT ALL HOST LIST (.CSV)

Export a simple host list in .csv format. You will be prompted to see if you wish the export to be slightly more detailed and include the following information: Host, Description, Display Name, Group, Security Group.

EXPORT VAULT (.CSV)

Export the vault using the .csv format file. For security reasons the .csv file will be contained within a password encrypted zip file. This type of security can be hacked using brute force attacks, it should be used only when the zip file is under your exclusive control.



Please note that the csv columns will vary depending on entry types being exported. This makes it the wrong format if ever you want to import the data back in Remote Desktop Manager. Use this only to migrate to another system.

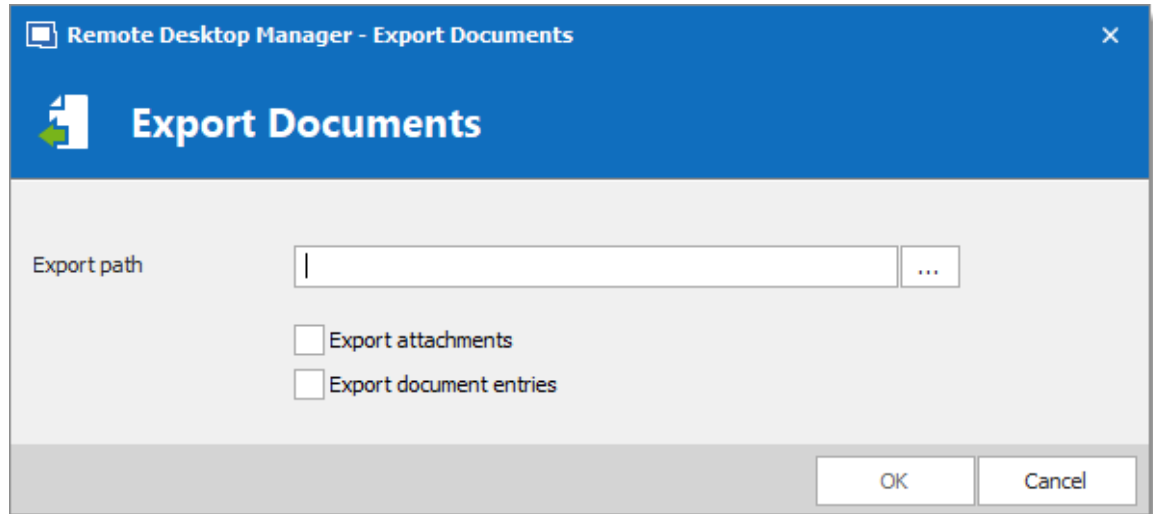
EXPORT VAULT (.HTML)

Export the vault with an AES-256 to encrypt self contained html file. See [Export Html Encrypted](#) topic for more information.

EXPORT VAULT (.XML)

Because it brought confusion to our user base, this export format has been converted to perform the exact same export as the **Export Vault** but sets the file extension to .xml instead.

EXPORT ALL DOCUMENTS



Export Documents

Export all attachments or all document entries that are linked to your data source.

EXPORT "MY PERSONAL CREDENTIALS" (.RDM)

Export your **My Personal Credentials** in a .rdm file and encrypt with a **Master key**.



A **Master key** will encrypt the .rdm file to protect its content. The key is absolutely necessary for decryption.

6.2.11.1 Encrypted Html

DESCRIPTION

The Html Encrypted export format was designed for simple and secure exports of entries. It allows for an html export of the entry information while using symmetric encryption (AES-256) to encrypt sensitive information such as passwords. The file is an ultra portable self contained html file that requires no external script files or installs.

As long as you have a web browser with JavaScript enabled, you can get to your encrypted data.



With a secure encrypted document, you can freely send the information via email or any other protocol without compromising the sensitive data. Use the export as means of sharing or as a backup for sensitive information.

SETTINGS

Select the entries to export or export the vault. **Right-click** and select **Export - Export Special - Export Selection (.html)** or use **File - Export - Export Vault (.html)**. You will be prompted for a password for the symmetric encryption key. Select the file name for the new document. Once the export is completed, the file will open in your default browser.



Ensure you do not forget the password as you will not be able to decrypt the data without it.

When exporting multiple entries that are all contained within the same file, at decrypt time, each encrypted value must be decrypted individually for security reasons. Once you're done with the sensitive data simply hit **F5** to refresh the file or simply close it. Your data is now safe from prying eyes.

AES-256

We use AES-256 to encrypt/decrypt your sensitive data. Since the decryption is done entirely in the browser, there's no need for external tools, downloads or installs.

```

▼<tr>
  <td class="label Password">Password</td>
  ▼<td class="value Password">
    ▼<span id="dff570b2-5fb1-459b-af38-0fcb4f677484" data="U2FsdGVkX1/TAub+TpB+UrHU2m1RSVdiU8FP7tPnXAaBLZdySV9IIM2AKdIv0Siv">
      <a class="encrypted" onclick="javascript:decryptText('dff570b2-5fb1-459b-af38-0fcb4f677484')">*****</a>
    </span>
  </td>
</tr>

```

Encrypted Value

SAFE & SMART VIRTUAL BACKUP

In addition, HTML Export using symmetric encryption is a great way to securely backup your passwords and other sensitive information. It allows you to share information via email or simply send the file to your personal email account as a backup.

6.2.12 Templates

DESCRIPTION

Templates are useful to have predefined values when creating an entry. Use templates to:

- [Add preconfigured entries](#)
- [Use with the Quick connect feature](#)
- Open entries as a template
- Create password templates

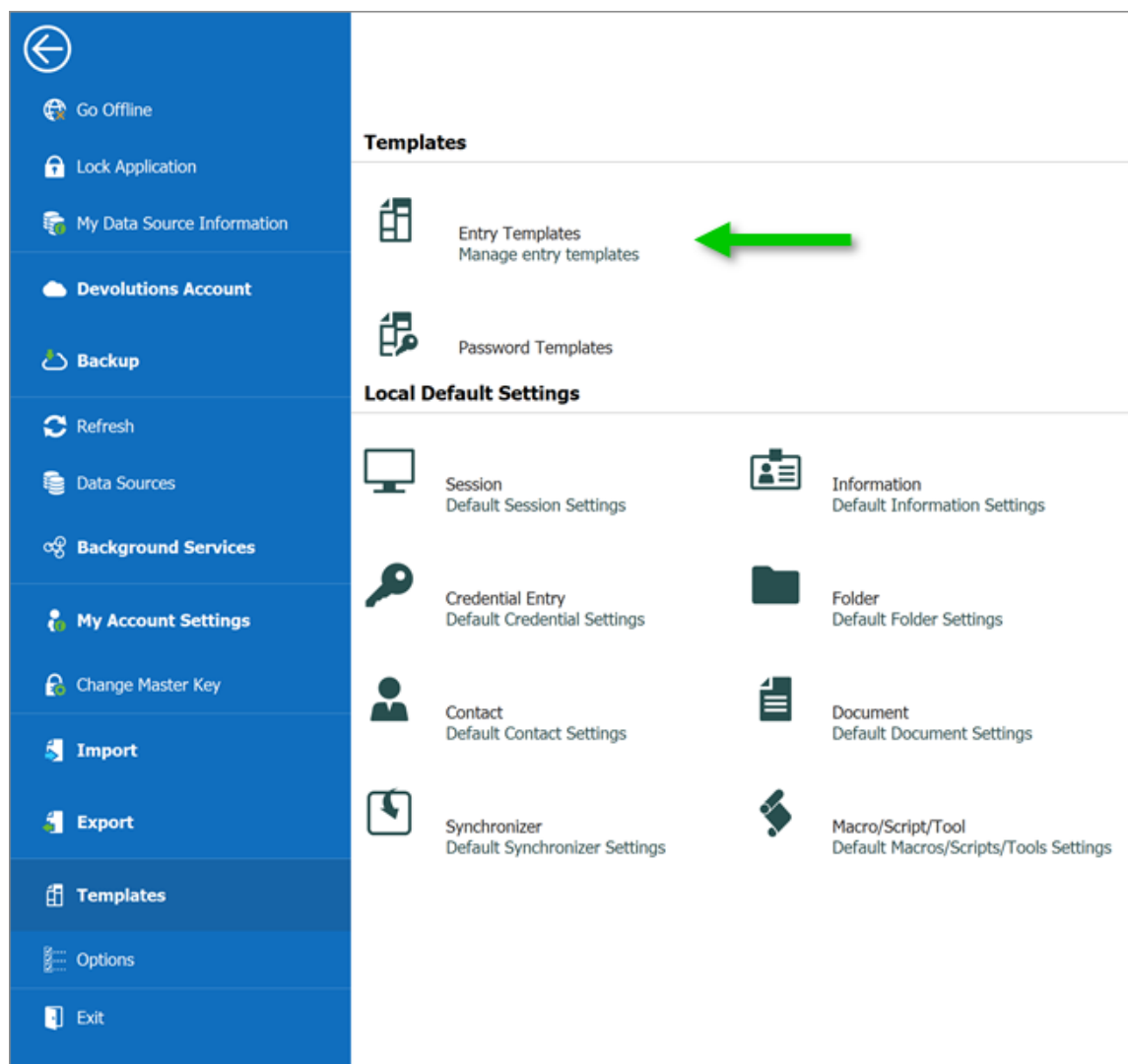
To access and manage templates, navigate to **File - Templates**.

It's possible to create local and database templates.

- Local templates are saved in the Remote Desktop Manager configuration file. They are available only to the current user of the machine.
- Database templates are saved in the database. They are available to all users of the data source.



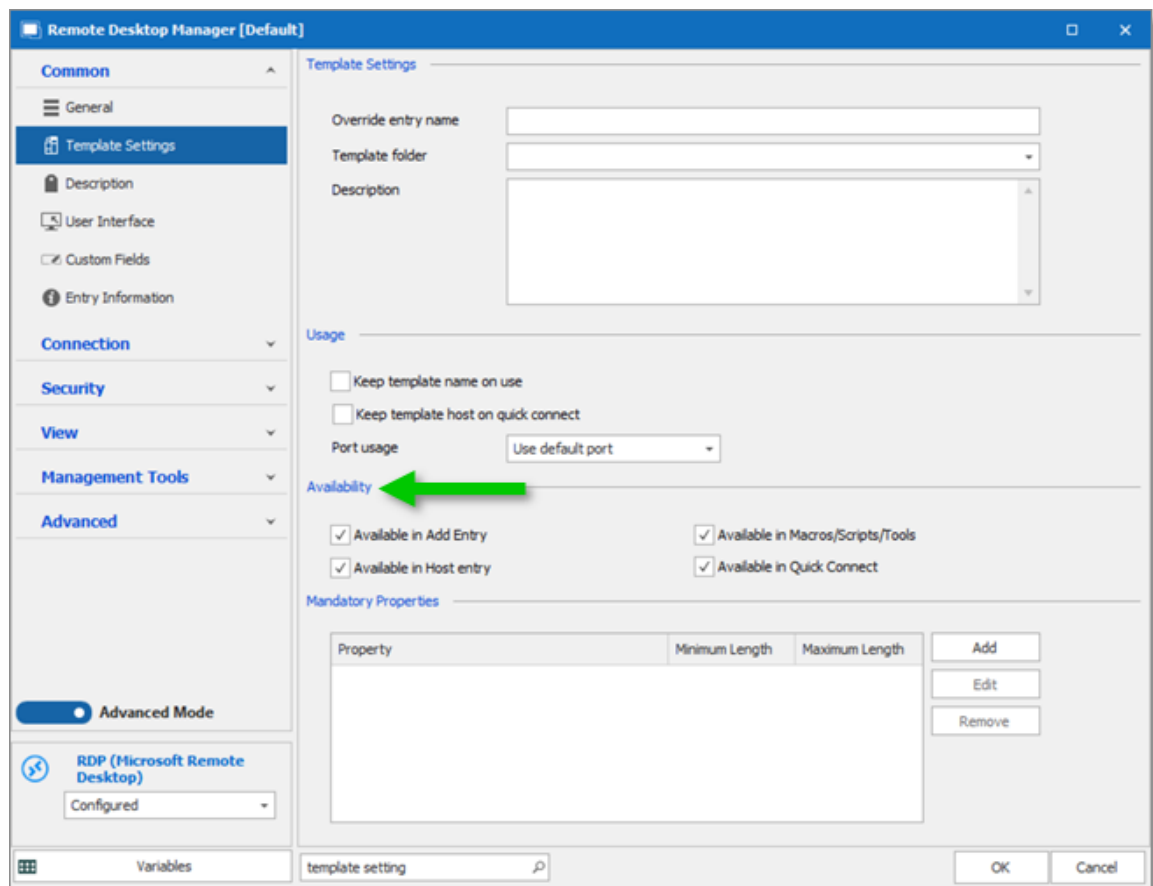
By default, standard users cannot create or manage templates. To allow users to create or manage templates, the permission must be granted to users using the **Administration - Templates** section of the [System Permissions](#).



File – Templates

AVAILABILITY

When creating a template, its availability can be specified in the **Template Settings**.

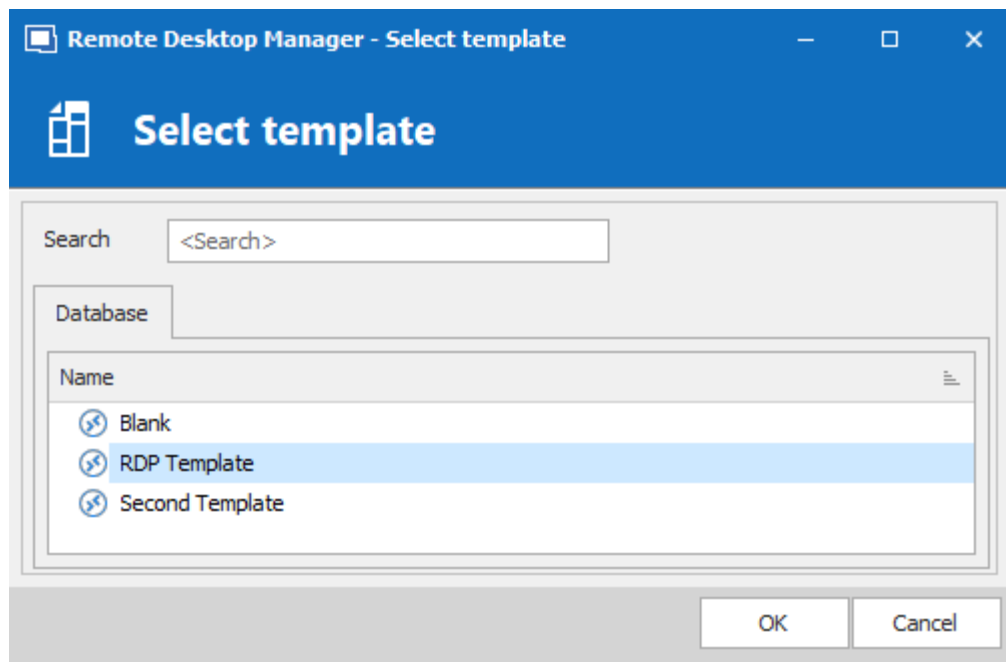


USAGE

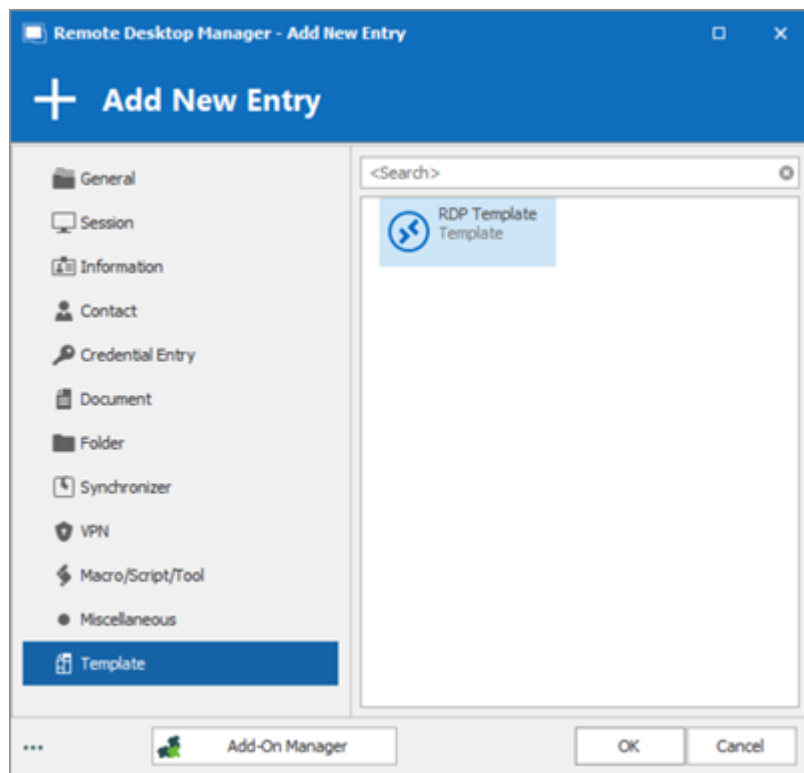
Templates can be used in the following cases:

CREATE A NEW ENTRY

By default, when creating an entry of a type that has templates configured for, the user is prompted for a template to use. This behavior can be modified in the [System Settings](#).

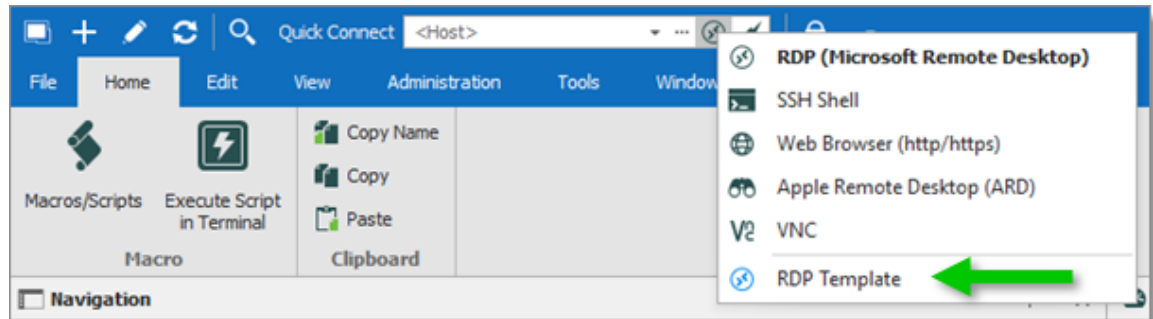


The template can be selected before creating the entry as well. Use the **Template** section of the **Add New Entry** window.



RUN A QUICK CONNECT SESSION

Templates can be used with the **Quick Connect** feature. For example, the same template can be used to connect to different hosts.



6.2.12.1 Creating Templates

DESCRIPTION

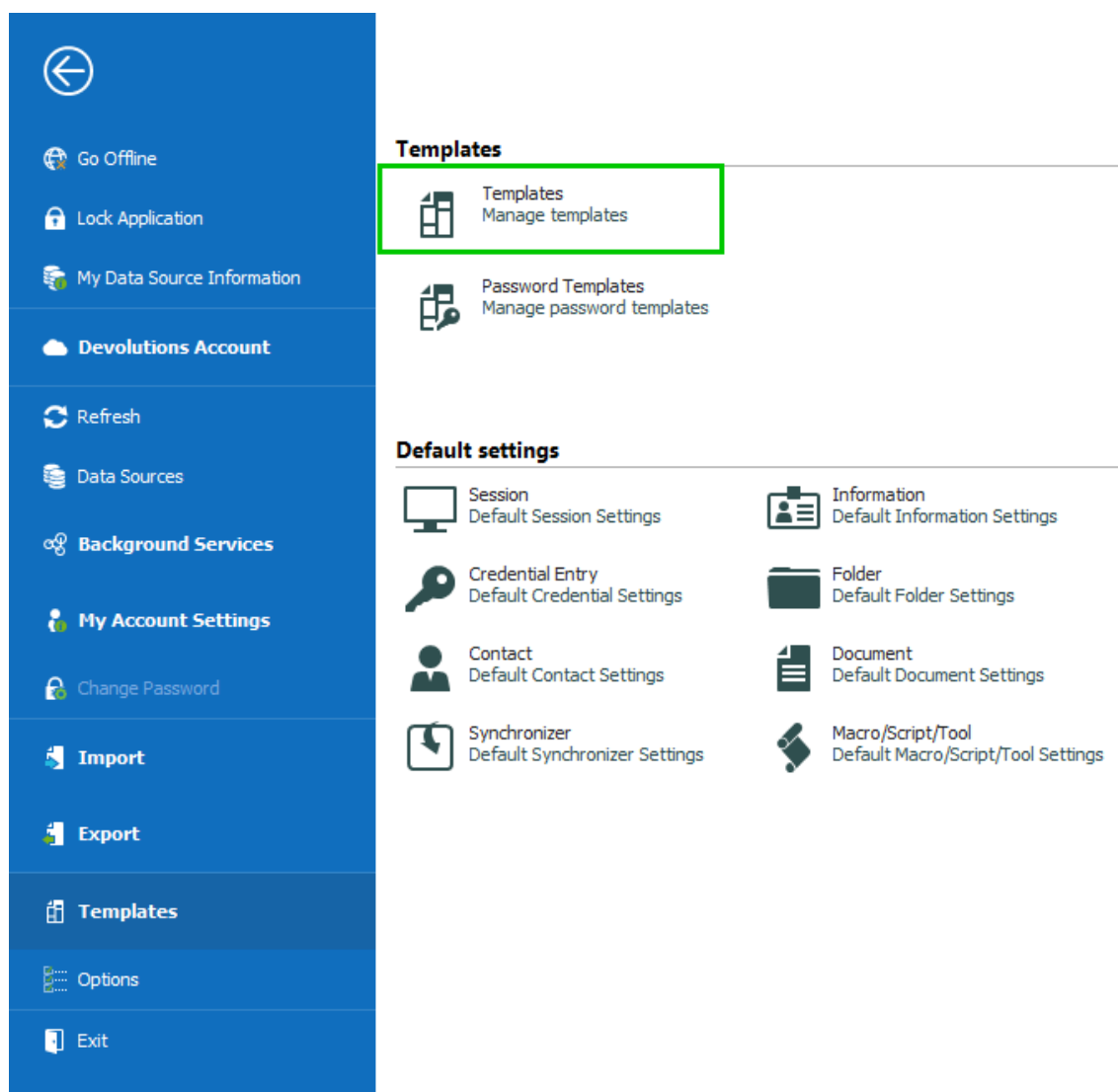
There are many ways to create template for entries. You can create a new template, save an entry as a template, import entries as templates, and duplicate a existing template. It is also possible to create group templates.

In this topic:


- [New Template](#)
- [Save as Template](#)
- [Import Template](#)
- [Duplicate Template](#)
- [Template Groups](#)

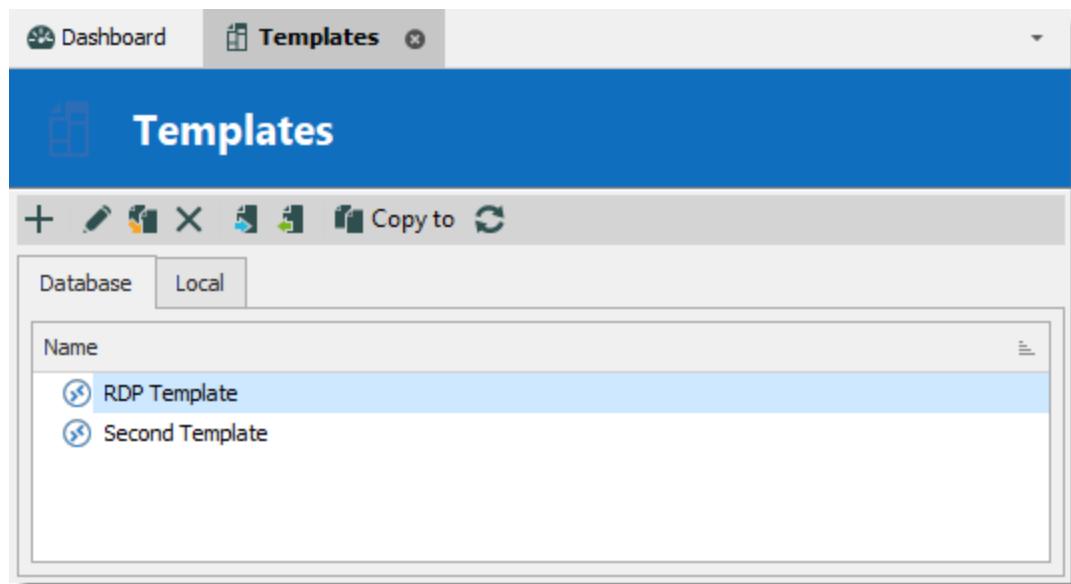
CREATE A NEW TEMPLATE

1. Navigate to **File – Templates** and select **Templates**.



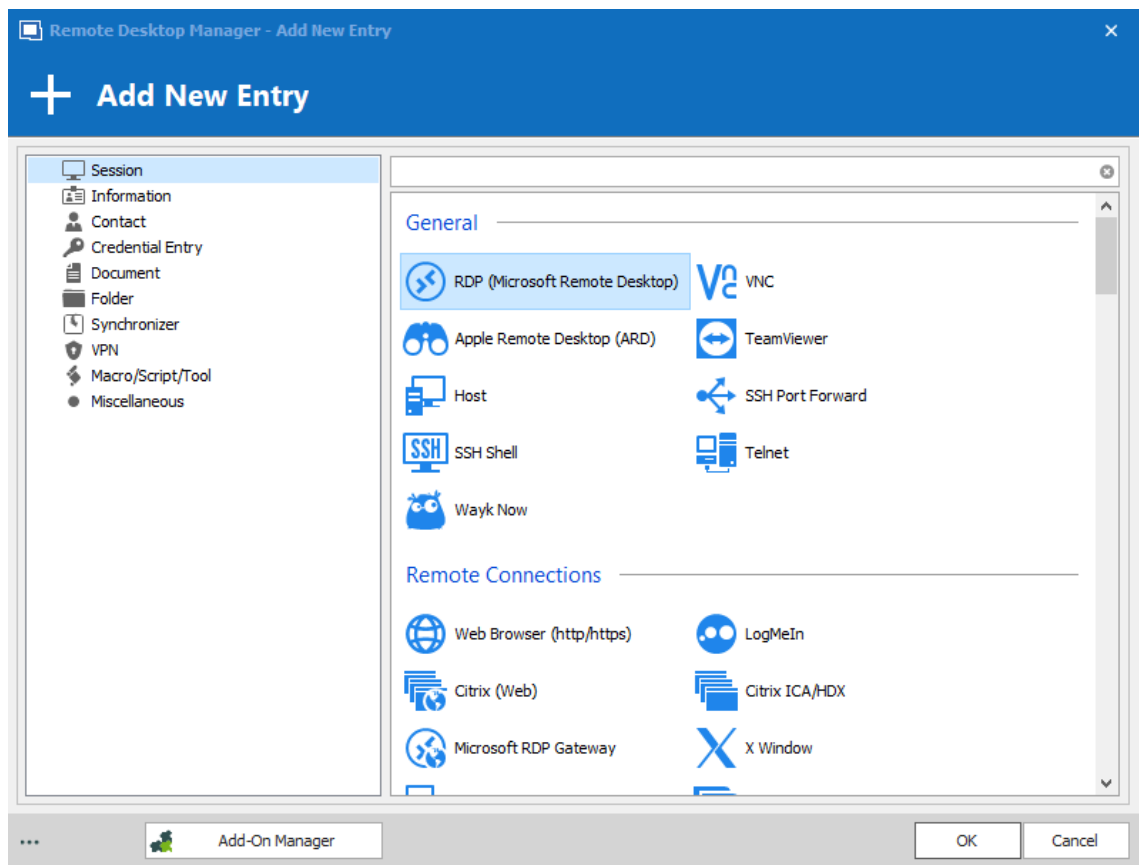
File – Templates

2. In the **Templates** window, click the **Add template**  button.



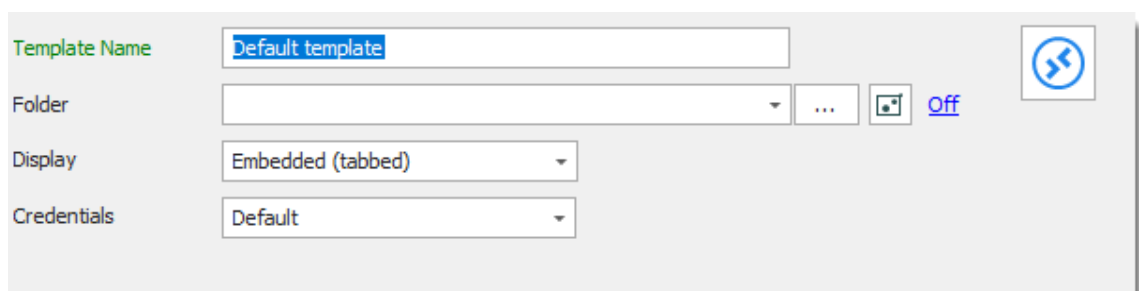
Add a new template

3. Select an entry to create the template for.



Select an entry to create the template for

4. Enter a name for the template, and configure the properties as necessary.

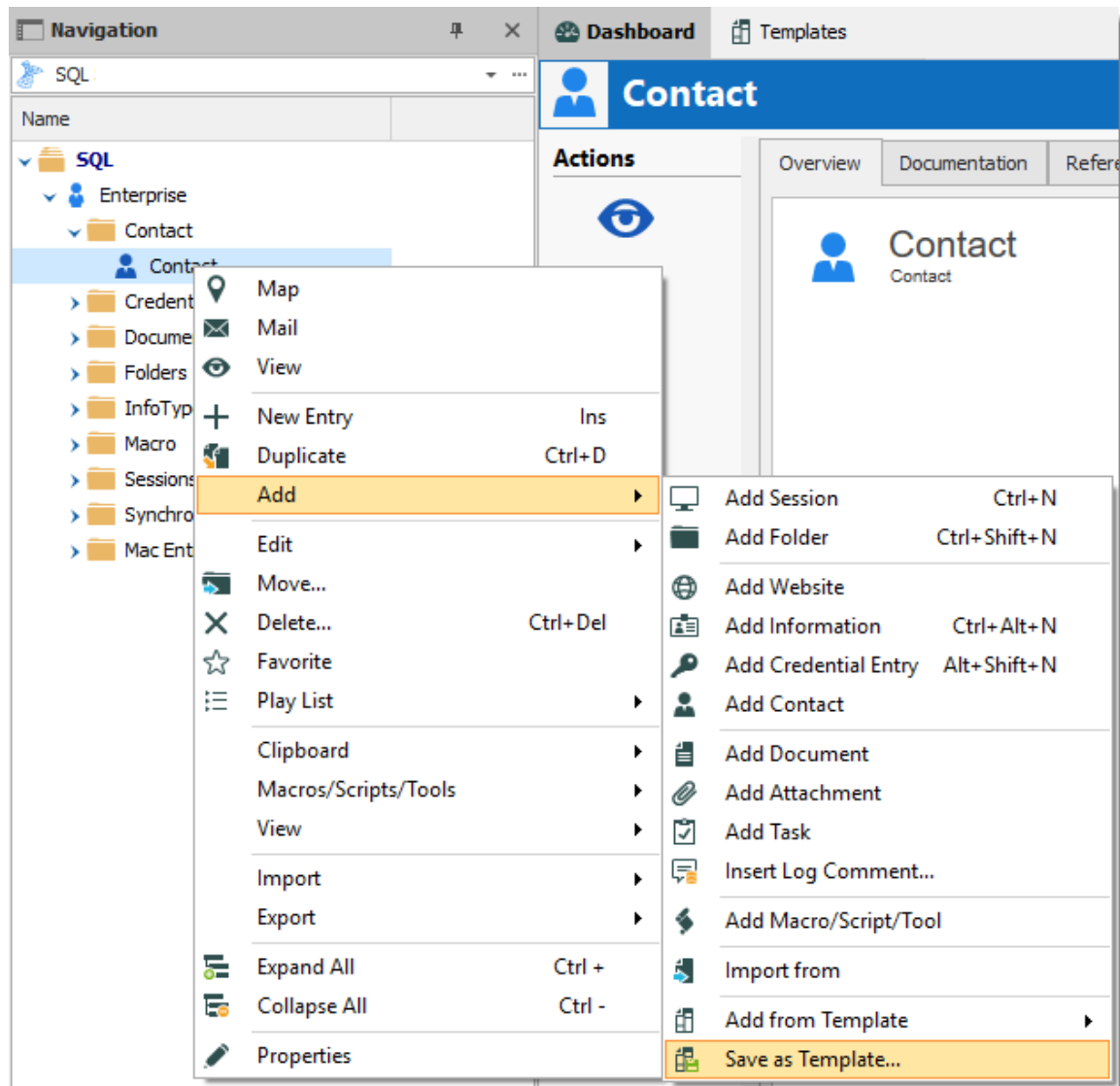


Template Properties

SAVE ENTRY AS TEMPLATE

It is possible to save entries as templates to use their properties in other entries. Furthermore, this can be achieved on folders to include all their child items in the template.

From the Navigation Pane, **right-click** an entry and select **Add – Save as Template...**



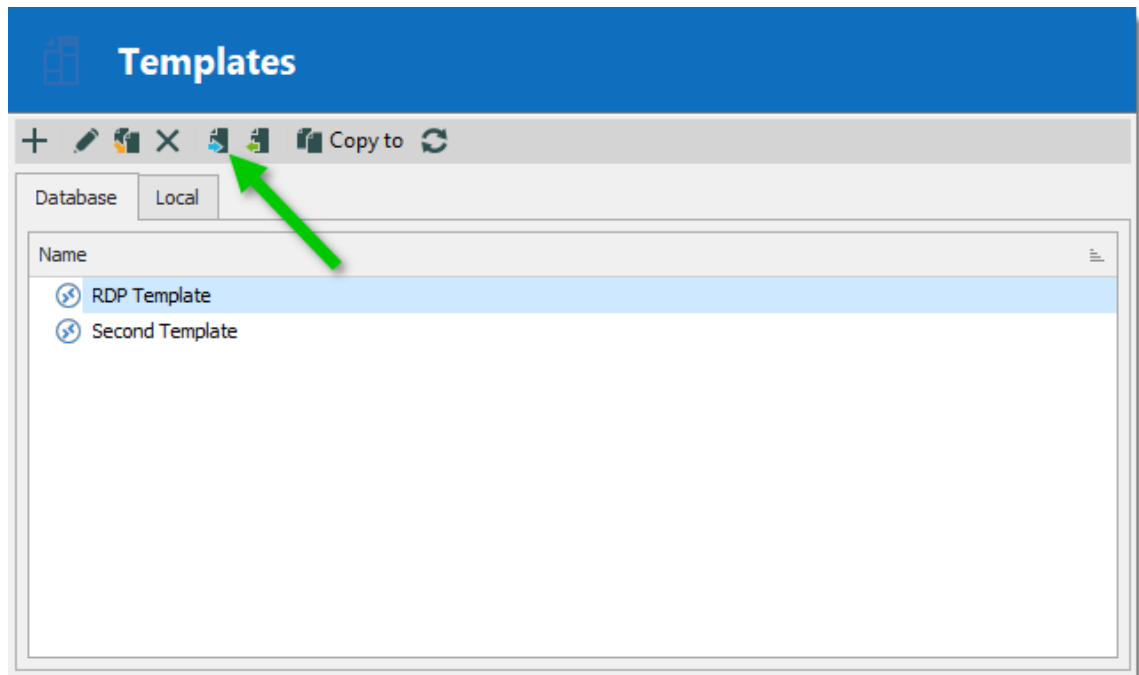
Save as Template...

IMPORT TEMPLATE

It is possible to import previously exported entries as templates.

1. Navigate to **File – Templates**, and select **Templates**.

1.1. From the **Templates** window, click on the **Import template**  button.




Import Template

2. Select the ***.rdm** file to import to create a template for each entry in the file.

DUPLICATE TEMPLATE

It is possible to duplicate a template to edit a copy of the properties.

Navigate to **File – Templates**, and select **Templates**. From the **Templates** window, click on the **Duplicate template**  button.

Change the template name to distinguish the copy from the original, and edit the properties to meet your requirements.

TEMPLATE GROUPS

It is possible to save a set of selected entries or a folder and all its child items to a unique template.

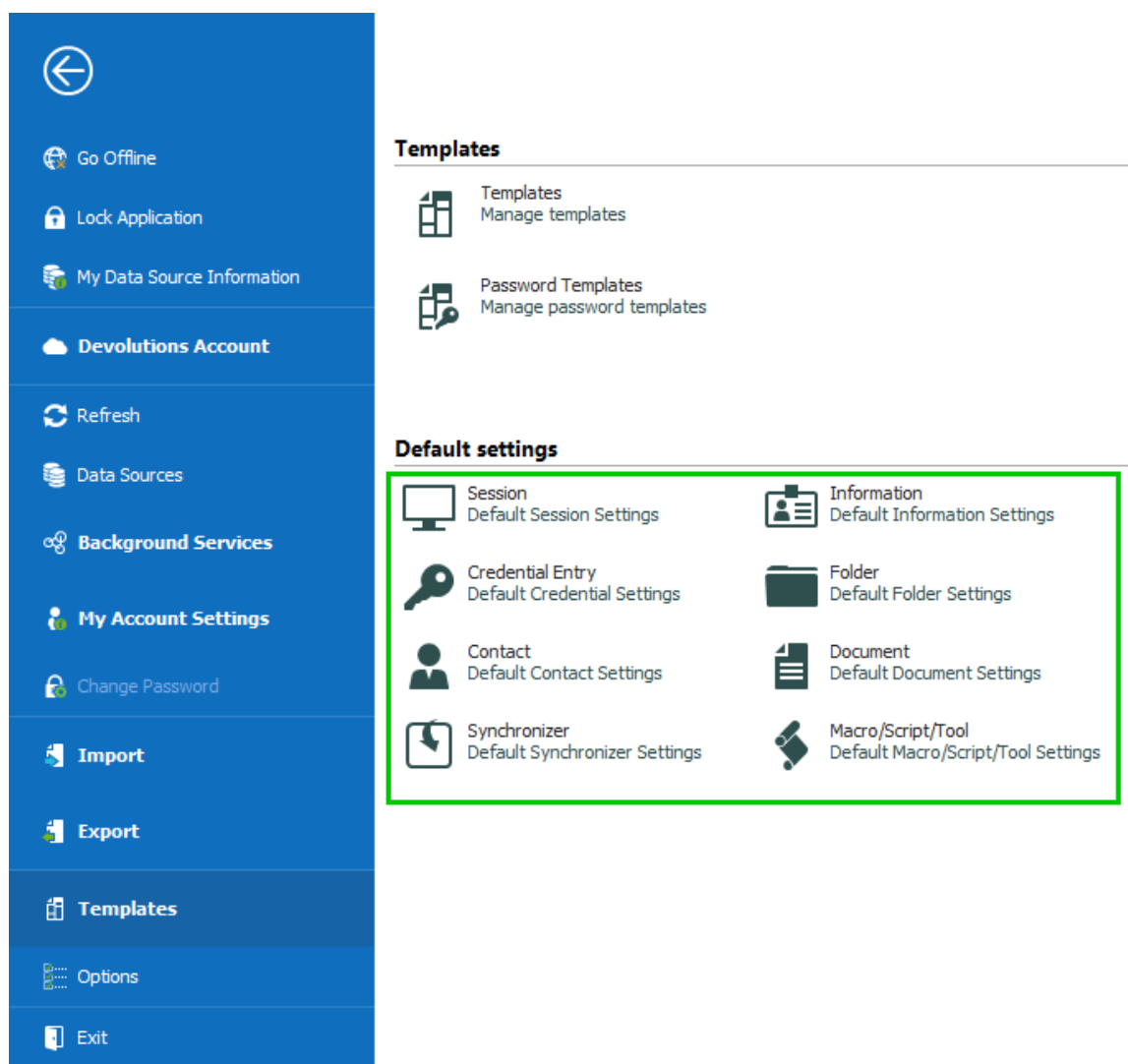
Right-click a selection of entries or a folder, select **Add**, then **Save as Template...**

6.2.12.2 Default Settings

DESCRIPTION

Default Templates create default settings for new entries. Every entry type is supported and can have a default settings template defined.

- **Session**
- **Information**
- **Credential Entry**
- **Folder**
- **Contact**
- **Document**
- **Synchronizer**
- **Macros/Scripts/Tools**




File - Templates - Default settings

SETTINGS

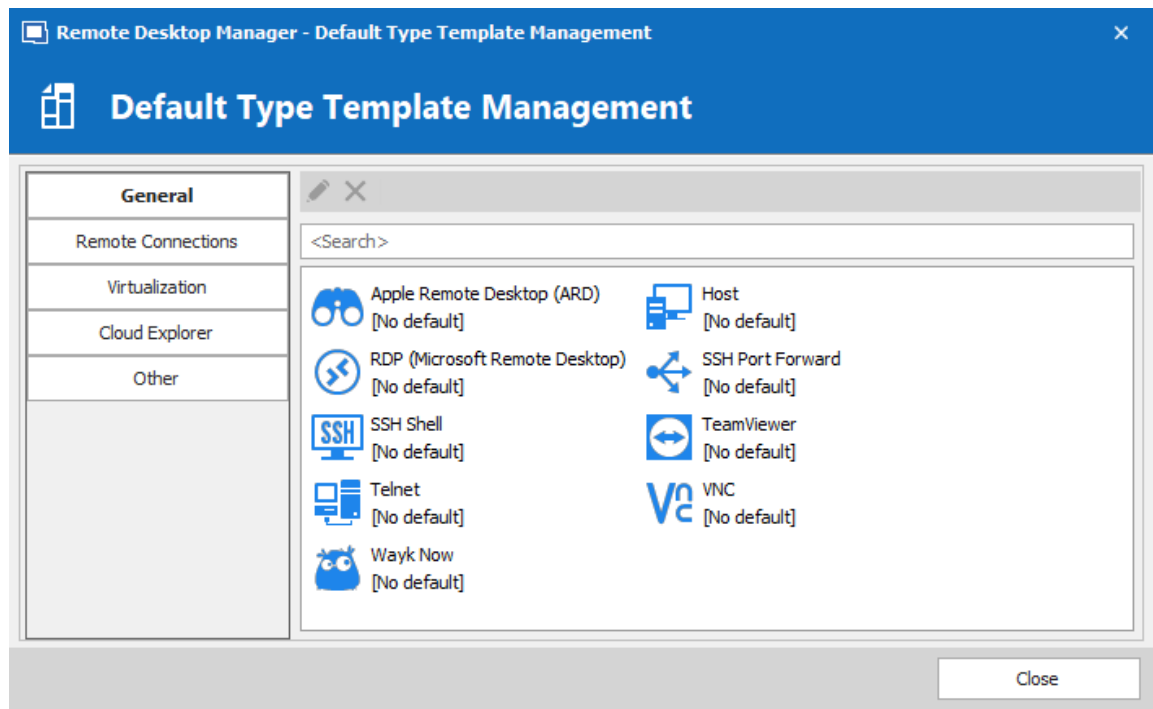
To help you locate the entry type you want to customize, all entry types are organized by category.

Select a category of entry from the **File – Templates** menu, then select the specific entry type to be edited.

Please note that a **[No default]** notice is displayed below each type that does not have a default template defined.

All entry types without the **[No default]** notice have a default template. You can double-click on the type to edit the template or press the edit  button.

If you want to remove the default settings template, press the delete  button.



Default Type Template Management

6.2.12.3 Password Templates

DESCRIPTION

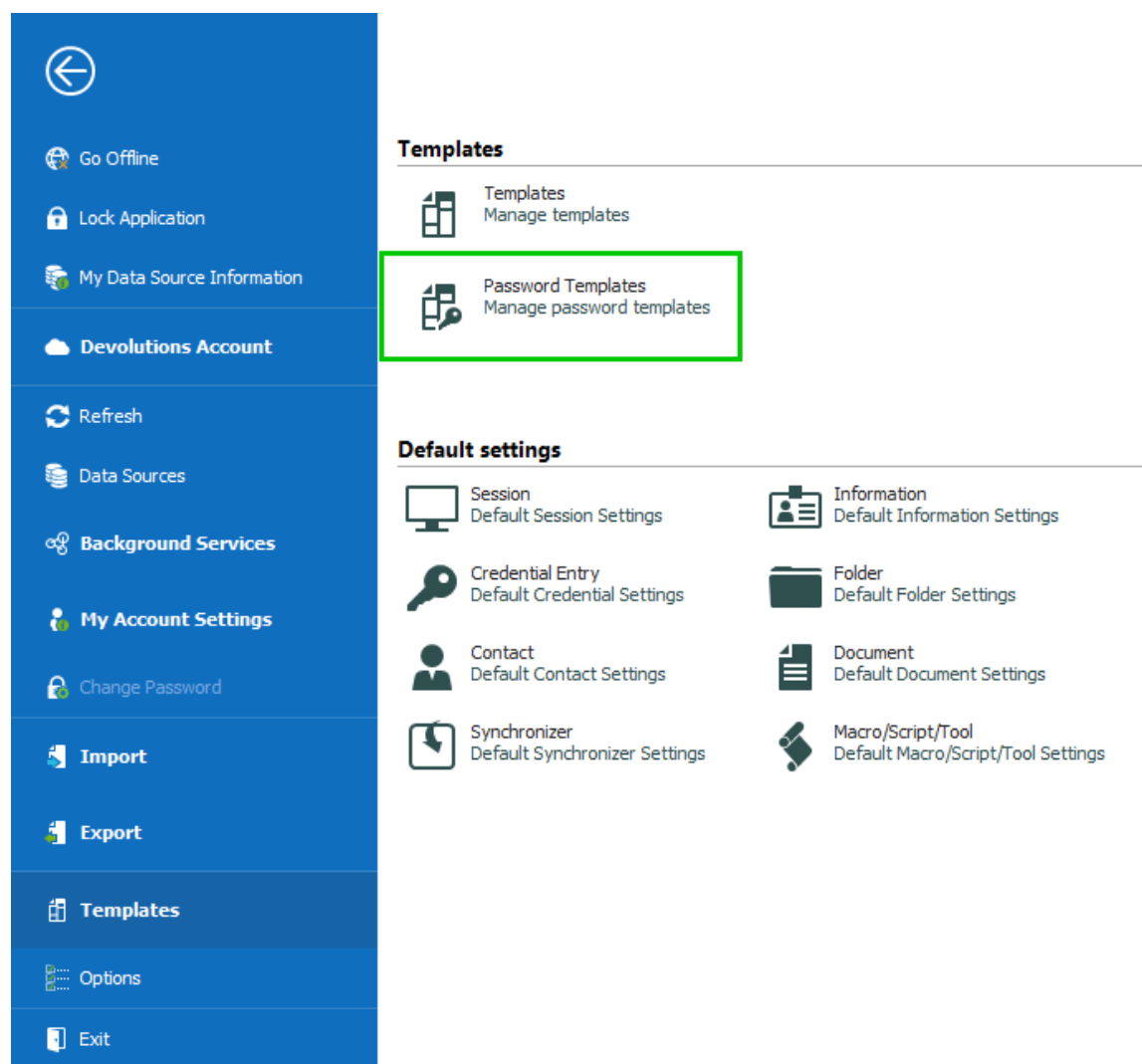
Password templates set requirements for the password format: characters usage, patterns, readability.

Password templates are available in the password generator. Password templates can be optional or required.

SETTINGS

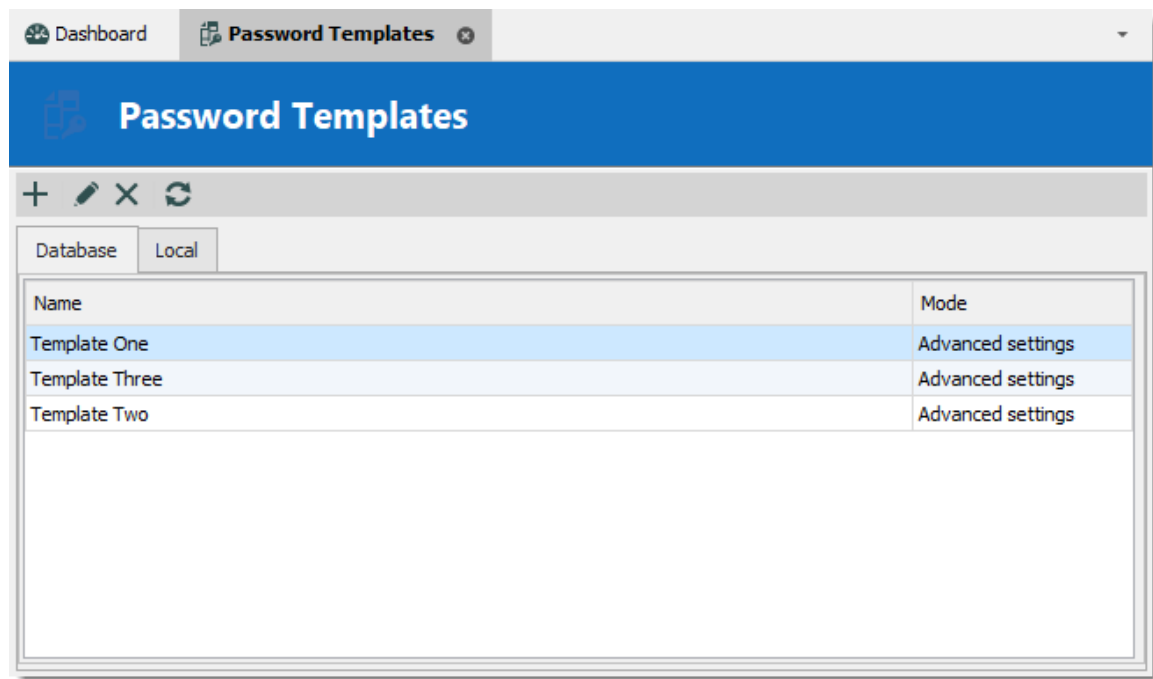
CREATE A PASSWORD TEMPLATE

1. Go to **File – Templates**, and click **Password Templates**.



File – Templates – Password Templates

2. The **Password Templates** window provides an overview of current templates, as well as add, edit and delete commands.

*Password Template Window*

3. To add a new template click **Add** (plus sign).
4. a) Enter a template name.
b) Choose a **Mode** and configure the settings.

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| Default | General settings about length and minimum amounts for characters and symbols. |
| Advanced settings | Granular character settings (e.g. special characters and symbols, inclusions, exclusions). |
| Readable password | Settings for syllables, numbers and symbols. |
| Use a pattern | Set a pattern for the passwords using the key . |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Pronounceable password | Settings for length, case, digits and characters. |

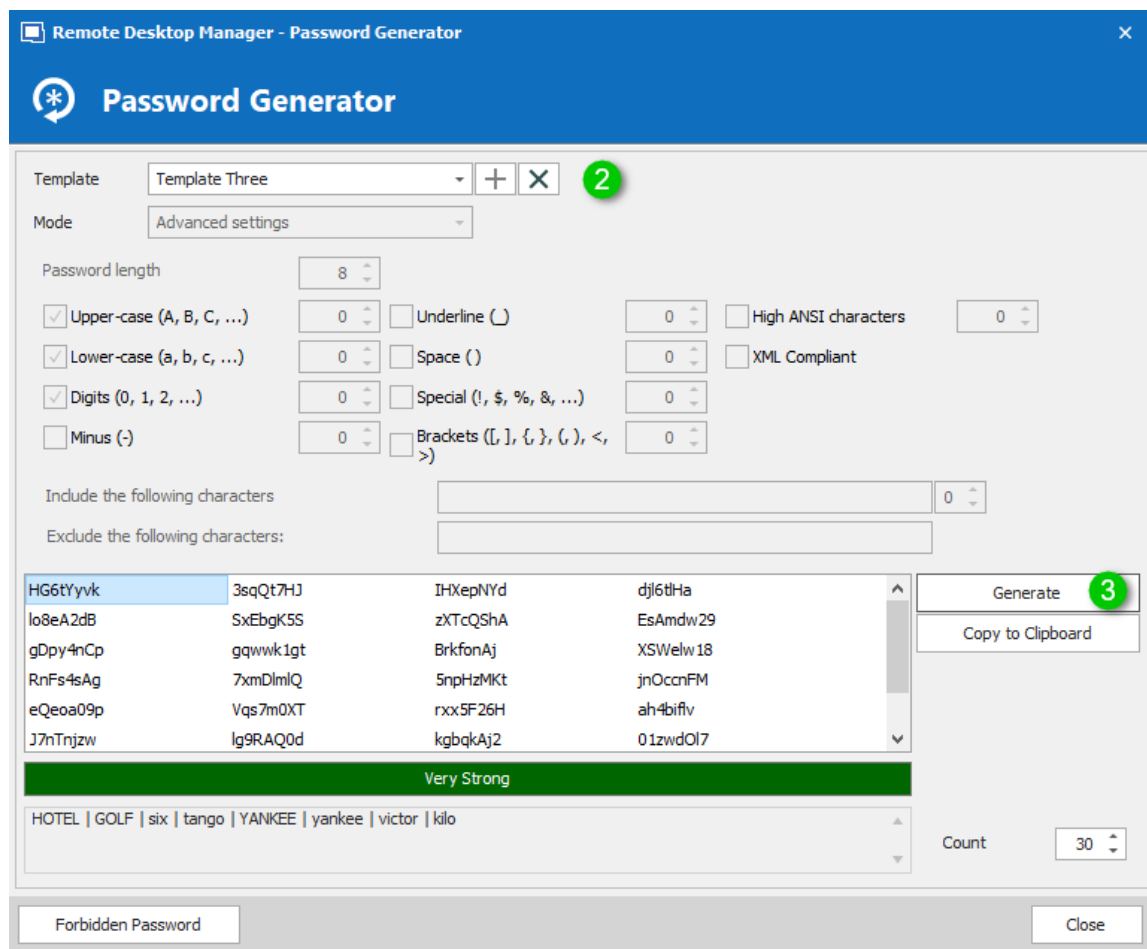
c) Choose specific settings

5. The password is now available in the **Password Generator** (**Tools** menu).

USE A PASSWORD TEMPLATE WITH PASSWORD GENERATOR

1. On the **Tools** tab, click **Password Generator**. Or open the password generator from an entry .

2. To choose a password template, select the title from the list. **Default** is equivalent to no template, until it is configured by an administrator. When you select a template the options are unavailable because they were saved in the template.
3. Click **Generate** to list possible passwords.



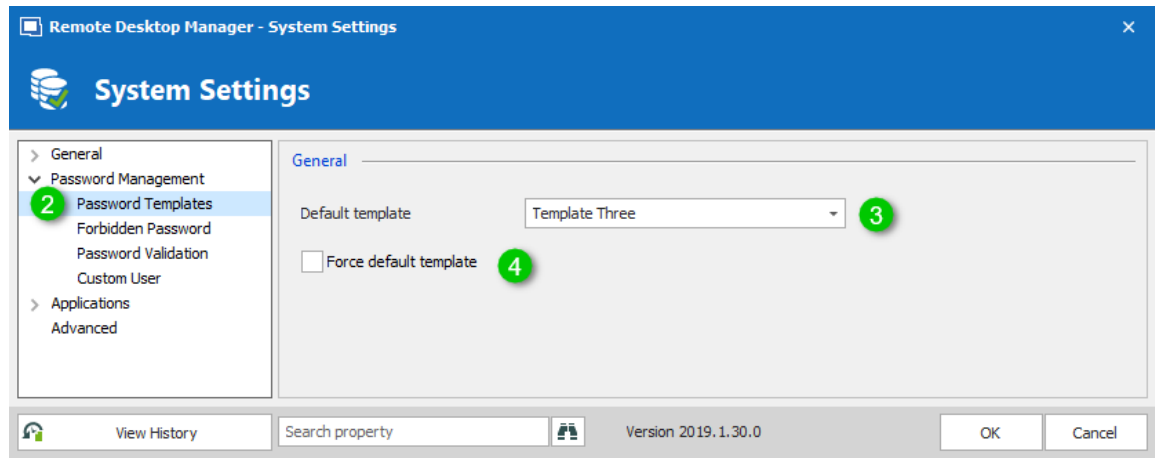
Password Generator using a password template

SET A DEFAULT PASSWORD TEMPLATE

The default template in the **Password Generator** is set to "no template" until an administrator configures the template.

1. On **Administration**, click **Data Source Settings (System Settings)**.
2. Click **Password Templates**.

3. Choose the template. The chosen template will now be the **Default** in Password Generator.
4. If you want to force one template, check **Force default template**. No other choices will be available in the password generator.



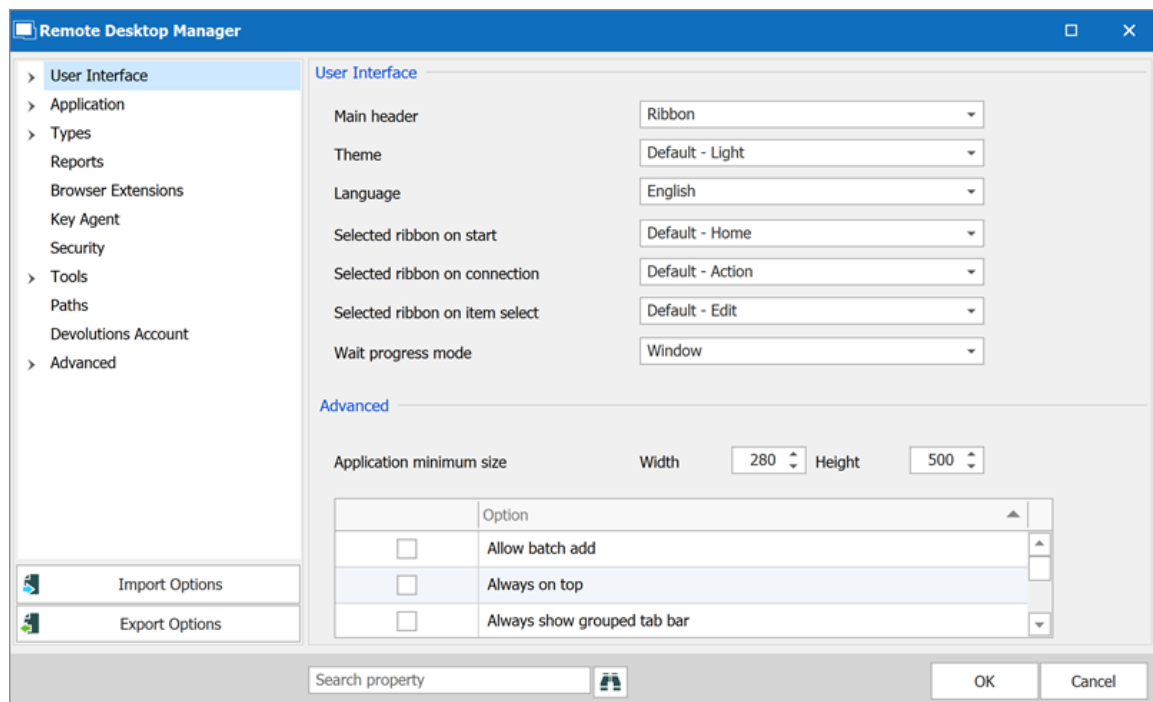
System Settings – Password Templates

6.2.13 Options

DESCRIPTION

There are multiple options available to manage and customize your Remote Desktop Manager in the menu **File – Options**. Most of these options are related to changes to the local instance.

Use the **Search property** to find a specific option.

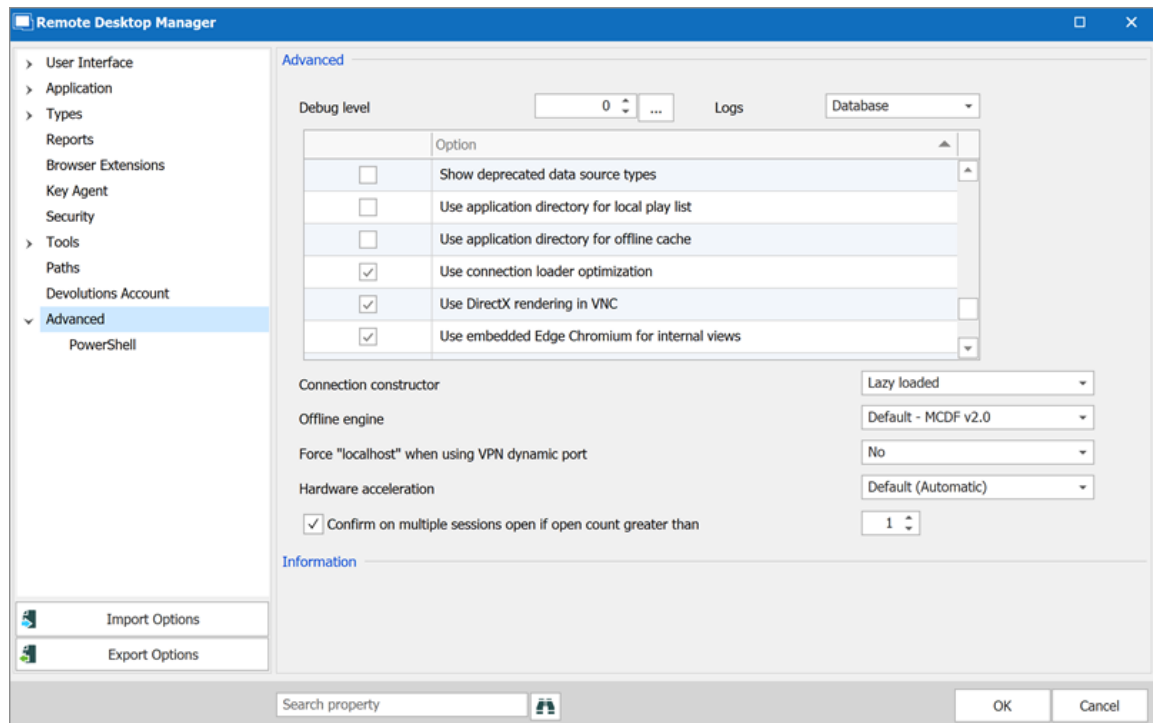


File - Options

6.2.13.1 Advanced

DESCRIPTION

Use the **File - Options - Advanced** tab to control the application behavior as it pertains to low level settings.



Options - Advanced

SETTINGS

ADVANCED

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| Debug level | Set the level of debugging information that Remote Desktop Manager will capture. This should only be modified upon request from a Devolutions support technician as it might cause your system to slow down . |
| Logs | <p>The logs can be saved in a file or in a database file. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Both: Logs will be saved in a text file and in a database file. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Database: Logs will be saved in a file named RemoteDesktopManager.log.db. The file is located in the installation folder of the application. • File: Logs will be saved in a file named RemoteDesktopManager.log. The file is located in the installation folder of the application. |
| Connection constructor | The connection constructor is used for memory optimization when using legacy. We strongly recommend to leave this option at Default. Only change this option upon request from a Devolutions support technician. |
| Offline engine | You can choose your Offline engine between the SQLite or OpenMCDF. Only change this option upon request from a Devolutions support technician. |
| Force "localhost" when using VPN dynamic port | Forces the use of "localhost" when using the VPN dynamic port. |
| Confirm on multiple session open if open count greater than | Select a target number where mass opening sessions will demand confirmation. |

OTHER OPTIONS - CONNECTIONS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Allow embedded credential source mode (Legacy) | Allow Embedded Credential mode in entries. This mode is deprecated and not recommended. Please review the Credentials Options available. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Automatically open file location after session recording | After a session recording, it will open the destination folder where the file is saved. |
| Disable close all confirmation message | Disables the Close all confirmation message when closing/disconnecting multiple entries at the same time. |
| Disable compromised password pwned check | Disables the pwned check feature if it isn't forced by the administrator in the System Settings - Password Validation option. |
| Disable DPAPI on offline cache | Disable the DPAPI encryption on the offline cache. This encryption is provided by Windows and used to make the offline cache more secure. |
| Disable form editor cache | Disables the form editor cache and force RDM to always fetch the information. It is not recommended to disable this feature for performance reasons. |
| Disable log off confirmation message | When pressing the logoff button in an embedded RDP session, Remote Desktop Manager, will disconnect the session without the logoff confirmation message. |
| Disable multi-thread loading | This setting allows Remote Desktop Manager to use multiple threads to load the data. Disabling this option will decrease the performance. |
| Disable multi-thread offline file | This setting allows Remote Desktop Manager to use multiple threads in offline file. Disabling this option will decrease the performance. |
| Disable resilient database connection handling | Resilient Database connection handling is a mechanism we put in place to retry certain database connections in |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| | RDM to avoid certain errors. Some slowness can be expected when enabled. |
| Disable system event handlers | Only used for diagnostic purposes, do not set unless recommended by the Devolutions Support team. |
| Disable thumbnail view for Google Chrome | Disable the thumbnail view for Google Chrome in View - Thumbnails to improve the application performance. |
| Enable global event logging for Telnet and SSH (DevolutionsTerminal.log) | Enables global event logging for Telnet and SSH entries. It will create the file DevolutionsTerminal.log at the same place where the configuration file is located. |
| Enable offline read/write locks | Activate locks for the Offline read/write rights. |
| Ensure that KeePass is running | Validate that KeePass is running on your computer before accessing any KeePass data. |
| Force refresh before edit entry | Perform a refresh of the entry before entering in edit mode. This is useful in a multi-user environment with a shared data sources. This ensure that you are editing the most recent version of the entry. |
| Force restore application with desktop shortcut | When double-clicking on the desktop shortcut it will restore the application that is already open. If the option is unchecked a second Remote Desktop Manager window will open. |
| Open shortcut session silent | Disable the command line warning message when using a shortcut. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Show deprecated data source types | We don't support some data sources anymore, enabling this option will show them again. |
| Use connection loader optimization | Only enable this option upon request from our Support team. |

OTHER OPTIONS - GENERAL

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Add folder in hierarchy during batch add | When doing a batch add of folders, depending on the option chosen, it will either create them all on the same level or make them a child of the previous folder. |
| Allow multiple instances | Allows more than one instance of Remote Desktop Manager to run concurrently. This is not a recommended practice. |
| Allow non upgraded data source | Allow Remote Desktop Manager to work on an older data source that has not been upgraded. |
| Check focus content on RDP activation | If an RDP session requests the focus, it will pull RDM to the foreground, focusing it. |
| Confirm on drag and drop move | When session(s) are moved by drag and drop, a confirmation message will appear to confirm the move. |
| Disable favicon cache | Disables the favicon cache and force RDM to always fetch the favicon from the web. It is not recommended to disable this feature for performance reasons. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Disable stack trace | Disable the stack trace details when an error occurs in Remote Desktop Manager. This is a security feature. |
| Disable telemetry | Disable the analysis of data or statistics. Telemetry is the equivalent of Google Analytics. Note that the statistics are anonymous. |
| Disable user gravatar | Disable the fetching of the gravatar in the Administration - Users window to improve the application performance. |
| Focus content on application activation | Set focus on the last embedded session when the application is activated. |
| Include Active Directory computers in select computer dialog | Enable to view the list of all Active Directory. |
| Include network neighborhood computers in select computer dialog | Enable to view the list of all neighboring computers. It is not recommended to enable this feature for performance reasons. |
| Lock integrated security: validate only against domain context | The integrated security lock validates by default against the local machine and the domain context. You have the option to validate only against the domain. |
| No Internet connection | Disable the application to access the internet. |
| Use application directory for local play list | Use the installation folder to save the local play list that has been created. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Use application directory for offline cache | Use the installation folder to save the offline cache file. |
| Use Devolutions updater | Only modify this option upon request from our Support team. |
| Use Microsoft Office instead of editors | When adding a new document by selecting a file supported by a Microsoft Office application (Word, Excel), it will make a Word/Excel document instead of a Rich Text Editor/Spreadsheet Editor entry. |
| Use ZipCrypto compression (not recommended) | Enable this option to allow the ZipCrypto compression in RDM. We do not recommend enabling this option. Here is a blog written by our security team about the subject: Why you should never use the native .Zip Crypto in Windows . |

OTHER OPTIONS - MICROSOFT EDGE

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Use embedded Microsoft Edge for documentation and markdown | Enabling this option will allow to use the browser Microsoft Edge instead of Internet Explorer for the documentation and markdown. |
| Use embedded Microsoft Edge for overview panel | Enabling this option will allow to use the browser Microsoft Edge instead of Internet Explorer for the overview panel. |
| Use embedded Microsoft Edge for | Enabling this option will allow to use the browser Microsoft Edge instead of Internet Explorer to display |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| release notes | release notes. |
| Use embedded Microsoft Edge for reports | Enabling this option will allow to use the browser Microsoft Edge instead of Internet Explorer to display the reports. |

OTHER OPTIONS - UI OPTIONS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Always show "Go Offline" button | Always display the "Go Offline" button in the status bar when Offline Mode is active. |
| Disable custom images | Disable the loading of any custom images in the tree view. Too many custom images could dramatically increase the size of the data source and increase the load time at the same time. |
| Disable document selector (CTRL + Tab) | When left enabled, it will allow to switch from multiple open tab connections. |
| Disable layout restoration | Disable manually configured tab layout and restore the layout settings on a RDM restart. |
| Enable tags textbox in properties | By default, the Tags field, in the Properties of an entry, can only be filled through the tag selector. With this option, it lifts that restriction and you can write in the Tags text box directly. |
| Hide last opened play list in play list management | Hide the last opened play list at startup in the play list dialog. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Hide loading data sources progress bar | Will hide the loading data sources progress bar when loading. |
| Keep View Password window on top | Force the View Password window to display on top of all the RDM windows. |
| Use old entry sort | Use the old entry sort from previous version of Remote Desktop Manager. |

INFORMATION

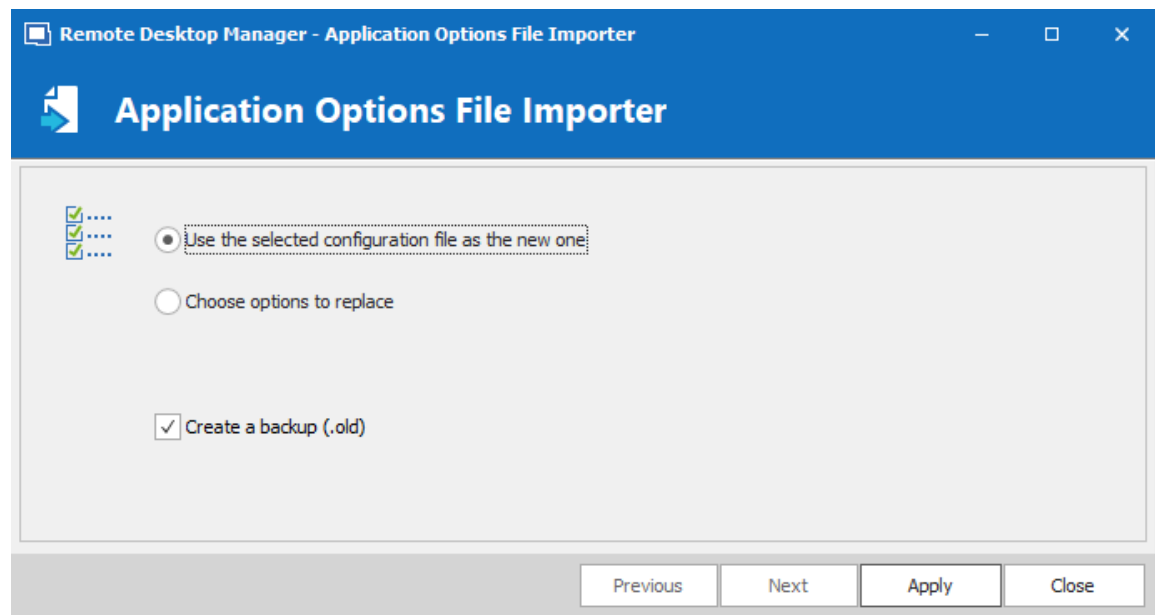
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|---|
| Created on | Creation date of Remote Desktop Manager configuration folder. |
| Source | Source of Remote Desktop Manager configuration settings. |
| Path | Shortcut to access the configuration folder directly. |

6.2.13.2 Import Options

SETTINGS

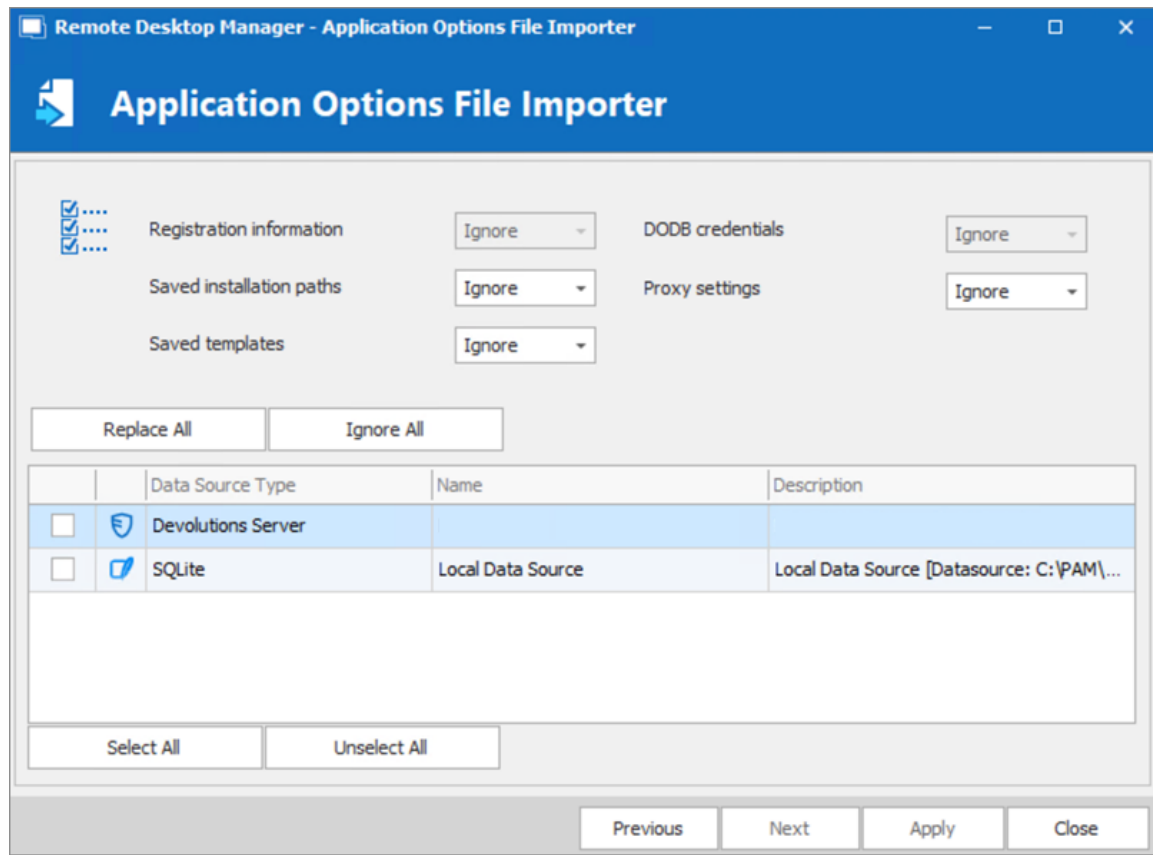
Select the [Configuration File](#) to import in Remote Desktop Manager and click on **Open**.

REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER OPTIONS FILE IMPORTER

*Application Options File Importer*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Use the selected configuration file as the new one | Use the RemoteDesktopManager.cfg file as a new configuration file for your application. |
| Choose options to replace | Select which options to replace in your actual RemoteDesktopManager.cfg file. See below for more information. |
| Create a backup (.old) | Create a backup of your old RemoteDesktopManager.cfg |

CHOOSE OPTIONS TO REPLACE



Application Options File Importer

Decide which options to replace with the one from RemoteDesktopManager.cfg that you wish to import. Select **Replace** to replace an existing setting with a new one or select **Ignore** if you want to keep the setting that you already have.

6.2.13.3 Export Options

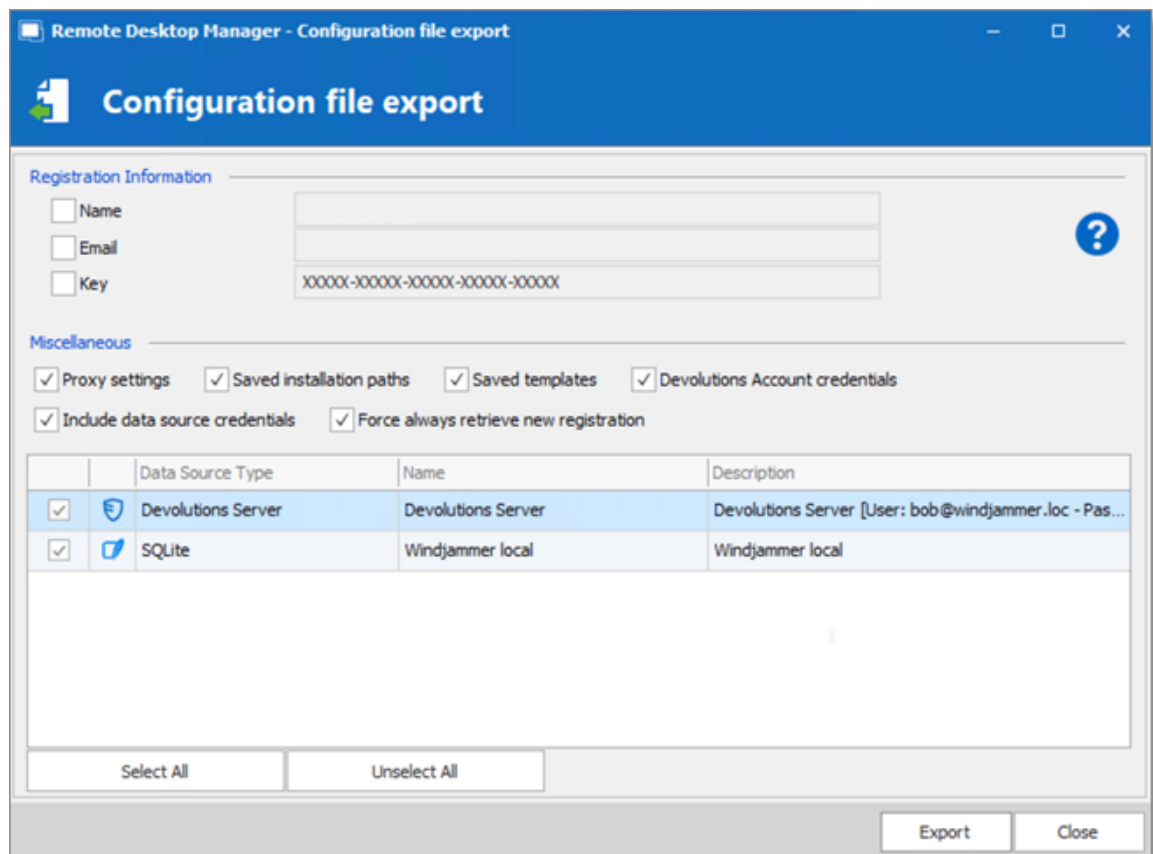
DESCRIPTION

Use **File – Options – Export Options** to control the options to export from your application configuration. Use this to easily transfer settings to another machine.



Sharing the exported file with a colleague would effectively give that person whatever credentials you have set in your data source definitions.

Devolutions does not recommend sharing any credential to a team data source.



Configuration file export dialog

SETTINGS

REGISTRATION INFORMATION

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| Name | Company registration name. |
| Email | Registration email. |
| Key | Serial key. |

MISCELLANEOUS



The local templates may contain credentials, ensure you do not share the exported file.

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Proxy settings | Includes your proxy settings. |
| Saved installation paths | Preserve your installation paths configured for the external application. |
| Saved templates | Include your local templates in the export. |
| Include data source credentials | Include your data source credentials. |

DATA SOURCES



The data source configurations you select will be exported with the username/password as they are currently configured. If you are creating a file to quickly set up new employees, you must be careful not to give away your credentials. Using the [Custom Installer Service](#) is recommended for this case.

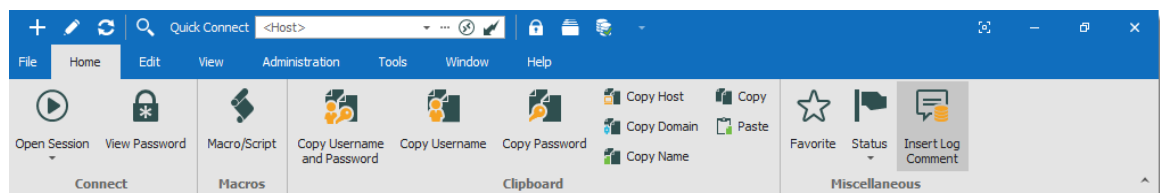
All your configured data sources will be displayed in this section. Select the one(s) that you want to include in the export. Please note that the content of the data source is not exported.

When your settings are customized to your liking, click on **Export**. You will be prompted to save your settings in a RemoteDesktopManager.cfg file.

6.3 Home

DESCRIPTION

The **Home** ribbon tab allows you to apply an action on the currently selected session. The ribbon will display the following tab when the session is embedded.



Ribbon - Home

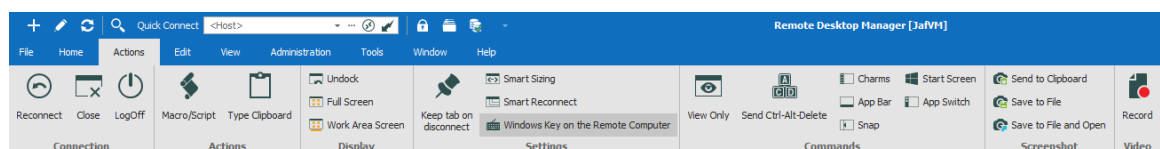
- Connect.
- Macros.
- Clipboard: Configure clipboard in File – Options.
- Miscellaneous.

6.4 Actions

DESCRIPTION

The **Actions** tab is only available when a session is open. Available actions differ depending on the action.

For our example we are running an RDP session. The ribbon will display the following tab when the session runs with the Embedded (tabbed) display mode.



Ribbon - Actions

CONNECTION

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Reconnect | Quickly close the session and then re-open it automatically. Use it to update the resolution of your embedded RDP connections when you resize the window. |
| Close | Close the active session. |
| LogOff | Logoff the RDP session. See Logoff topic for more information. |

ACTIONS

| Option | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Execute | Execute the selected macro or script in the previous window or in the current tab. This is only available when there is something to Execute. |
| Macro/Script | Displays a window where you can select a macro or script, as well as the execution options. |
| Type Clipboard | Send the content of the clipboard over to the opened session. |

DISPLAY

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Undock | Undock your embedded session and move it anywhere outside Remote Desktop Manager or even on another monitor. |
| Embedded | Re-embed your session when your session is undocked. This option will only appear if your session is not already in an embedded mode. |
| Full Screen | Display your session in full screen outside Remote Desktop Manager. |
| Work Area Screen | This mode allows you to open the connection in full screen but to also have access to your local taskbar. |

SETTINGS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Keep tab on disconnect | Your session tab will stay after a session disconnect. For more information, see Keep Tab Opened topic. |
| Smart Sizing | Enable or disable the RDP smart sizing. This setting will determine whether or not the client computer can scale the content on the remote computer to fit the window size of the client computer. |
| Smart Reconnect | Automatically reconnect your session with the most appropriate band. |
| Windows Key on the Remote Computer | When enabling Windows key , it will send the function to your host instead of running it on your computer. |

COMMANDS

This tab contains multiple type of commands and keystrokes combinations to affect the current session in a variety of instances. As such, these commands depend on the currently selected (and opened) entry. For a few example scenarios, refer to the following topics:

- [RDP](#)
- [VNC](#)
- [Telnet](#)



Session add-ons may add custom command in this section, they will not be documented in these topics but rather in the add-on documentation.

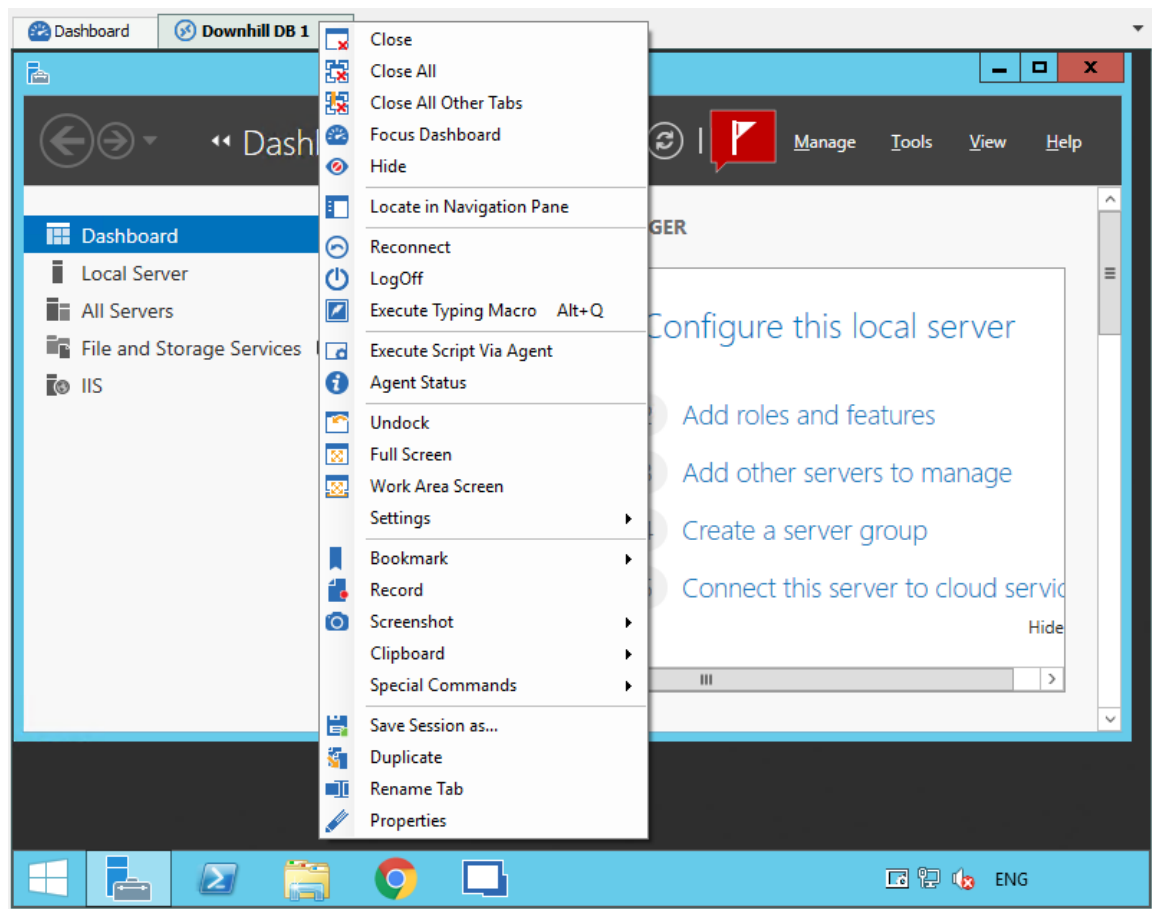
SCREENSHOT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|---|
| Send to Clipboard | Performs a typical capture to the clipboard. |
| Save to File | Prompts for a file name and saves the capture to that file. |
| Save to File and Open | Prompts for a file name and saves the capture to that file, then automatically open the file using your default editor. |

VIDEO

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|---|
| Record | Record your screen in an MP4 format. We recommend the use of a VLC player to view the recorded video. |

Alternatively, these actions are also available by **right-clicking** on the tab of an embedded session.



Actions Context Menu of an Embedded Session

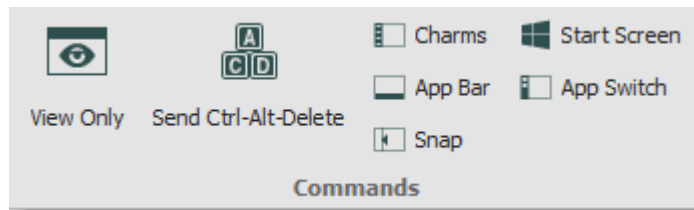
6.4.1 Commands

6.4.1.1 RDP

DESCRIPTION

The commands for an RDP session allows you to send remote commands to your host.

SETTINGS



RDP Commands

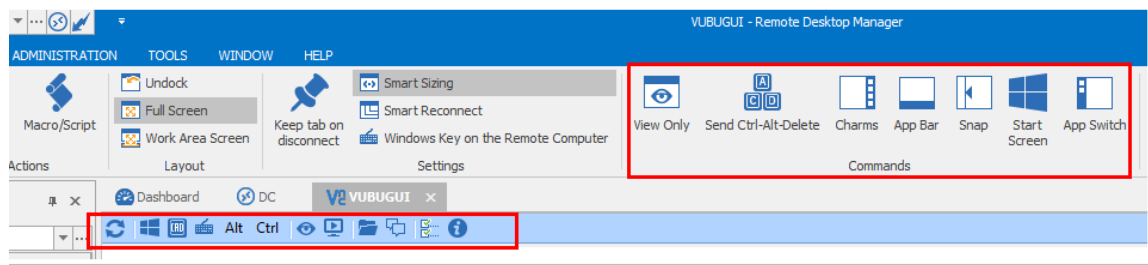
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| View Only | Prevent the session from receiving any input from the keyboard or the mouse. This feature was requested to allow monitoring while preventing manipulation errors. Use it to have a read only access to the remote server. |
| Send Ctrl+Alt+Delete | Send the key combination CTRL+ALT+DELETE to the host. |
| Charms | On Windows 8 or Windows 2012 server, displays the Charms bar (Search, Share, Start, Devices, and Settings bar). |
| App Bar | On Windows 8 or Windows 2012 server, displays the App bar to show navigation, commands, and tools. |
| Snap | On Windows 8 or Windows 2012 server, allows you to run two applications side-by-side. |
| Start Screen | Open the Start menu on the host computer. |
| App Switch | On Windows 8 or Windows 2012 server, switches from an application to another. |

6.4.1.2 VNC

DESCRIPTION

The VNC Commands allows you to send remote commands to your host. You will also notice another toolbar holding more defined commands for a VNC session.

SETTINGS



VNC Commands

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Refresh Screen | Refresh the host screen. |
| Window Start Menu | Open the Start menu on the host computer. |
| Send Ctrl-Alt-Delete | Send the key combination CTRL+ALT+DELETE to the host. |
| Send Custom Keys | Send custom keys combination to the host. |
| Alt | Send ALT to the host. |
| Ctrl | Send CTRL to the host. |

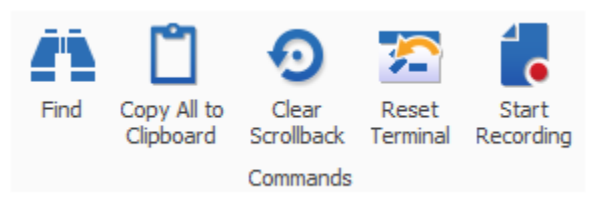
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| View only mode | This will prevent the session from receiving any input from the keyboard or the mouse. This feature was requested to allow monitoring while preventing manipulation errors. Use it to have a read only access to the remote server. |
| Remote input | Keyboard and pointer events will be sent to the server and the local and remote clipboard will be synchronized. |
| Open file transfer | Open the file transfer with the host computer. |
| Open chat dialog | Open a chat dialog with the host computer. |
| Options | Open the Connection Options window. |
| Information | Open the window containing information regarding your VNC connection status and traffic. |

6.4.1.3 Telnet

DESCRIPTION

The actions for a Telnet session allows you to send remote commands to your host.

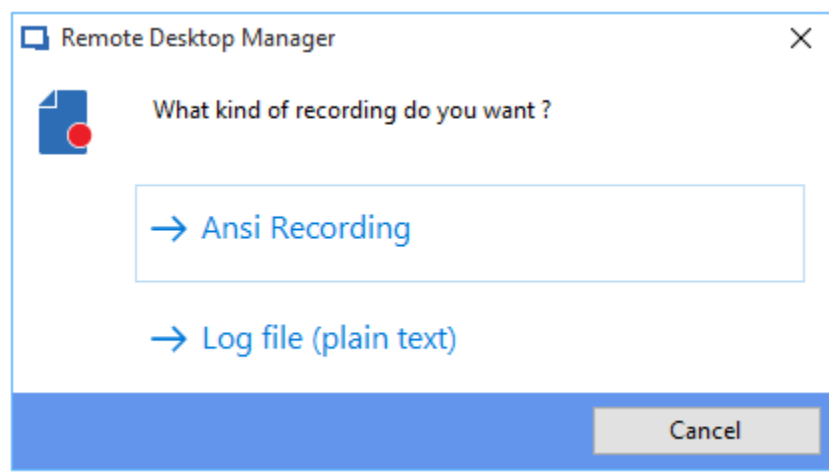
SETTINGS



Telnet Commands Actions

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| Find | Open a find window to search for specific words. |
| Copy All to Clipboard | Copy all selected text to the Clipboard. |
| Clear Scrollback | Clear the scrolling display that precedes the current line. |
| Reset Terminal | Reset host terminal connection. |

START RECORDING



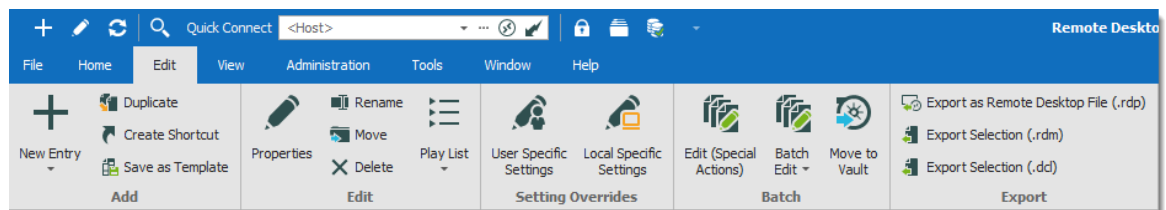
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|--|
| Ansi Recording | Will record all of the activity in the SSH session using the Ansi format. This can be replayed like a video using <i>Tools - Tools - Terminal playback (Ansi)</i> . |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|---|
| Log file (plain text) | Will record all of the activity in the SSH session using a text format. |

6.5 Edit

DESCRIPTION

The **Edit** tab contains operations to quickly Add, Edit, Overrides, Batch Edit or Export entries.



Ribbon - Edit

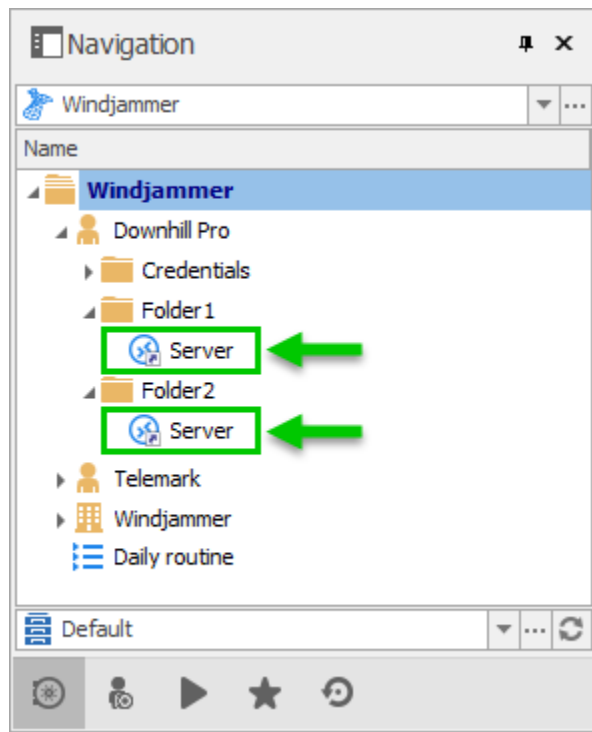
ADD

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| New Entry | Create a new entry (session, folder, information entry, credentials, etc.). |
| Duplicate | Create a duplicate of your entry. |
| Create Shortcut | Link your entry to more than one group. For more information, consult the text below. |
| Save as Template | Save the selected entry as a local or database template. |

A shortcut is the reiteration of an existing entry. In contrast to a duplicated entry, which has its own ID and properties, a shortcut is a link to an entry and its properties. You can create shortcuts easily by right-clicking the entry **Edit – Create Shortcut** or by using the aforementioned button in the **Edit** tab. There are a few scenarios where a user would want to use the same entry differently, such as connecting to two different hosts with a single RDP session.

For example, it is possible to:

- Assign different access to the same entry.
- Create a favorite folder with everything centralized.
- Reuse a document for different scenarios.



These two entries are the exactly the same

Entries reiterated this way also have both folder paths indicated in their Folder field in their properties, the paths are separated by a semi-colon.



There is no visual differences between the shortcut and the original entry. Therefore, you'll need to delete all entries to completely remove said entry. You will be asked for confirmation when attempting to delete said shortcut.

EDIT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| Properties | Edit the properties of the selected entry. |
| Rename | Rename the selected entry. |
| Move | Move the selected entry to another folder. |
| Delete | Delete the selected entry. A confirmation dialog is displayed to confirm the action. |
| Play List | Use the various play list features. |

The **Play List** feature in Remote Desktop Manager is a lot like a music play list. It opens a list of entries, in a specific order, automatically. The Play List can be used to create groups of sessions for a specific task or for security reasons. You can build your own Play List and start all entries from a Play List at the same time.

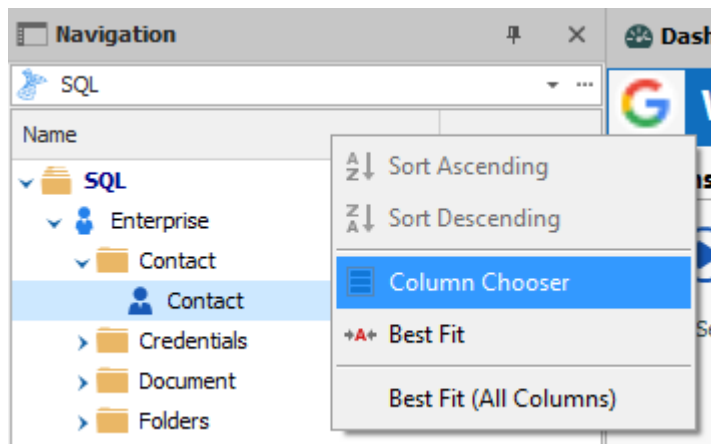
- [Create and Edit a Play List](#)
- [Using a Play List](#)

SETTING OVERRIDES

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|---|
| User Specific Settings | Override properties of the selected entry with settings with settings specific to the current user. For more information, please consult the Specific Settings topic. |
| Local Specific Settings | Override properties of the selected entry with settings specific to the local machine. For more information, please consult the Specific Settings topic. |



A Specific Settings column can be added in the Navigation Pane. **Right-click** on the column **Name** in the Navigation Pane and select **Column Chooser**. **Double-Click** on **Specific Settings** to add the column. Now, if there is a specific setting applied to an entry, it is displayed next to the entry's name.



Navigation Pane - Column Chooser

BATCH

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Edit (Special Actions) | Perform special actions on the selected entries, such as change the type, run a script, and more. For more information, please consult the Batch Actions Samples . |
| Batch Edit | Perform an action on multiple entries at once. This is particularly useful for doing mass modifications of entries (such as changing the display mode after modifying the workspace or their credential entries when changing your passwords). Multiple entries must be selected for this feature to be visible. For more information, please consult the Batch Edit topic. |
| Move to Vault | Transfer the selected entries to another Vault in the database. |

EXPORT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Export Entry as Remote Desktop File (.rdp) | Export the selected entries in a Remote Desktop File (.rdp) format. |
| Export Selection (.rdm) | Export the selected entries in a .rdm file that can then be imported into any Remote Desktop Manager data source. You could choose to include the credentials of your entry in your export format and secure your file with a master key. |

6.5.1 Entries

6.5.1.1 Checkout system

DESCRIPTION

The **Checkout system** locks an entry while it is being used or modified. It prevents users from using or editing an entry at the same time.

The checkout system can be enabled for **Sessions**, **Documents**, **Credentials** and **Information** entries.

You can set the check out mode at the Vault, folder or entry level.



This feature is only available when using [SQL Server](#) or [Devolutions Server](#) data sources.



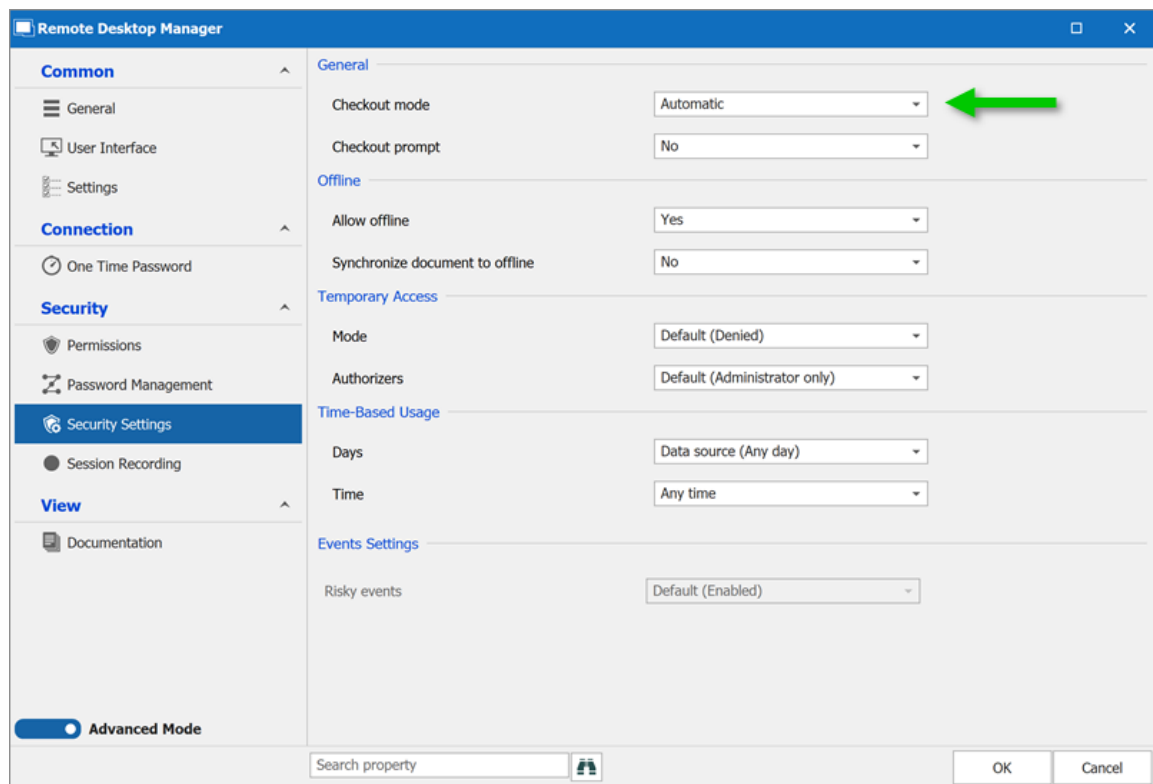
Administrators can set **Automatic check in after** a number of minutes in **Administration - System Settings - Vault**.



Administrators can force **Check In** entries that are **Check Out** by other users. Right-click the entry that is check out, click **Check In**.

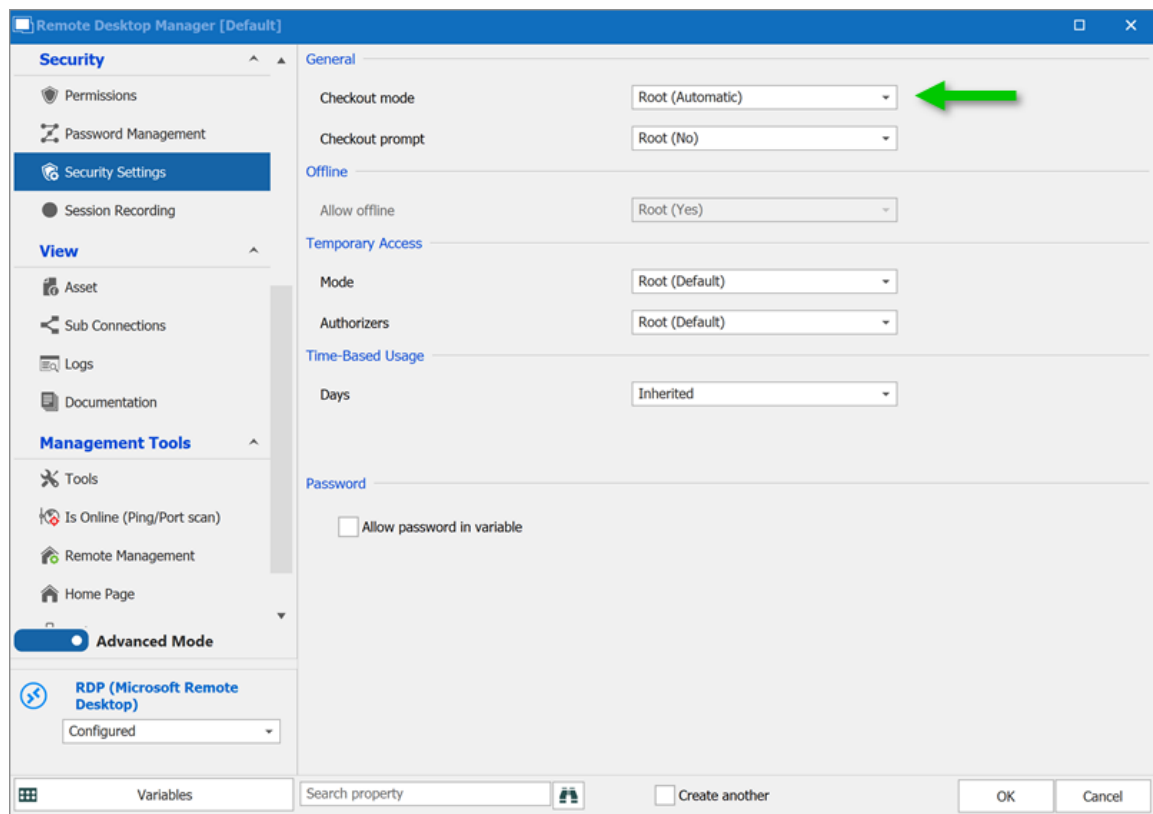
SECURITY SETTINGS

To access the check out settings, go into the **Properties** of an entry, folder or of the root folder. Navigate to the **Security Settings** section.



CHECKOUT MODE

Checkout mode enables or disables the checkout system. It also decides how the checkout mode functions.

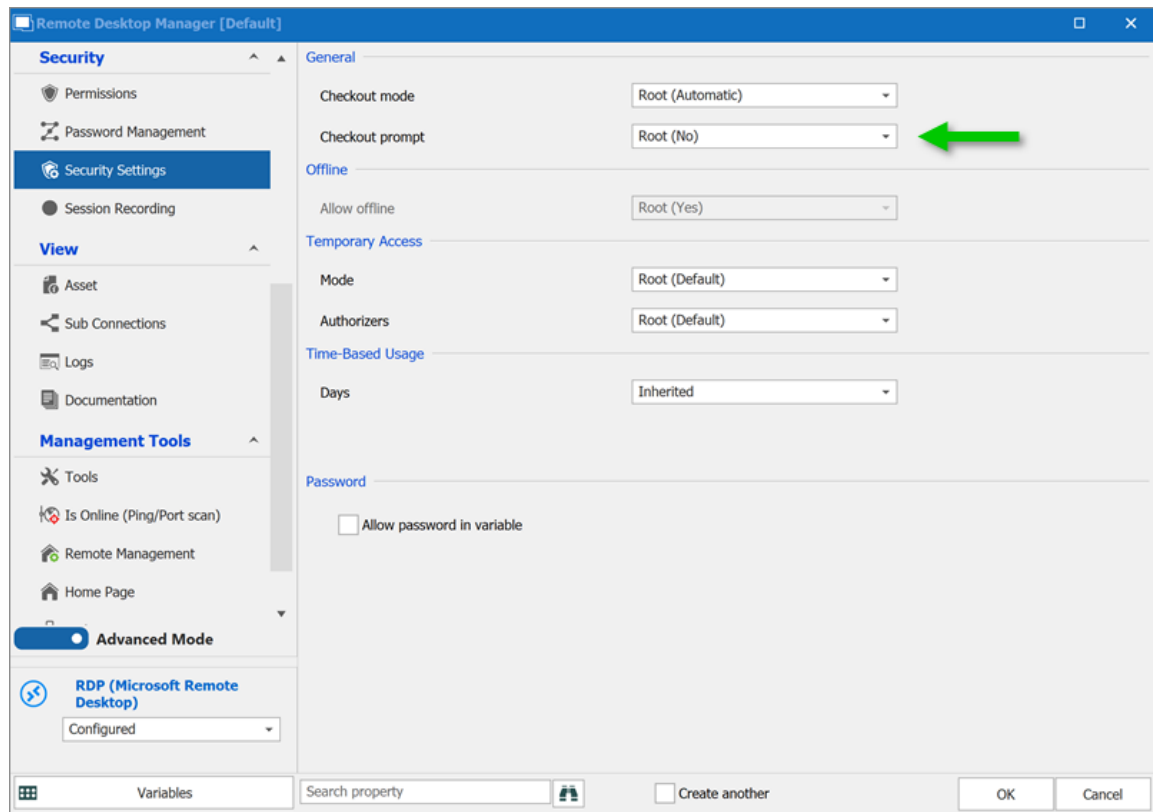


| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--|
| Root | Inherits the checkout mode setting from the root folder. |
| Not available | Disables the checkout system. |
| Automatic | Checks out an entry automatically when the entry is opened and automatically checks the entry in when the entry is closed. Users can edit properties without checking out the entry. |
| Manual | Users need to check out the entry manually prior to opening or editing the entry. No action can be performed without checking out the entry. |
| Inherited | Inherits the check out mode from the parent folder. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--|
| Optional | Offers the option to check out an entry manually or use (open and edit) the entry without checking it out. |

CHECKOUT PROMPT

Checkout prompt sets if a user must enter a comment when they check out the entry. Administrators can monitor the comments through the logs available on the entry or the **Activity Logs**.



| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|--|
| Root | Uses the checkout prompt setting from the root folder. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------|--|
| Yes | Prompts the user for comment when they check out an entry. |
| No | Removes the prompt for comment. |
| Inherited | Inherits the setting from a parent folder. |

6.5.1.2 Dynamic Credential Linking

DESCRIPTION

Dynamic credential linking creates a single credential entry for a supported credential manager and use this credential with any entry type that supports the Credential repository.

SUPPORTED CREDENTIAL MANAGERS

Here is the list of all implemented credential managers that support dynamic credential linking:

- **1Password**
- **Bitwarden**
- **Dashlane**
- **Devolutions Password Hub**
- **Devolutions Server**
- **KeePass**
- **Keeper**
- **LastPass**

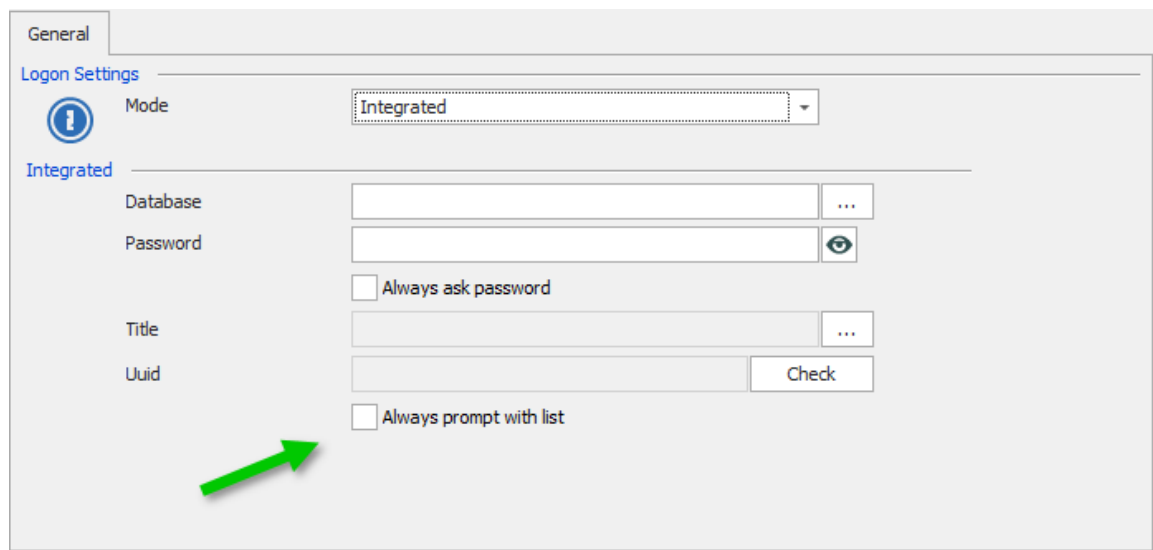
- Mateso Password Safe
- PassPortal
- Password List
- Password Manager Pro
- Password Safe
- PasswordState
- Password Vault Manager
- Pleasant Password Server
- RoboForm
- Secret Server
- Sticky Password
- TeamPass
- True Key
- Zoho Vault



A dynamic credential link can also be applied to a Folder or a VPN entry type if desired.

SETTINGS

1. Create a credential entry and check **Always prompt with list**.



General

Logon Settings

Mode: Integrated

Database: ...

Password: ...

☐ Always ask password

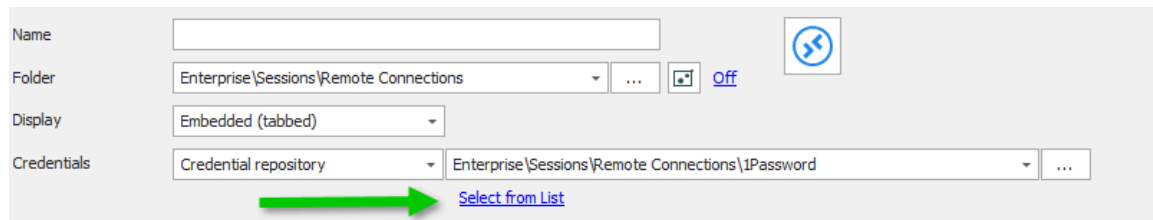
Title: ...

Uuid: ... Check

☐ Always prompt with list

1Password Settings

- When creating a entry, select **Credential repository** from the **Credentials** drop down list, then select the credential entry created in the previous step. Notice that a new action appears just below the credential selection drop down list.



Name: ...

Folder: Enterprise\Sessions\Remote Connections ...

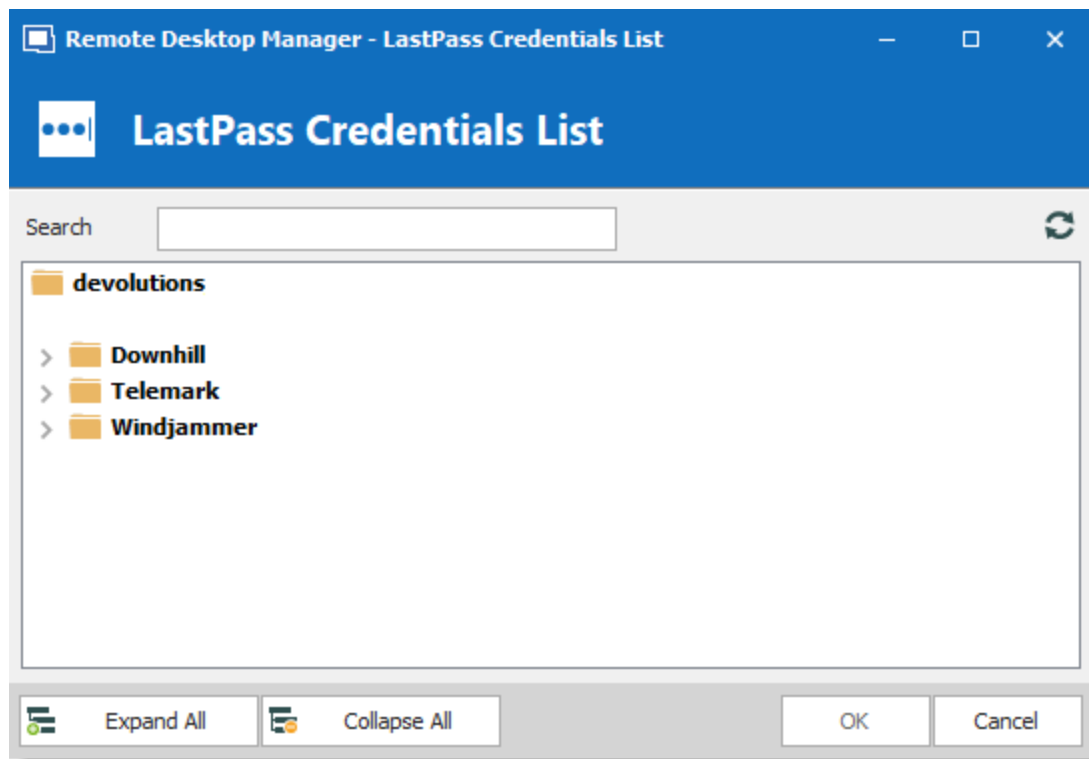
Display: Embedded (tabbed)

Credentials: Credential repository ...

[Select from List](#)

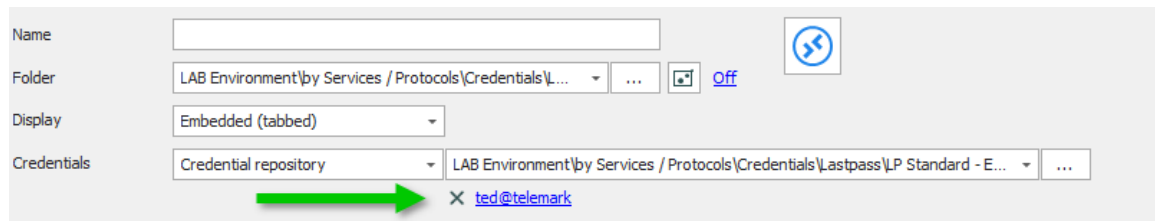
Select from List

- Select a credential from the list.



LastPass Credentials list

4. The link changes to the name of the credential. To remove linked credential and bring back automatic list prompt, simply click on the "X".

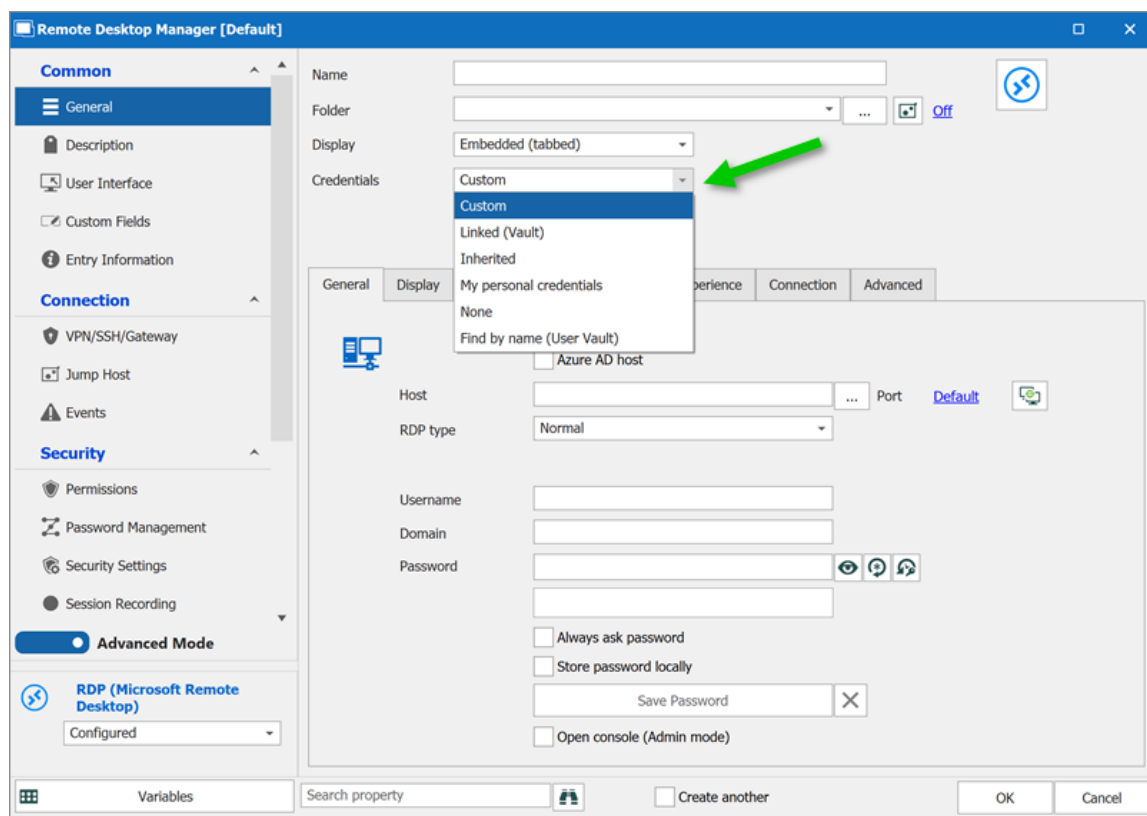


Name of the credential

6.5.1.3 Entry Credentials Options

DESCRIPTION

Multiple options are available to use for **Credentials** in your Remote Desktop Manager entries.



| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| Custom | This option allows to enter custom credentials in the General section of the entry. |
| Linked (Vault) | Link your entry to use an existing Credential entry in the same vault. |
| Embedded (Legacy) | Embed a Credential entry in the entry itself. This mode is deprecated and not recommended. Please review other options available. |
| Inherited | The credentials used by this entry will be inherited and defined by climbing up the navigation tree until it has access to a set of credentials in a parent folder. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| My personal credentials | Will use the credentials set in My personal credentials feature. This allows you to centralize one credential to replace or emulate the ones for your Windows session. |
| None | No credentials will be allowed to be saved or linked to this entry. |
| Find by name (User Vault) | Will search your User Vault for the name specified. If the box is left empty, when launch, a Credential list will open with all available Credentials entry from your User Vault . |

6.5.2 Edit

6.5.2.1 Play List

6.5.2.1.1 Create and Edit a Play List

DESCRIPTION

You can create Local or Shared play List in Remote Desktop Manager. There's several methods to create or edit a Play List:

- Using the Play List Management.
- Create Play List depending on entries state and selection.
- Edit an existing Play List.

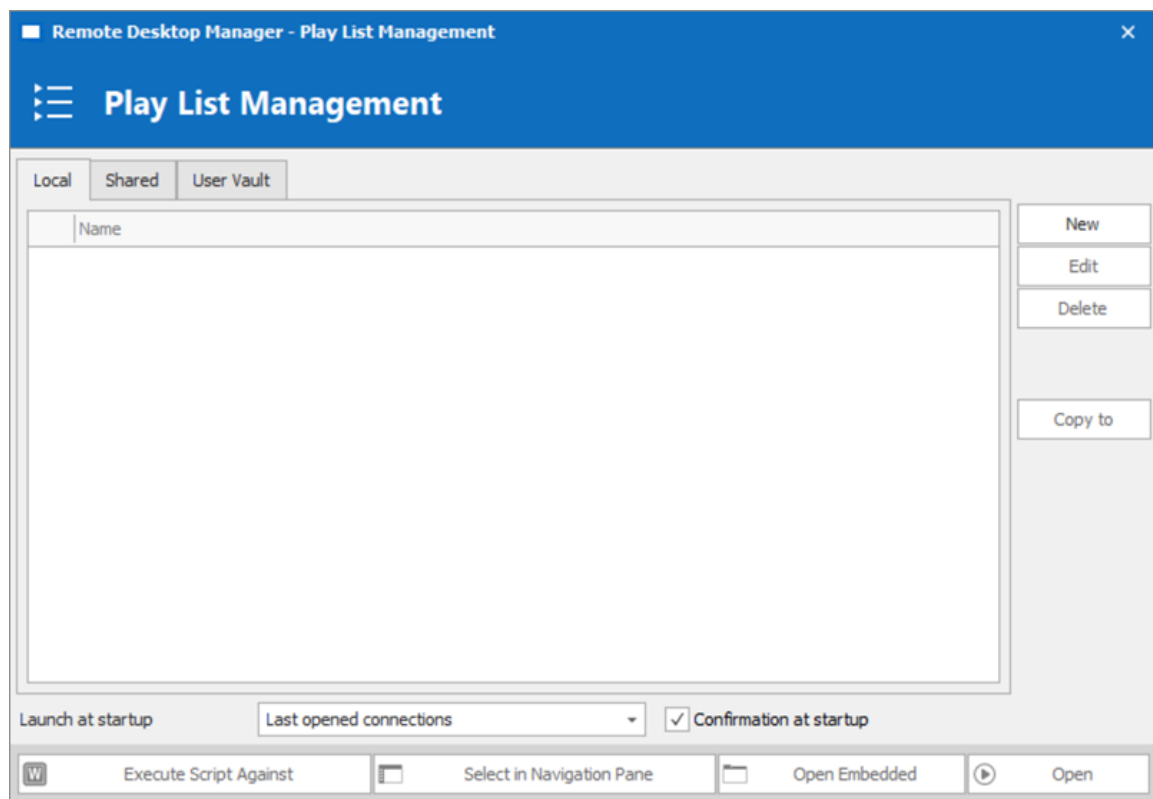


You can also use the context menu to create and edit your **Play List**. When your entries are selected, right-click in the Navigation Pane and select **Play List - Add Selection to Existing Play List**.

SETTINGS

USE THE PLAY LIST MANAGEMENT

From the ribbon in **Edit - Play List - Play List Management**.



Local Play List

Play lists can be saved three different ways:

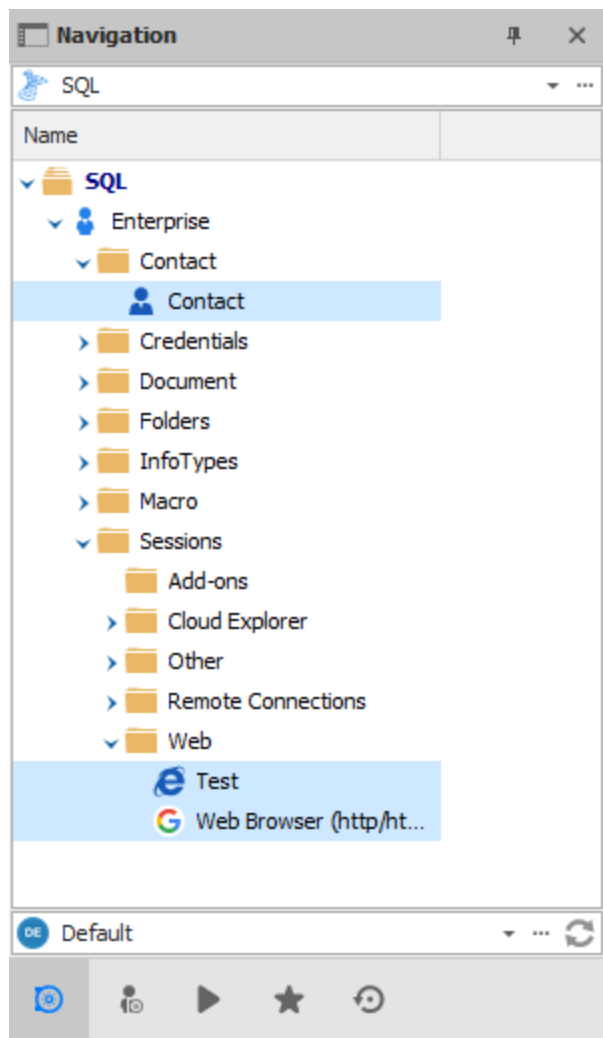
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|---|
| Local | The Play List is saved locally and can only be accessed as such. These can only be launched through the Play List Management. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|---|
| Shared | The Play List is saved in the database. It can be accessed by anyone on the data source. These can be launched through the Play List Management or by using the entry itself. |
| User Vault | The Play List is saved in your User Vault and can only be accessed by the user. These can be launched through the Play List Management or by using the entry itself. |

ACTIONS

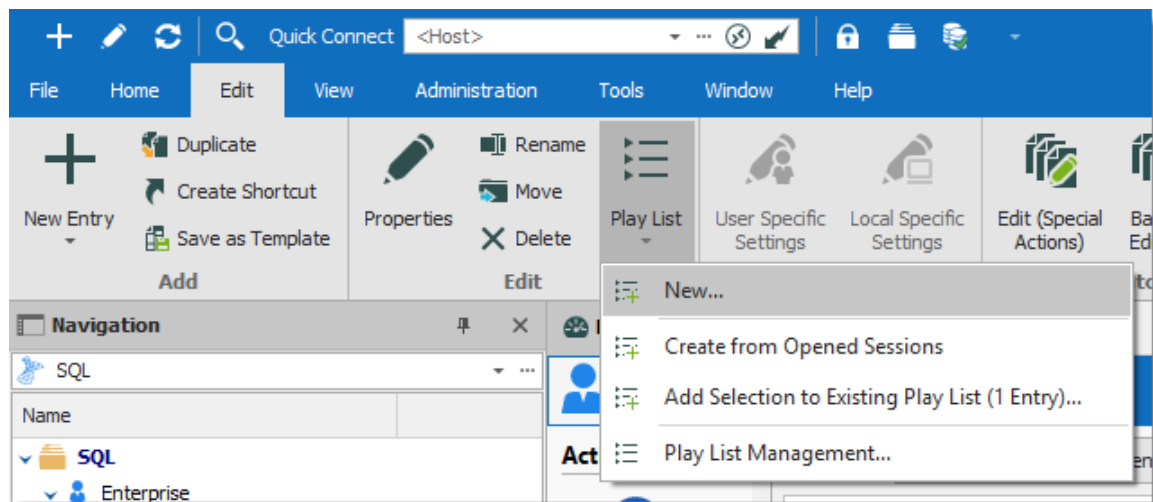
CREATE PLAY LIST DEPENDING ON ENTRIES STATE AND SELECTION

1. If you wish to pre-determine a list of entries, select them for your Play List in the Navigation Pane.



Selected Entries in the Navigation Pane

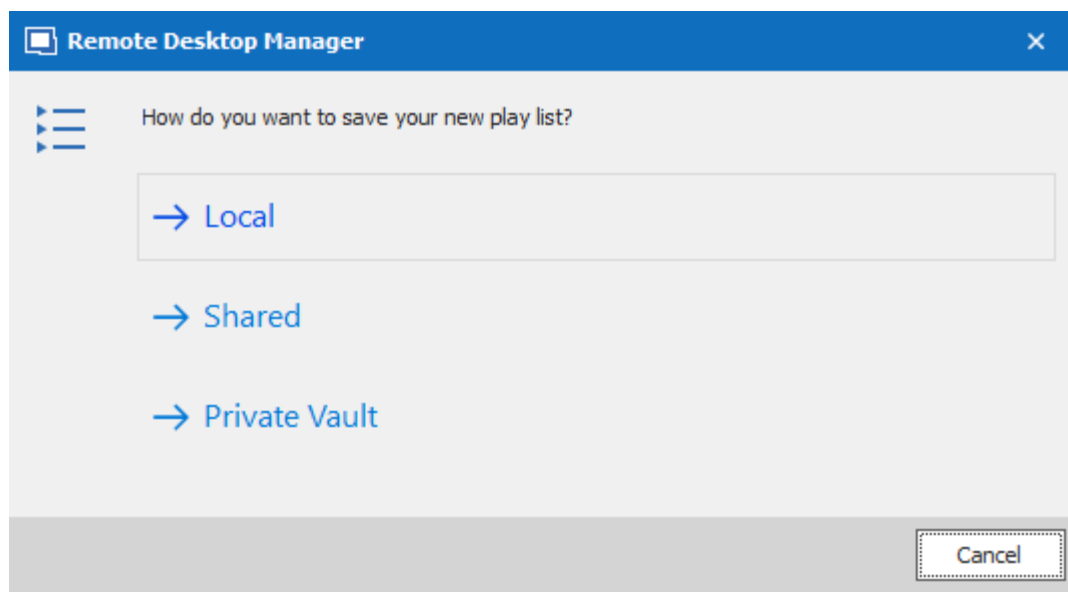
2. On the **Edit** ribbon menu, click **Play List**, then select whichever setting you prefer.



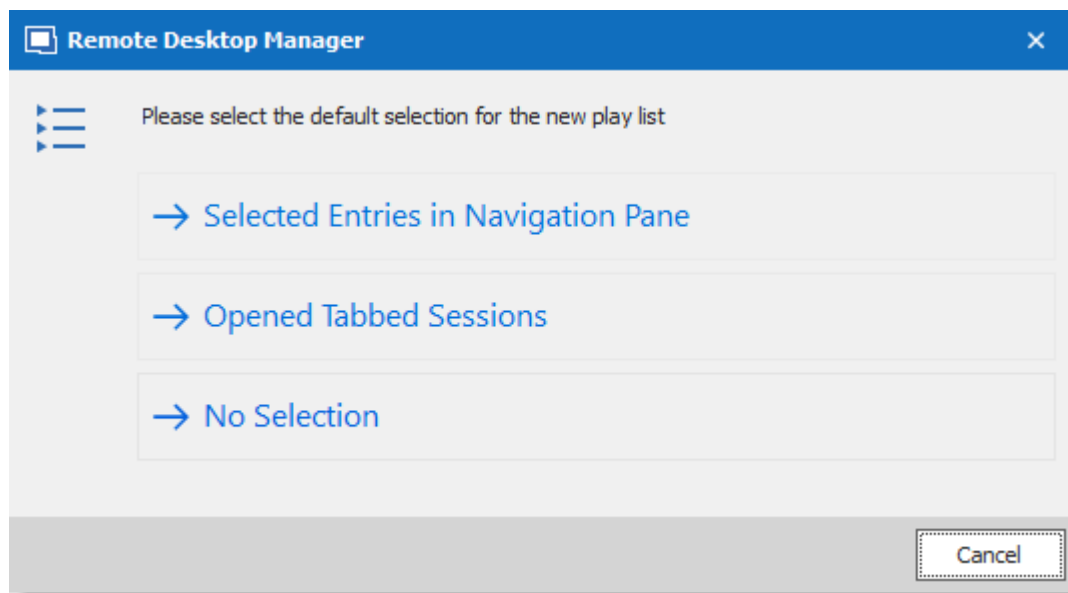
Edit - Play List - New

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| New | Creates a new Play List directly, a window prompt will ask you where you wish to save it and which selection you would like to highlight. |
| Create from Opened Sessions | Brings up the window for creating a new Play List with all currently opened session already selected for the Play List. You can select and remove additional entries if desired. |
| Add Selection to Existing Play List (X Entry) | Prompts a window where you can select currently accessible Play Lists and adds the selection in the Navigation Pane to the Play List. |

3. Choose if you wish to save your Play List locally, in a shared Vault or in your User Vault. Saving it locally will prompt a different window. This window will contain everything needed for a local Play List.

*Save New Play List*

4. The next window lets you choose how you want your current selection or opened sessions to affect your playlist.

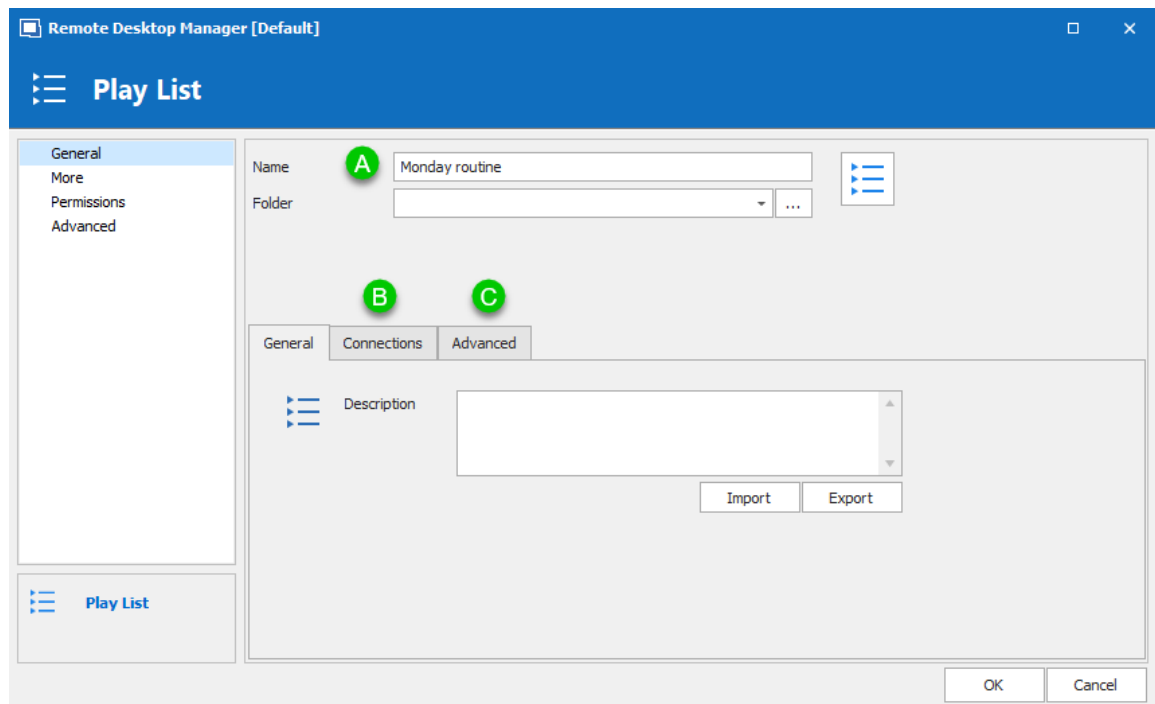
*Selected Entries in Navigation Pane*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Selected Entries in Navigation | All currently selected entries in the Navigation Pane will already be selected for your Play List. You can still add and |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Pane | remove entries to the Play List if you desire. |
| Opened Tabbed Sessions | All currently opened sessions (Embedded only) will already be selected for your Play List. You can still add and remove entries to the Play List if you desire. |
| No Selection | No pre-determined selection will be taken into account, create your Play List from a fresh start. |

5. Follow this sequence:

- a) Enter a name for your Play List.
- b) You can review, add or remove entries from the play list on the **Connections** tab.
- c) In **Advanced** you can set how the entries open.

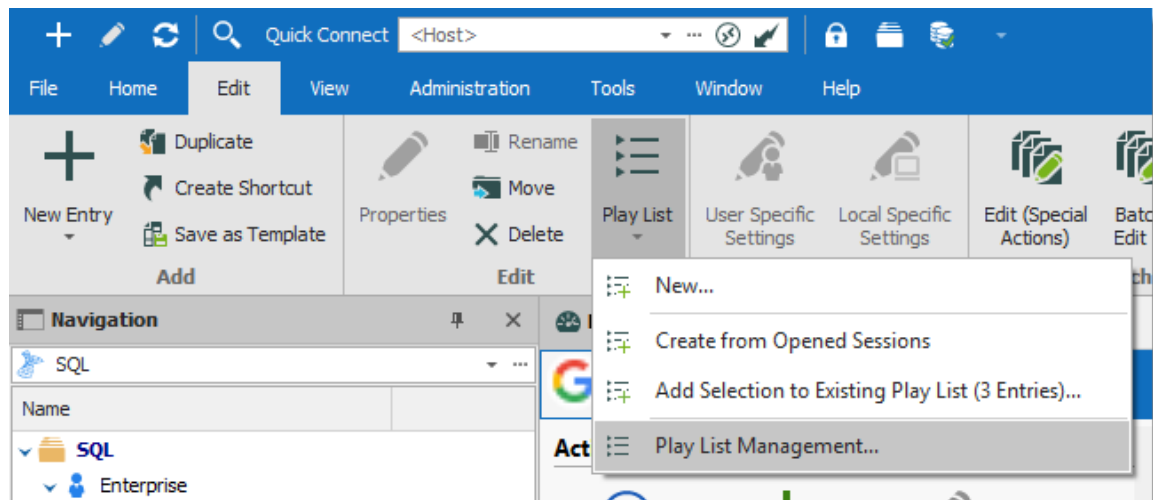


Play List Editor

And there you have it, your Play List is ready for use.

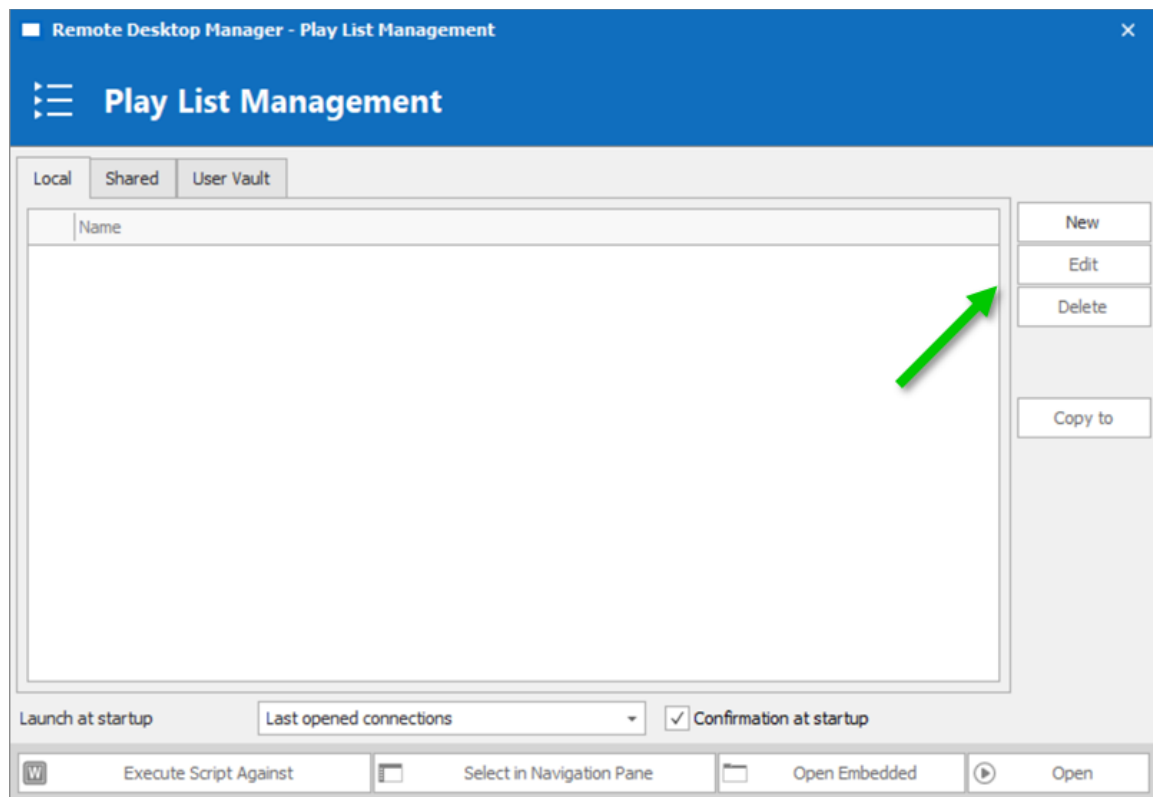
EDIT EXISTING PLAY LIST

1. On Edit, click **Play List Management**.



View - Play List Management

2. Select the Play List you wish to modify and click **Edit**.



Play List Management



If the Play List is shared or saved in your User Vault, you can also right-click the entry and click **Properties** to access it.

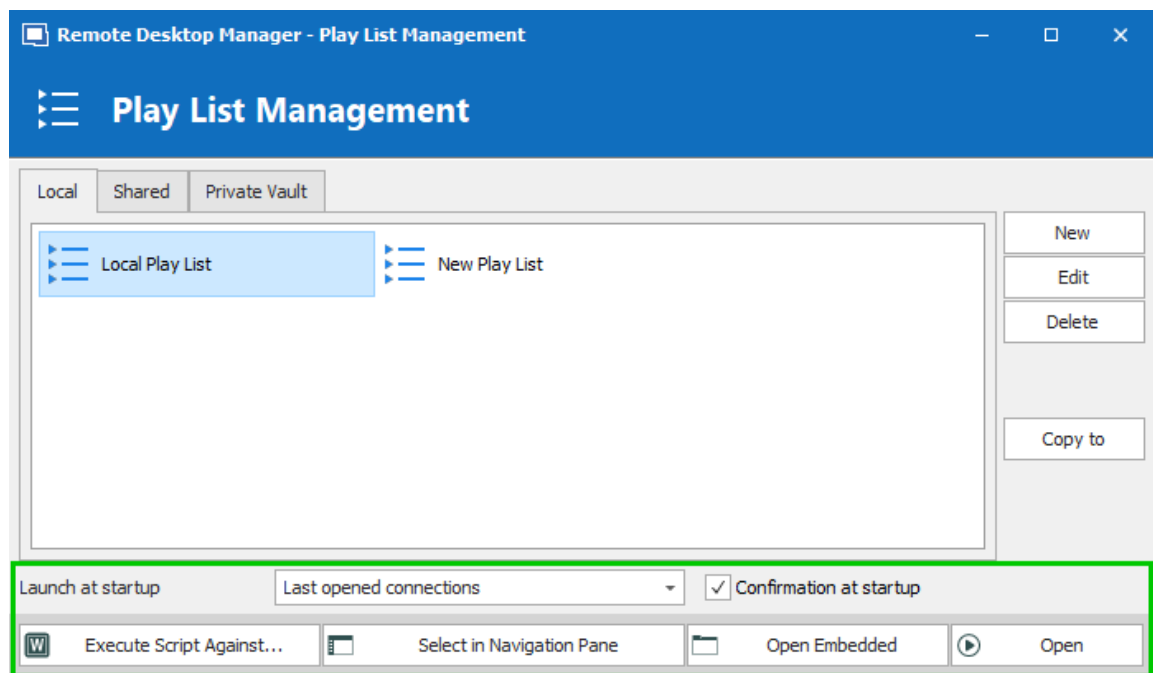
6.5.2.1.2 Play List Management

SETTINGS

USING A PLAY LIST

First, open your Play List Management **Edit – Play List – Play List Management**.

There are five methods to using your Play List.



Default Mode

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|--|
| Open | Launch the selected Play List. |
| Open Embedded | Overrides the display selection of entries inside the Play Lists and launches them as Embedded (some entries might not support this). |
| Select in Navigation Pane | Selects all entries the Play List contains in the Navigation Pane. |
| Execute Script Against... | This will prompt for you to select the Typing Macro (exclusively) you wish to execute against your Play list. |
| Launch at startup | Here you can select a specific Play List you would like launched whenever the application starts. You can also default back to None or Last opened Connections . |

6.5.3 Setting Overrides

6.5.3.1 Specific Settings

DESCRIPTION

Specific Settings are used to override the properties of an entry. Several settings can be overridden, such as the credentials or the display mode. There are two types of Specific Settings: user Specific Settings and local machine Specific Settings.

- **User Specific Settings** override an entry's properties for a single user.
- **Local Specific Settings** override an entry's properties for all users of a specific device.



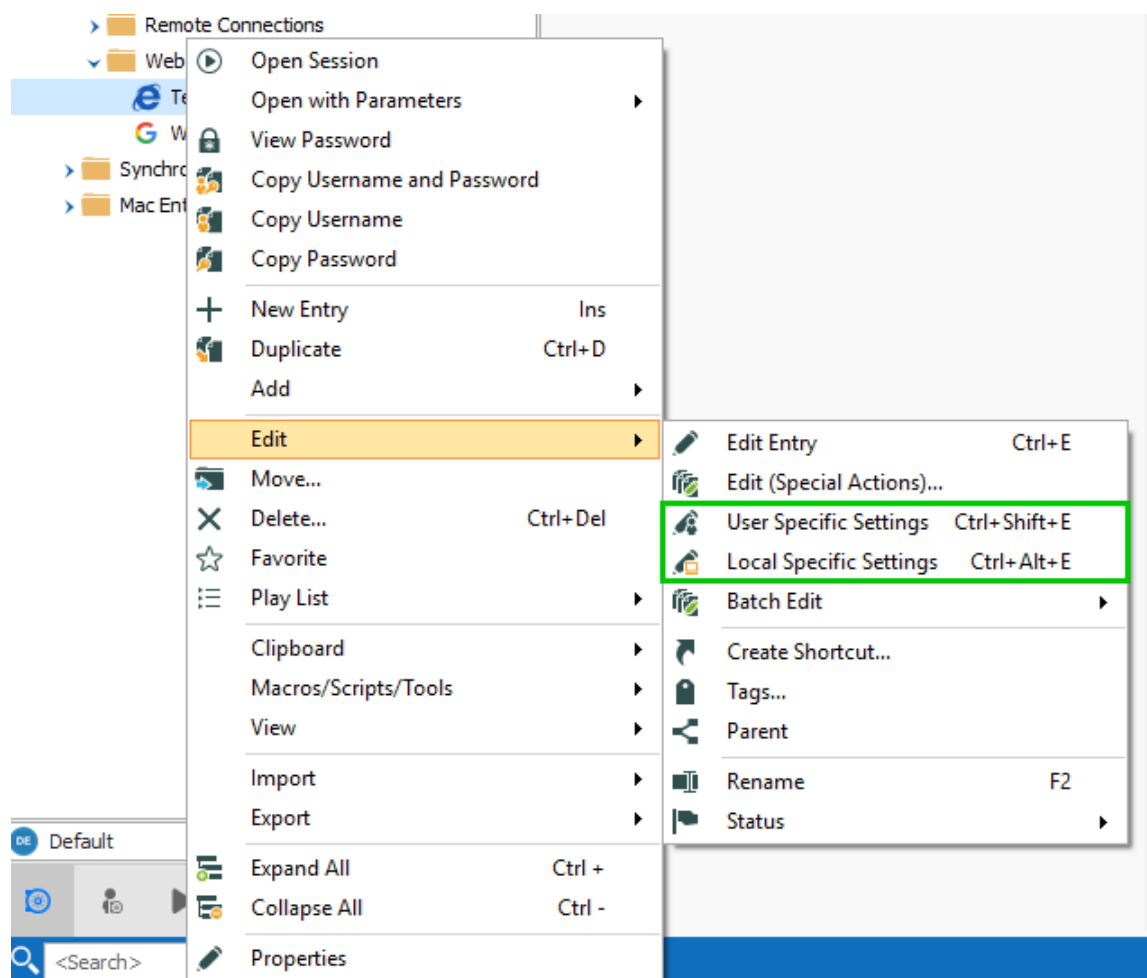
This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#). A setting on the data source allows usage of Specific Settings. Contact your administrator if the menu is grayed out.



If both User Specific Settings and Local Specific Settings are defined on the same entry, Local Specific Settings have the priority.



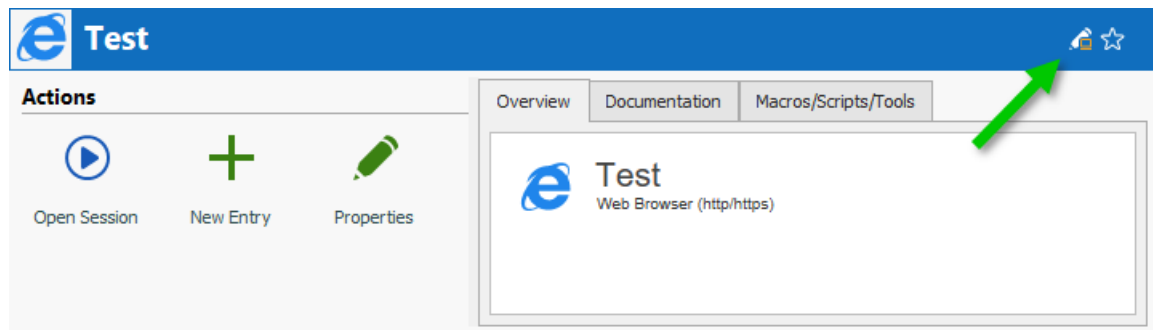
These can also be accessed by using the right-click on an entry and going to **Edit – User/Local Specific Settings**.



Context menu – Edit – User and Local Specific Settings

SPECIFIC SETTINGS INDICATOR

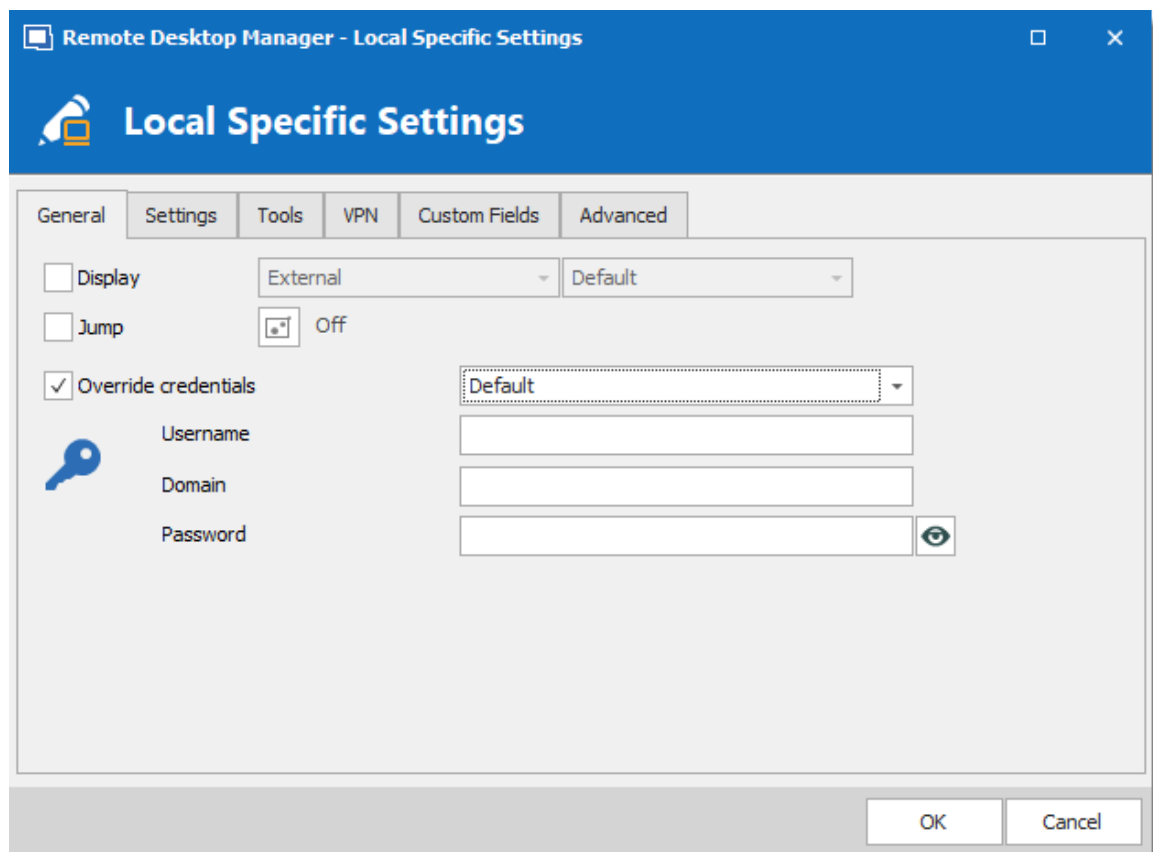
An indicator icon is displayed in the dashboard when an entry with **Specific Settings** is selected. Click on the icon to open the **Specific Settings** dialog.



Specific Settings indicator

WORKFLOW

In the majority of cases, editing the **Specific Settings** displays the following dialog:



User Specific Settings



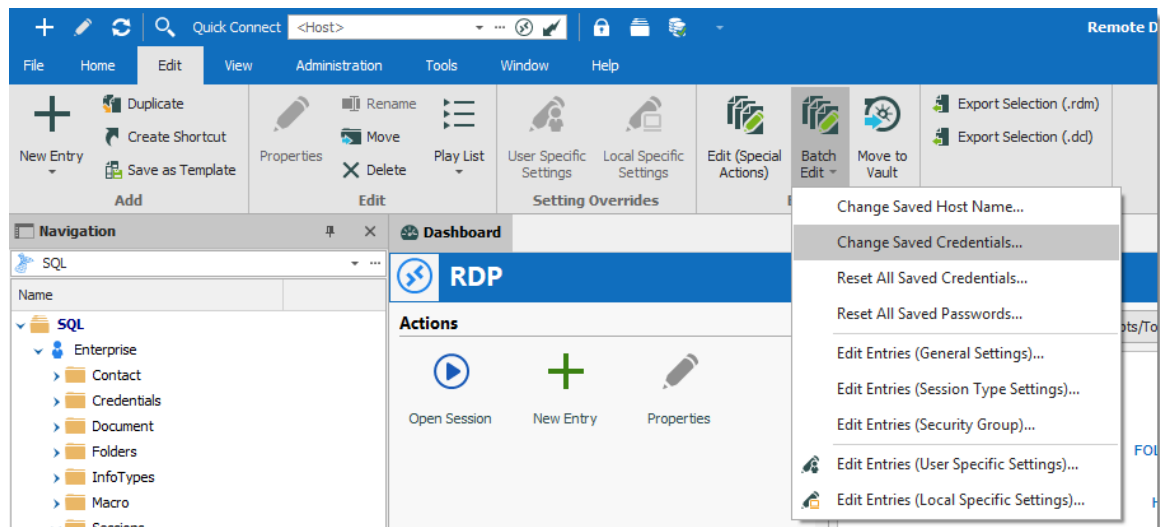
Specific settings are context sensitive, and several settings might not be available for some entry types.

6.5.4 Batch

6.5.4.1 Batch Edit

DESCRIPTION

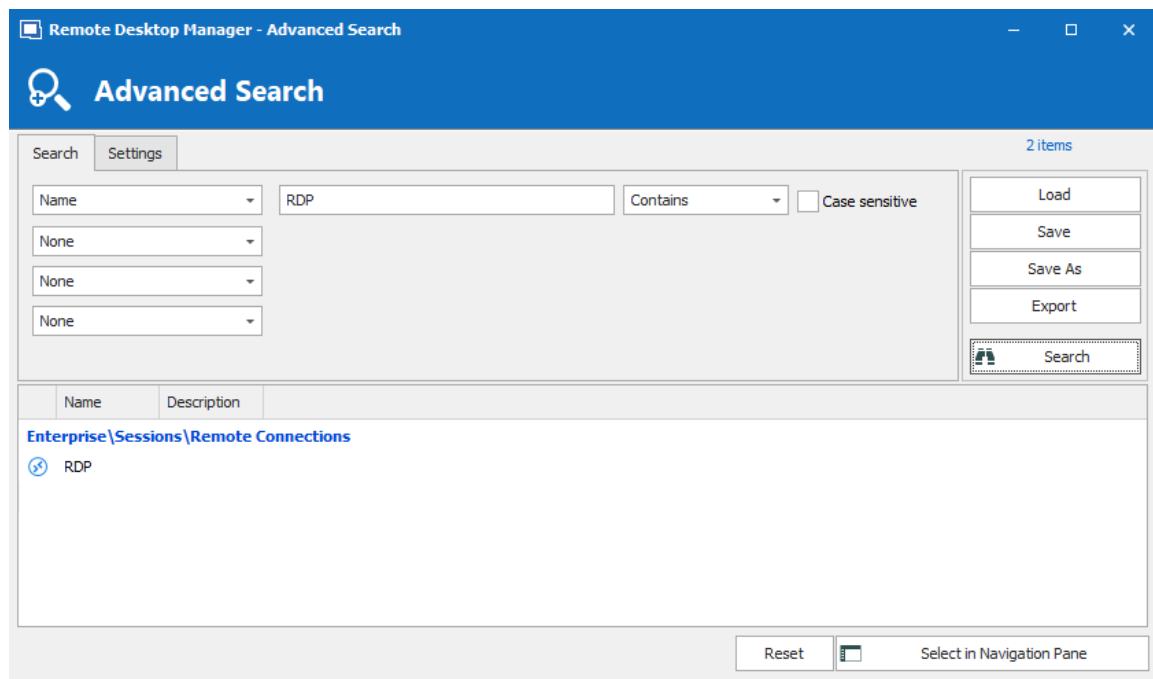
The **Batch Edit** feature changes the settings of multiple entries in one operation. For example, it can be used to remove or update the credentials of a group of sessions.



Edit - Batch Edit

ADVANCED SELECTION

Select multiple entries by using the usual **Ctrl/Shift + Left-click**, etc. For a method with a little more power, use the [Advanced Search](#) feature, which allows to select multiple entries at once, based on the defined criteria. The advanced search is available in **View – Advanced Search**. If required, you can achieve similar result with the **Multi Vault Advanced Search**.

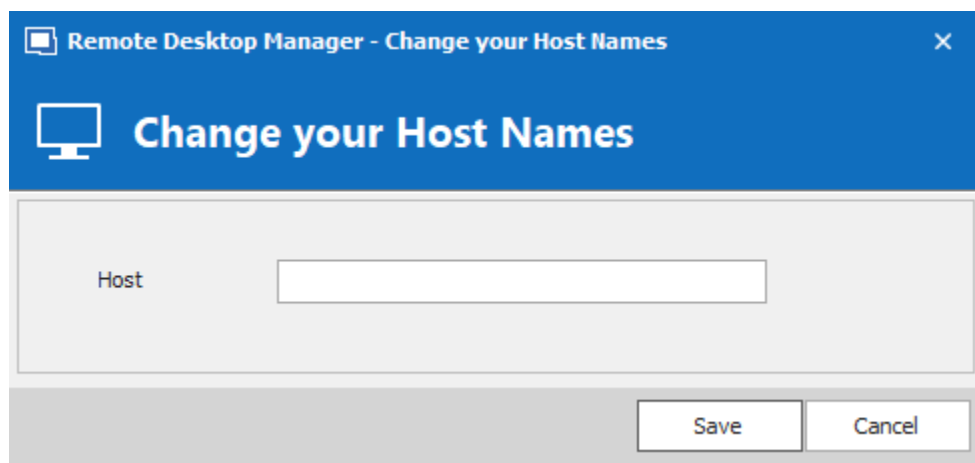
*Advanced Search*

Press on **Select in Navigation Pane** to select the same entries as in the **Advanced Search** dialog. Then use **Edit – Batch Edit** to edit all the selected entries.

SETTINGS

CHANGE SPECIFIC SETTING

You can choose to change a specific setting, for instance, the Host name.



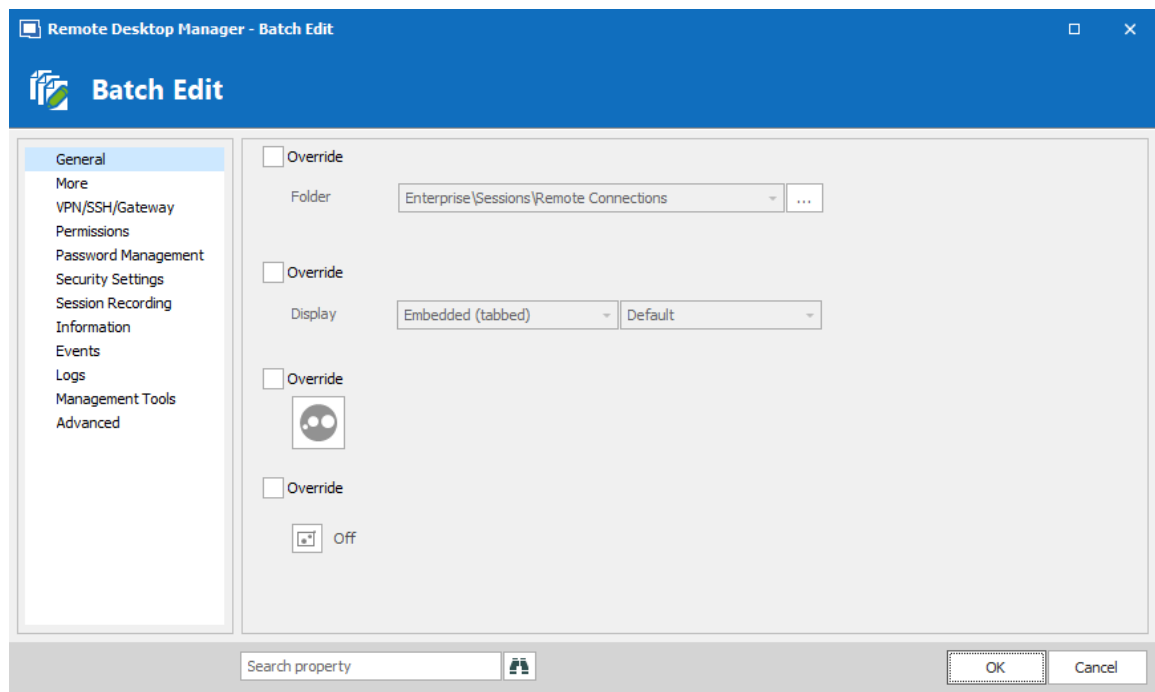
Change Host Name

RESET ALL SAVED CREDENTIALS OR PASSWORD

Clear all the existing credentials of all the selected sessions or specifically the password if desired.

EDIT SESSIONS (GENERAL SETTINGS)

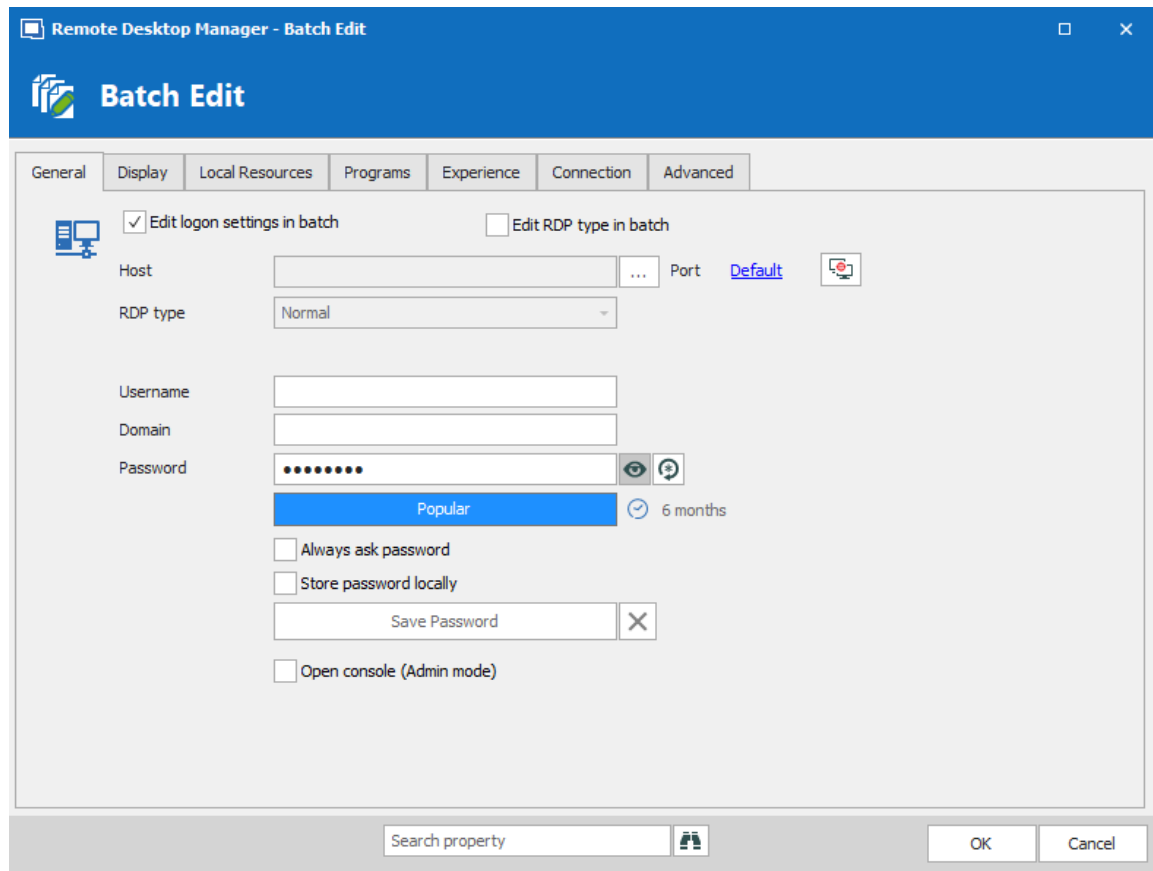
Edit Sessions (General Settings) allows you to change the common settings of all the selected entries.



Batch Edit – Common settings

EDIT SESSIONS (SESSION TYPE SETTINGS)

Change settings that are available only for specific session types, such as Microsoft RDP.



Sessin Type Settings

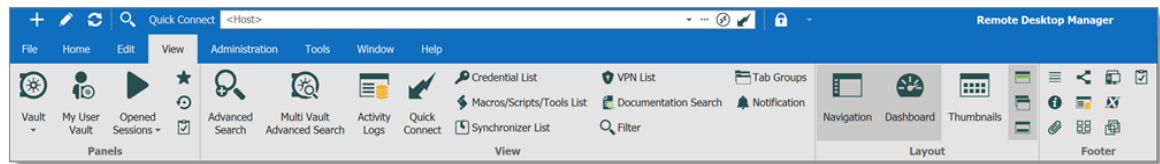
EDIT SESSIONS (USER/LOCAL SPECIFIC SETTINGS)

[Specific Settings](#) can be modified in a batch if supported by the type of the edited entries.

6.6 View

DESCRIPTION

The **View** ribbon is used to control different feature regarding the views, layout and logs of Remote Desktop Manager.

*Ribbon - View*

Refer to the following topics for more information:

PANELS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|---|
| Vault | Access the view mode for your Navigation Pane for the current Vault. |
| My User Vault | Display your User Vault in the Navigation Pane. |
| Opened Sessions | Display the currently Opened Sessions in your Navigation Pane. |
| Favorites | Display your Favorite entries and folder in your Navigation Pane. |
| Recent | Display your Recently Opened Sessions in your Navigation Pane. |
| Task List | Display your current Task List . |

VIEW

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|--|
| Advanced Search | Use the Advanced Search feature. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Multi Vault Advanced Search | This functions essentially the same way as Advanced Search , but it searches all the Vaults of the database. |
| Activity Logs | Open the Activity Logs . |
| Quick Connect | Launch a Quick Connect session. |
| Entry Lists | Prompts a window that displays all the Credential, Macros/Scripts/Tools, VPN or Synchronizer entries in the database (restricted by user rights). |
| Documentation Search | Allows you to filter entries through their Documentation , such as Description or Procedure. |
| Filter | This prompts a window to filter the Navigation Pane. |
| Tab Groups | Open a docked window to browse through the various Tab Groups. |
| Notification | Open an undocked window to browse threw the various notifications (such as entries expired or about to be, or tasks). |

LAYOUT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Navigation | Toggle the Navigation Pane. |
| Dashboard | Toggle the Dashboard. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|--|
| Thumbnails | Toggle the Thumbnails. |
| Top Pane (Ribbon/Menubar) | Toggle the Ribbon. (Right-click the Application header to bring it back or use Alt+F11). |
| Grouped Tab Bar | Toggle the grouped tab bar. (Must have group tabs to work). |
| Status Bar | Toggle the Status bar. |

FOOTER

The **Footer** section allows you to show or hide the various panes that are provided with Remote Desktop Manager.



Although they are by default displayed in the footer, all those panes can be dragged and docked anywhere within Remote Desktop Manager.

6.6.1 Task List

DESCRIPTION

Create a list of tasks to keep track of work that needs to be done by the team. You can perform a search to filter out the list of displayed tasks. You can search by Due Date, username or by Status.

Task lists can be exported in different types of files for printing or reviewing. Right-click the task list to export in html, xls, xml or csv. You can also export filtered task lists.

| Name | Status | Due Date |
|--------------------|--------|----------|
| Create new Entries | Open | |

Task list

This feature is only available for the following data sources: [Devolutions Server](#), [Azure SQL](#), [SQL Server](#) and [SQLite](#).

CREATING A TASK

1. Click on **Add new task**.

| Name | Status | Due Date |
|--------------------|--------|----------|
| Create new Entries | Open | |

Add a task

2. Enter your task information, like the name of the task, the priority, the due date, the description, etc.

Remote Desktop Manager - Task Management

Task Management

General

Name:

Entry: RDPTTest

Priority: 1 ☐ Due Date: 2/24/2019

Description:

User: Status: Open

Comment:

OK Cancel

Task Management

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|--|
| Name | Enter a custom name for the task |
| Entry | Displays the entry currently selected in the Navigation Pane. The task is assigned to this entry. Read-only field. |
| Priority | Set the priority of the task. |
| Due date | Set a deadline for the task. |
| Description | Enter a description of the task for the assigned user. |
| User | Assign a user to the task. |
| Assign to me | Click this button to assign the task to yourself. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|---|
| Clear assigned user ✕ | Clear the assigned user. |
| Status | Set a status for the task. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Open• Assigned• In progress• Closed• Done• Canceled• Postponed |
| Comment | Enter a comment for the task. |

6.6.2 Activity Logs

DESCRIPTION

The shared session log offers a more robust solution. Through it, it's possible to monitor an opened session for all users that are using an Advanced Data Sources. The log is available for specific sessions in the context menu, in the session properties (Log tab page) and in the dashboard.

SETTINGS

The log contains all the CRUD (add, edit and delete) operations, passwords being viewed, credentials being used by other sessions, etc...

Dashboard
Activity Logs

Date
Last 7 Days
To
Ticket #

Username
Folder
☒ All vaults

Message
On open comment
Local time

Machine name
On close comment
Search

| Folder | Message | On Open Comment | On Close Comment | Log Date | End Date/Time | Active Time |
|--------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|----------|---------------|-------------|
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Viewed entry | | | | | |
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Entry deleted | | | | | |
| | Viewed entry | | | | | |
| | Viewed entry | | | | | |
| | Viewed entry | | | | | |
| | Entry updated | | | | | |

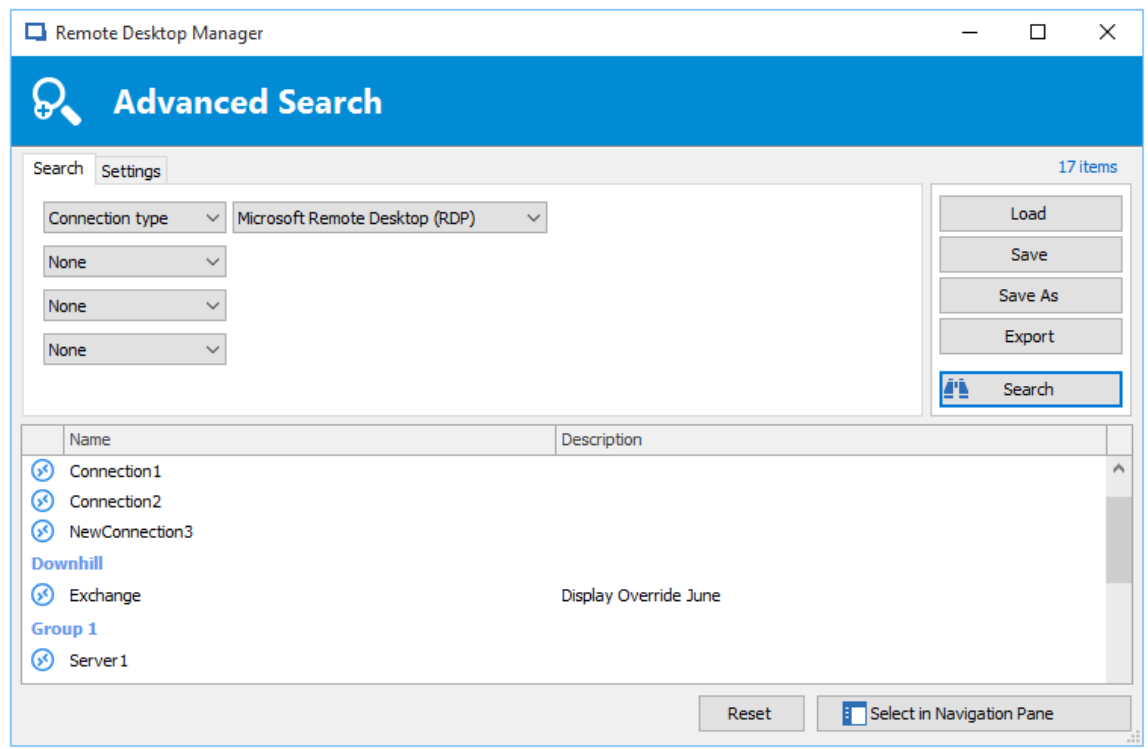
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Folder | The Folder where your entry is situated. |
| Connection | The connection being used to open your entry. |
| Message | Indicate the action that was done on your entry or session. |
| On Open Comment | The Open Comment is defined in the Log tab of your session, to learn more please see Logs Options |
| On Close Comment | The Close Comment is defined in the Log tab of your session, to learn more please see Logs Options |
| Log Date | Indicate the date and time your session was opened or your entry was edited. |
| End Date/Time | Indicate the date and time when the session or entry was closed. |
| Active Time | Only available for sessions in embedded mode. It will record your session active time, meaning the time your session was opened in embedded mode and you were active in your session. If your |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| | session is opened but your view is on your Dashboard tab and not on your session tab, no Active Time will be recorded. |
| Duration | Only available for sessions in embedded mode. When sessions are opened in embedded mode the Duration time will be recorded, meaning that even if your view is on your Dashboard and you are not actively working in your session but your session tab is opened, Duration will record how long it was opened for. |
| User | Indicate the Windows username and domain. |
| Database username | Indicate the database username. |
| Connection user | Indicate the Connection user. |
| Machine | Indicate the machine name. |
| Connection Type | Indicate the connection type that was used. |

6.6.3 Advanced Search

DESCRIPTION

The **Advanced Search** allows to search for entries based on multiple criterias.



Advanced Search Window

SETTINGS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| Name | <p>You can select between different criteria to tweak your search:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name • Connection type • Contact Reference • Creation date • Custom field • Description |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Domain</i>• <i>Group</i>• <i>Host</i>• <i>Is favourite</i>• <i>Keywords/tags</i>• <i>Last update date</i>• <i>Name</i>• <i>OS</i>• <i>Password strength</i>• <i>Security group</i>• <i>Status</i>• <i>Username</i> |
| Load | Load searches that has been previously saved. |
| Save | Allows you to save your search locally and reuse it. |
| Save as | Use to save a previously saved search but under another name. |
| Export | Export the entries of your search result as a Csv, Html, Xls or Xml file. Sensitive information will be encrypted using AES. |
| Search | Once you have selected your search criteria click on Search to display the search result. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Reset | Reset all your fields to proceed with a new Search. |
| Select in Navigation Pane | Select your search result in your Navigation Pane. This option can be used in combination with a Batch Edit. |

There will be a drop-down list next to certain fields (ex: Name) to give you search options for:

- **Contains** - any name that includes the characters you have entered, anywhere in the field name.
- **Starts With** - any name beginning with the characters you have entered.
- **Ends With** - any name ending with the characters you have entered.
- **Exact Expression** - will find names that match every character you have entered, exactly as entered.

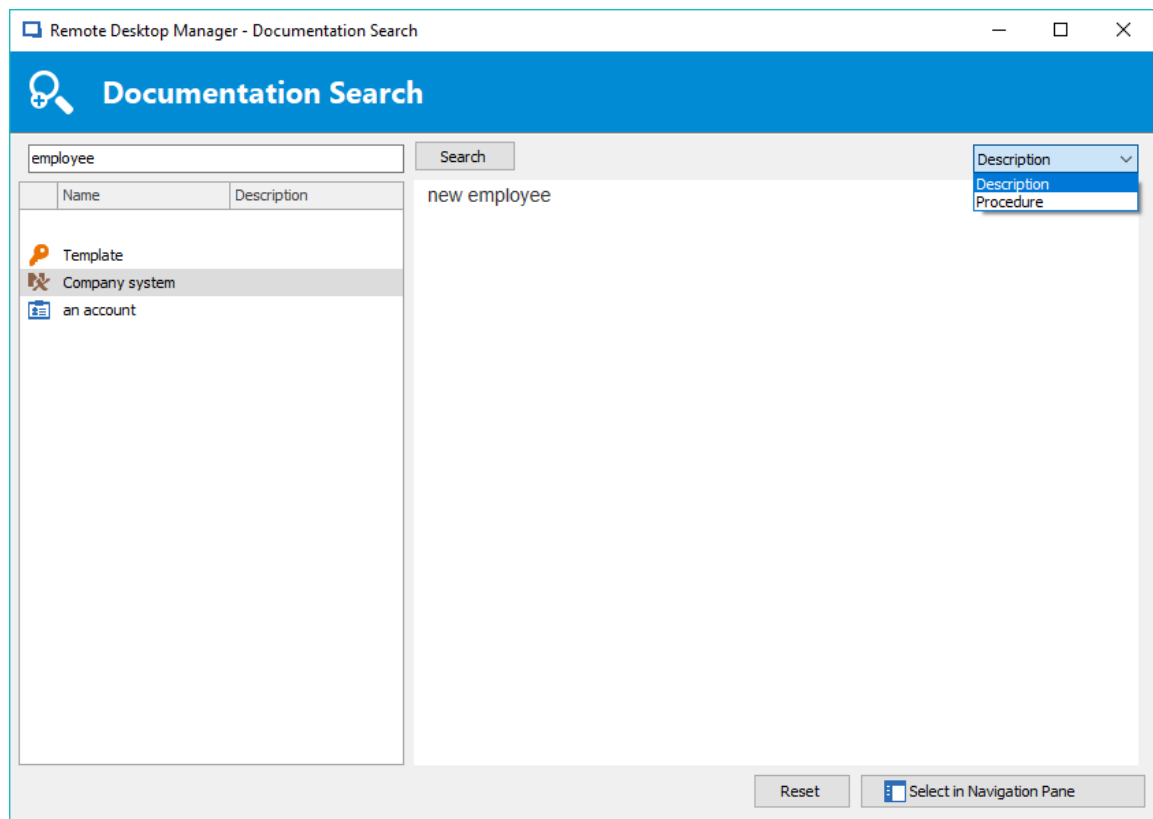
6.6.4 Documentation Search

DESCRIPTION

We can search documentation pages linked to entries. Documentation search provides a preview of the documentation pages, page title and related entry details. The tool searches the current repository.

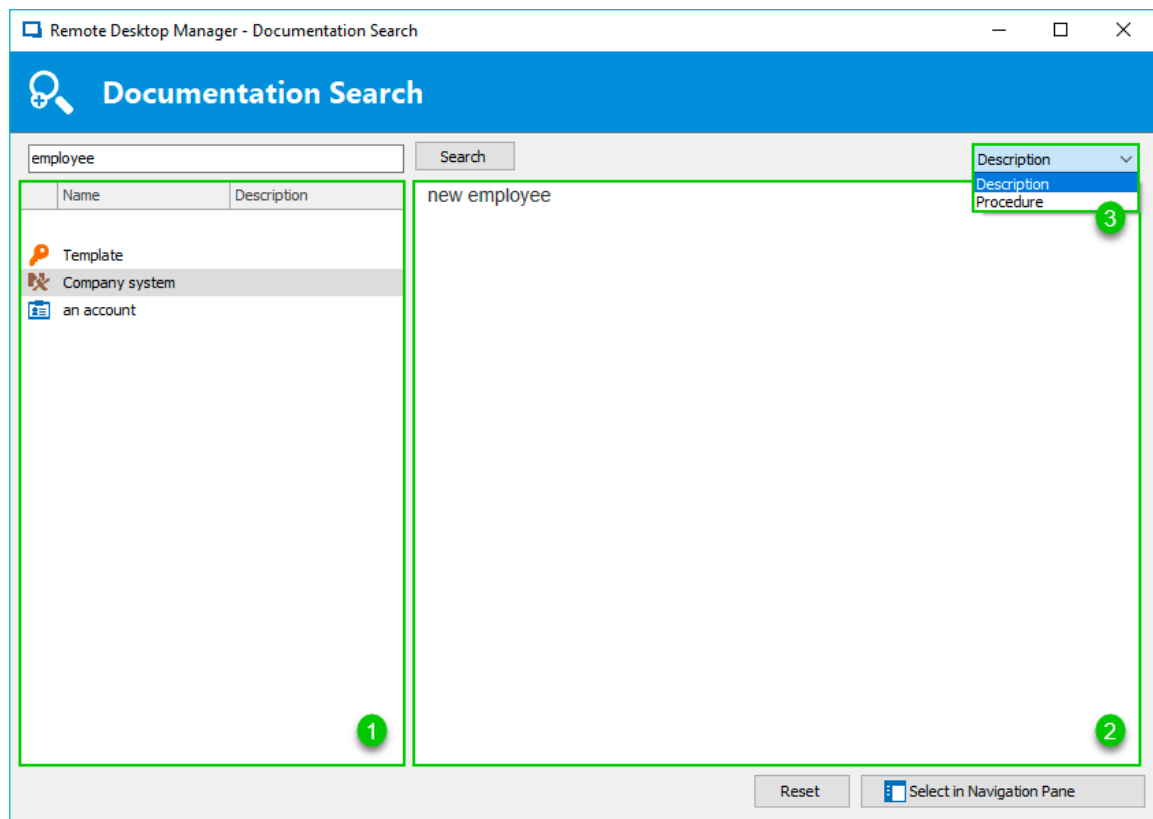


Documentation Search is available with Devolutions Server and SQL Server data sources.



Documentation search dialog window

USER INTERFACE



Documentation search

USER INTERFACE

| ELEMENTS | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|--|
| Navigation Pane (1) | Lists search results by entry |
| Content area (2) | Page preview |
| Drop down menu (3) | Page title; When one entry contains multiple documentation pages with the search term, a list of the page titles is available. |

SELECT AN ENTRY

Click **Select in Navigation Pane** to choose the entry in your main tree view.

CLEAR A SEARCH

Click **Reset** to clear the search results.

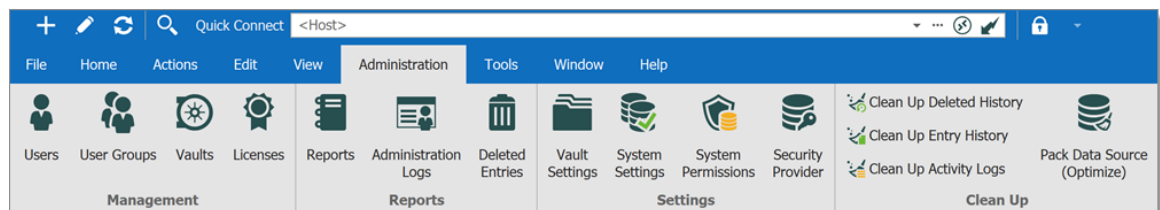
6.7 Administration

DESCRIPTION

The **Administration** tab allows to manage settings and users of a data source, view reports such as the activity logs, and much more. This tab is only available to administrators of the data source.



Most features contained in the Administration tab are only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).



Ribbon - Administration

MANAGEMENT



These feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Users | Opens the User Management . |
| Security Groups (Legacy) | Security Groups are now a Legacy option, and although we have left documentation in the online help to help users identify it, we strongly recommend switching to User Groups instead. |
| Vaults | Opens the Vault Management tab of User Management. |
| User Groups | Opens the User Groups Management tab of User Management. |

REPORTS



The logs feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| Reports | Open the Reports section to select which type of report best suit your current needs. |
| Administration Logs | Opens the Administration Logs. |
| Deleted Entries | Open a log of all Deleted Entries (since last clean up). |

SETTINGS



These feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Vault Settings | Opens the Vault Settings. The Vault Folder is the one at the top of the navigation pane (in Tree View). It is the one from which all entries and folder stem. By default, lower level folders inherit settings and security from parent folder until reaching the Vault. Therefore, using permissions on the Vault folder allows to secure all entries below the Vault level. Refer to Default security for entries for more information. |
| System Settings (Data Source Settings) | Opens the System Settings. There are many features here, all meant to help you customize your data source and security needs. Remember that these settings applies to all users that have access to the data source. |
| System Permissions | Modify System Permissions . |
| Security Provider | Set up a Security Provider for an additional layer of security. |

CLEAN UP



This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Clean Up Deleted History | Perform a partial or full clean up of the Deleted History . |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Clean Up Entry History | Perform a partial or full clean up of the Entry History . |
| Clean Up Activity Logs | Perform a partial or full clean up of the Activity Logs . You also have the option to clean up the Administration Logs if desired. |
| Pack Data Source (Optimize) | The Pack Data Source (Optimize) feature analyzes all entries, compress and save them, thus saving space in your data source. |

6.7.1 Management

6.7.1.1 User Management

DESCRIPTION

The **Users Management** allows to create and manage users and their privileges. You can set the default privileges on the user type in **Data Source Settings (System Settings)**. Remote Desktop Manager offers advanced user rights management that allows for restricting access to entries. Please note that availability of some features depends on the active data source.



This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



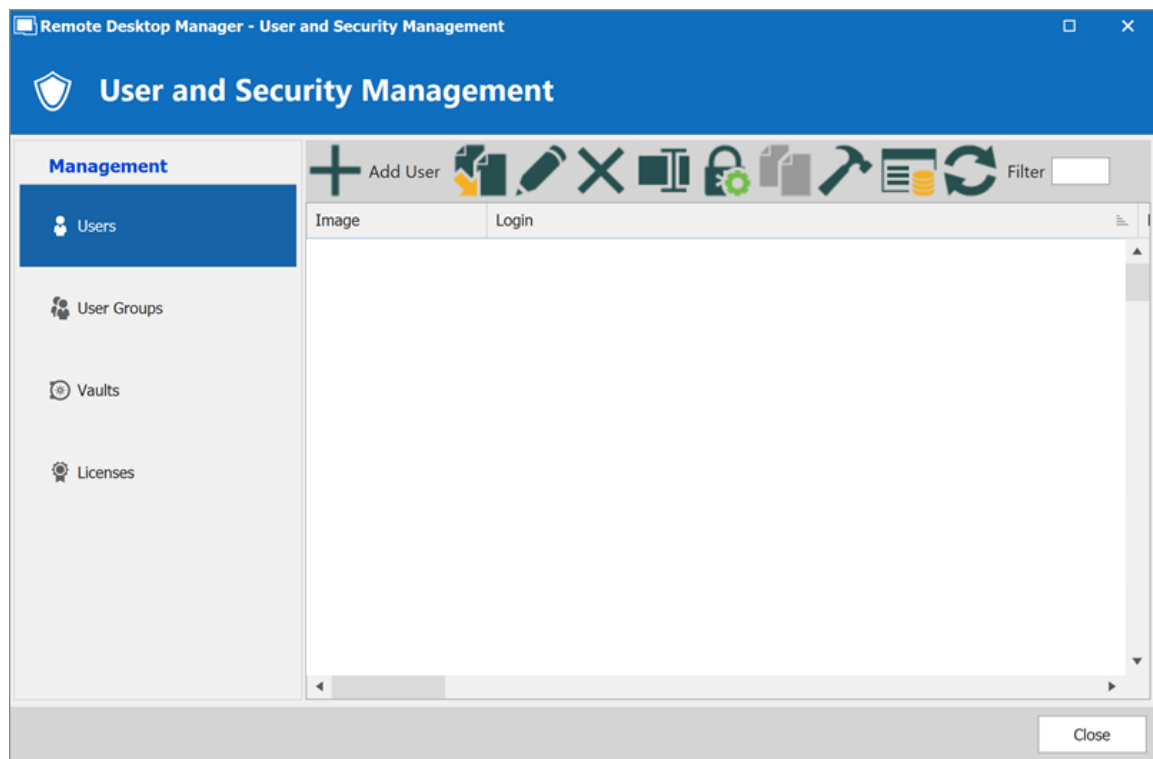
A user can be created using default security (specify the password) or [Integrated Security](#). Not all [Advanced Data Sources](#) support the use of [Integrated Security](#).



In order to create users and assign rights, you must be administrator of not only Remote Desktop Manager, but also of the underlying database.

MANAGE USERS

To create, edit, delete, rename or otherwise manage users as a whole, simply use the buttons in the toolbar.



User and Security Management - Toolbar

USER MANAGEMENT SETTINGS

GENERAL

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Management' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The left sidebar contains links for 'General', 'User Groups', 'Vaults', 'Application Access', 'Settings', and 'Information'. The 'General' tab has two sections: 'General' and 'Information'. The 'General' section includes fields for ID, Authentication type (set to 'Database'), Username, Password, User type (set to 'User'), User license type (set to 'Default'), and a checkbox for 'User must change password at next login'. There are also checkboxes for 'Integrated security' and 'Create database login/user'. The 'Information' section includes fields for First name, Last name, and Email. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

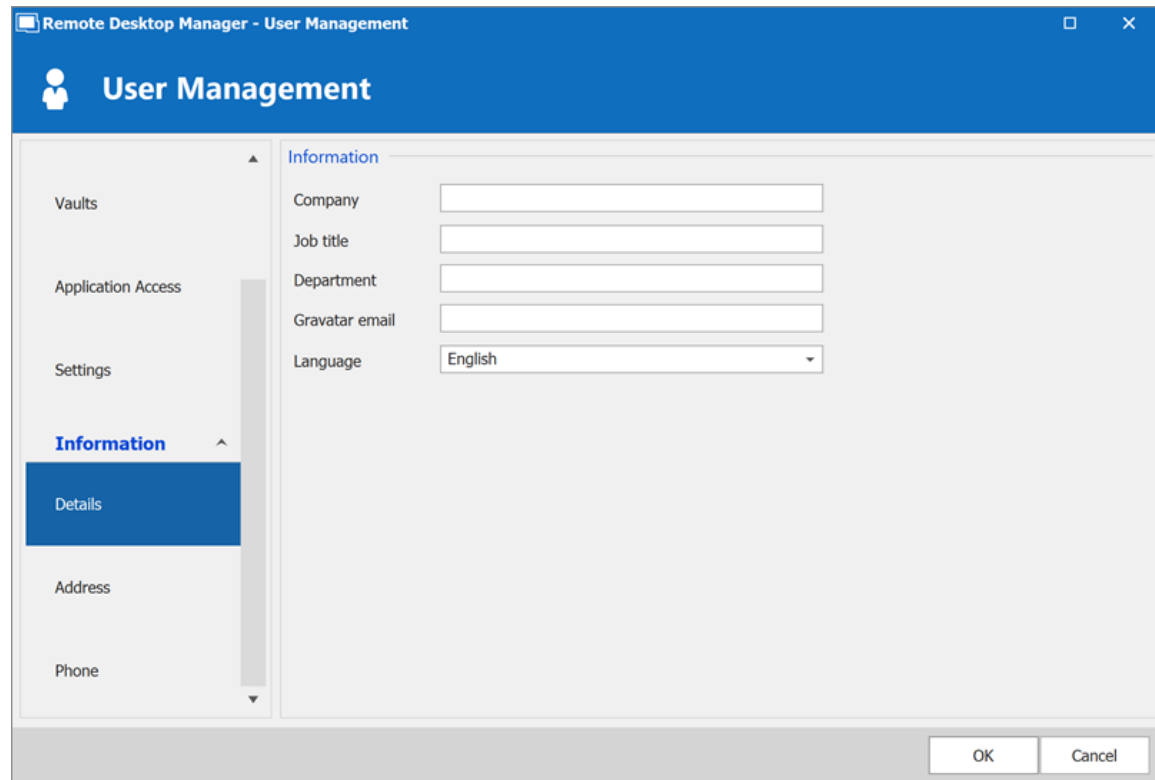
User Management - General

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Authentication type | <p>Select the user's authentication type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom (Devolutions): create a user specific to Remote Desktop Manager without creating an SQL login. • Database (SQL Server): authenticate using the SQL login from your SQL Server. |
| Username | <p>Enter the username for the user. When using Integrated Security the user must be selected from the directory.</p> |
| Integrated security (Active Directory) | <p>Specify to use Active Directory to authenticate to the data source. Applies only to SQL Server and Devolutions Server, depending on their configuration.</p> |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| | For more information, please consult the Integrated Security topic. |
| Password | Enter the user's Password. This field is disabled when using Integrated Security . |
| User type | <p>Select the type of user to create, select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Administrator: Grant full administrative rights to the user.• Read only user: Grant only the view access to the user.• Restricted user: Select which rights to grant to the user.• User: Grant all basic rights to the user (Add, Edit, Delete). <p>For more information, please consult the User Types topic.</p> |
| User license type | <p>Select the license type of the user. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default• Connection Management• Password Management |
| Full name | Enter the First name and Last name of the user. |
| Email | Insert the user's email address. |

INFORMATION

The **Information** section allows to store information regarding the users, such as their name, address, and more. The Information section is divided in three sub-sections: **Details, Address, Phone**.

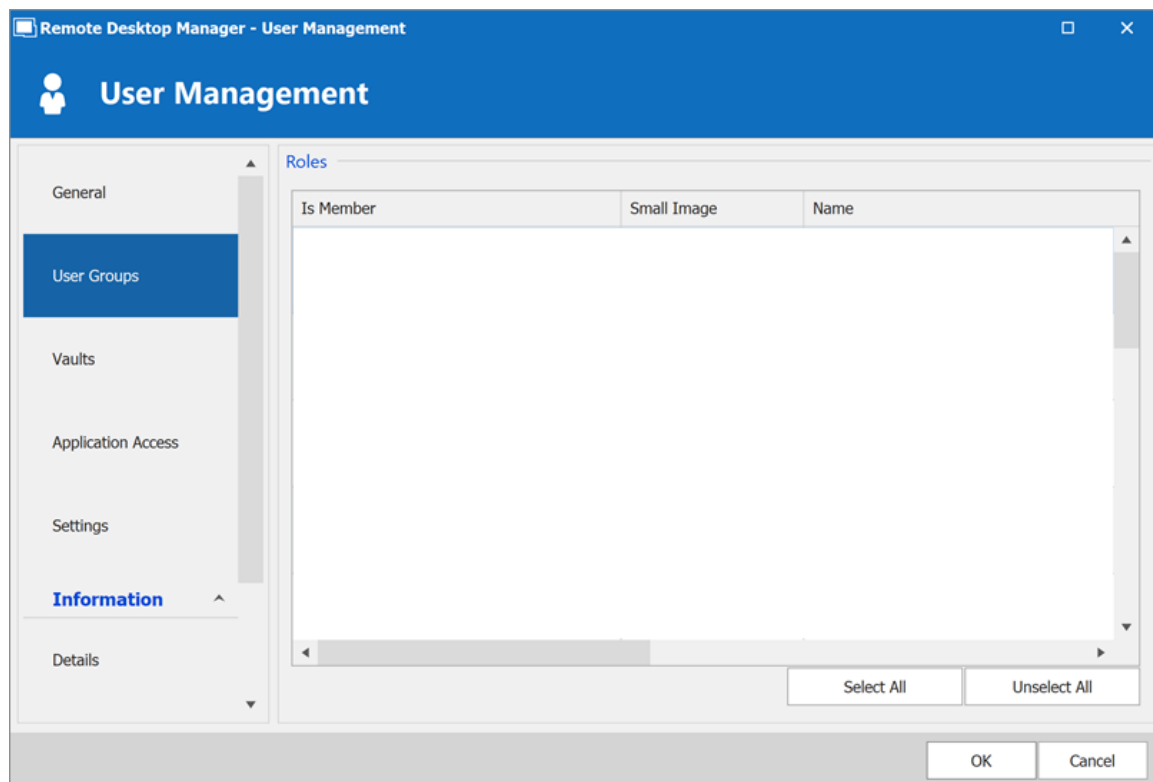


The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Management' window. The title bar is blue with a white icon and the text 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Management'. Below the title bar is a blue header with a white user icon and the text 'User Management'. The main area is divided into a left sidebar and a right pane. The sidebar has a scrollable list of options: 'Vaults', 'Application Access', 'Settings', 'Information' (highlighted in blue), 'Details' (highlighted in blue), 'Address', and 'Phone'. The right pane is titled 'Information' and contains five input fields: 'Company', 'Job title', 'Department', 'Gravatar email', and 'Language' (a dropdown menu showing 'English'). At the bottom right of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

User Management - Information - Details

USER GROUPS

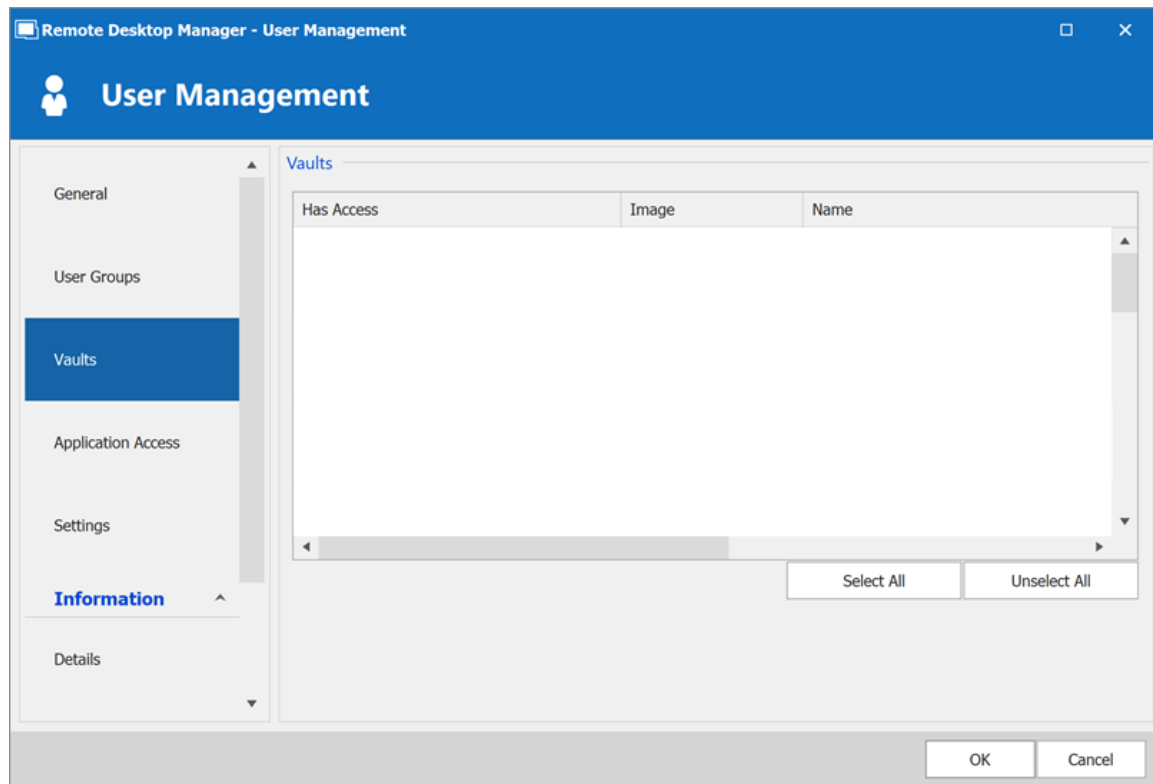
Select user groups to assign to the user.

*User Management - User Groups*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|--|
| User Groups | Check the Is Member box to assign the user groups to the user. Consult User Groups Management topic for more information. |

VAULTS

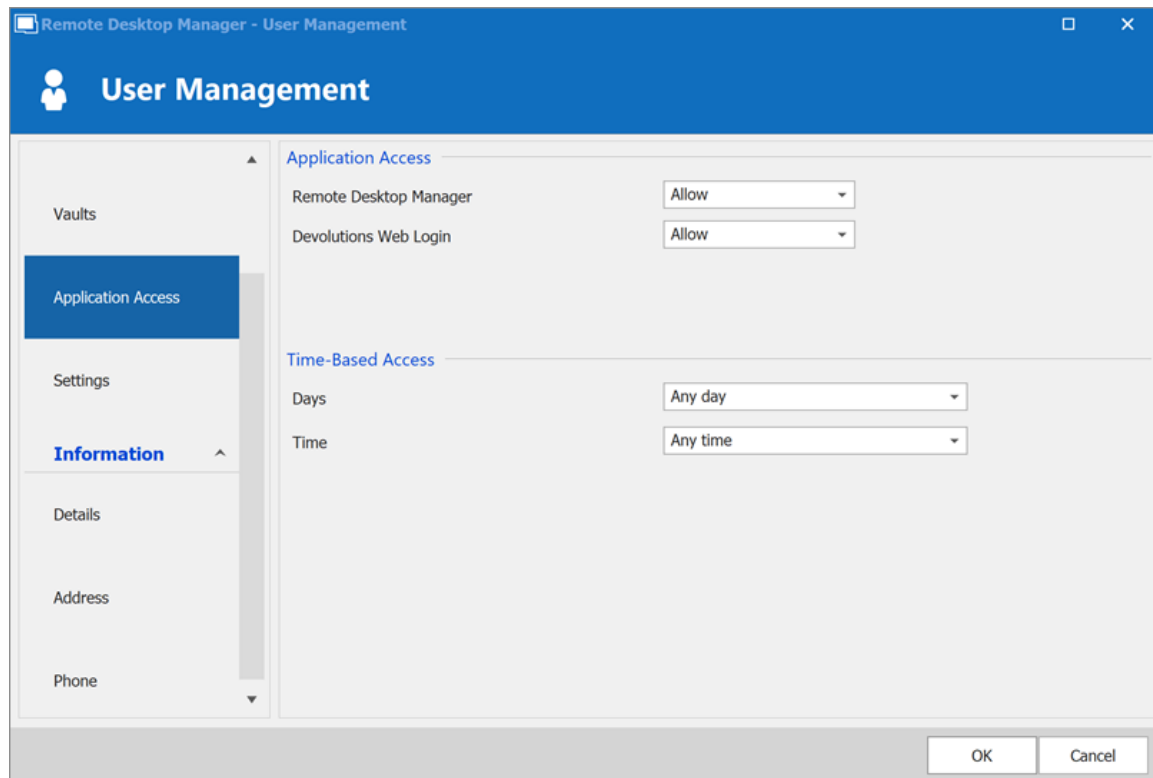
Select which repositories the user has access to. For more information, please consult the Vaults topic.



User Management - Vaults

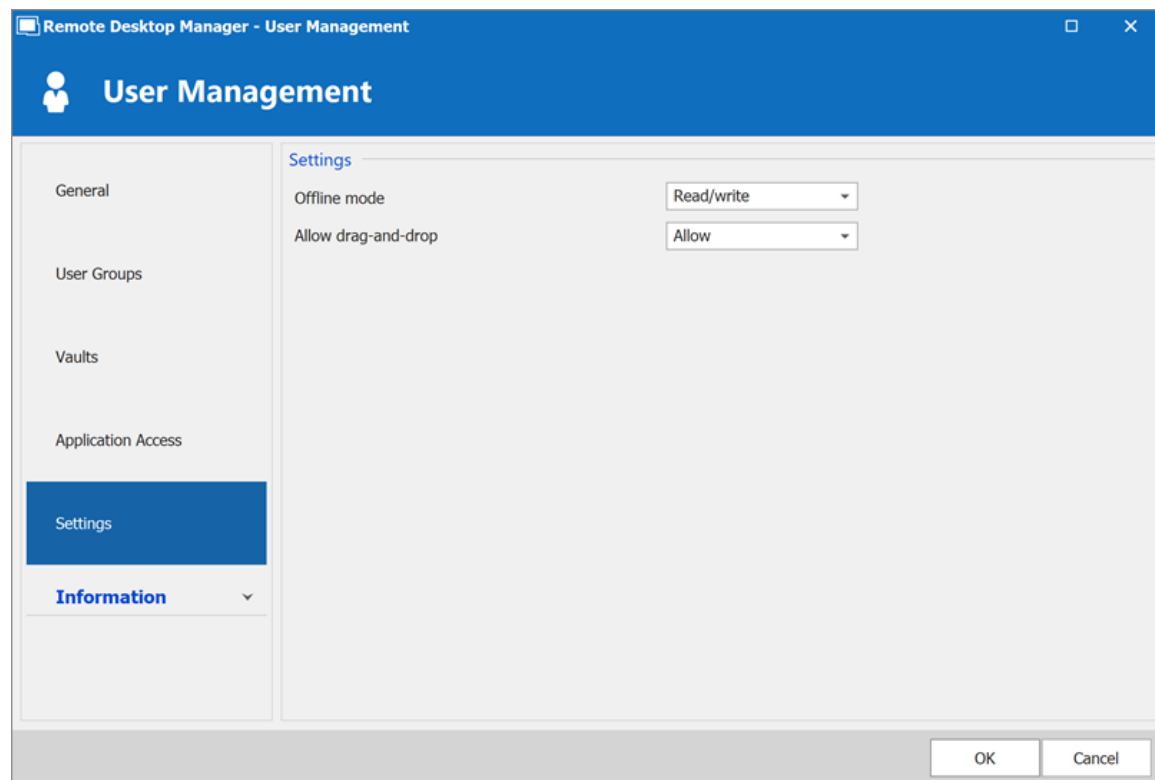
APPLICATION ACCESS

The application access section allows to restrain access to Remote Desktop Manager or Devolutions Web Login.

*User Management - Application Access*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Remote Desktop Manager | Select if the user can access to the data source from Remote Desktop Manager. |
| Devolutions Web Login | Select if the user can access to the data source form Devolutions Web Login. |

SETTINGS

*User Management - Settings*

Allow the user to enable the [Offline Mode](#) on the data sources. This also depends on the data source being configured to allow it. There are 4 modes available:

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| Disabled | No offline cache allowed for the user. |
| Cache only | Allow to save a cache of the data source but not the offline mode. |
| Read-only | A read-only cache. The user will not be able to edit data in the data source. This mode is allowed for Advanced Data Sources only. |
| Read/Write | An advanced cache, with change synchronization. This mode is allowed for Advanced Data Sources only. |

6.7.1.1.1 User Types

DESCRIPTION

When creating users in Remote Desktop Manager, four types of user are available. Basic rights are granted to the created users depending on their type.

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Management' window. The 'General' tab is selected in the left sidebar. The main area contains the following fields and options:

- ID:** 9914D1D1-7E4E-47EF-93AA-3F47DB6D9654
- Authentication type:** Database
- Username:** (empty field)
- Password:** (empty field)
- User type:** A dropdown menu is open, showing options: User, Administrator, User (highlighted), Restricted user, and Read-only user.
- User license type:** (empty field)
- Integrated security:** (unchecked checkbox)
- Create database login/user:** (checked checkbox)
- Information tab:** Shows fields for First name, Last name, and Email.

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

User Management - User Type

| TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|---|
| Administrator | Grant all rights and permissions to the user. |
| User | Grant all the basic rights to the user (Add, Edit, Delete).

For more information, please consult the Rights section below in this topic. |
| Restricted user | Personalize the rights to grant to the user. |

| TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|---|
| Read only user | Grant only the view access to the user. |

RIGHTS

When setting a user to the **Restricted User** type, rights must be granted manually. These rights have an immediate influence on which actions the user can perform on unsecured entries. Therefore, rights must be granted for users to be able to perform actions on entries, as permissions cannot override the absence of right.

Once rights are granted, they can be restricted with the [User Groups Based Security](#) or Security Groups.

The **Add** right also displays the **Add in Vault** option. This must be enable for users to be able to add entries into the Vault folder of the data source.

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Management' window. The 'General' tab is active. The 'User type' dropdown is set to 'Restricted user'. The 'Rights' section shows checkboxes for 'Add', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Move'. The 'Information' section has fields for 'First name', 'Last name', and 'Email'.

User Management - Rights

6.7.1.1.2 Integrated Security

DESCRIPTION

Integrated Security is a Microsoft technology, which uses the credentials of the current Windows session and send them automatically to the remote resources for authentication.



This feature is available with the [SQL Server](#) or [Devolutions Server](#) data sources.

SETTINGS

To use the Integrated Security, enable the **Integrated Security** box in the **User Management** window. The **Password** field is disabled because the operating system will provide a cached copy automatically.

Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

ID: 89F53CFE-08AD-4FDC-972C-53DFF3934827

Authentication type: Database

Username: ... ☒ Integrated security (Active Directory)

Password: ☒ Create SQL Server Login and User

User type: User

User license type: Default

Information

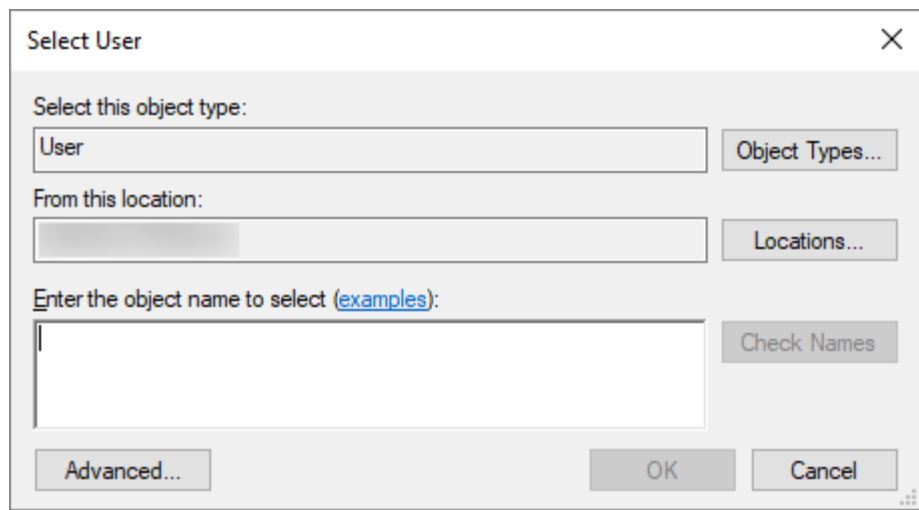
First name: Last name:

Email:

OK Cancel

Integrated Security

When the option is activated, an ellipsis button either appears or is enabled. Click this button to display the **Select User** dialog.

*Select User*

Ensure the appropriate domain is displayed in the **From this location** field. Sometime the location defaults to the local computer. Click the **Locations** button to browse for the domain instead.

When using Integrated Security, the currently running windows session must be from a user of the domain. If you need to use other credentials, Remote Desktop Manager must be started using the RUNAS command as described in Running Remote Desktop Manager as Another User.

6.7.1.2 User Groups Management

DESCRIPTION

User Groups in Remote Desktop Manager manages multiple users at the same time by grouping them. The management of permissions granted to user groups are quite similar to the corresponding notions for users, but instead of a single user, they apply to all users to which you've assigned the user groups.



This feature is only available with an Advanced Data Source.

USER GROUPS IN DEVOLUTIONS SERVER

User Groups in Devolutions Server are in fact links to Active Directory groups. By leveraging Active Directory integration you can easily define access rights for all domain users in your organization. Once a domain user log in the Devolutions Server data source, their user account will be created if needed and users rights will be controlled by the defined groups.



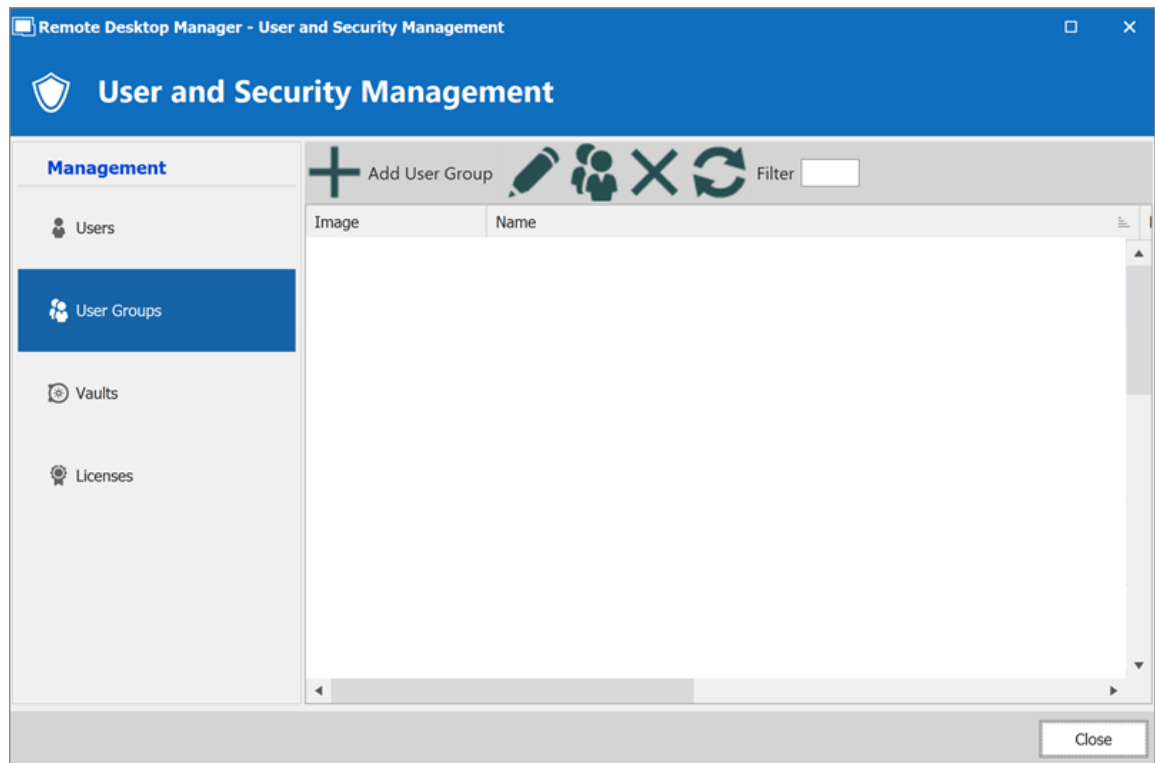
Please note that the Unsecured group permissions (the ones above the grid) are ignored. You must set them on each user individually.

For more information please see [Devolutions Server User Groups Management](#).

CREATE USER GROUPS

User Groups in Remote Desktop Manager are mainly used to group users. You can assign multiple user groups to each user. The end result is the union of all permissions given to the user groups.

To create a user groups, in the **User and Security Management** window, click the **Add User Group** button in the **User Groups** section. From the same menu, you can also edit, assign users, delete or refresh.



User Groups - Add User Group

6.7.1.3 Vaults Overview

DESCRIPTION

Vaults are containers that divide the data source into multiple compartments.

We recommend using vaults for improved organization and security. Vaults also help performance as they limit the amount of entries that load at once.

Vaults are available with Advanced Data Sources: Devolutions Server, Azure SQL and SQL server.



This feature underwent a change of name, as **Vaults** were called **Repositories** before **Remote Desktop Manager 2019**.

This article covers:

- [Create vault](#)

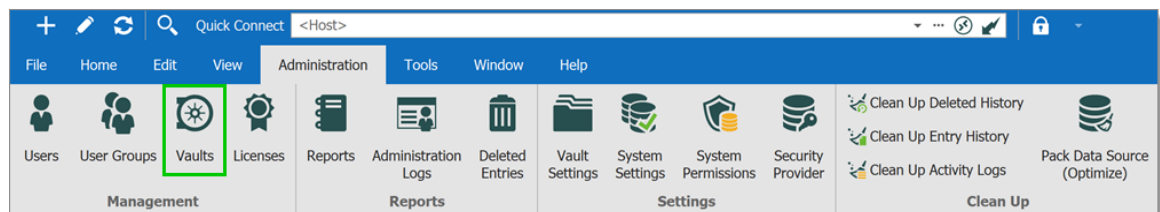
- [Move entries to different vaults](#)
- [Navigate between vaults](#)
- [Role-based security with vaults](#)
- [Vaults shortcuts](#)

SETUP AND USE VAULTS IN REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER

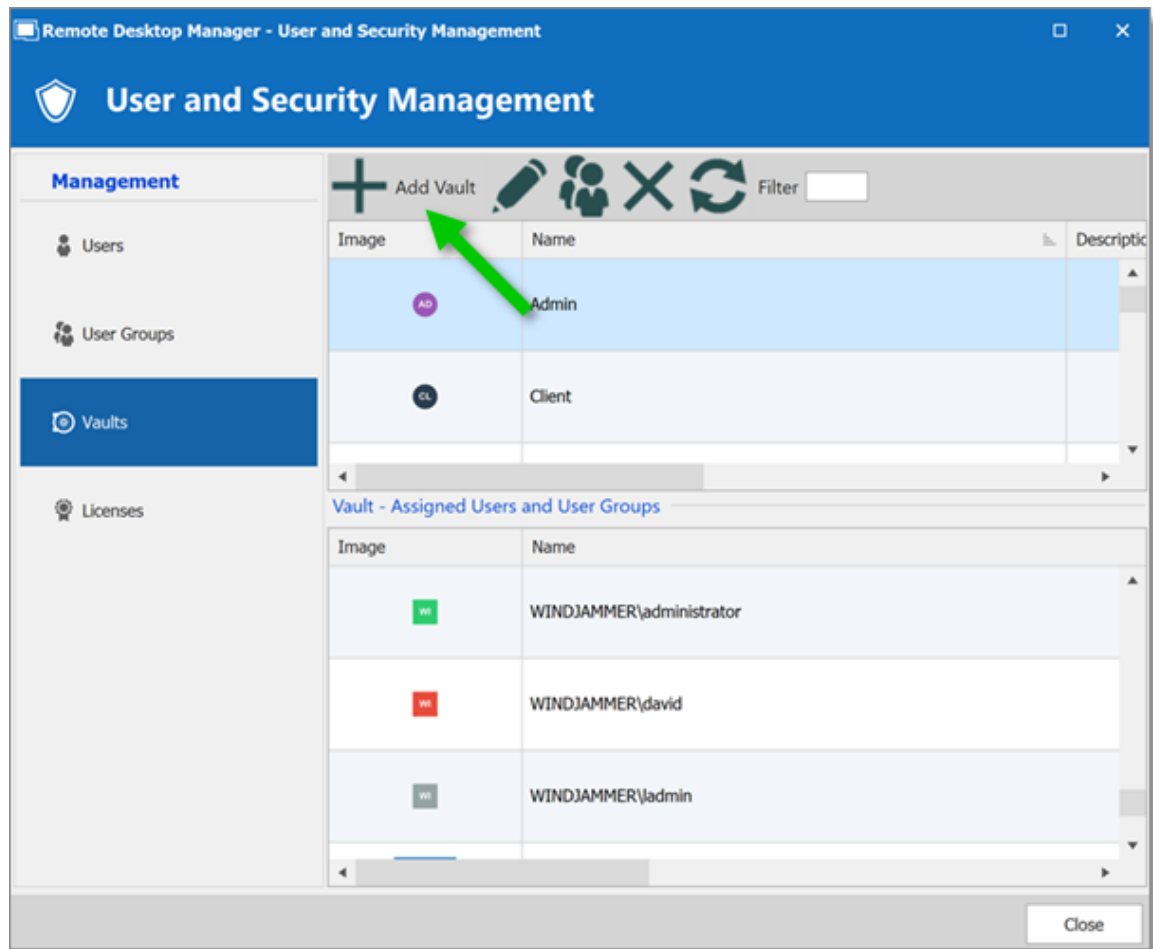
CREATE A VAULT

We recommend creating a different vault for each customer or department.

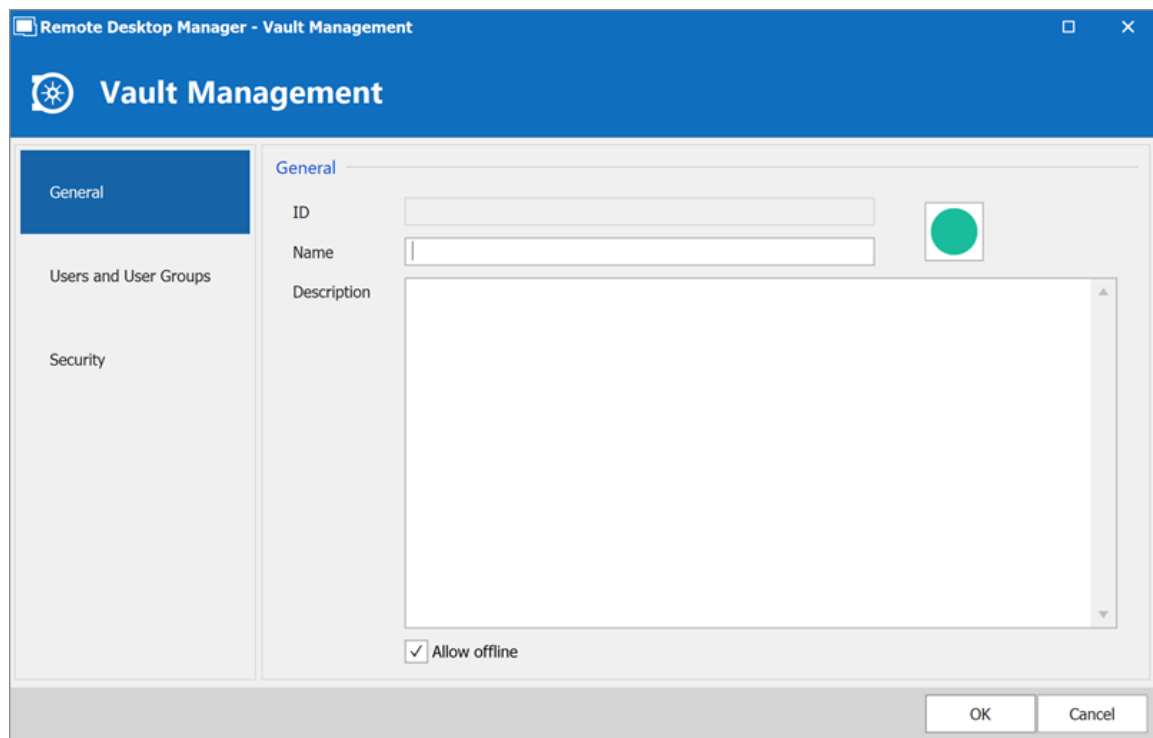
1. On the **Administration** tab, click **Vaults**.



2. Click **Add Vault**.

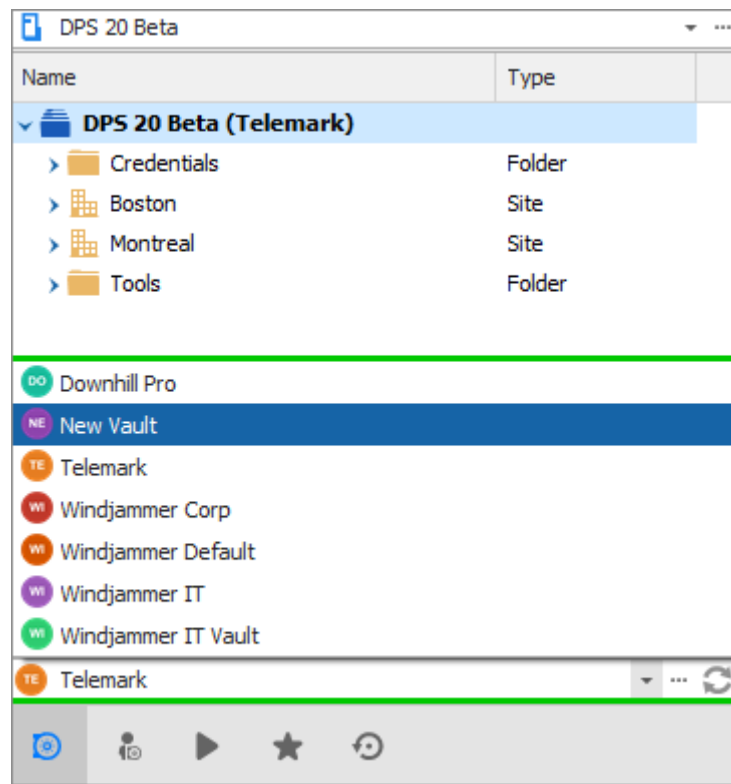


3. Enter a **Name** and **Description** (optional). The ID is generated automatically.



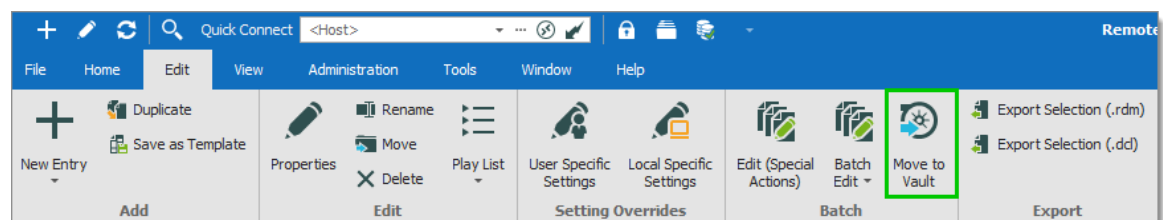
MOVE BETWEEN VAULTS

In the navigation pane, use the vault list to move between vaults. Change the location of the vault list in ***File – Options – User Interface – Vault Location***.

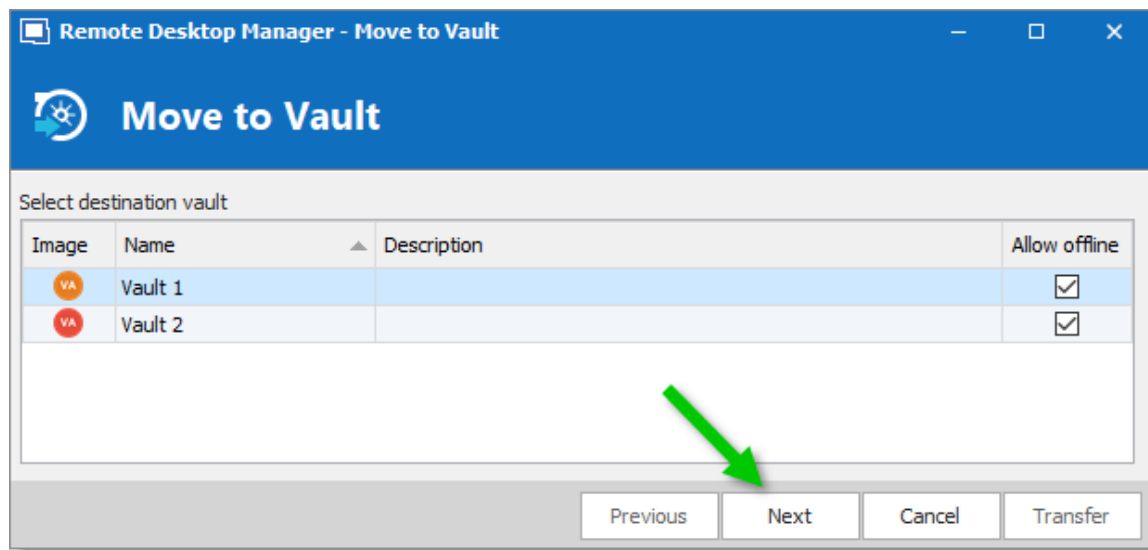


MOVE ENTRIES TO A DIFFERENT VAULT

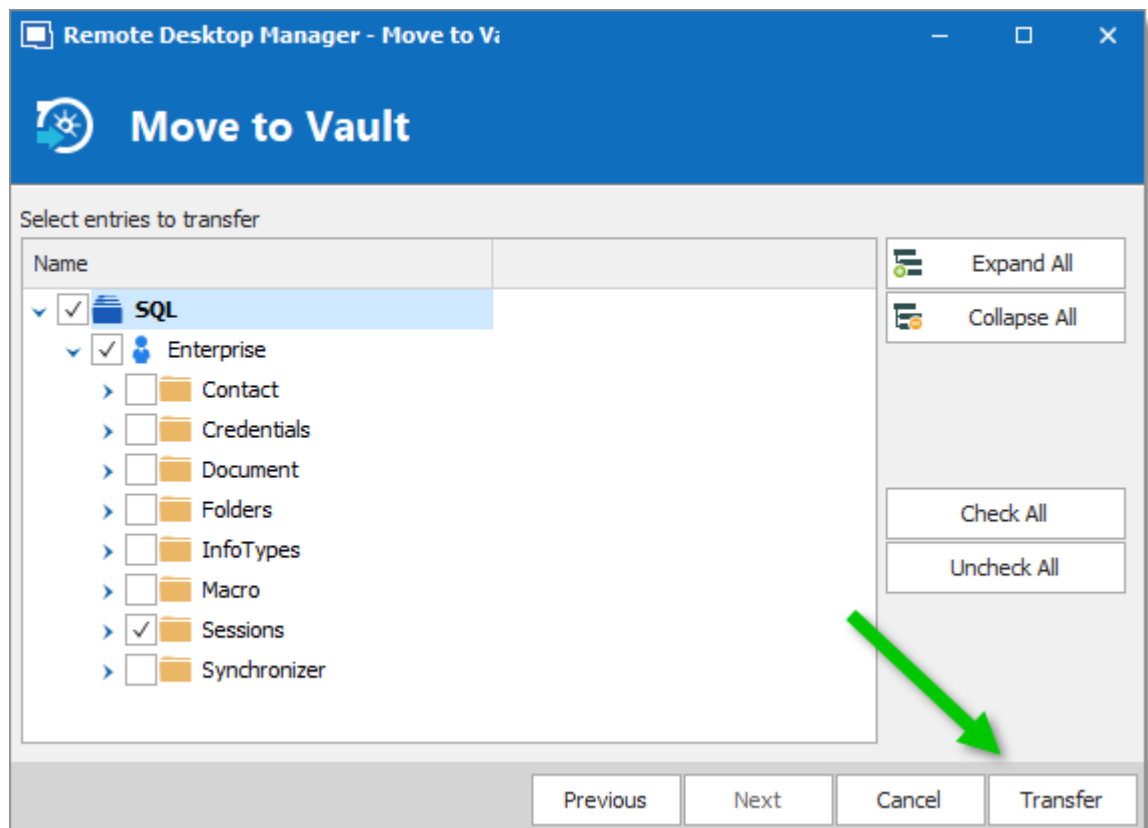
1. Start in the vault you want to transfer entries out of.
2. On the **Edit** tab, click **Move to vault**.



3. Select the vault you want to move the entries to, and click **Next**.



4. Choose the entries you want to transfer to the new vault, and click **Transfer**.



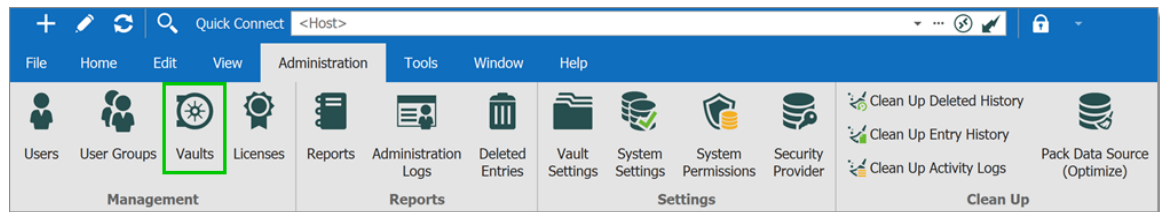
MANAGE ROLE-BASED SECURITY BY VAULT

Vaults simplify user management because Active Directory groups define who has access to a vault. These Active Directory groups are known as **User groups** in

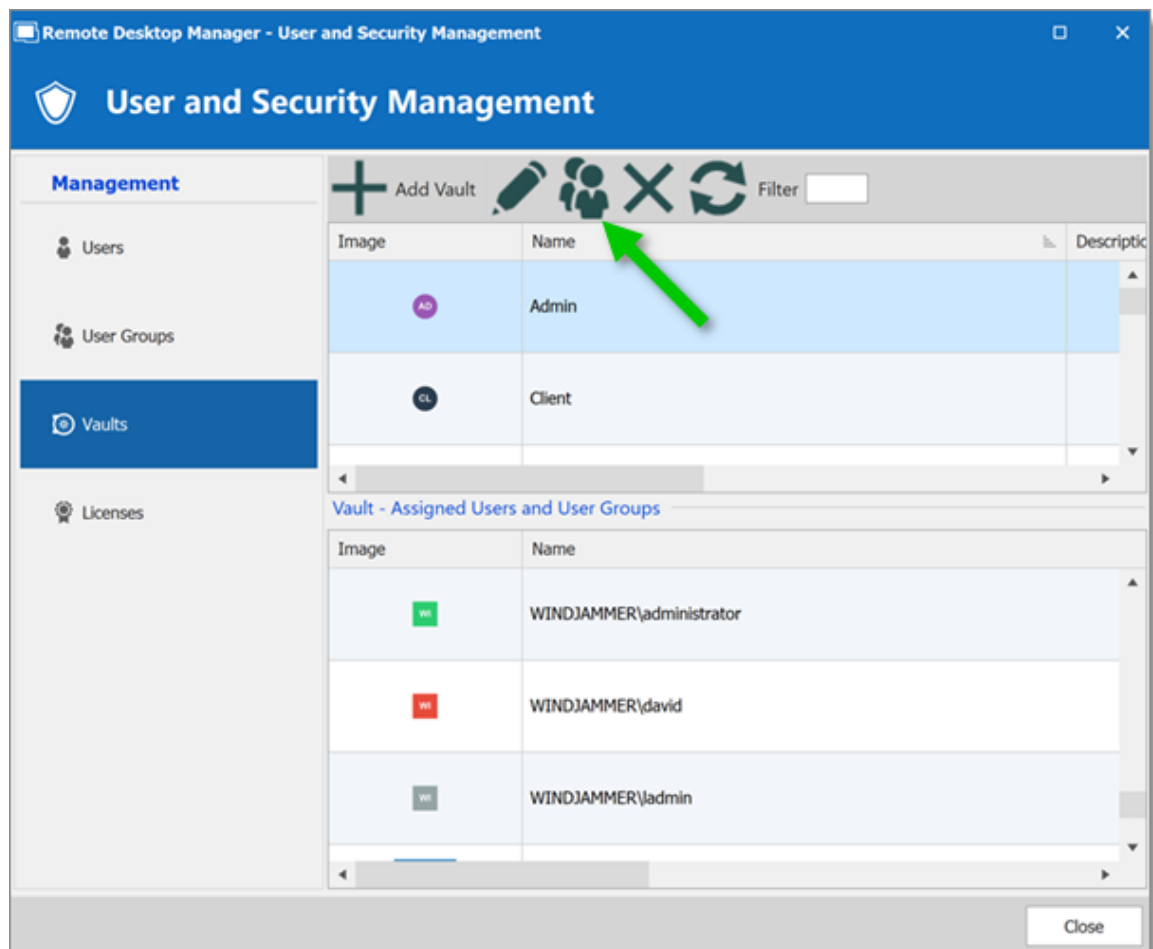
Remote Desktop Manager. In general, most user groups have access to a couple of vaults, while some groups will only have access to one vault. Limiting access to vaults minimizes the need to set permissions on lower-level folders.

GIVING ROLES ACCESS TO A VAULT

1. On the **Administration tab**, then click **Vaults**.

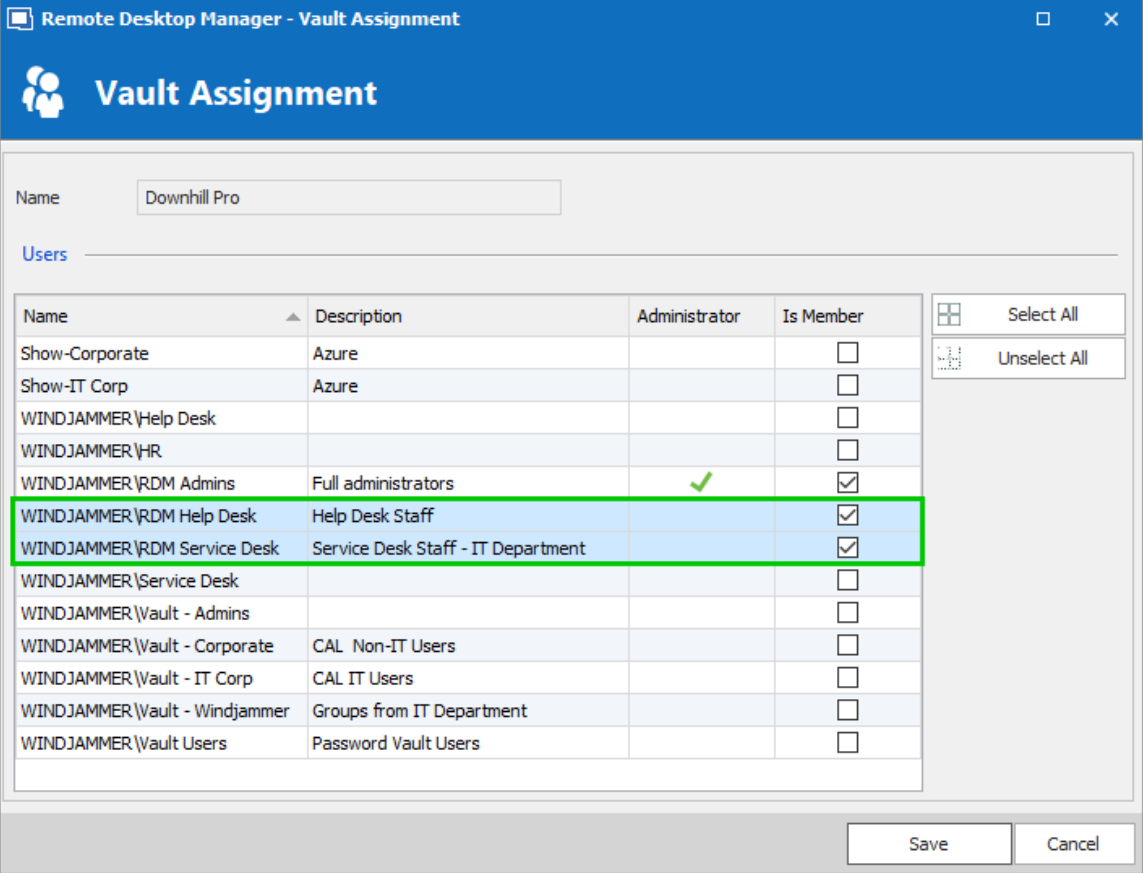


2. On the **User and Security Management** window, choose the vaults, then click **Assign User groups**.



User and Security Management - Vaults - Assign Roles

3. Choose which user groups have access to the vaults: select the ***Is Member*** box.



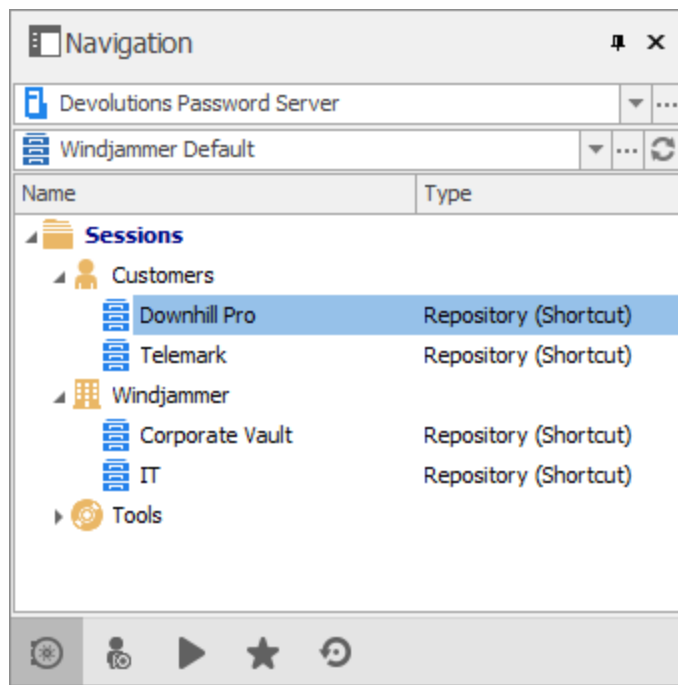
VAULTS SHORTCUTS

Navigate between vaults with the [Vault List](#) or vaults shortcuts.

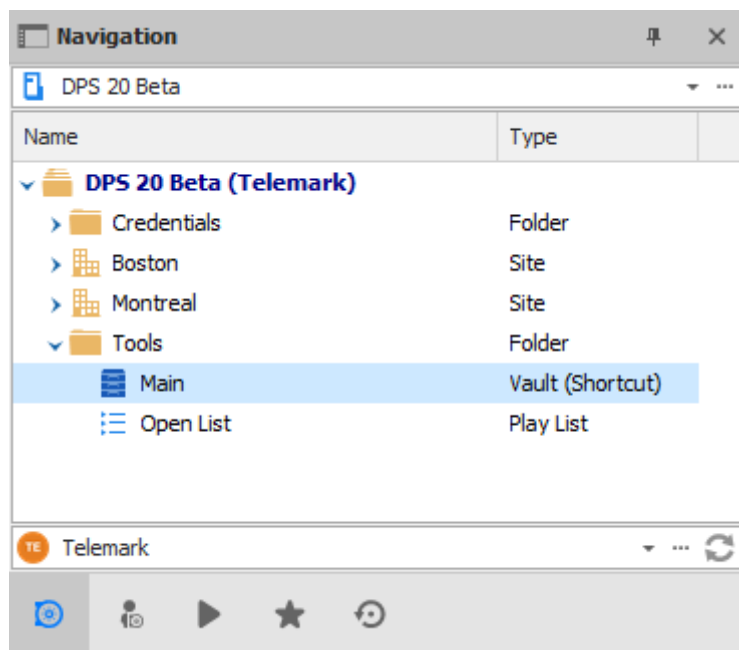
We recommend administrators and users who have access to multiple vaults create vaults shortcuts to navigate between vaults.

If you use vaults shortcuts, the vault should only contain folders. Do not save entries at the vault root.

The main (default) vault contains shortcuts to other vaults.



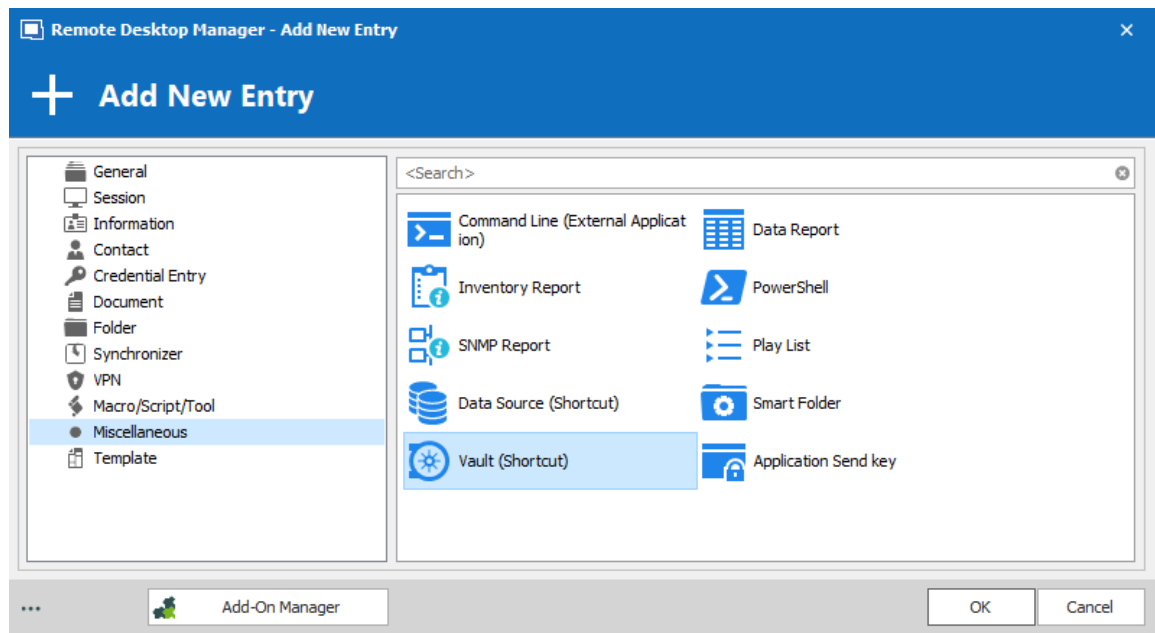
Each vault contains a shortcut that returns the user to the main vault.



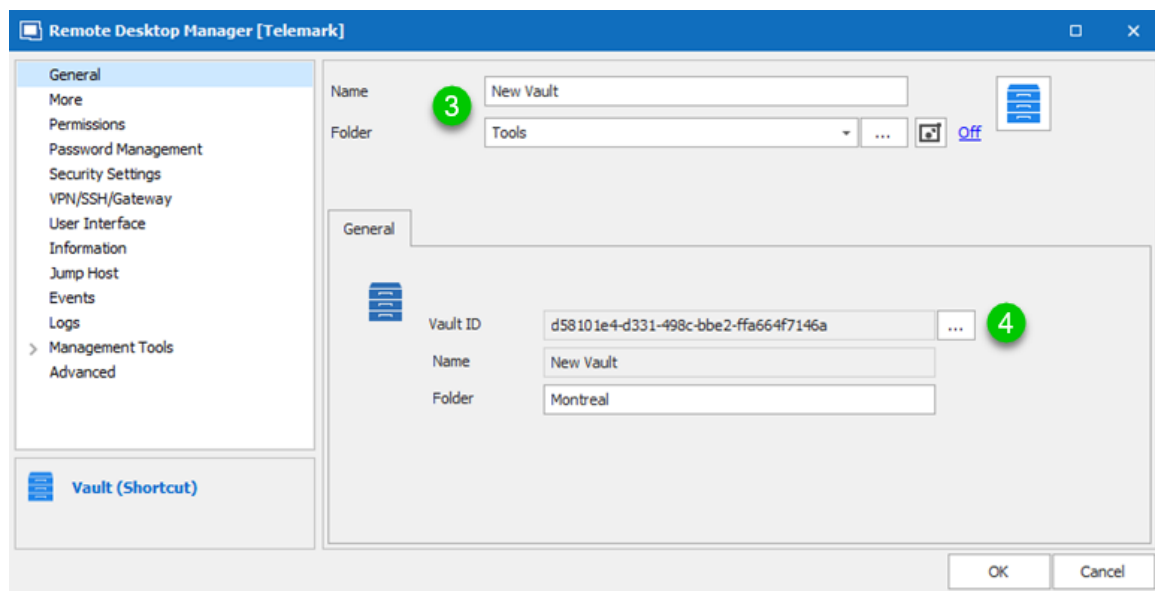
CREATE A VAULT SHORTCUT

1. On the **Edit** tab, click **New Entry**.

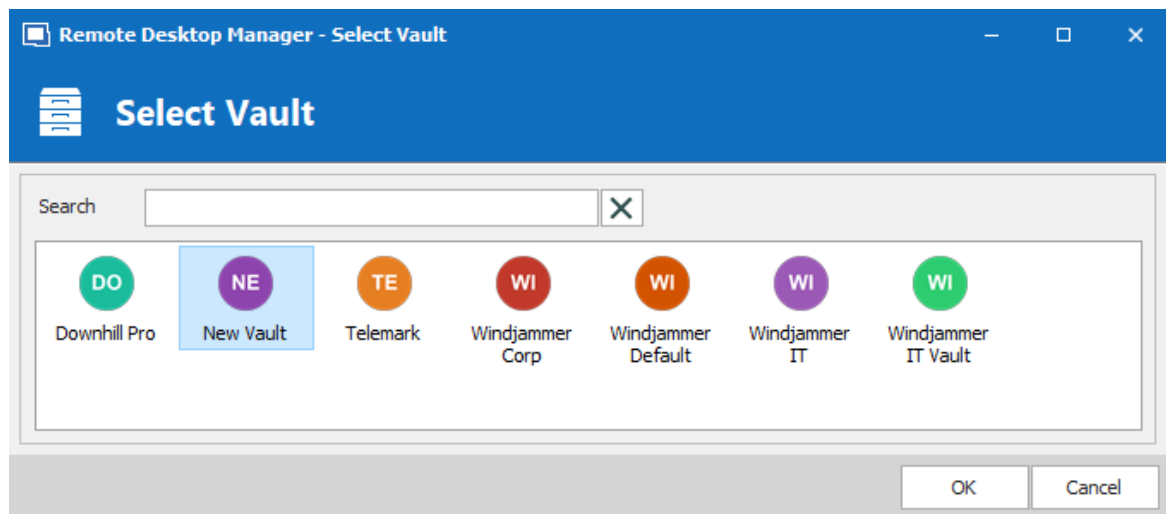
- Click **Miscellaneous** and then select **Vault (Shortcut)**.



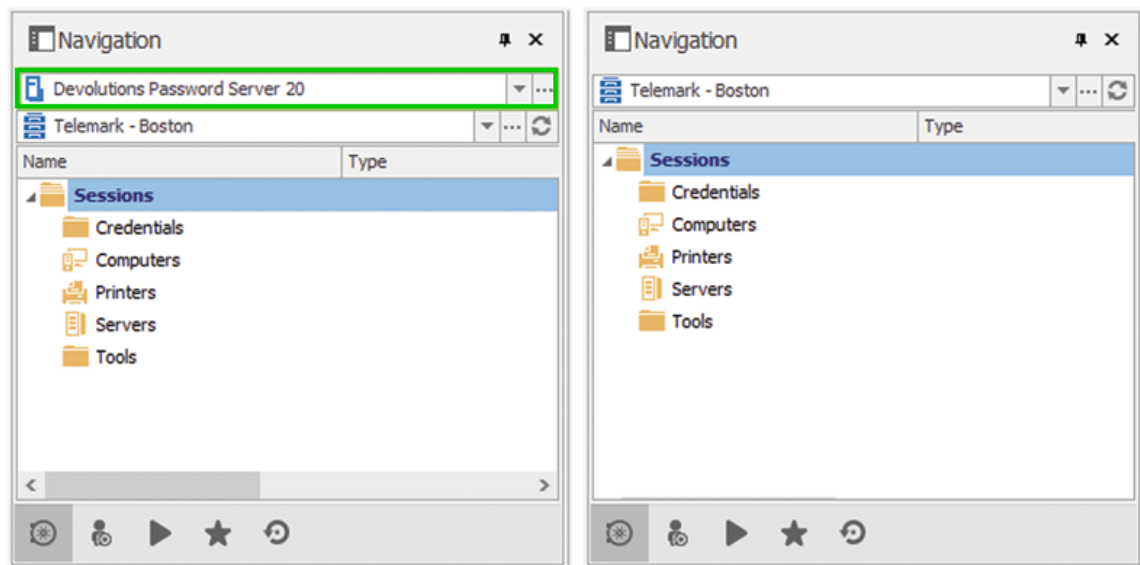
- In the **Name** box, enter the name of the vault you are creating a shortcut to. Save the shortcut in a folder.
- To find the **Vaults ID**, click the ellipses button. Enter a folder name (case sensitive) to create a shortcut to a specific folder.



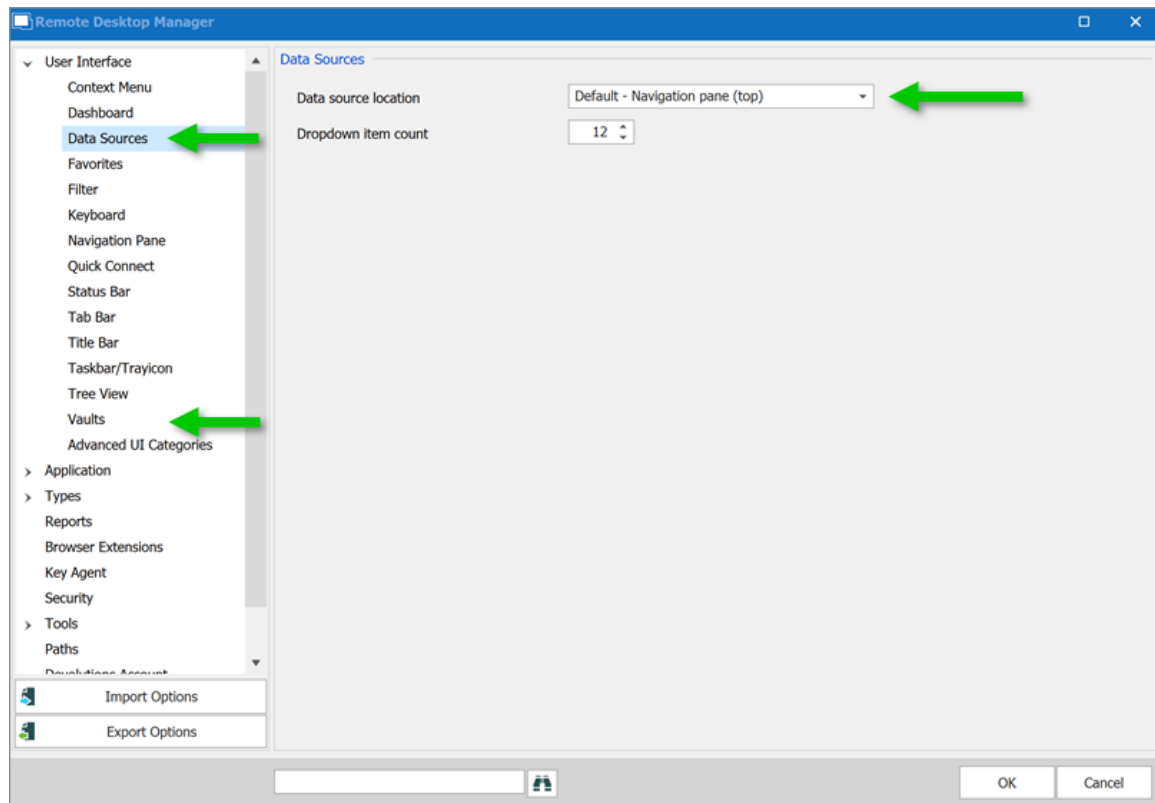
- Select the destination vault.



We recommend removing the data source drop-down list when using vault shortcuts. Then the vaults list can be moved above the Navigation Pane.



You can find the options in **File - Options - User Interface - Data Sources** and **Vaults**.



6.7.1.4 Licenses

DESCRIPTION

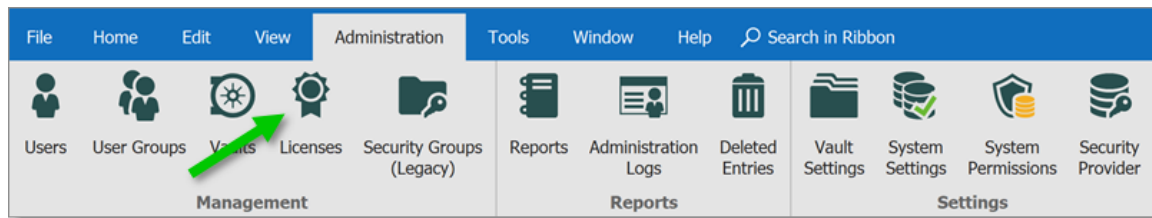
Managing Remote Desktop Manager registration globally for all your users can be done with a license serial stored in an advanced data source such as Devolutions Server, Microsoft SQL Server or Azure SQL.



It is possible to [request a trial](#) to try Remote Desktop Manager for 30 days. If you decide not to register the application at the end of the 30 days period, your data will not be altered or erased, and you will have full access to it once you provide a valid license serial.

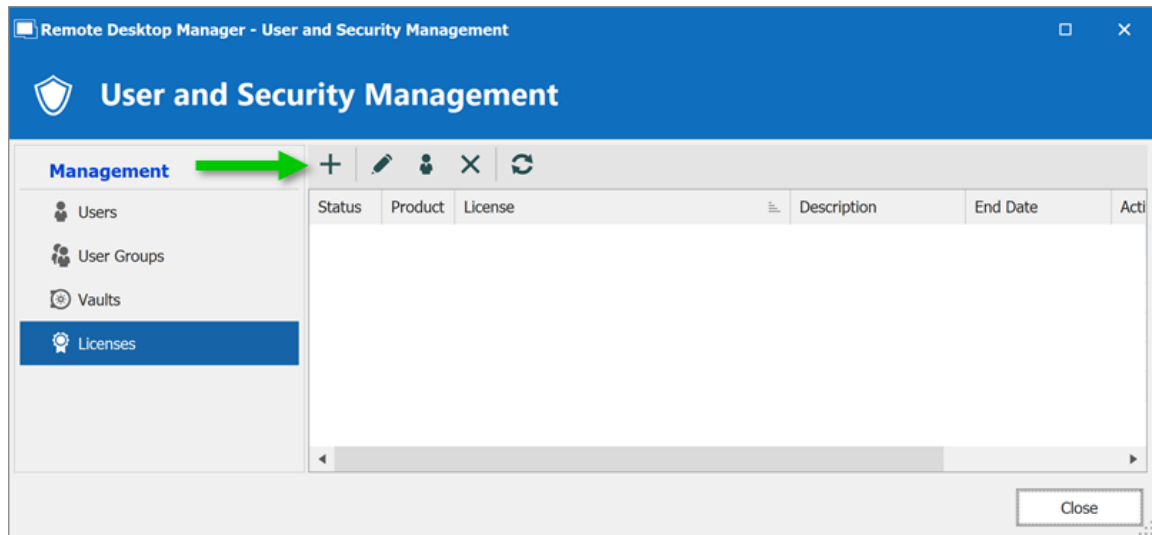
With license stored in an [Advanced Data Source](#), there is no need to register Remote Desktop Manager as the license serial is retrieved directly from it. When launching the application for the first time, add the data source containing the serial.

1. To add a license serial, navigate to **Administration - Licenses**.

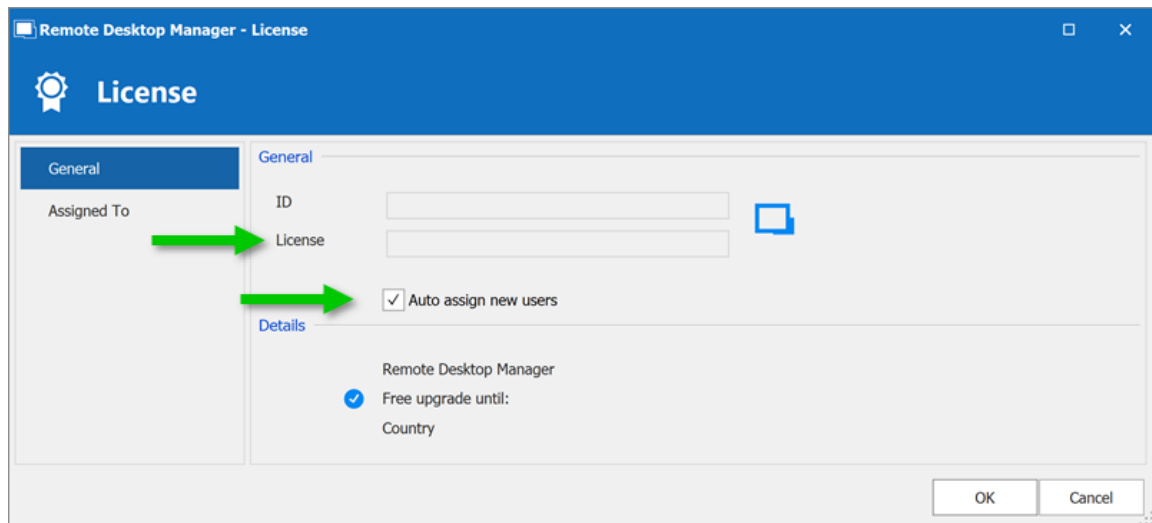


Administration - Licenses

2. Click **Add License**.



3. Enter the license serial.
4. Optional: Check the **Auto assign new users**, to automatically provide the RDM serial to all newly created users.



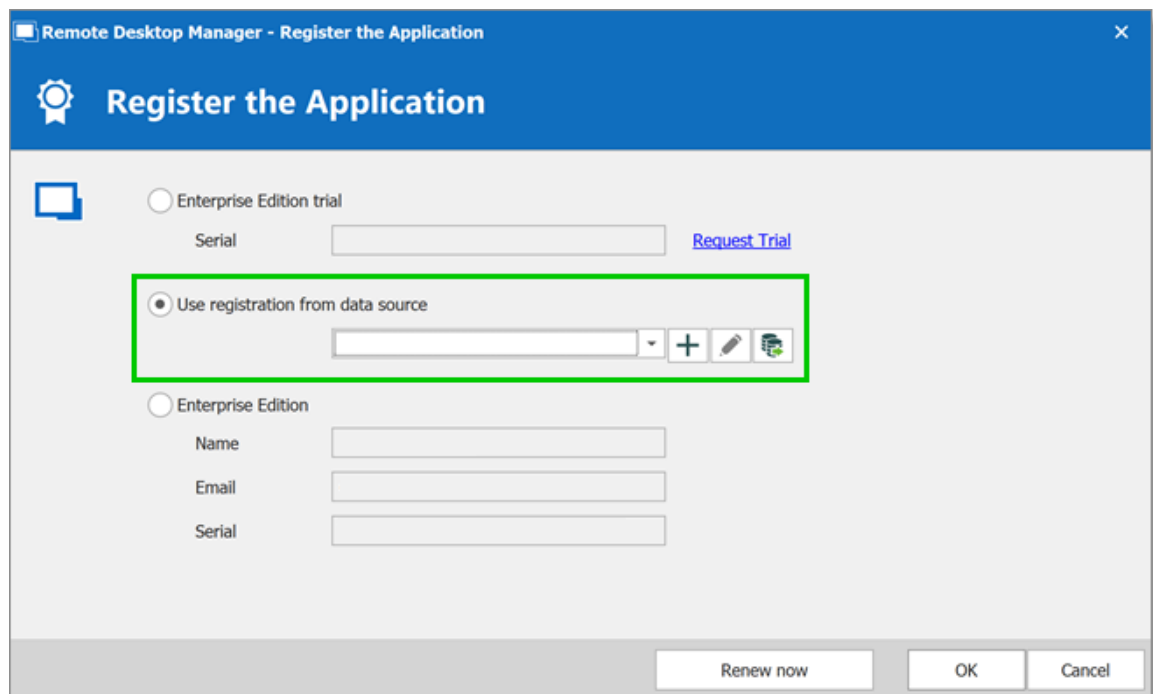
5. Click **OK** to save.

Your license is now saved in the advanced data source. Follow this next topic to automatically [Assign Licenses](#) to selected users, removing the need to interact locally with their Remote Desktop Manager.

6.7.1.4.1 Assign Licenses

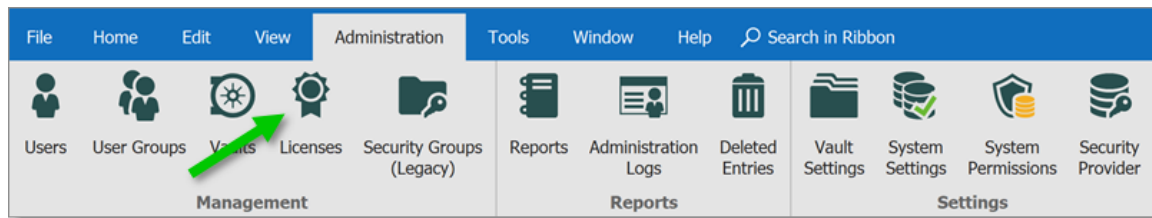
DESCRIPTION

When the license is stored in an [Advanced Data Source](#) in **Administration - Licenses**, there is no need to register Remote Desktop Manager locally as the license serial is retrieved directly from it. When launching the application for the first time, add the data source containing the serial.



As an administrator, manage your users license in Remote Desktop Manager.

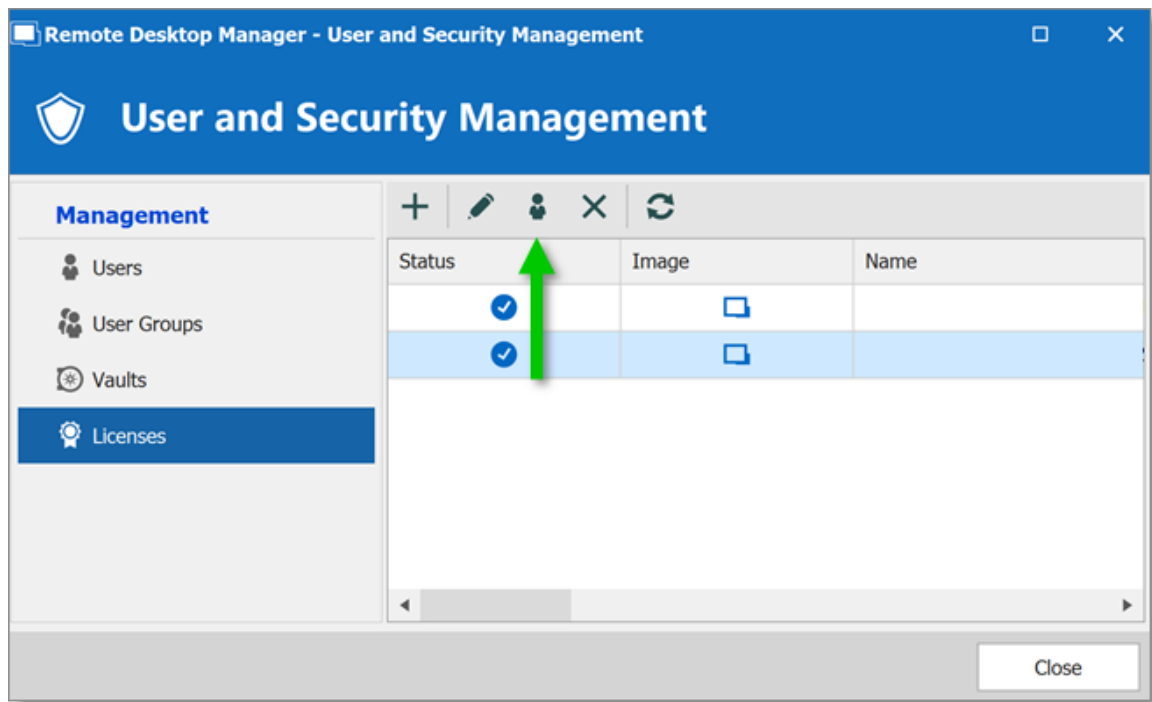
1. Go to **Administration - Licenses**.



2. Select the license and click the **Assign Licenses** icon.



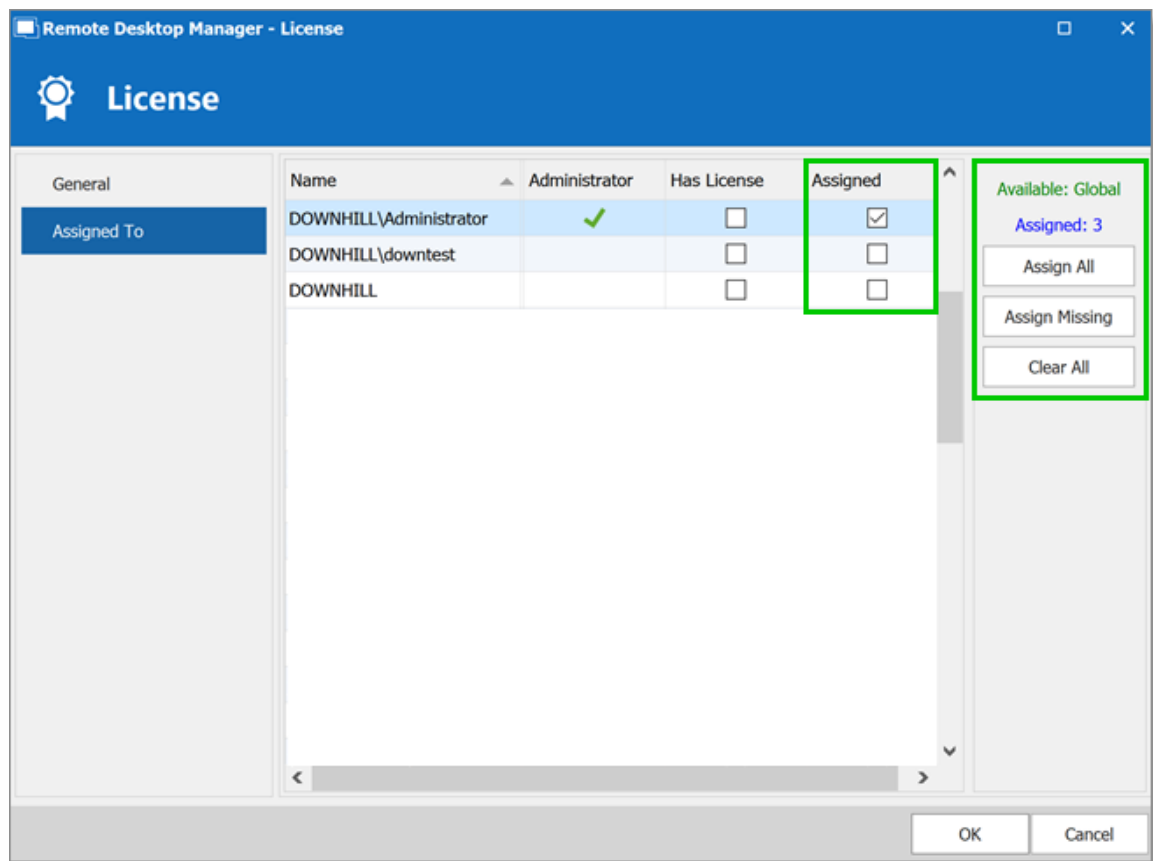
If you have more than one license, our [Sales team](#) can provide a co-terminated renewal to facilitate your license management.



3. In the **Assigned** column, check next to each user you need to grant a license or use the global action buttons.



This step will automatically assign the license to the selected users, removing the need to interact with each user.



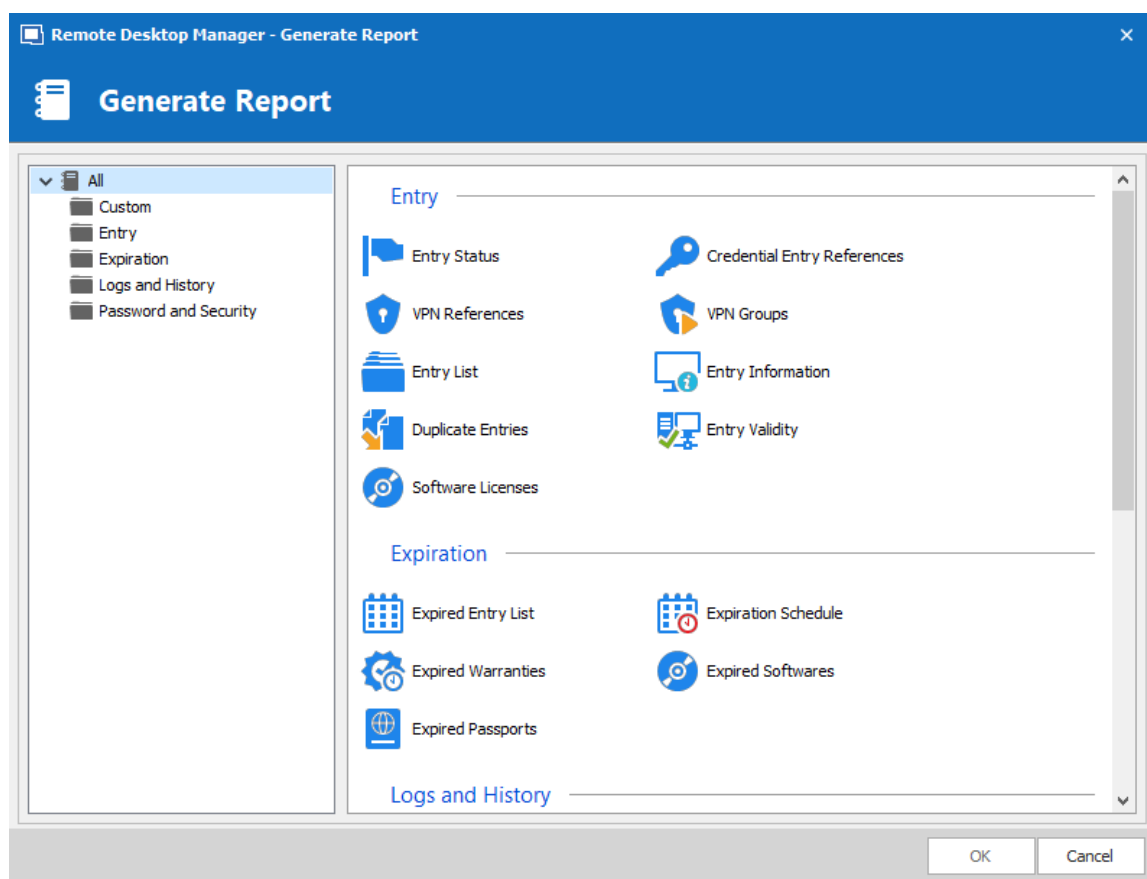
4. Click **OK** to save.

6.7.2 Reports

6.7.2.1 Reports

DESCRIPTION

The **Reports** section automatically generates reports detailing Remote Desktop Manager usage related to: Entries, Expired Assets, Passwords, Security and Users. You have the option to export your generated report, as well as executing and exporting reports through a command line.



Generate Report

From this window, you can browse and select a wide variety of Report Types. Explore to your heart's content.

Once Generated, a report will provide you with all the information you selected during this step. These final results can take various shapes and have different features (such as editing a specific entry or printing the result) depending on what the report actually is.



These logs are still restricted by user rights. A user with restricted access wouldn't be able to select Password and Security for example.

6.7.2.1.1 Export Reports

DESCRIPTION

The Export Reports is a way to execute and export reports through a command line. You can use this feature in a shortcut or in a batch file and use the Windows task scheduler to execute it.

You will be able to export Data Report, Inventory report as well as most of the reports found in our Generate Report list except for the Password Usage and Security Group.



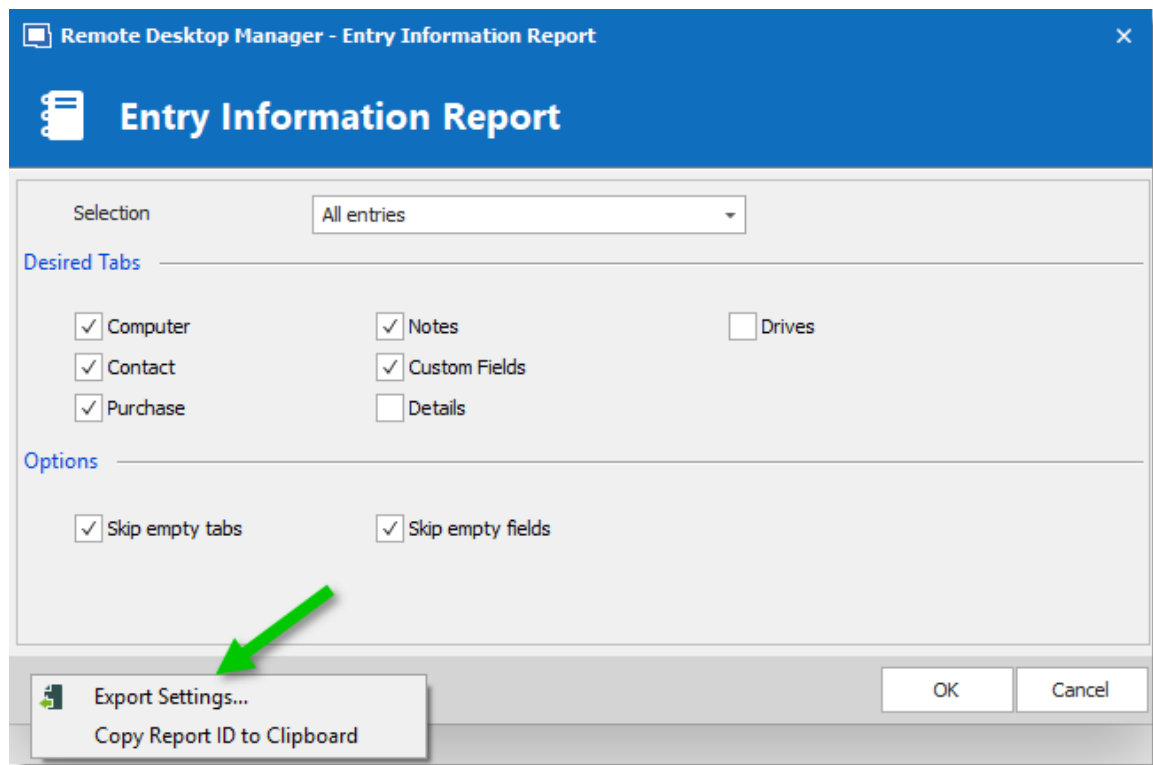
You must have the rights to run report in Remote Desktop Manager to use this feature.

SETTINGS



For Reports containing settings, you will have to start with exporting your report settings to create the ***.rdp** file that the command line use to generate the reports. Here is a list of reports containing settings:

1. Select your Report in **Administrations – Report** and then select the option **Export Settings** in the **More** text button. It will create an ***.rdp** file containing all your report settings. This is also where you Report ID is located (this will be useful later on).



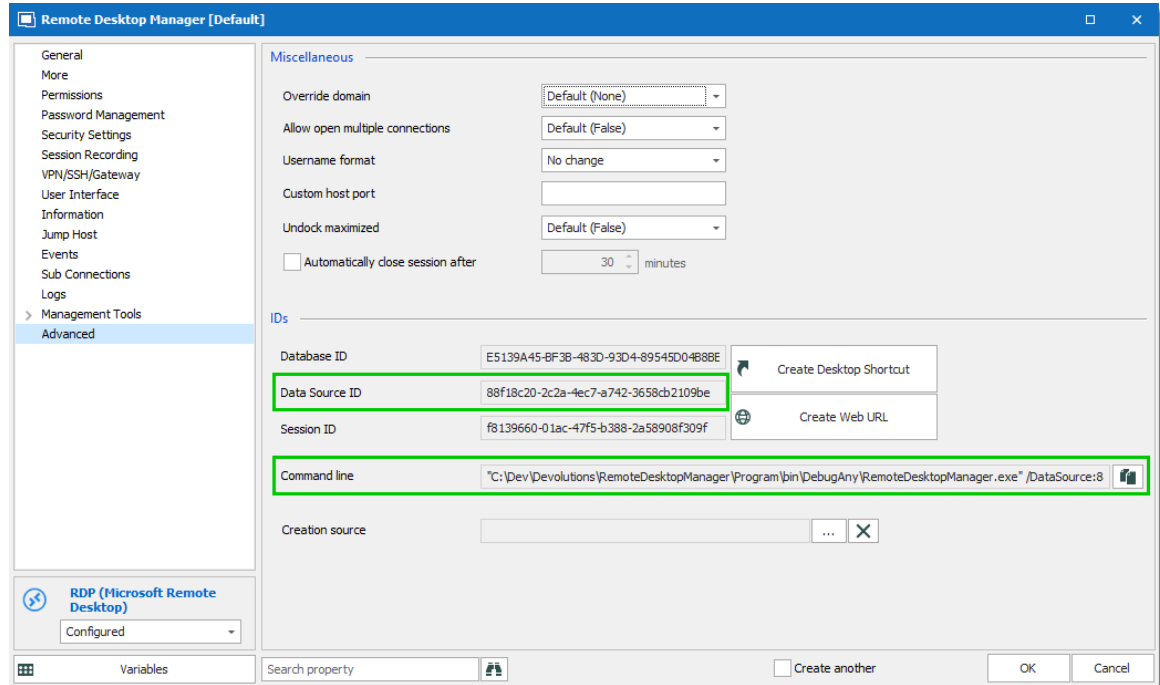
Export Settings

2. In your Windows Command Prompt enter the following command line:

```
C:\*** /DataSource:*** /report:***/reportoutput:"***" /reportsettings:"***.rdr"
```

| PARAMETERS | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|--|
| C:\ | Enter the path used to start your Remote Desktop Manager application (path of the RemoteDesktopManager.exe file) |
| /DataSource | Specify the data source ID. |
| /report | Specify the type of report to generate or the report ID. |
| /reportoutput | Specify the path to save your report and the name for the newly generated report. |
| /reportsettings | Specify the path of your report settings file (.rdr). |

To find your Data Source ID and the Command Line use to start Remote Desktop Manager edit one of your session from your data source and select the Advanced section.



RDP Session - Advanced Section

Here is a list of types of **Reports** you can find in Remote Desktop Manager and the name to enter in the command line to generate the report:

| REPORT TYPE | REPORT NAME (TYPE) TO INSERT IN THE COMMAND LINE |
|----------------------|--|
| Activity Logs Report | SharedConnectionLog |
| Duplicate Entry | DuplicateEntry |
| Entry Information | ConnectionInformation |
| Entry Status | ConnectionStatus |
| Expired Entry List | ConnectionExpiredEntry |

| REPORT TYPE | REPORT NAME (TYPE) TO INSERT IN THE COMMAND LINE |
|---------------------|--|
| Expired Passports | ConnectionExpiredPassport |
| Expired Softwares | ConnectionExpiredSoftware |
| Expired Warranties | ConnectionExpiredWarranty |
| Password Complexity | PasswordComplexity |
| VPN Groups | VPNGroup |

Here is an example of a command line for an Entry Information Report:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Devolutions\Remote Desktop Manager\RemoteDesktopManager.exe /D
/reportoutput:C:\dev\devolutions\Rapport\rapportEntry.csv /reportsettings:C:\dev\devo
```

6.7.2.2 Deleted Entries

DESCRIPTION

The **Administration – View deleted** option allows you to view the deleted entries as well as restoring them.



This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



Administrators can permanently delete some or all deleted entries.



Sub-connections are not retained in the View Deleted window. To restore a sub-connection, please have a look at Entry History.

SETTINGS

MANAGE DELETED ENTRIES

The **Deleted Entries** will generate a list containing all the entries previously deleted from your data source. You may resurrect an entry, meaning it will become an active entry again and will be shown in your data source. You may also chose to permanently delete your entries, once you have permanently deleted your entries you won't be able to resurrect them afterward.

Deleted Entries

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|---|
| Delete | Permanently delete the selected entry. |
| Resurrect Entry | Use this button to restore an entry. |
| Delete All | Permanently delete all the deleted entries. |



Deleted entries can be resurrected as long as the [Security Provider](#) has not been changed since the deleted action.

EXPORT DELETED ENTRIES LIST

You can use the **Right-click** button on one or several lines to export them in CSV, HTML or XML format.

6.7.3 Settings

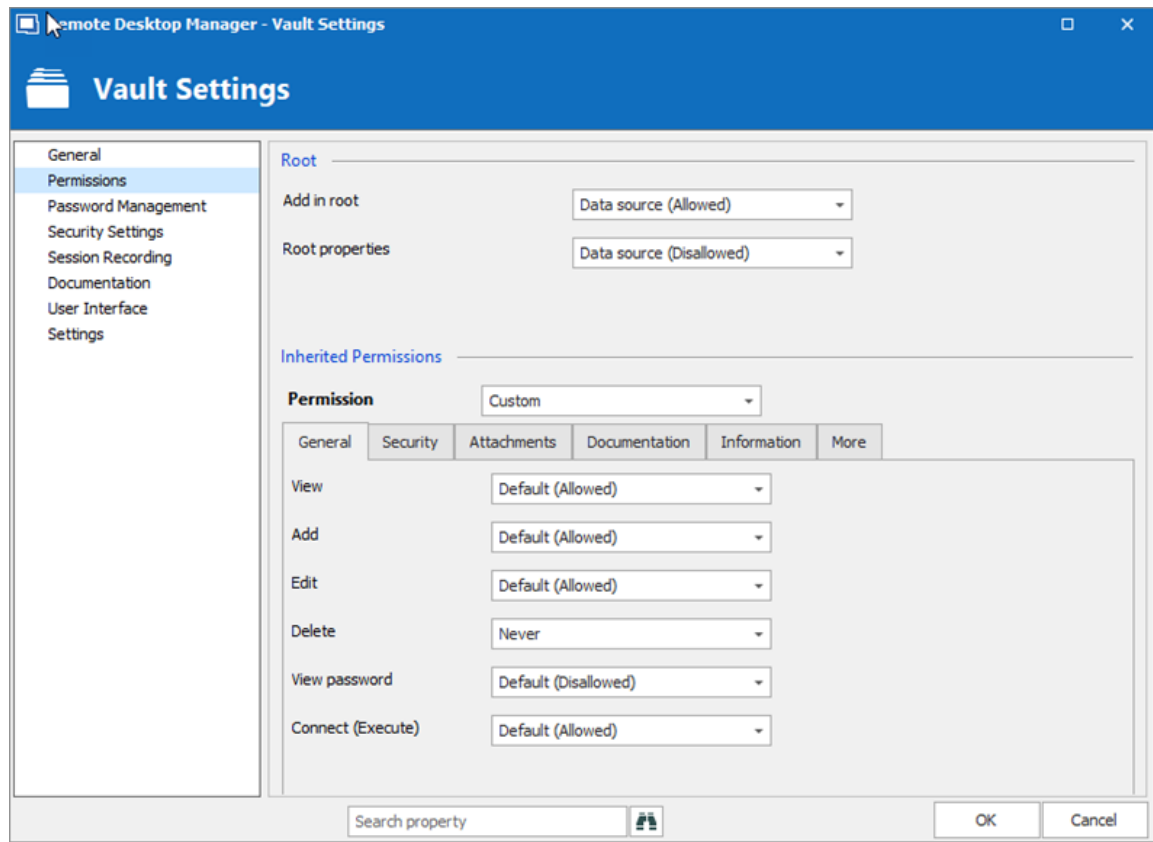
6.7.3.1 Vault Settings

6.7.3.1.1 Default security for entries

DESCRIPTION

In the Vault settings, navigate to the **Permissions** section. Under **Inherited Permissions**, change the **Permission** drop down list to the desired settings.

- **Custom** allows to select specific user groups/users for each permission below.
- **Never** denies any access to all users.



Vault – Permissions

To confirm the change, edit an entry below the Vault and navigate to the **Security – Permissions** section. All permissions set to **Default** inherit the value from Data Source Permissions (System Permissions) or the user. Inherited values are displayed next to the permissions.

6.7.3.2 System Settings

6.7.3.2.1 General

GENERAL

The **General** section allows to manage the availability of different features related to the database.



These settings applies to all users that have access to the data source.

System Settings - General

| GENERAL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Allow user Specific Settings | Allow users to save User Specific Settings . |
| Allow database clean up | Allows logs and deleted history to be cleaned up. For more information, please consult the Clean up topic. |
| Allow shortcuts | Allow the reiteration of entries through the shortcut feature. |

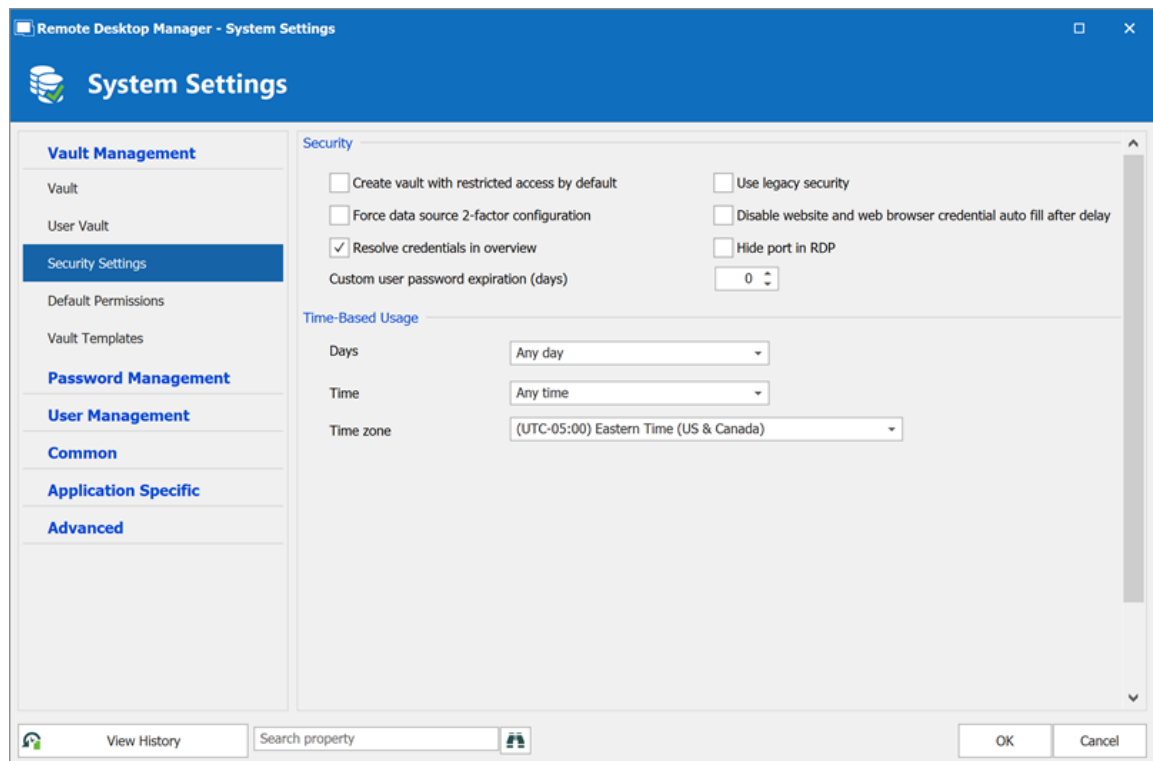
| GENERAL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Allow entry states (Lock, Running, Checkout) | Allow entries to be locked when used or edited. |
| Allow virtual folders | Allow to store entries in virtual folders. (Not supported with Devolutions Server.) |
| Automatic check in after | Forces checked out entries to check in automatically after a set delay. |
| Allow sub connections | Allow users to create sub connections. |
| Allow favorites | Allow users to favorite connections. |
| Allow embedded credential source mode (legacy) | Allow embedded Credential entry in the entry itself. This mode is deprecated and not recommended. Please review other Credentials options available. |
| Add entry mode | <p>Select if users are prompted to choose a template when creating a new entry. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default • Template list (include default) • Template list only • No template selection |
| COMMENTS | DESCRIPTION |
| Allow log comments editing | Enable the log comment editing for all users. |

| COMMENTS | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|--|
| Minimum length (char) | Set the minimum length (in characters) allowed for comments. |

| FILE SIZE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Maximum file size (MB) | Limit the size of attachments and document entries to avoid to over load the data source. |

6.7.3.2.1.1 Security

SETTINGS



| DATA SOURCE SECURITY | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Create Vault with restricted access by default | Automatically secure the Vault settings when creating a repository. Therefore, the permissions settings are set to Never . |
| Force data source 2-factor configuration | Require the users to have a 2-factor configuration applied on the data source. Not shown with Devolutions Server as 2FA set elsewhere. |
| Resolve credentials in overview | Displays username and password fetched from a Credential repository in the entry overview in the dashboard. Uncheck this option if it takes too long to resolve. |
| Use legacy security | <p>Use the old system of managing privileges: Security groups (deprecated).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• To manage your users permissions, we recommend you switch from Security groups (deprecated) to Permissions. Once the migration done, disable the legacy security, by unchecking Use legacy security. |
| TIME-BASED USAGE | DESCRIPTION |
| Time of day | <p>Select the hours which the data source is limited to. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Any time: the session can be used at any hour.• Custom: manually select the time frame the session is available for. |
| Time of week | Select which days the data source is available for. Select between: |

| TIME-BASED USAGE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Any day: the session can be used any day of the week or week-end.• Week days: the session can be used only the week days.• Week ends: the session can be used only the week ends.• Custom: manually select each day the session is available for. |
| Time Zone | Select the time zone you are currently in. |

6.7.3.2.1.2 Allow Password Access From External System

DESCRIPTION



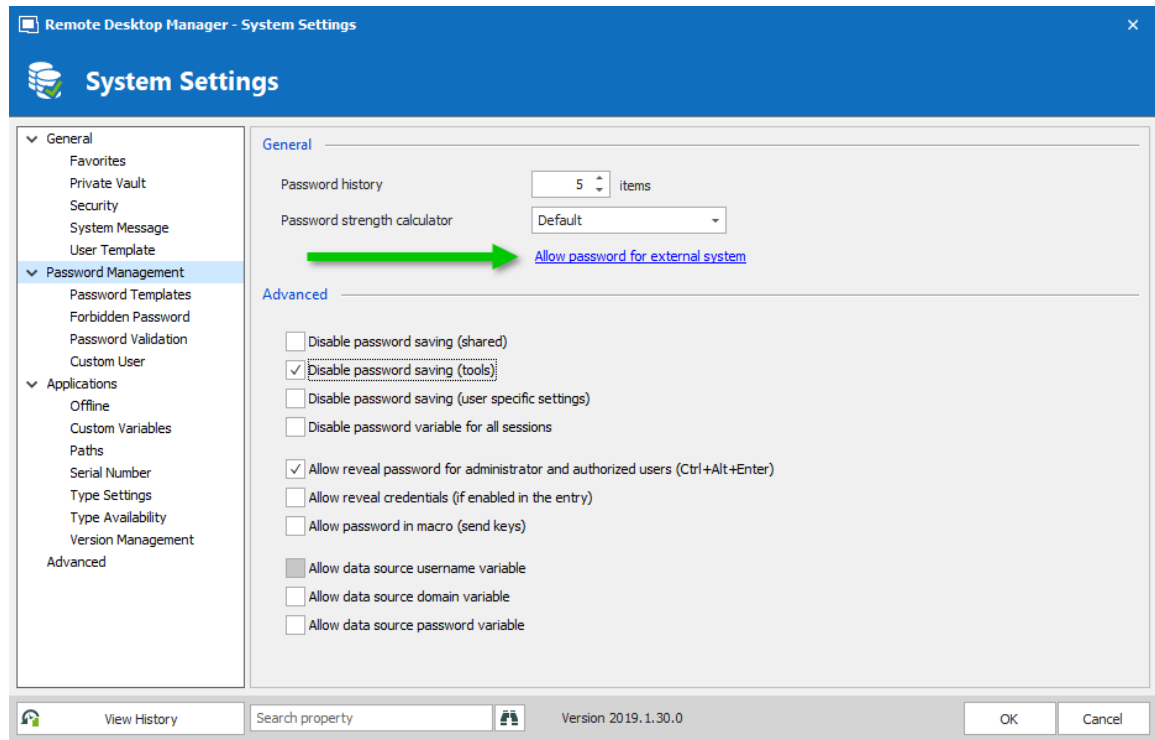
This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).

Accessing passwords stored in your data source by querying the underlying database is not possible because of the encryption we apply on the passwords. For those of you that need to access passwords directly in the database, for example by a CRM system, we have created a way to achieve this.

SETTINGS

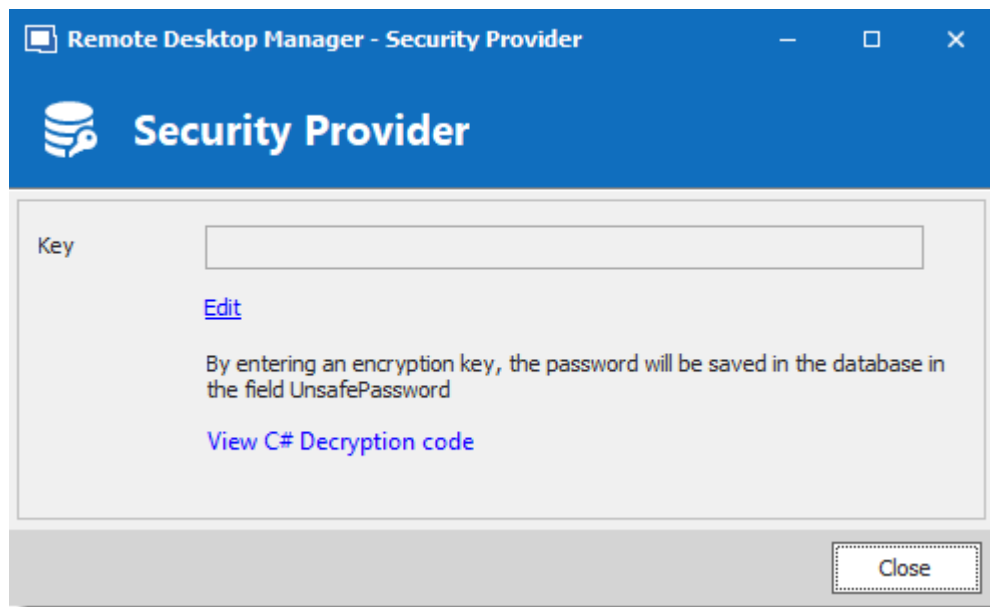
The session information, which is an XML structure, is stored in the **Data** field of the **Connections** table in the underlying database.

However, getting the encrypted password from the database requires the **Allow password for external system** to be configured.



Password Policy - Allow Password For External System

Enter an encryption key in the **Key** field. Once a key is provided it will cause the system to extract a copy of the password from our XML structure, this will then be re-encrypted using the **key** you have provided and stored back into the **UnsafePassword** field of the **Connections** table.



Security Provider

DECRYPTION CODE

Use the following .net code to decrypt your passwords.

```
public static string Decrypt(string encryptedString, string key)
{
    if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(encryptedString))
    {
        return encryptedString;
    }

    try
    {
        TripleDESCryptoServiceProvider tripleDesCryptoServiceProvider = new TripleDESCryptoServiceProvider();
        MD5CryptoServiceProvider cryptoServiceProvider = new MD5CryptoServiceProvider();

        string strTempKey = key;

        byte[] byteHash = cryptoServiceProvider.ComputeHash(Encoding.ASCII.GetBytes(strTempKey));

        tripleDesCryptoServiceProvider.Key = byteHash;

        tripleDesCryptoServiceProvider.Mode = CipherMode.ECB;

        byte[] byteBuff = Convert.FromBase64String(encryptedString);

        string strDecrypted =
            Encoding.UTF8.GetString(
                tripleDesCryptoServiceProvider.CreateDecryptor().TransformFinalBlock(
                    byteBuff, 0, byteBuff.Length));
    }
}
```

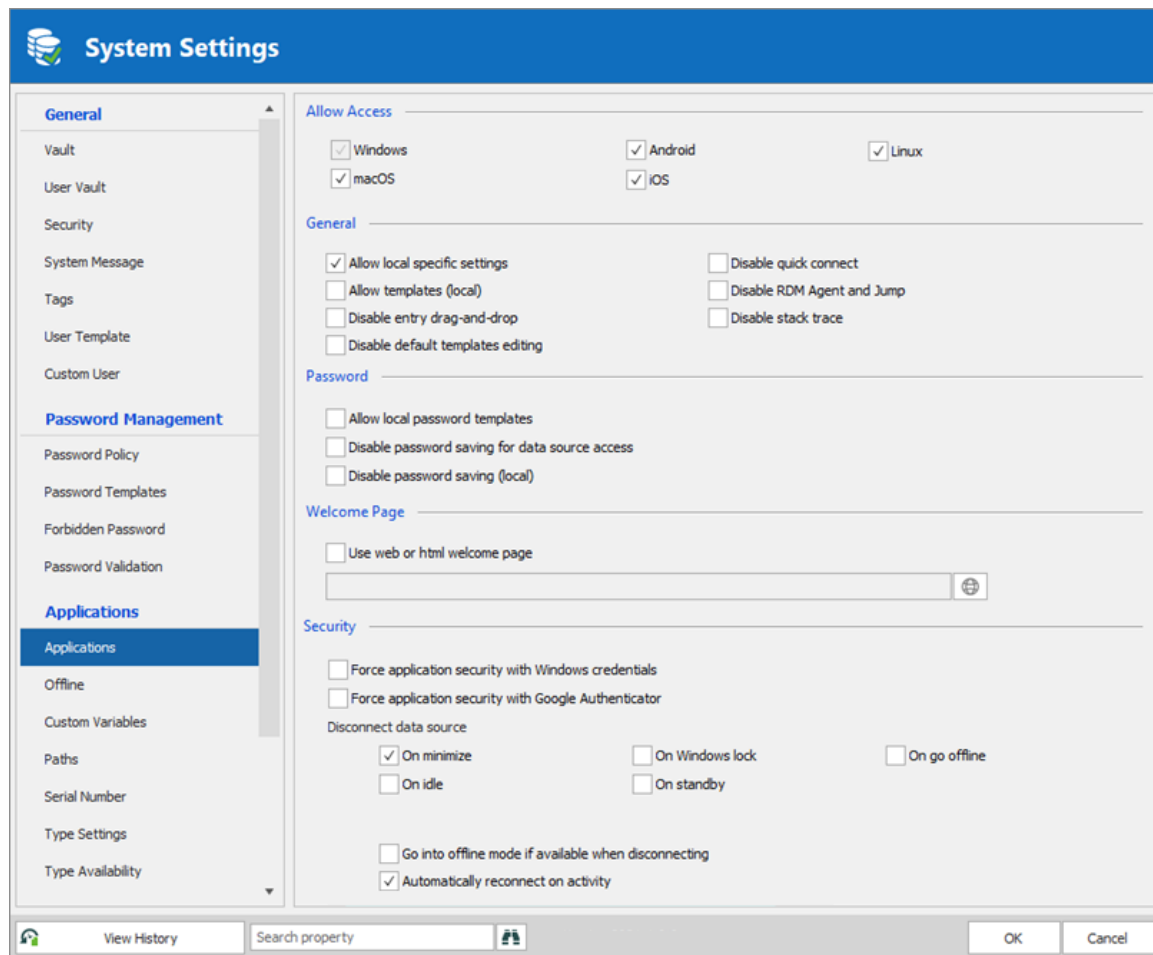


```
        return strDecrypted;
    }
    catch (Exception)
    {
        return null;
    }
}
```

6.7.3.2.2 Application

DESCRIPTION

The **Applications** section manages the availability of different features related to Remote Desktop Manager application.



| ALLOW ACCESS | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|---|
| Operating systems | Enable access to the data source from the selected operating systems. |

| GENERAL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Allow local Specific Settings | Allow users to save Local Specific Settings . |
| Allow templates (local) | Allows to locally save entry's templates. |
| Disable entry drag-and-drop | Disable entries drag and drop from one folder to another. This setting is useful for avoiding accidental drag and drop. |
| Disable quick connect | Disable the Quick Connect feature for all users of the data source. |
| Disable RDM Agent and Jump | Disable the option to activate a session as an RDM Agent or Jump. |
| Disable stack trace | Disable the stack trace details when an error occurs in Remote Desktop Manager. This is a security feature. |

| PASSWORD | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Allow local password templates | Allows password templates to be saved locally. |
| Disable password saving for data source access | Prevent users to save or change the passwords stored in the data source configurations. |

| PASSWORD | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Disable password saving (local) | Prevent users from saving passwords in the properties of entries. |

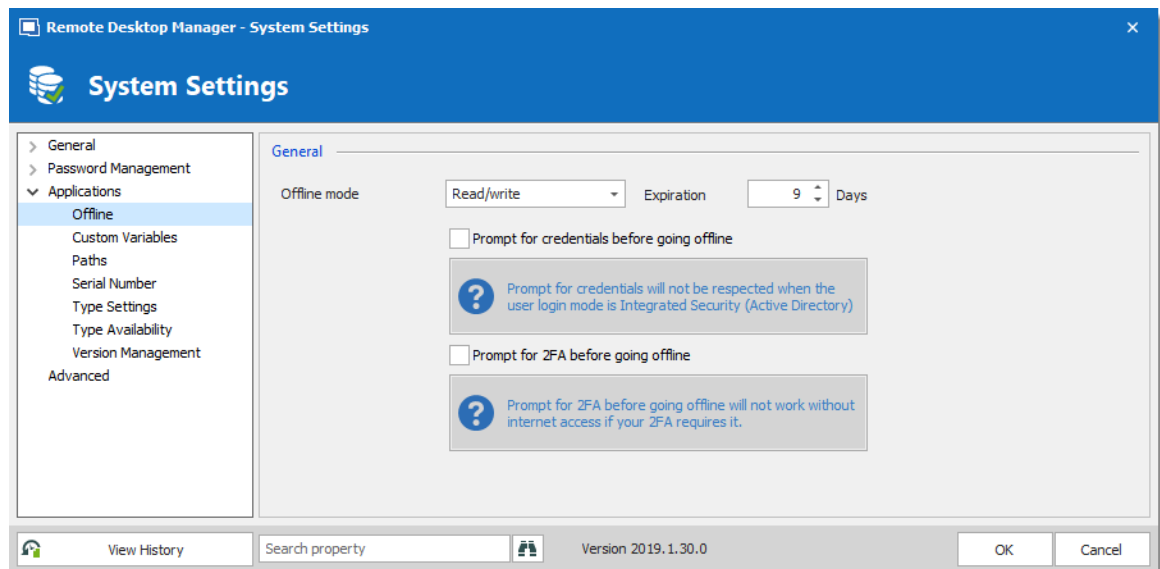
| WELCOME PAGE | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|--|
| Use web or html welcome page | Enter an URL to use as the application's welcome page. |

| SECURITY | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Force application security with Windows credentials | Require the users to authenticate with their Windows credentials at application startup. |
| Force application security with Google Authenticator | Require the users to authenticate with Google Authenticator at application startup. |
| Disconnect data source | <p>Set the application to lock:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• On Minimize: lock application when minimized in the taskbar for all users of the data source.• On Idle: automatically lock the application when it is not used after a determined amount of time.• On Windows lock: lock the application on Windows lock.• On standby: lock the application when on standby. |
| Go into offline mode if available when disconnecting | Will switch RDM from online to offline mode if available when disconnecting. |

| SECURITY | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Automatically reconnect on activity | Instead of using the manual refresh button, after an idle time, activate the option to reconnect automatically. |

6.7.3.2.2.1 Offline

DESCRIPTION



| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|---|
| Offline mode | Set the global data source Offline Mode availability. The offline mode is useful when using a VPN connection that makes using local network impossible. |
| Expiration | Number of days before the offline cache expires. You must go online prior to the end of that period to re-validate the data. |

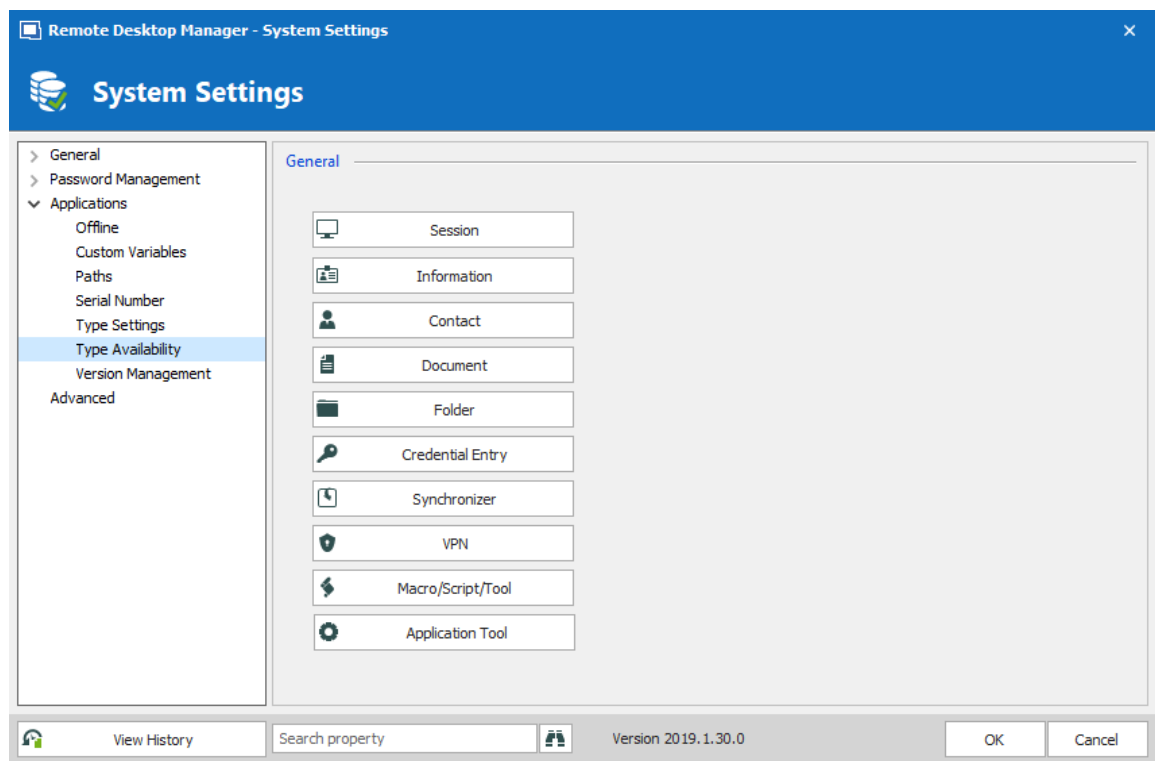
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Prompt for credentials before going offline | Force the user to provide their credentials before going offline. |
| Prompt for 2FA before going offline | Force the user to provide their 2FA before going offline. |



It is not recommended to set the **Expiration** to 0, as this will disable the expiration of the offline cache.

6.7.3.2.2.2 Type availability

SETTINGS



System Settings - Types - Availability

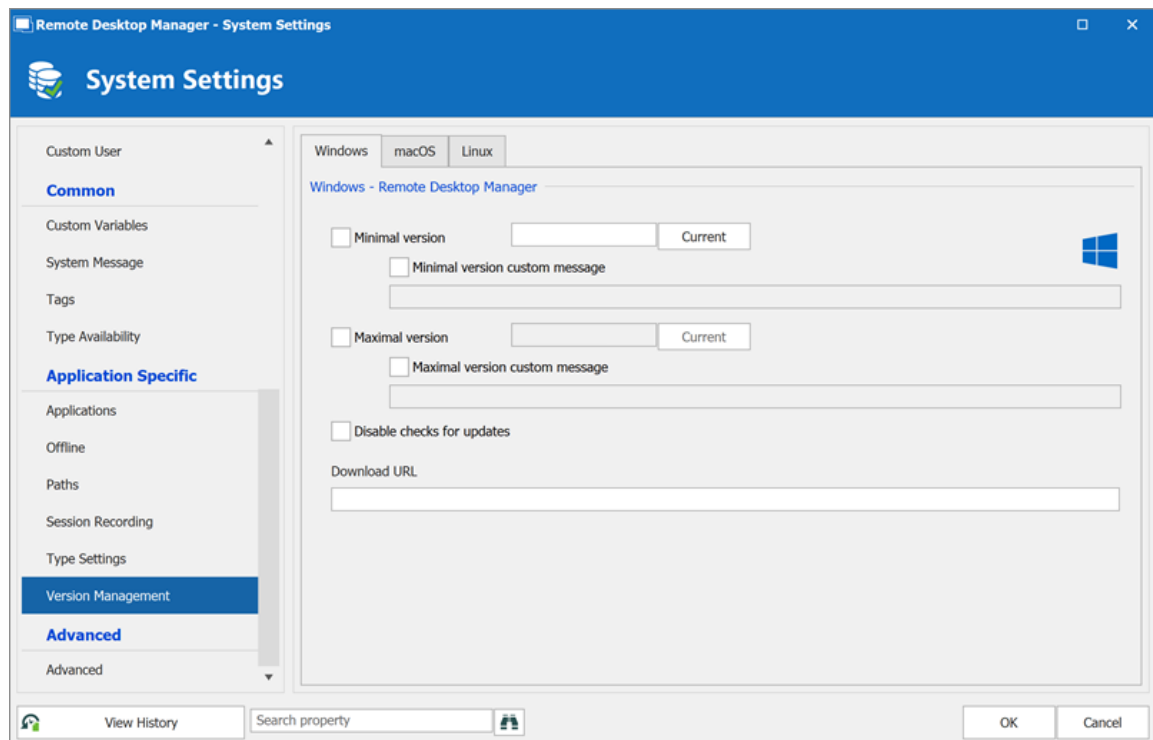
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|---|
| Type Availability | Select entry types to exclude. Excluded entries will not be in the Add New Entry window. |

6.7.3.2.2.3 Version Management

DESCRIPTION

The **Version Management** allows the administrators to manage the data source availability in other versions of Remote Desktop Manager.

WINDOWS AND MACOS



Version Management

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Minimal version | Forces users of the data source to use a minimal version of Remote Desktop Manager. Enter the entire version number (2019.1.0.0) to force a specific version. Use this to disable connecting to the data source with an older version. |
| Minimal version custom message | Enter a custom message for the minimal version notification. |
| Maximal version | Forces users of the data source to use a maximal version. Enter the entire version number (2019.1.0.0) to force a specific version. Use this to disable connecting to the data source with a newer version. |
| Maximal version custom message | Enter a custom message for the maximal version notification. |
| Disable checks for updates | Disable the auto update notification message. Use this to manually update the application and prevent from getting notified when new versions are available. |
| Download URL | Use in conjunction with the minimal or maximal version, once a minimal or maximal version requirement is not met the system will prompt the user that the version is no longer valid and it will open the link (path/URL) to download the newer or older version. |

6.7.3.3 System Permissions

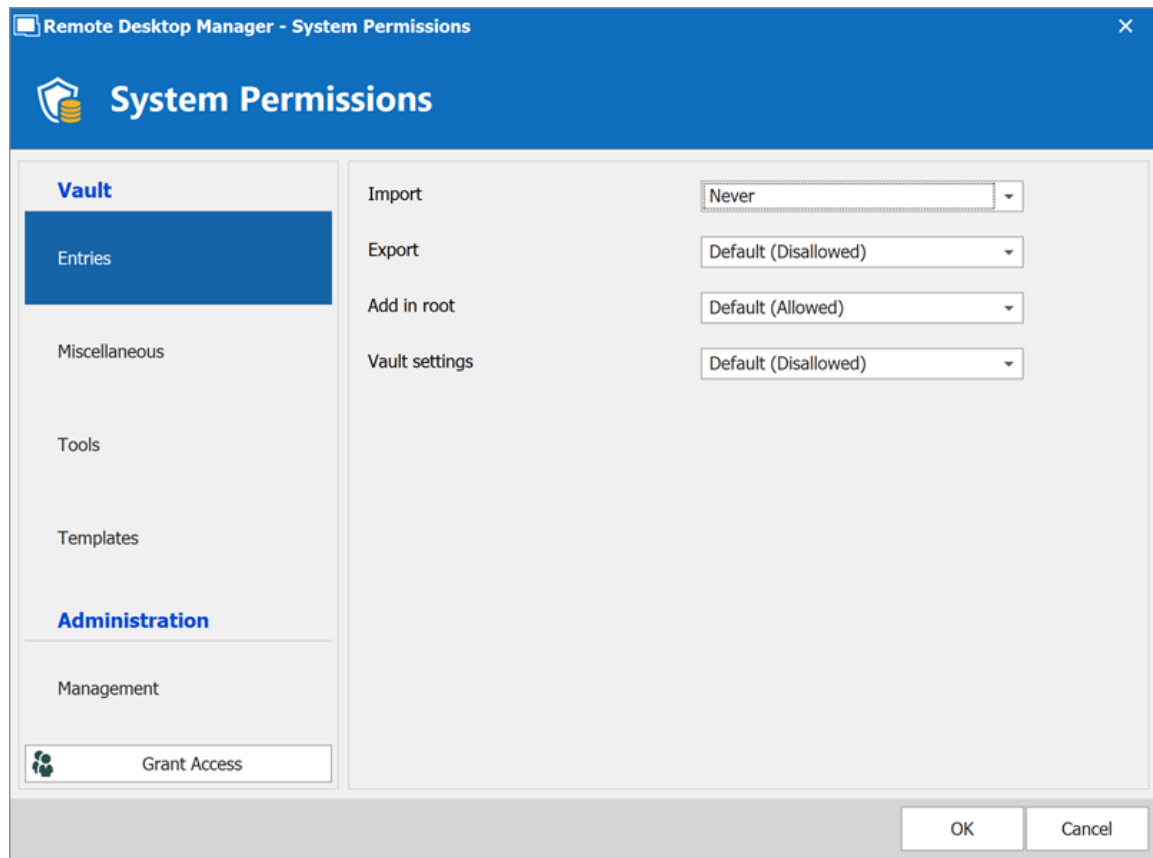
DESCRIPTION

The **System Permissions** allows to grant some administrative permissions to standard users without making them administrators. The **Default** setting inherits the permission set on the user or user groups. For more information about permissions, consult General Security.



This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).

ENTRIES

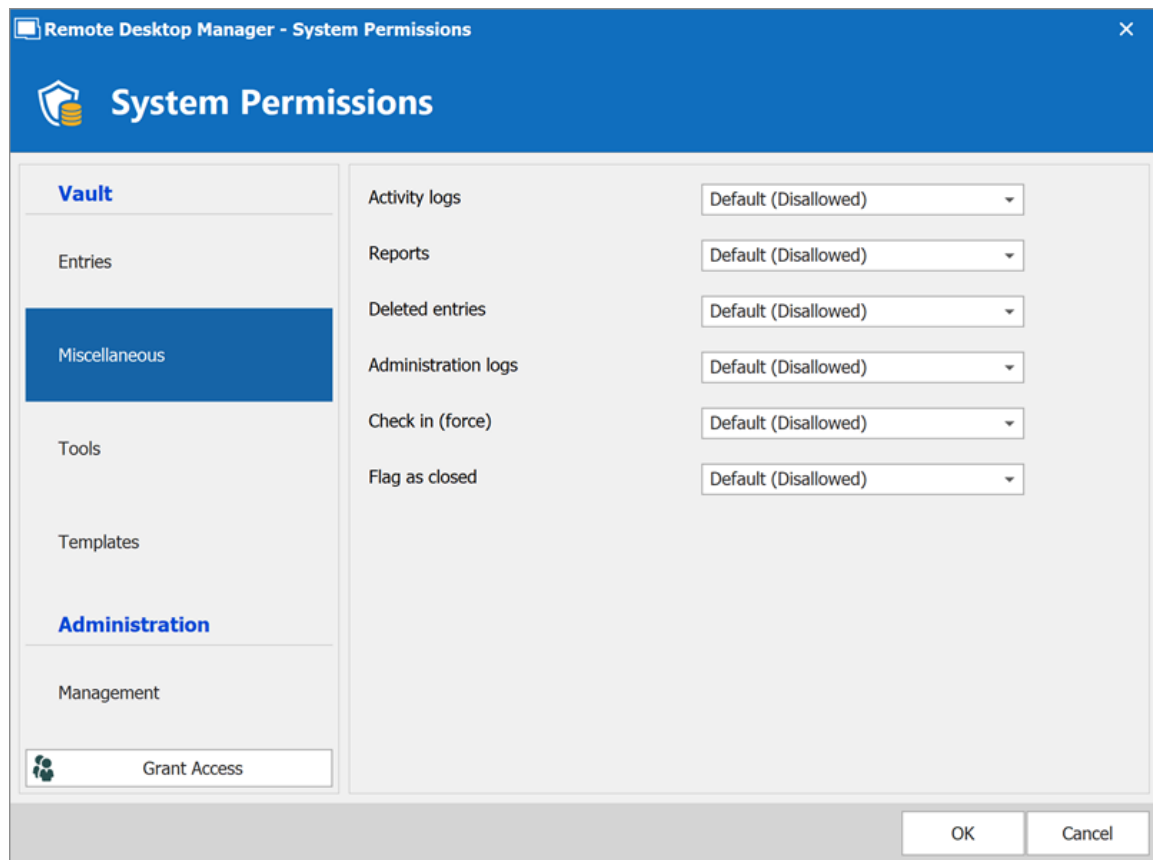


System Permissions - Entries

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|---|
| Import | Allow users/user groups to import entries in the data source. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| Export | Allow users/user groups to export from the data source. |
| Add in root | Allow users/user groups to create entries in the root folder. |
| Vault settings | Allow users/user groups to access the Vault properties. |

MISCELLANEOUS

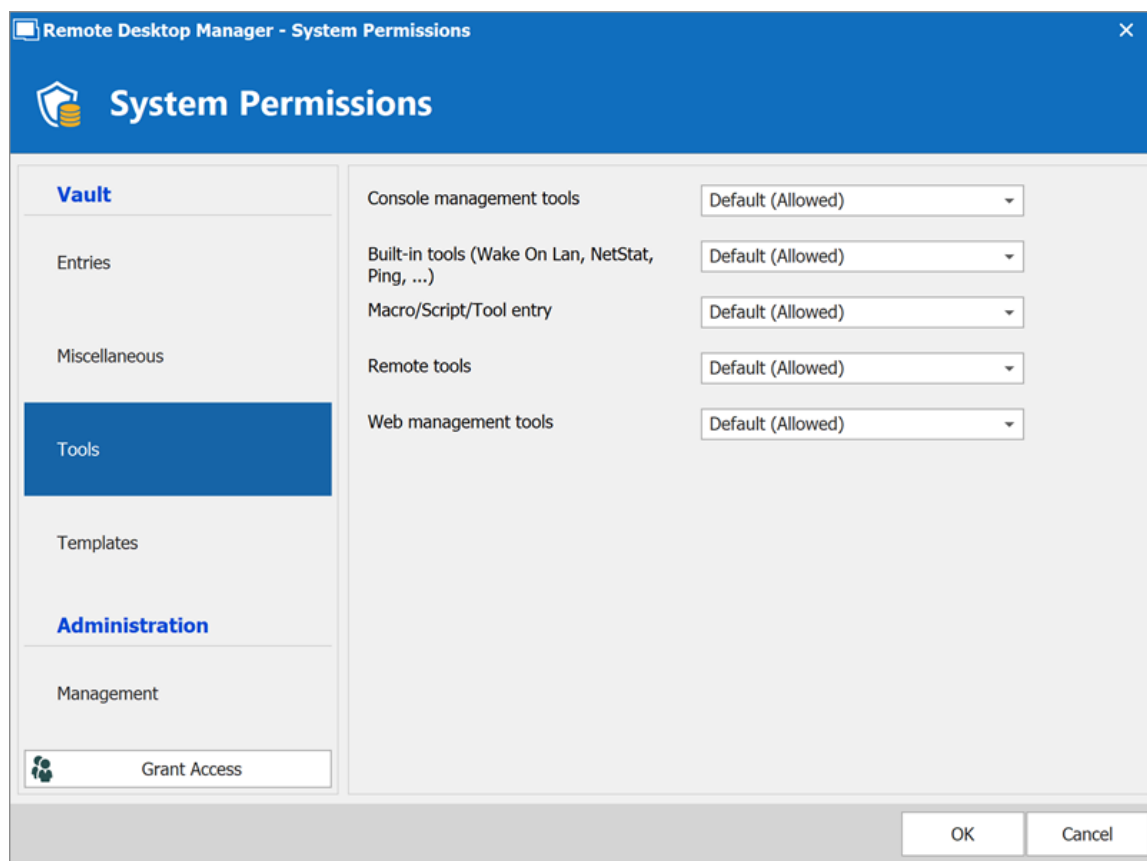


System Permissions - Miscellaneous

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--|
| Activity logs | Allow users/user groups to view the activity logs. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Reports | Allow users/user groups to generate and view reports. |
| View deleted entries | Allow users/user groups to view and restore deleted entries. |
| View administration logs | Allow users/user groups to view the administration logs. |
| Check in (force) | Allow users/user groups to check in entries with the checked out state. |

TOOLS



System Permissions - Tools

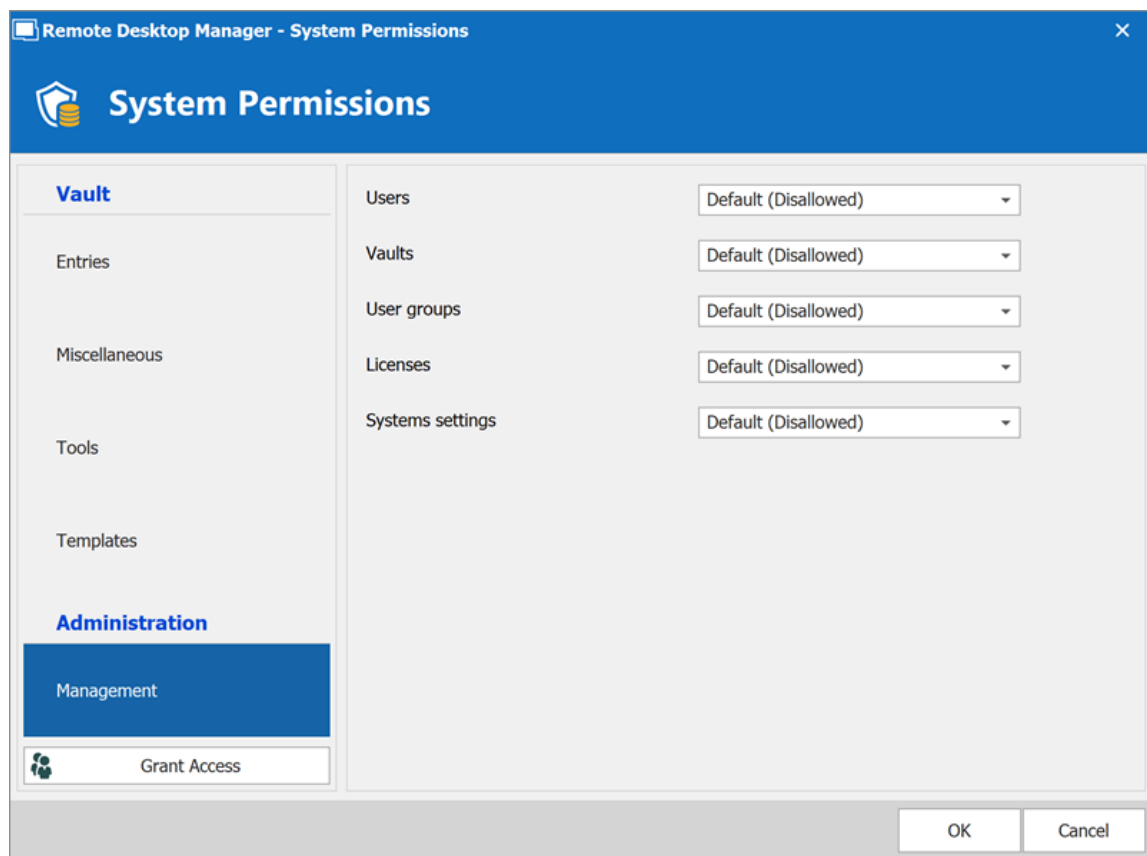
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Console management tools | Allow users/user groups to use console management tools. |
| Built-in tools (Wake-on-LAN, NetStat, Ping, ...) | Allow users/user groups to use session related tools. |
| Macros/Scripts/Tools entry | Allow users/user groups to use Macros/Scripts/Tools entries. |
| Management Tools | Allow users/user groups to use Management Tools. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--|
| Web management tools | Allow users/user groups to use web management tools. |

MANAGEMENT



The **Default** value in **Tools** is equivalent to **Never**.



System Permissions - Management

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| User | Allow users/user groups to access the user management. |
| Security Group | Allow users/user groups to access the security groups management. |
| User Groups | Allow users/user groups to access the user groups management. |
| Vault | Allow users/user groups to manage Vaults. |
| Data source settings (System Settings) | Allow users/user groups to access data source settings. |
| Template | Allow users/user groups to create and manage templates. |
| Password template | Allow users/user groups to create and manage password templates. |

6.7.3.4 Security Providers

DESCRIPTION

The **Security Provider** allows for encrypting the data source content. To access the security provider, navigate to **Administration – Security Provider**.



This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



Regardless of the selected security provider, passwords stored in data sources are **ALWAYS** encrypted using AES 256 bit encryption.



When configuring a Certificate Security Provider in a published app environment (Citrix, RemoteApp, XenApp) as a Security Provider, the user who will run Remote Desktop Manager in the RemoteApp environment (Citrix) will require a **Read permission** on the certificate.

If the **Read permission** isn't correctly set, Remote Desktop Manager will generate the CryptographicException - Keyset does not exist error dialog. Follow the [Certificate Security Provider in a Published app Environment](#) topic to resolve the issue.



By using a security provider, you ensure that nobody can read entries configuration data, even when people have a direct access to the database(s) or a backup. Shared data sources should always be secured with a security provider.



Prior to applying a new or changing an existing security provider, make sure that every users are disconnected from the data source. If you are changing an existing Shared Passphrase or Certificate, please note that users will get back access to the data source when they the new Shared Passphrase or Certificate on their computer.

SETTINGS

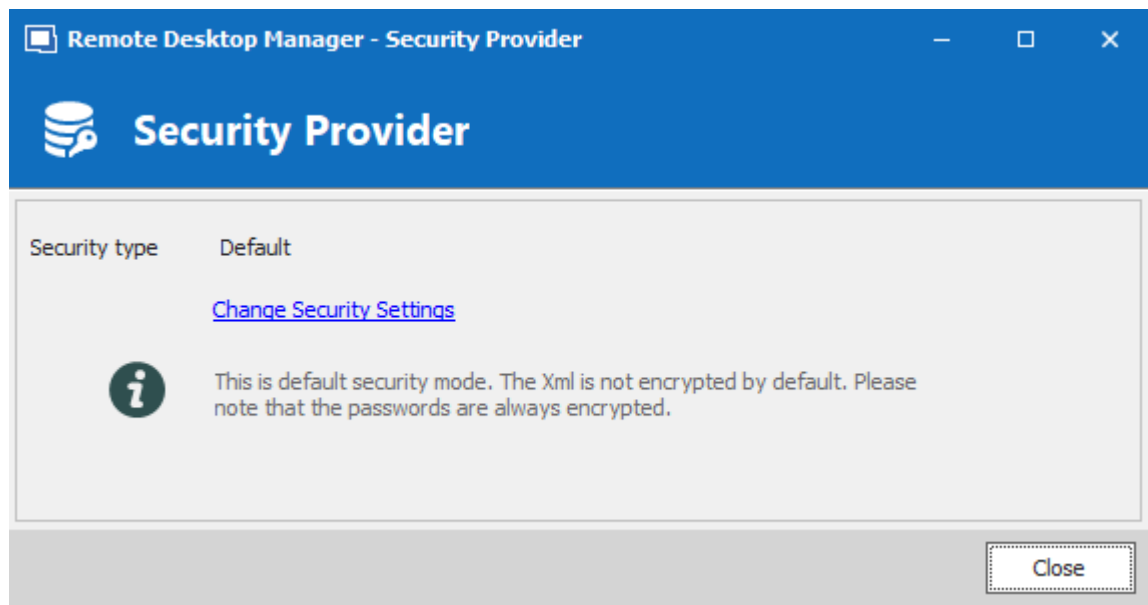


Please note that changing a security provider on a data source with a great number of entries is a lengthy operation.



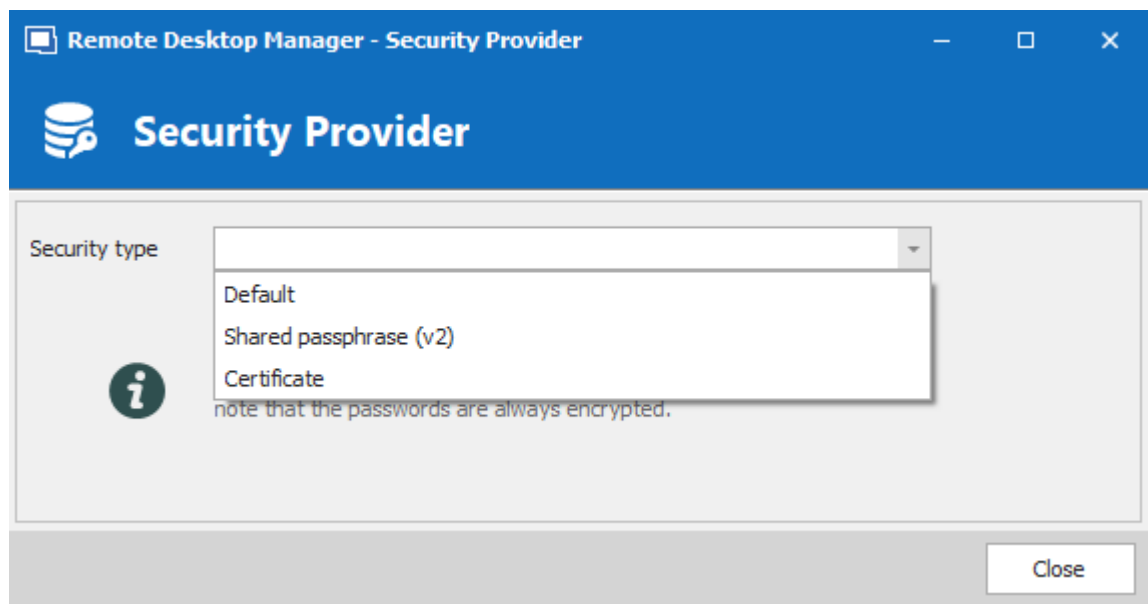
Applying a new security provider does process the whole database, therefore we advise you to create a backup prior to this operation.

1. Click on **Change Security Settings** to change the security provider.



Security Provider

2. Select a security type from the drop down list.



Security Type

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| Default | This is the legacy security provider. The data is encrypted if the entry configuration is set accordingly in the advanced settings of the entries. |
| Shared passphrase | Set up a shared passphrase for the Security Provider. |
| Certificate | Set up a Certificate for the Security Provider. |

SHARED PASSPHRASE



If the passphrase is lost, **nothing** that can be done to recover the data. When using a passphrase, always copy it to a secure location.

Remote Desktop Manager - Security Provider

Security Provider

Passphrase

Confirm

We won't be able to recover your data if you lose your passphrase. Please ensure that you remember or backup your passphrase in a safe place.

☐ Save passphrase in registry

OK Cancel

Security Provider - Shared Passphrase

Entries configuration data is encrypted using a mix of a key stored in Remote Desktop Manager and the passphrase you've entered.

The passphrase is required only when configuring the data source. A policy can be enabled to always prompt for the passphrase when connecting to the data source.

When configuring a security provider with a shared passphrase, you have the choice of whether or not you wish to save it in the registry. Remote Desktop Manager will try first to save it on the LOCAL_MACHINE, if unable it will save it in the CURRENT_USER instead.

- HKEY_CURRENT_USER\SOFTWARE\RemoteDesktopManager<Datasource ID>.shk
- HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\RemoteDesktopManager<Datasource ID>.shk

If the option is not enabled, then the passphrase is saved locally at the following location:

- %LOCALAPPDATA%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager<Datasource ID>.shk

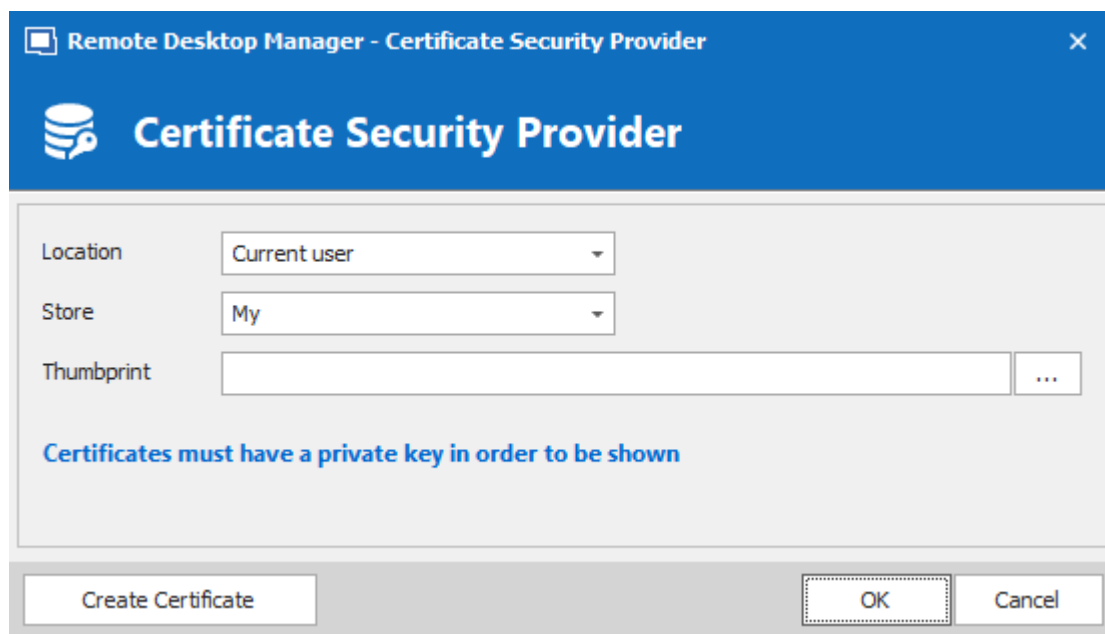
In a Terminal Services environment, it should be saved at this location:

- %APPDATA%\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager<Datasource ID>.shk

In a portable installation of RDM, the passphrase will be saved at the same location as the portable Remote Desktop Manager instance.

CERTIFICATE

When choosing **Certificate** as Security Provider, entries configuration data is encrypted using a mix of a key stored in Remote Desktop Manager and the private key contained in the certificate.

*Security Provider - Certificate*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--|
| Location | Indicate the certificate location. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Current user• Local machine |
| Store | Indicate the store location of the certificate. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Address book• Authorization root• Certificate authority• Disallowed• My• Root• Trusted people |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Trusted publisher |
| Thumbprint | Select an existing RSA certificate. |

CREATE CERTIFICATE

It is possible to create a Self Signed certificate by clicking on **Create Certificate**.

Remote Desktop Manager - Self Signed Certificate

Self Signed Certificate

Common name: localhost

Key size (bits): 2048

Valid from: 6/12/2019

Valid to: 6/19/2029

☒ Save to file (pfx)

Password:

☐ Save to certificate store

Location: Current user

Store: My

Save Cancel

Self Signed Certificate

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Common name | Name of the certificate. |
| Key size (bits) | Indicate the key size (bits) of the certificate. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 384• 512• 1024• 2048• 4096• 8192• 16384 |
| Valid from | Start date of the certificate. |
| Valid to | End date of the certificate. |
| Save to file (pfx) | Save the certificate as a pfx file and secure this certificate with a password. |
| Save to certificate store | Indicate the location and the store to save the certificate. |

6.7.4 Clean up

6.7.4.1 Clean Up Deleted History

DESCRIPTION

The **Deleted History** permanently delete entries that had been previously deleted. Full history is always preserved because every entry "version" is kept in historical tables.



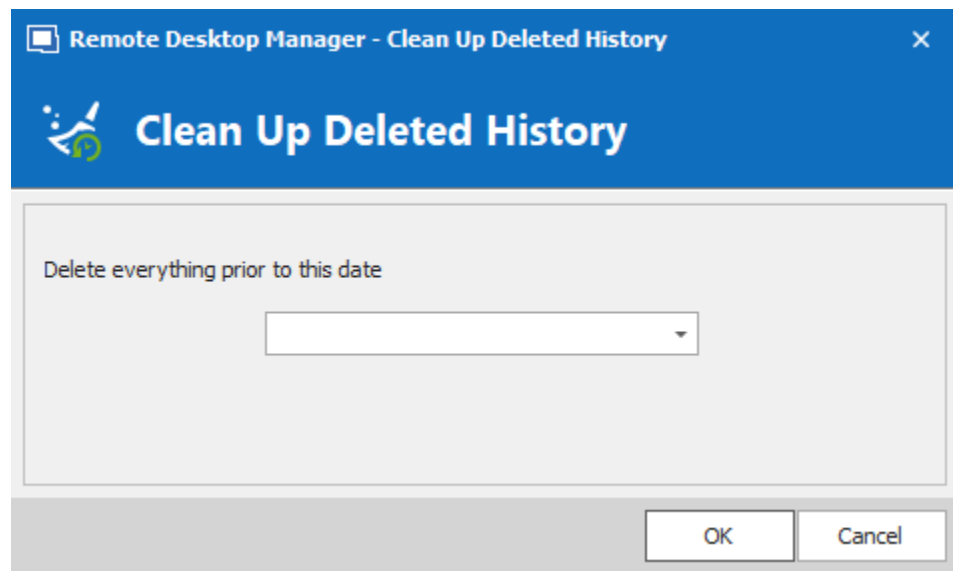
This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



You must be an administrator of the data source to perform this action.

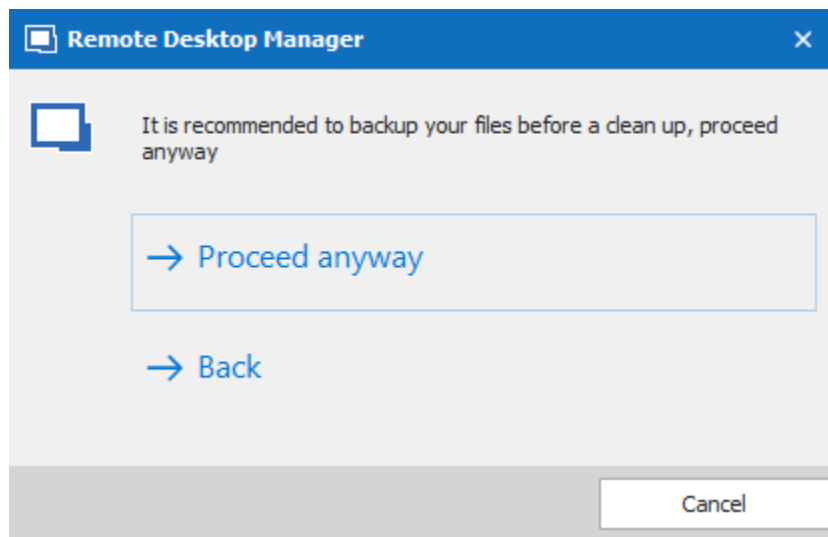
SETTINGS

1. Select prior to which date you wish to permanently delete your deleted entries.



Clean up Deleted History

2. Confirm your choice prior to permanently delete your deleted entries.



Confirmation window



There will be no backup of your History. We strongly recommend to do a [Backup](#) before proceeding.

6.7.4.2 Clean Up Entry History

DESCRIPTION

The **Entry History** deletes the history attached to your entry, you can find the history by right clicking on your entry and selecting **View – Entry history**.



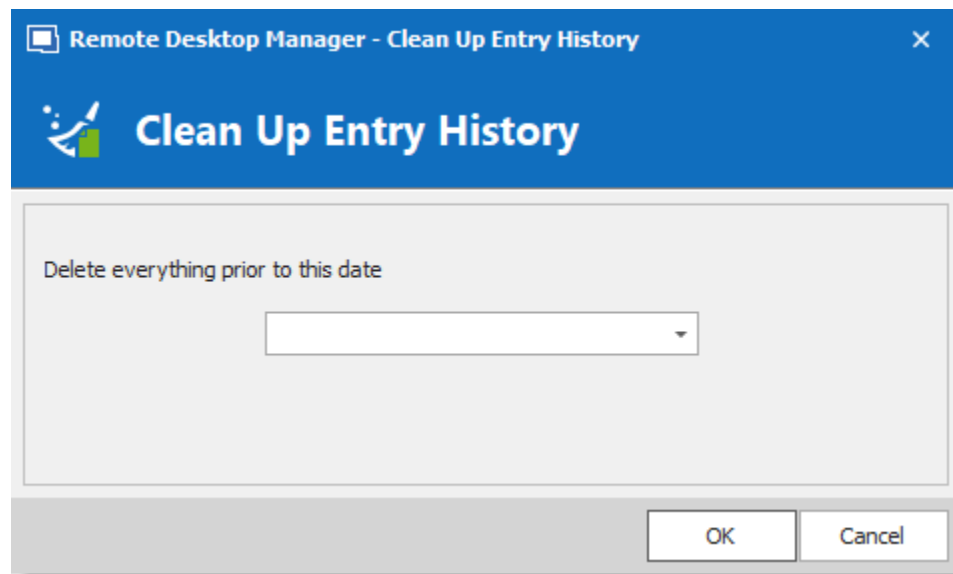
This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



You must be an administrator of the data source to perform this action.

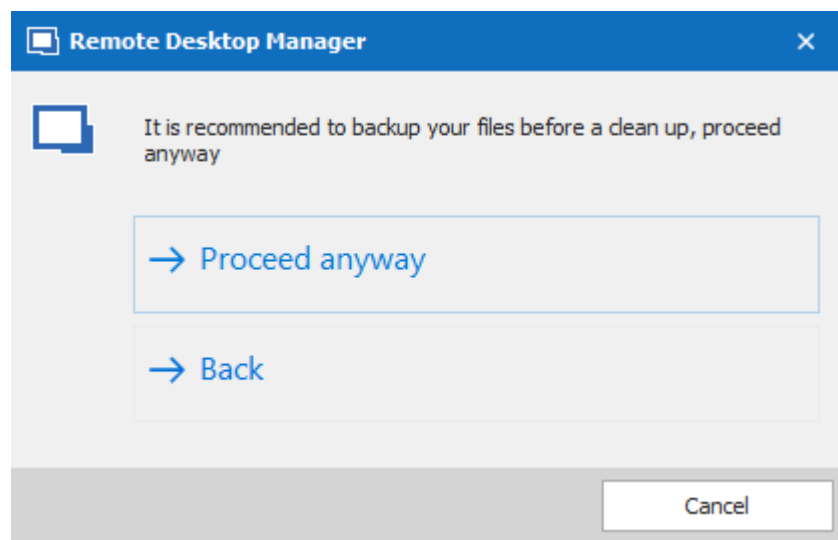
SETTINGS

1. Select prior to which date you wish to permanently delete your Clean up entry history.



Clean up Entry History

2. Another window will appear to confirm your choice of deleting all the history prior to the chosen date.



Confirmation window



No History backup is created. We strongly recommend to do a [Backup](#) before proceeding.

6.7.4.3 Clean Up Activity Logs

DESCRIPTION

The **Clean Up Activity Logs** will delete your data source's Activity Logs, you also have the option to clean up the **Administration logs** and set up a back up if desired..



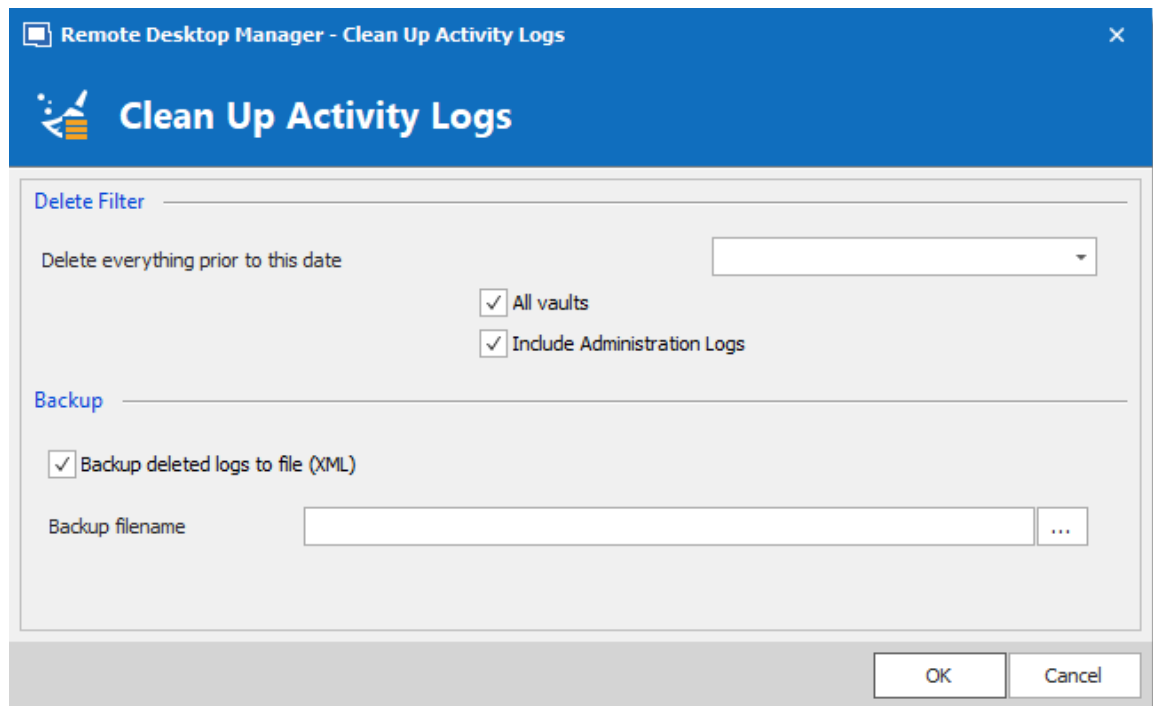
This feature requires an [Advanced Data Source](#).



You must be an administrator of the data source to perform this action.

SETTINGS

1. You must confirm your choice prior to permanently deleting your data source logs.

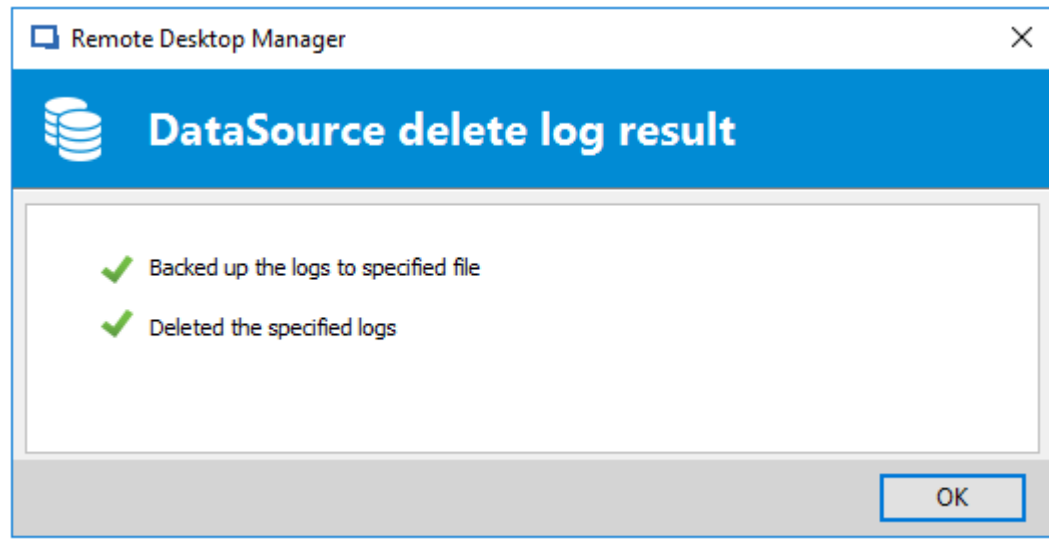


Clean up Data Source logs



A backup of your log will be created as an XML file although it will then be impossible to import this file in Remote Desktop Manager.

2. Once you have entered your Backup file name and proceeded with the clean up a delete log result window will appear.



Data Source Delete log result

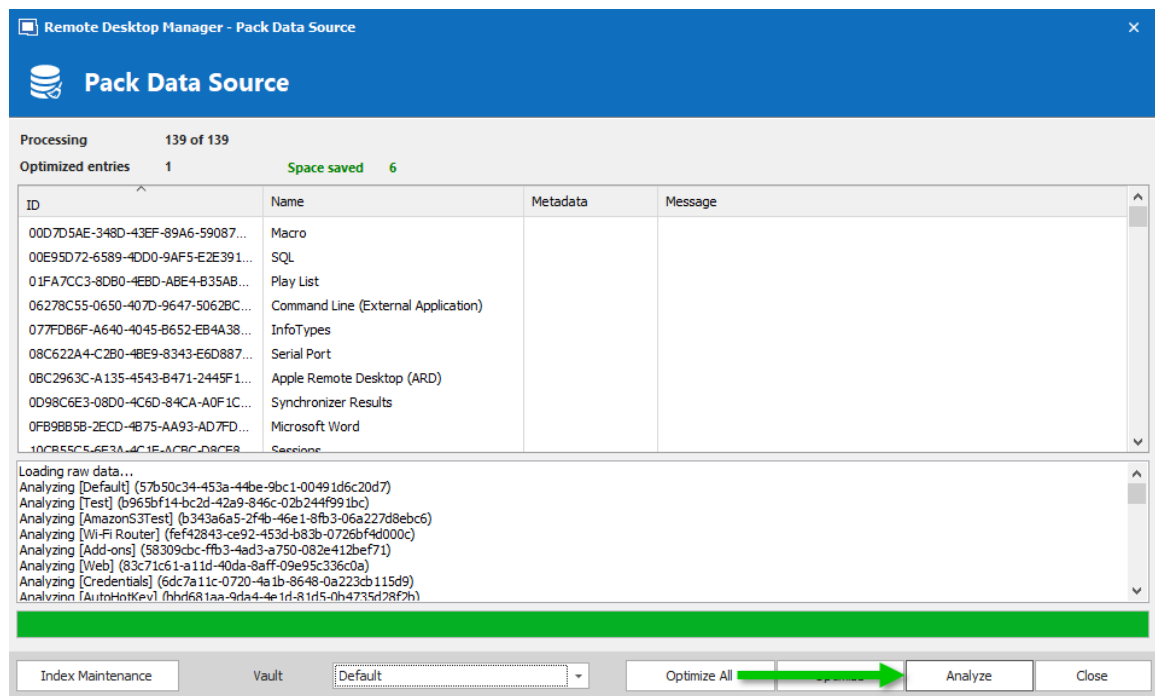
6.7.4.4 Pack Data Source (Optimize)

DESCRIPTION

When holding a great number of entries in your data source it is a best practice to compress them to avoid slowness issues when using your data source. The **Data Source (Optimize)** will analyze all your entries, compress them and then re-saves them, thus saving space in your data source.

SETTINGS

1. Open the data source you wish to optimize. In **Administration** click on **Pack Data Source (Optimize)** and then click on **Analyze**.



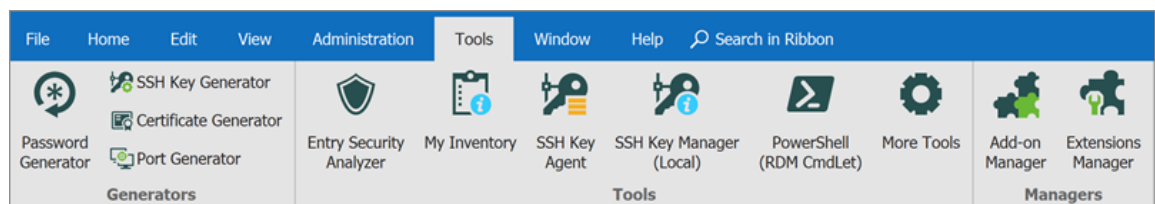
Pack Data Source (Optimize) - Analyze

2. Once the Analyze is completed click on **Optimize** to proceed with the optimization of your data source. You can select which **Vault** you wish to **Analyze** and **Optimize**, or use the **Optimize All** feature to perform the **Optimize** action on all available **Vaults**.

6.8 Tools

DESCRIPTION

The **Tools** tab contains your Add-on and Extensions manager as well as your Devolutions Server Console, Generators and multiple useful tools.



GENERATORS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|--|
| Password Generator | Opens the Password Generator window. You can use this to generate password according to pre-determined criteria for better security. |
| SSH Key Generator | Launches the SSH Key Generator . SSH keys provide a secure way of logging into a virtual private server with SSH than using a password alone. |
| Certificate Generator | Launches the Certificate Generator . With this you can create a self-signed certificate, which is an identity certificate that is signed by the same entity whose identity is certified. |
| Port Generator | Launches the Port Generator . With this you can generate ports for your connections. |

TOOLS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Entry Security Analyzer | Opens the Entry Security Analyzer . This is used to evaluate the strength of passwords stored in the data source. |
| My Inventory | Set up a My Inventory report. |
| SSH Key Agent and Manager | Opens the Key Agent Manager . This is used to hold all your SSH Keys in memory, already decoded and ready for them to be used. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|--|
| PowerShell (RDM CmdLet) | Opens the PowerShell (RDM CmdLet) . |
| More Tools | The More Tools window contains a variety of application tools such as: Chocolatey Console , Local RDP/RemoteApp Manager , Playback (Ansi) , RDM Agent and more. |

MANAGERS

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|--|
| Add-on Manager | Opens the Add-on Manager. It is used to simplify the management of different add-ons. |
| Extensions Manager | Opens the Extensions Manager. This is used to simplify the management and installation of Web Browser extensions and other miscellaneous extensions. |

6.8.1 Generators

6.8.1.1 Password Generator

DESCRIPTION

The **Password Generator** is available in the **Tools – Password Generator** menu. It allows to create random passwords that are and difficult to interpret or predict, due to a mix of uppercase and lowercase letters, numbers and punctuation symbols.

You can also create password generator templates to generate passwords. After you have selected your mode and settings, you can then create your template.

MODE

DEFAULT

Customize all criteria you would want your password to have.

Remote Desktop Manager - Password Generator

Password Generator

Template: Default + X

Mode: Default

Minimum length: 8

Minimum lowercase characters: 1

Minimum uppercase characters: 1

Minimum numeric characters: 3

Minimum symbols: 1

| | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| B4m78v-K | xYq345t- | -4z-24K | j2yD3A4- |
| 7-L80dhI | bj-F24C5 | 7j-62PY | tv6nV-51 |
| d_y352cK | U6_7v06p | 5D01s_yD | 593WzZ_N |
| KT6_o00m | U10_Rz7u | W_6et1S0 | 1wc_8sU6 |
| @66P6knt | p002.Qbp | 7G5H22.f | @N7n7a,7 |
| 6u74/XO1 | K6T+10yV | e455%Y4G | !50L9rD# |

Generate

Copy to Clipboard

Very Strong

BRAVO | four | mike | seven | eight | victor | hyphen | KILO

Count: 30

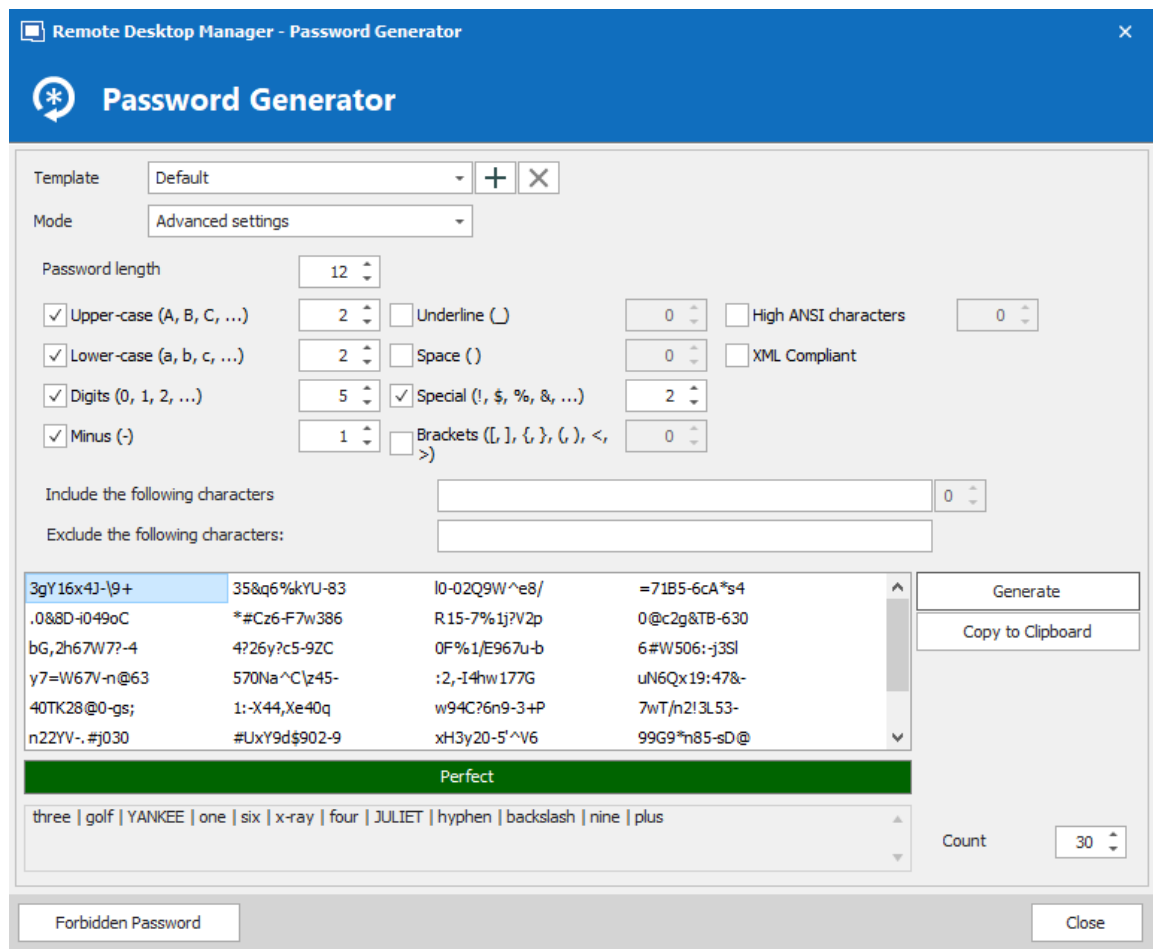
Forbidden Password

Close

Password Generator - Default

ADVANCED SETTINGS

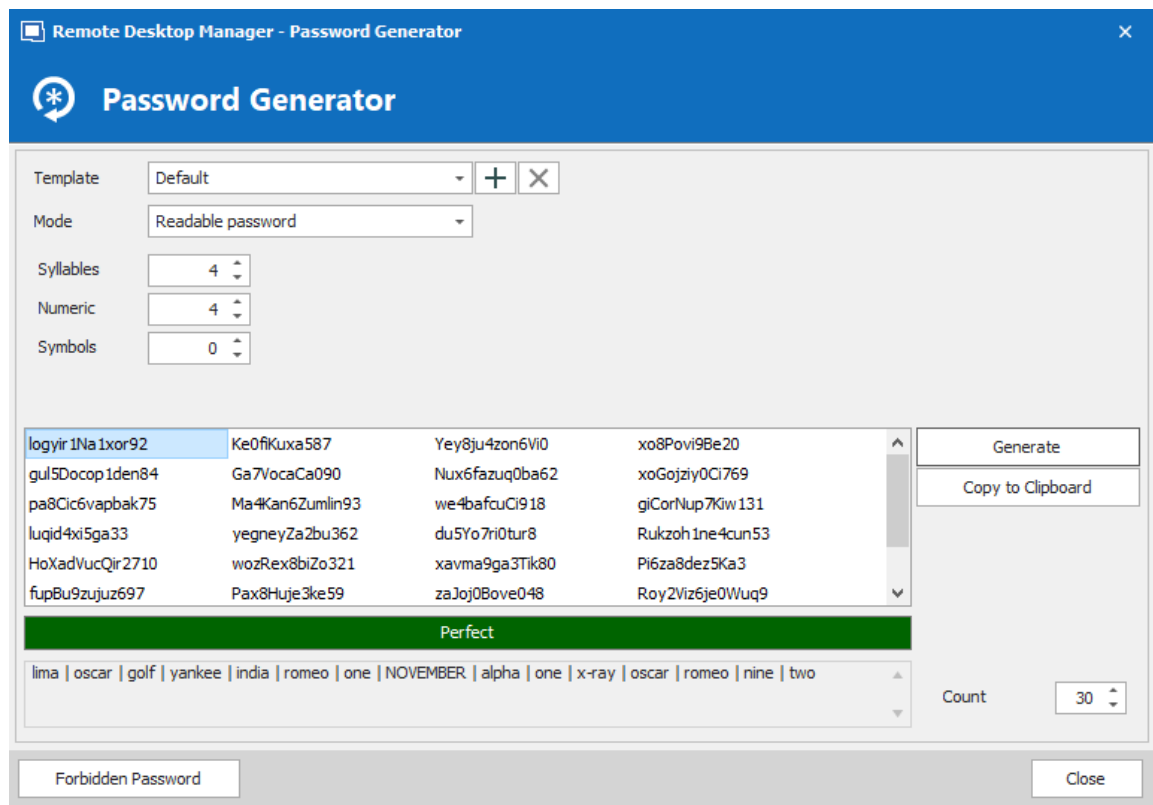
Select the type and amount of characters to include in the password.



Password Generator - Advanced Settings


READABLE PASSWORD

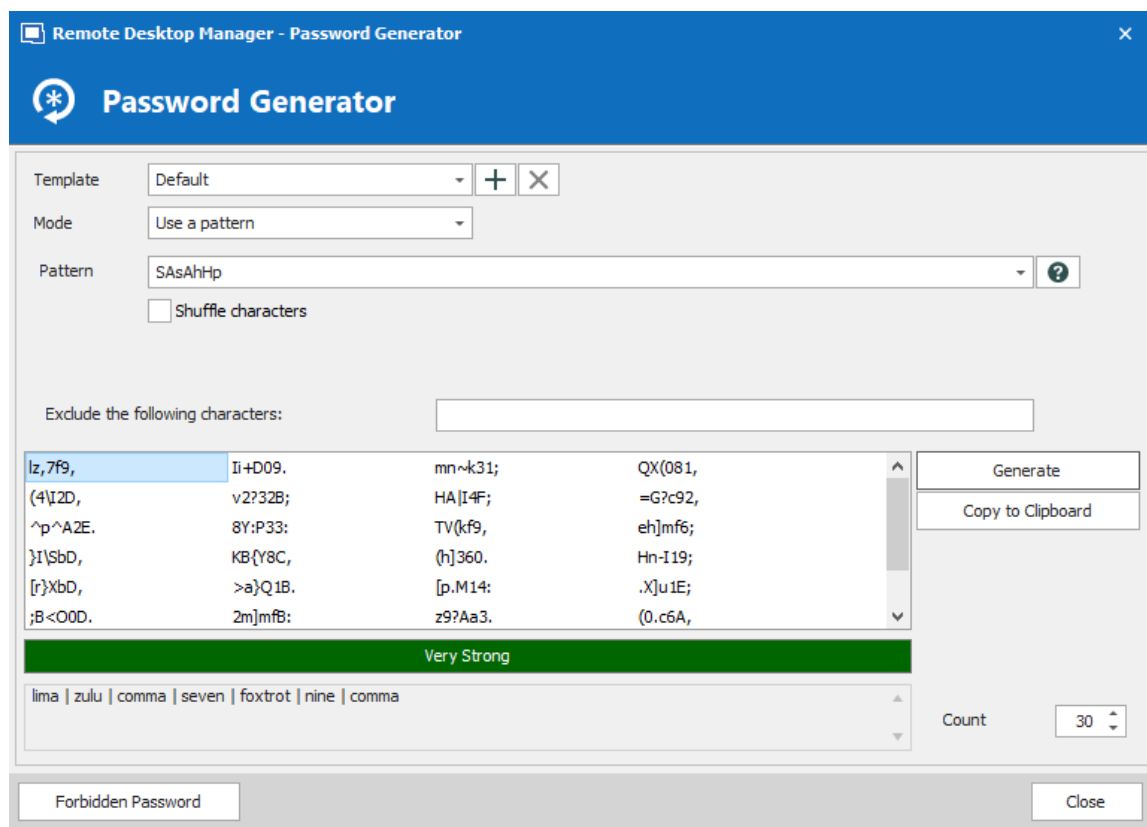
Generate passwords that are readable but are not actual words.



Password Generator - Readable password

USE A PATTERN

Press the  button and select any pattern you need to create the passwords, you can also exclude certain characters if desired. A list of the most recent used pattern will also be created.



Password Generator - Use a pattern

The following are supported patterns:

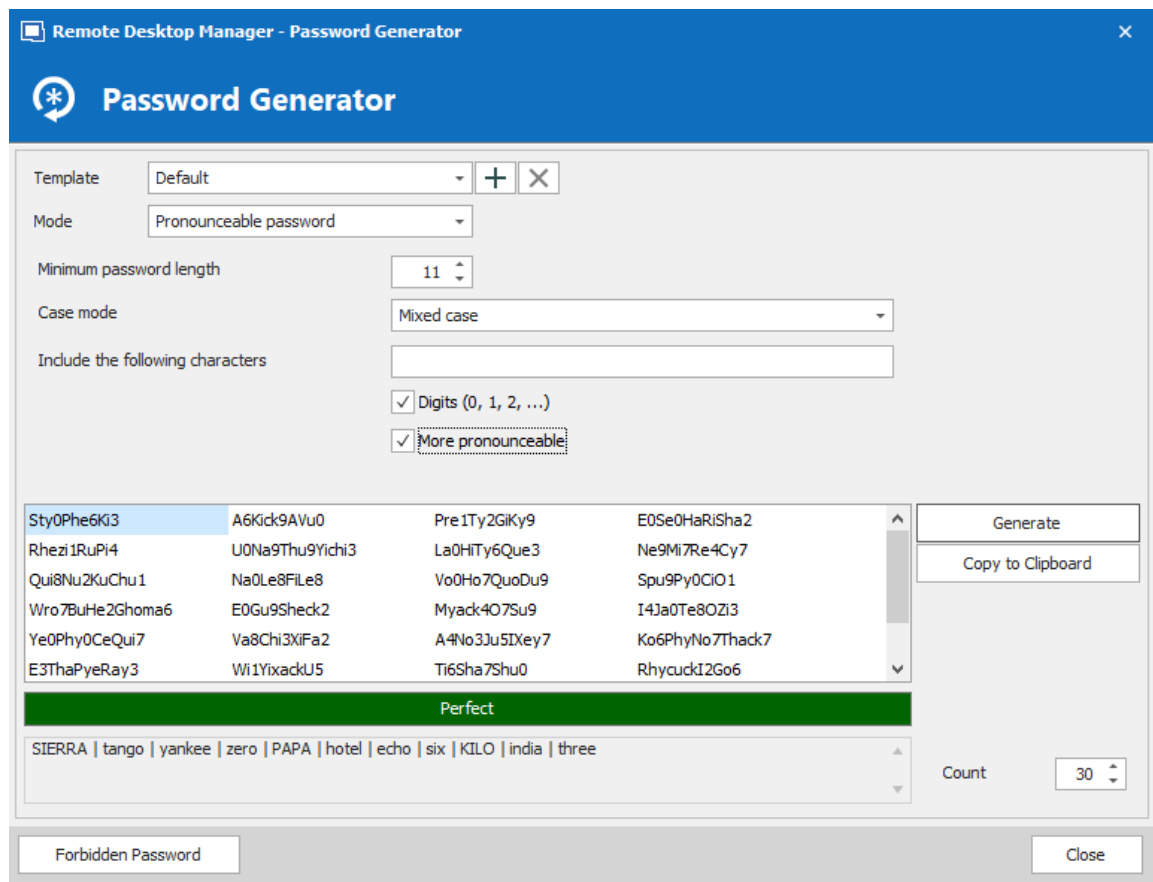
| DESCRIPTION | KEY | SAMPLE |
|--------------------------------|-----|--|
| Lower-Case Alphanumeric | a | abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789 |
| Mixed-Case Alphanumeric | A | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghi
jklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789 |
| Bracket | b | ()[]{}<> |
| Lower-Case Consonant | c | bcd fghjklmnpqrstwxyz |

| DESCRIPTION | KEY | SAMPLE |
|--|-----|---|
| Mixed-Case Consonant | C | BCDFGHJKLMNPQRSTUVWXYZ bcdghjklmnpqrs
twxyz |
| Digit | d | 123456789 |
| Lower-Case Hex Character | h | 0123456789 abcdef |
| Upper-Case Hex Character | H | 0123456789 ABCDEF |
| Lower-Case Letter | l | abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz |
| Mixed-Case Letter | L | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghi
jklmnopqrstuvwxyz |
| Punctuation | p | ,.:: |
| Printable 7-Bit Special Character | s | !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?[\]^_{}~ |
| Printable 7-Bit ASCII | S | A-Z, a-z, 0-9, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?[\]^_{}~ |
| Upper-Case Letter | u | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Upper-Case Alphanumeric | U | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
0123456789 |
| Lower-Case Vowel | v | aeiou |

| DESCRIPTION | KEY | SAMPLE |
|----------------------|-----|--|
| Mixed-Case Vowel | V | AEIOU aeiou |
| High ANSI | x | From '~' to U255 (excluding U255) |
| Upper-Case Consonant | z | BCDFGHJKLMNPQRSTVWXYZ |
| Upper-Case Vowel | Z | AEIOU |
| Escape (Fixed Char) | \ | Use following character as is |
| Escape (Repeat) | {n} | Repeats the previous character n times |
| Custom character | [x] | Define a custom character sequence |

PRONOUNCEABLE PASSWORD

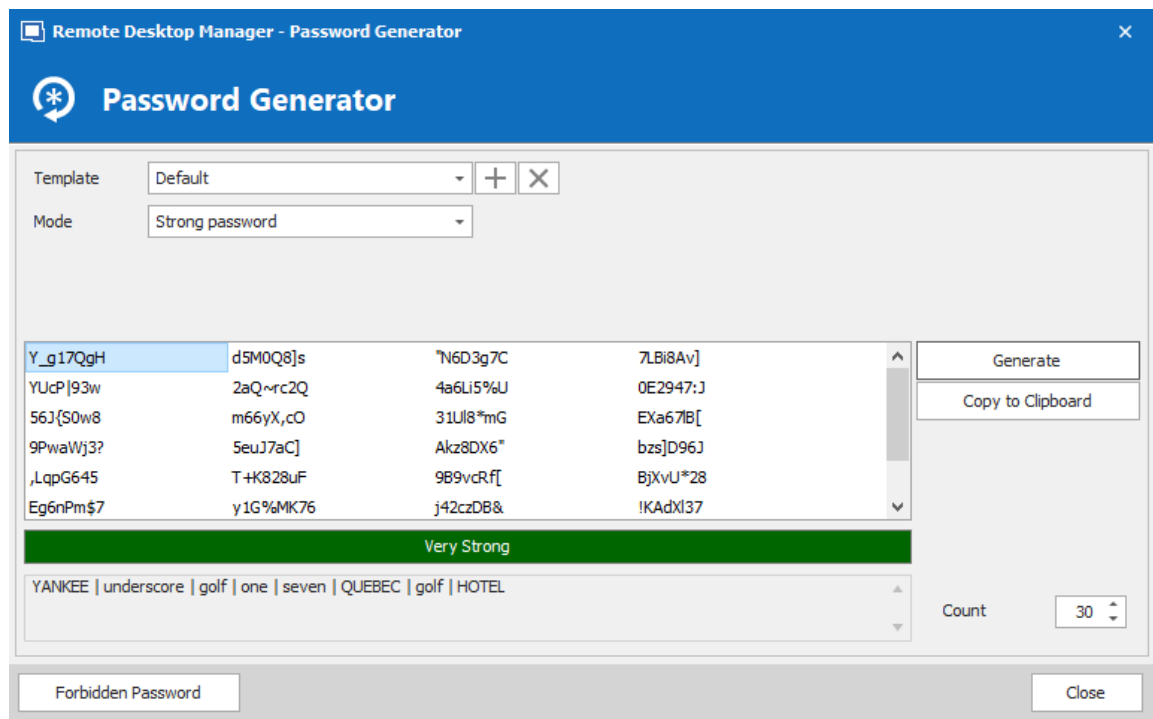
Generate passwords that are pronounceable, but are not actual words.



Password Generator - Pronounceable password

STRONG PASSWORD

Generate an 8 character passwords with alphanumeric and special characters.



Password Generator - Strong password

6.8.1.2 SSH Key Generator

DESCRIPTION

SSH keys provide a secure way of logging into a virtual private server with SSH than using a password alone. While a password can eventually be cracked with a brute force attack, SSH keys are nearly impossible to decipher by brute force alone.

SETTINGS

SSH Key Generator

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|--|
| Key algorithm | <p>You can choose between:</p> <p>RSA: RSA can be used for signing/verification and also for encryption/decryption. When using RSA it is recommended to use a 2048 bits key size.</p> <p>DSA: It is faster in signing but slower in verifying. It can only be used for signing/verification it <u>does not encrypt/decrypt</u>. When using DSA it is a recommended to use a 1024 bits key size.</p> |
| Key size | You can choose your SSH Key size between: |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|--|
| | 1024 bits: Minimum key size
2048 bits: Default and recommended key size
4096 bits: Maximum key size |
| Comment | Enter your username and the name of the computer you're transferring your key to. |
| Load Private Key | This feature will allow you to import a previously saved SSH Key. |
| Save Public Key | Saving the public key will generate a *.pub file. Simply enter a file name when prompted. |
| Save Private Key | You will have the option of saving your Private Key in different format, choose between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• PKCS #8 Private Key (*.pri)• PuTTY Private Key (*.ppk)• OpenSSH Private Key (*.pri) |

If you did not specify a passphrase you will have to confirm that you do not wish to use a passphrase.



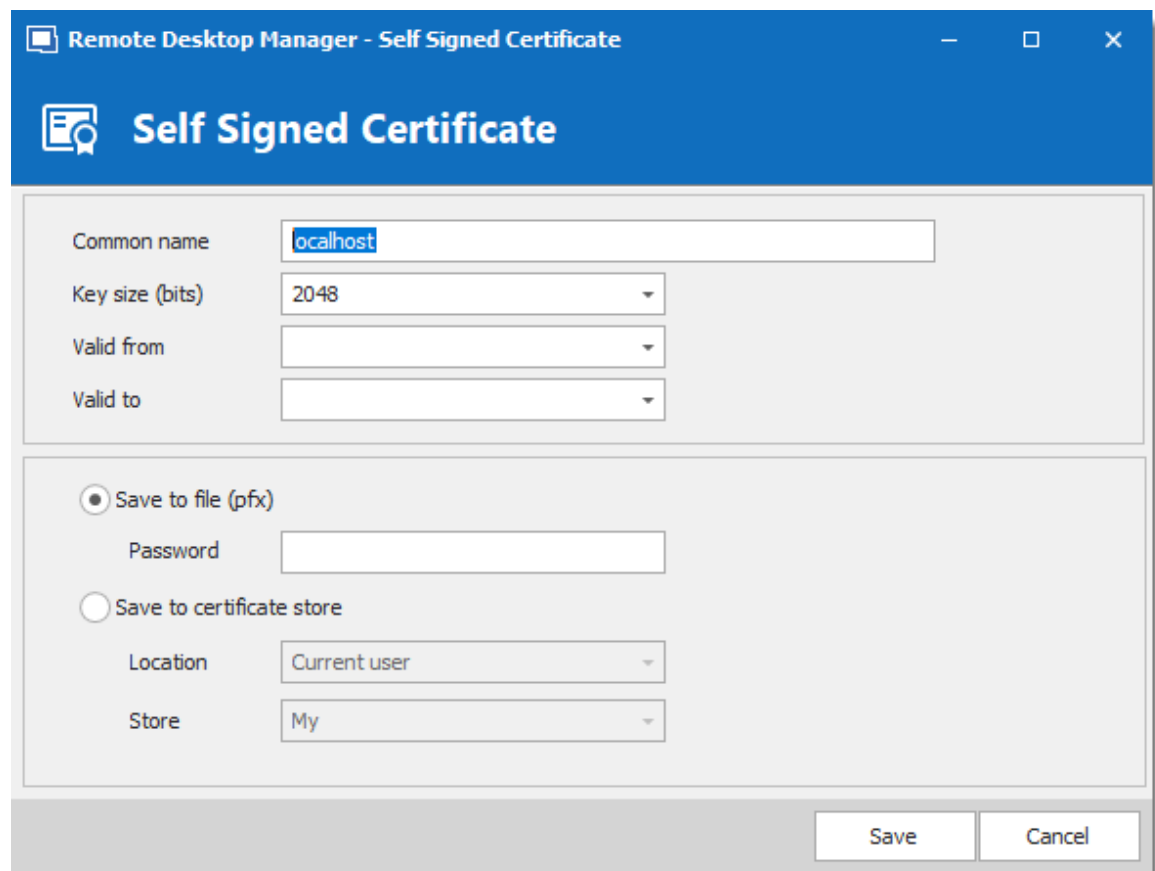
If using the [Key Agent Manager](#) you must chose the PuTTY Private Key (.ppk) file format or the OpenSSH Private Key (.pri) file format. The PKCS Private Key is not a supported file format for the Key Agent Manager.

6.8.1.3 Certificate Generator

DESCRIPTION

The **Certificate Generator** allows you to create a self signed certificate which is an identity certificate that is signed by the same entity whose identity is certified.

SETTINGS



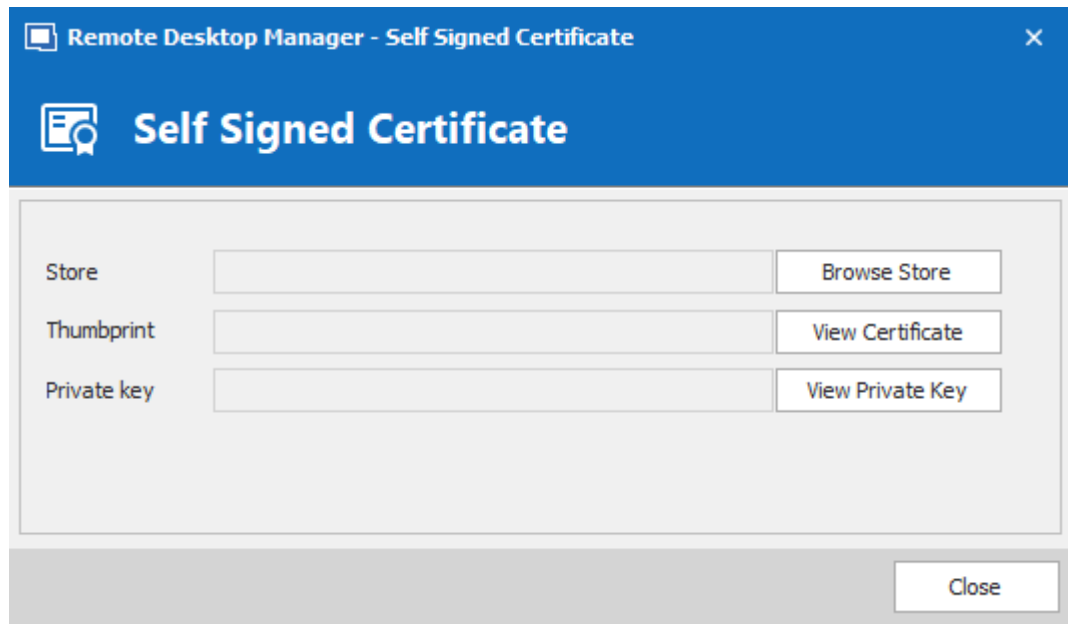
The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Remote Desktop Manager - Self Signed Certificate". The dialog has a blue header bar with a white icon of a document and a magnifying glass, followed by the text "Self Signed Certificate". Below the header, there are four input fields: "Common name" with the value "localhost", "Key size (bits)" with a dropdown menu showing "2048", "Valid from" with an empty dropdown, and "Valid to" with an empty dropdown. Below these fields, there are two radio buttons: "Save to file (pfx)" which is selected, and "Save to certificate store". Under "Save to file (pfx)", there is a "Password" input field. Under "Save to certificate store", there are two dropdown menus: "Location" with the value "Current user" and "Store" with the value "My". At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

Certificate Generator - Self Signed Certificate

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|---|
| Common name | Name of the certificate. |
| Key size (bits) | Indicates the key size (bits) of the certificate. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1024• 2048 |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 4096• 8192• 16384 |
| Valid from | Starting date of the certificate. |
| Valid to | Expiration date of the certificate. |
| Save to file (pfx) | Save the certificate into a *.pfx file and secure this certificate with a password. |
| Save to certificate store | Indicate the location and the store to save the certificate. |
| Location | Indicate the location of the certificate. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Current user• Local machine |
| Store | Indicate the store location of the certificate. Select between: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Address book• Authorization root• Certificate authority• Disallowed• My• Root |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trusted people • Trusted publisher |



Self Signed Certificate

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Store | Indicate the store where the certificate will be located. |
| Browse Store | Browse the store that is indicated in the store field. |
| Thumbprint | Display the certificate thumbprint. |
| View Certificate | Display the certificate that you have created. |
| Private Key | Display the certificate private key |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| View Private Key | View the private key file on your computer. |

6.8.1.4 Port Generator

DESCRIPTION

The Port Generator allows you to generate ports for your connections.

SETTINGS

Remote Desktop Manager - Port Generator

Port Generator

☒ Boundaries To

☐ Include well known ports

☐ Include registered ports

☐ Include ports used by others sessions

| | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1152 | 22961 | 36353 | 49608 | 62283 |
| 4286 | 25033 | 38512 | 49617 | 62632 |
| 6302 | 25893 | 39234 | 49954 | 64116 |
| 10842 | 29762 | 44634 | 55373 | 64878 |
| 14378 | 34577 | 45921 | 57001 | |
| 16419 | 35026 | 46615 | 58310 | |
| 20926 | 36136 | 49088 | 58744 | |

Port Generator

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Boundaries | Determinate the port range to generate the ports between those 2 numbers. |
| Include well known ports | Include ports from range 0 to 1023. They are the well-known ports or system ports. They are used by system processes that provide widely used types of network services |
| Include registered ports | Include ports from range 1024 to 49151. They are assigned by IANA for specific service upon application by a requesting entity. On most systems, registered ports can be used by ordinary users. |
| Include ports used by others sessions | Include the ports that are already used by other sessions. |

6.8.2 Tools

6.8.2.1 Devolutions Localizer

DESCRIPTION

Devolutions Localizer is our custom translation tool for our applications. We welcome you to contribute to the Devolutions community by translating our tools for the benefit of other users just like you around the world.

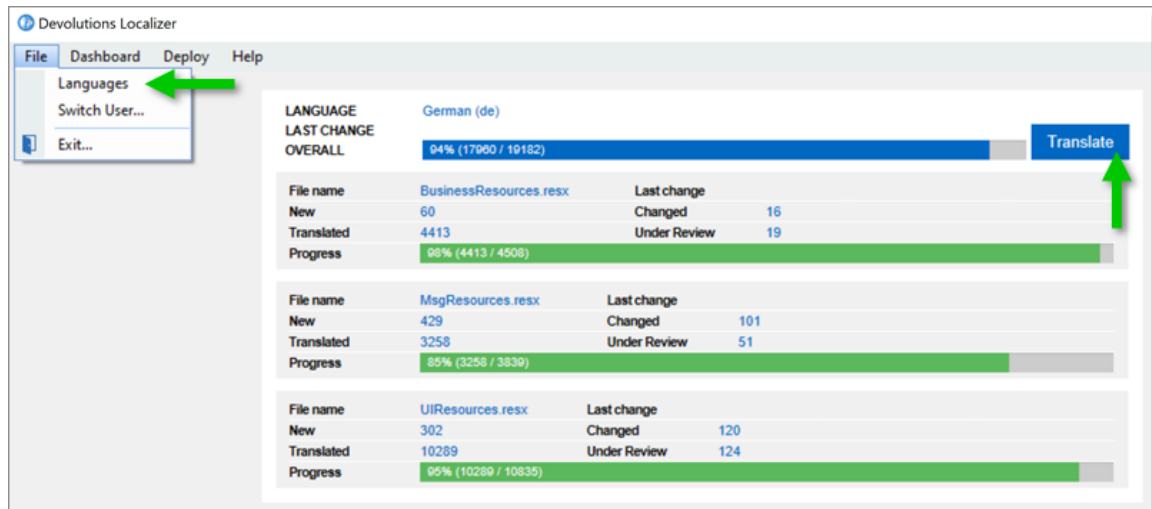
Download the [Devolutions Localizer](#) translation tool to get started!



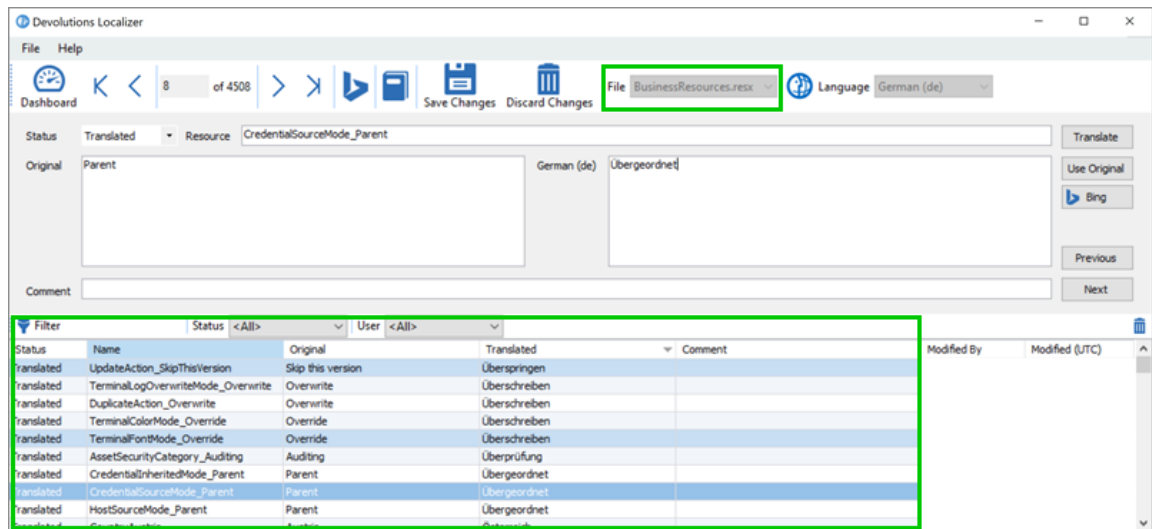
A free [Devolutions Account](#) is required to log in to the Devolutions Localizer tool.

TRANSLATE

1. In **File - Languages** select the language to translate, then click on the **Translate** button.



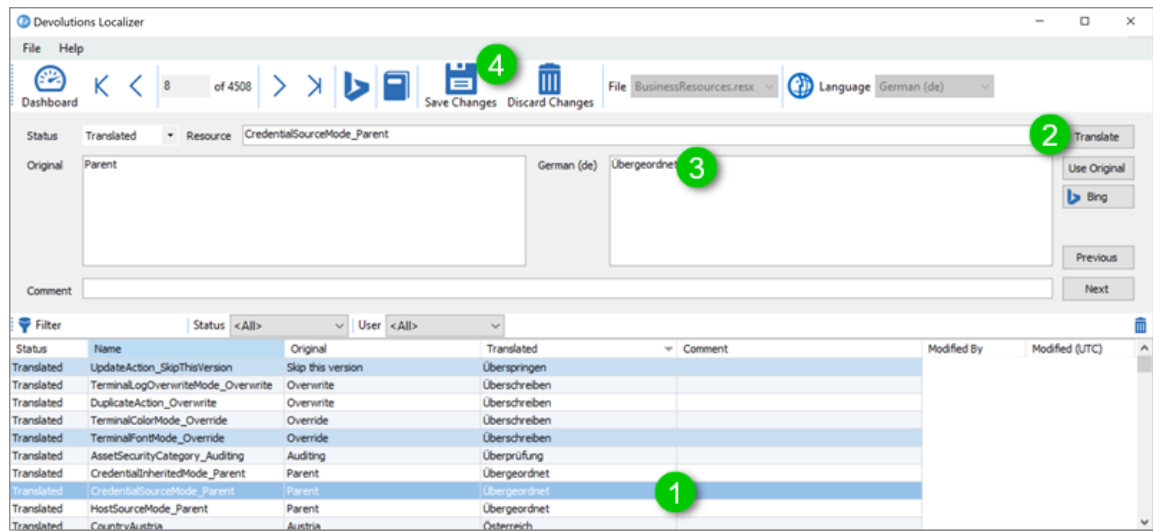
2. Choose from which file to translate, then in the lower part, you will be able to filter and review the content already translated or in need of translation.



3. To start select a **Resource** line in the bottom list and click **Translate**. The original text will appear in the left window, type the translated text in the right window.



A **Bing** button is available to assist you translating your text.



- When done, change the status to **Translated** for this resource and click **Save Changes**. This will send your translation to our server and it will be deployed with the next release version of our applications.

PREVIEW

You can preview your changes in Remote Desktop Manager prior to the release or view the ones already in place but not yet released.

- Close your Remote Desktop Manager.
- In the Devolutions Localizer **Dashboard** click **Deploy - Generate & Start** to view your changes, or **Start (use existing)** to view unreleased changes.

To change the language of your Remote Desktop Manager application to reflect the one you were translating go to **File - Options - User Interface - Language**. Select the language and click **OK**. You will need to restart the application for this to take effect.

KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS

Devolutions Localizer also features several keyboard shortcuts to speed up the translation process:

- **CTRL+D**: Mark current resource as **Translated**.

- **CTRL+E**: Mark current resource as ***Use original***, this ignores any translation text and will display the original value as is.
- **CTRL+DOWN**: Jump to the next resource.
- **CTRL+UP**: Jump back to the previous resource.
- **CTRL+B**: Request a Bing translation for the current resource.
- **CTRL+S**: Save all pending changes.
- **CTRL+F**: Enable/disable filtering.

6.8.2.2 Entry Security Analyzer

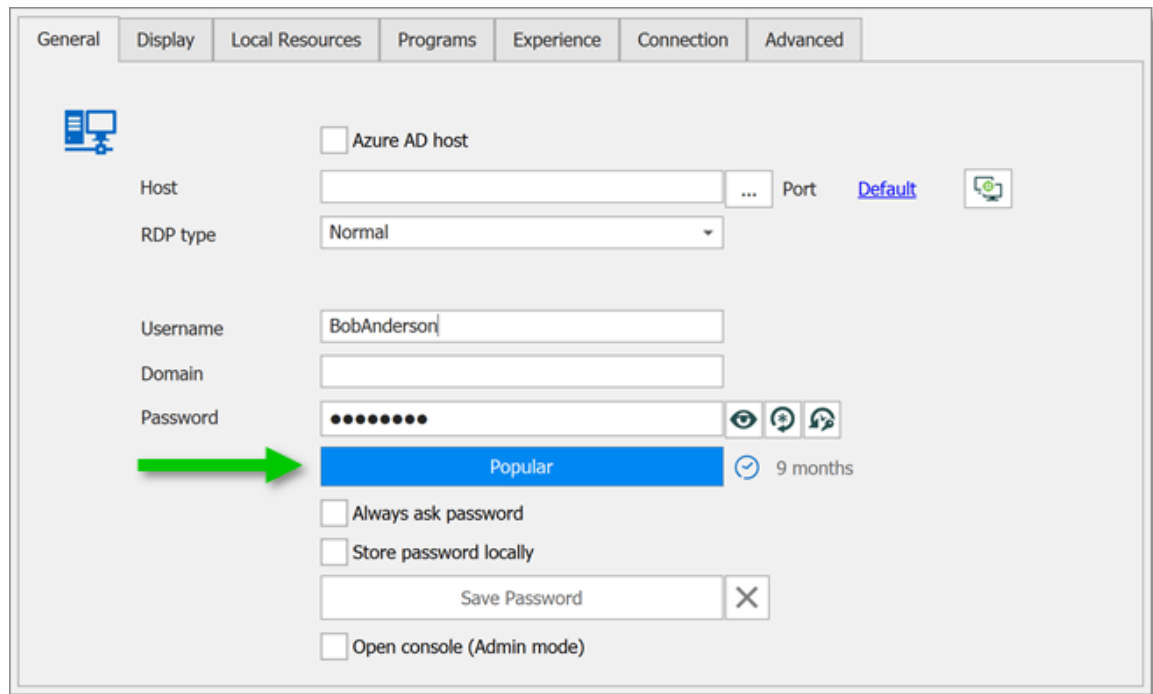
DESCRIPTION



The information in this topic is how the "Legacy" mode of password analysis works. The mode can be changed in the System Settings for ZXCVCBN . The "Legacy" mode is not the default mode.

The ***Entry Security Analyzer*** evaluates the strength of passwords stored in the data source. To access the password analyzer, navigate the ***Tools*** tab.

A strenght password control is also displayed under most password fields of entries.



The **Entry Security Analyzer** follows a set of rules to determine the strength of the password with a score from 0 to 100. There are two categories of rules.

REINFORCE

These are the rules which make the passwords stronger:

- The password length
- The number of uppercase letters (A-Z)
- The number of lowercase letters (a-z)
- The number of digits (0-9)
- The number of symbols (!, @, #, \$, etc.)
- The number of digits or symbols in the middle of the password
- Three or more of the rules above are met

The minimum requirements for a Strong password are:

- The password is at least 5 characters long

- The password contains uppercase and lowercase characters
- The password contains digits

WEAKENING

These are the rules which make the passwords weaker:

- The password contains only letters
- The password contains only digits
- The password has repeated characters
- The password has consecutive uppercase letters (two or more)
- The password has consecutive lowercase letters (two or more)
- The password has consecutive digits (two or more)
- The password has sequential letters (ABCD, DCBA)
- The password has sequential digits (1234, 4321)

SETTINGS

Entry Security Analyzer

Settings: ☐ Show all entries, ☐ Show VPN analysis, ☒ Show compromised password (pinned). Status:

Summary:

| Category | Count |
|--------------|-------|
| Total | 747 |
| Weak | 89 |
| Popular | 547 |
| Reused | 665 |
| Old password | 0 |
| Compromised | 641 |

Analysis Table:

| Name | Folder | Username | Password Date | Since | Occurrence | Password Strength | Password Length | Is Compromised | Expiration | Status | Description |
|------|--------|----------|---------------|----------|------------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| | | | | Just now | 534 | Popular | 6 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 6 | Strong | 10 | | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 2 | Very Weak | 7 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 1 | Weak | 4 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 17 | Weak | 9 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 1 | Strong | 12 | | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 534 | Popular | 6 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 1 | Weak | 6 | | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 17 | Weak | 9 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 1 | Weak | 10 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 17 | Weak | 9 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 17 | Weak | 9 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 534 | Popular | 6 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 534 | Popular | 6 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 17 | Weak | 9 | PIPED | | | |
| | | | | Just now | 1 | Very Strong | 16 | | | | |

Forbidden Passwords | Export Settings

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Show all entries | Shows you all the entries in your session, including those without password. |
| Show VPN analysis | Add the VPN Host column. |
| Show compromised password (pwned) | Show if the password has been pwned. A pwned password is a password that has been exposed in data breaches (i.e., they are owned/pwned by hackers). |
| Edit | Open the current entry to edit it. |
| Forbidden Passwords | Create a list of prohibited passwords. |
| Export Settings | Export the password analyzer settings. |

6.8.2.3 Key Agent Manager

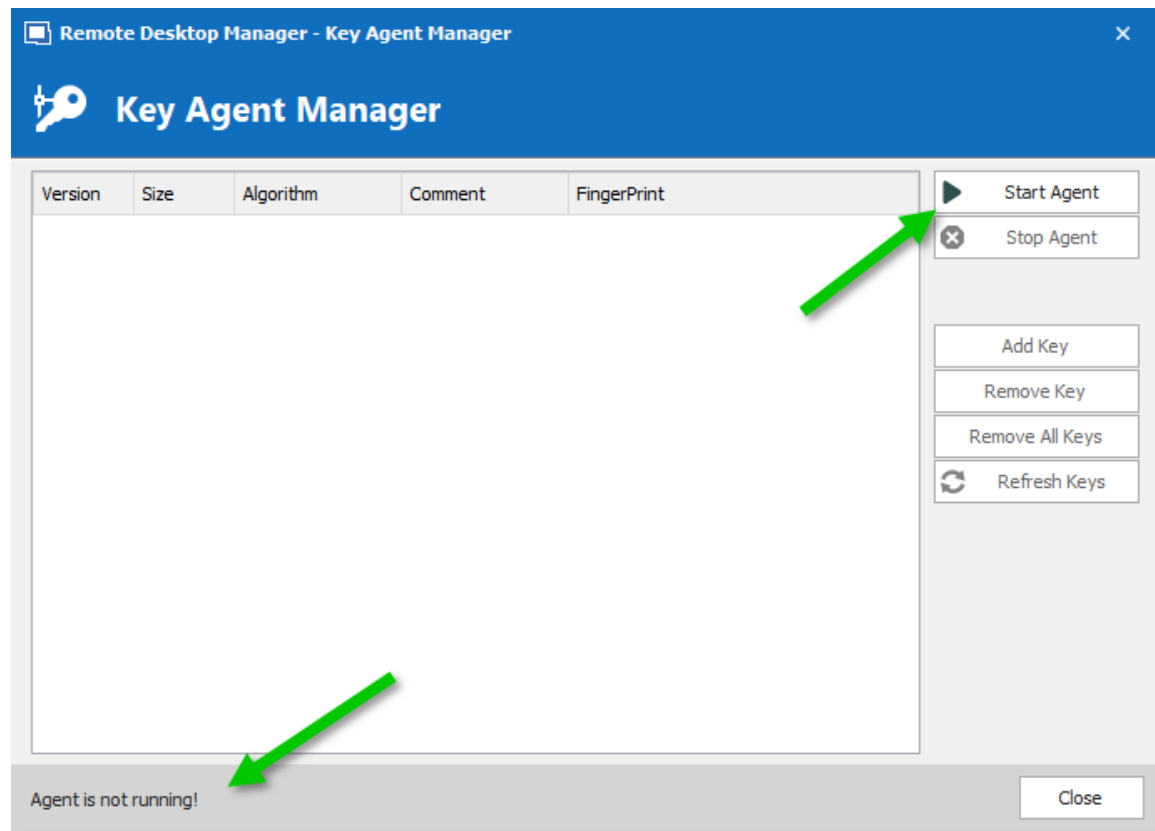
DESCRIPTION

The **Key Agent Manager** is used to hold all your SSH Keys in memory, already decoded and ready for them to be used. It has the same use as Pageant (SSH Key Manager) has for Putty except that the Key Agent Manager is used with Remote Desktop Manager.

SETTINGS

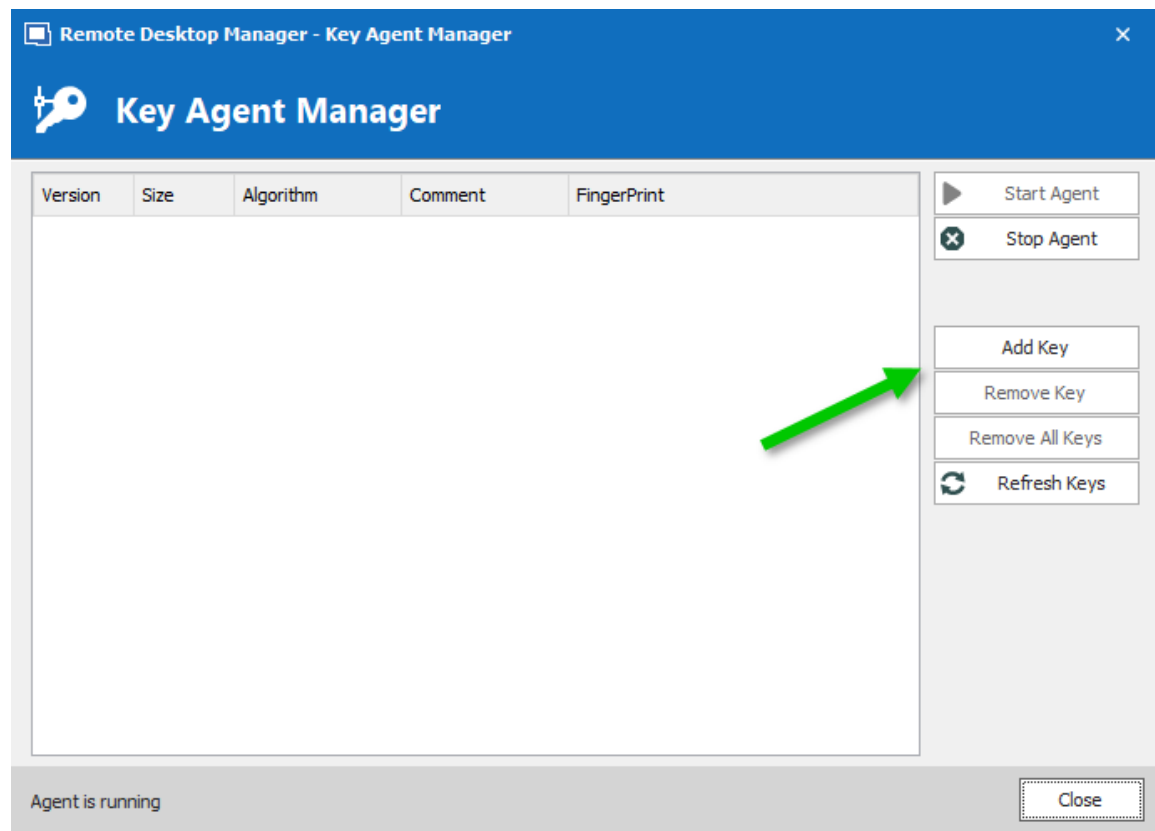
1. When opening the Key Agent Manager you will notice at the bottom right that the **agent is not running** you will need to click on **Start Agent**. If you wish to always

have your Key Agent running you can activate the option in **File – Option – Key Agent – Start agent on application start**.



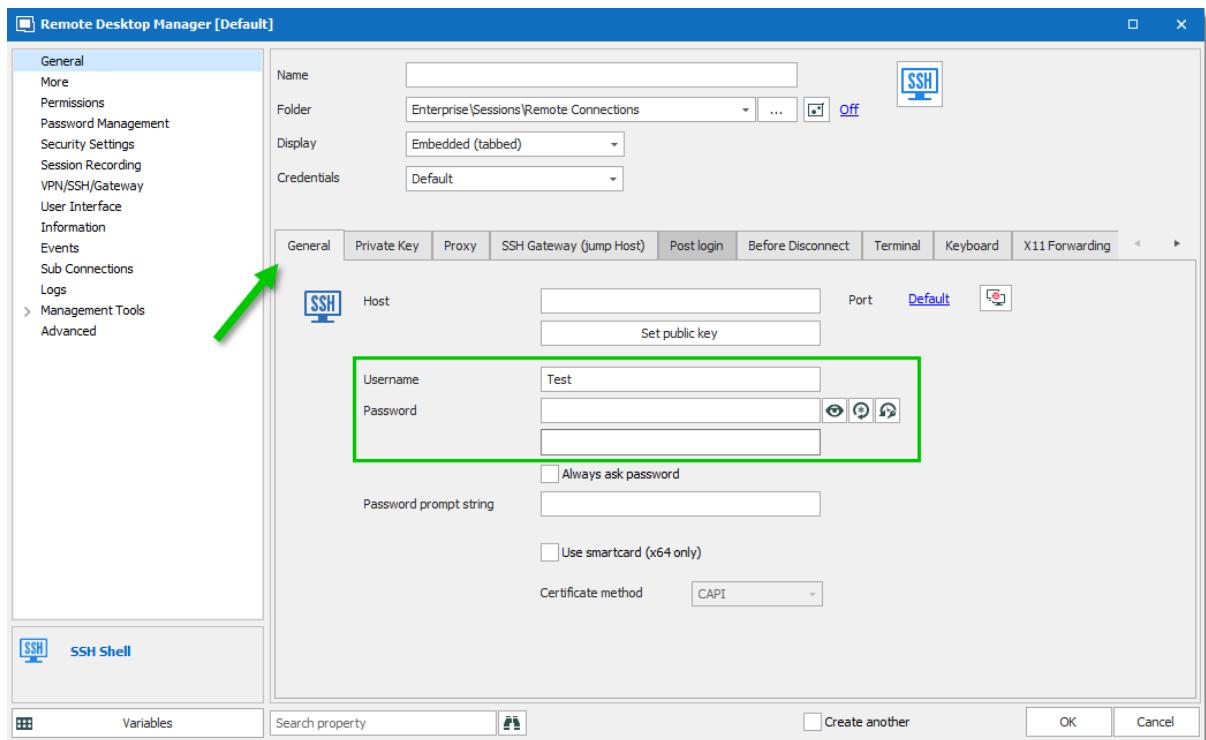
Key Agent Manager - Start Agent

2. Click on **Add key** and select the file to open your SSH key.



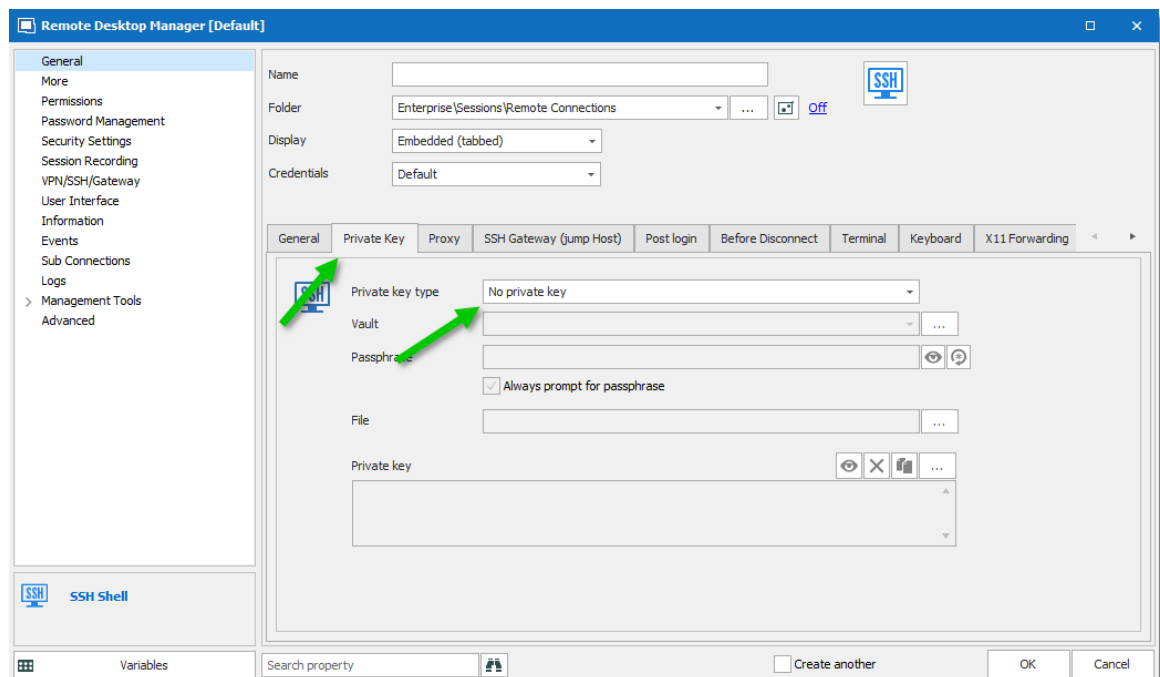
Key Agent Manager - Add Key

3. All your added SSH Key will appear in your Key Agent Manager.
4. In your SSH Shell Session in the **General** tab enter a Username and leave the Password field blank.



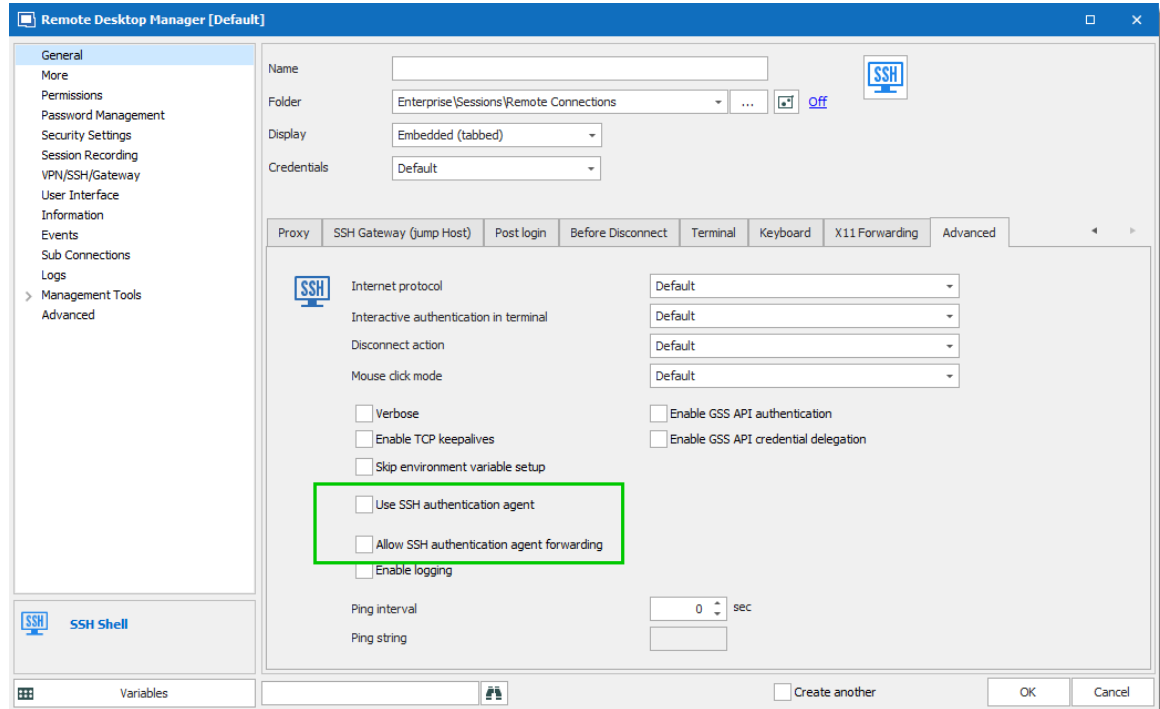
SSH Shell session - General Tab

5. In the **Private Key** tab of your SSH Shell session leave the option for the Private Key to **No Private Key**.



SSH Shell session - Private Key Tab

6. In the **Advanced** tab of your SSH Shell session activate the option **Use Agent**. The Use Agent automatically take the information of the SSH Key kept in your Key Agent Manager.

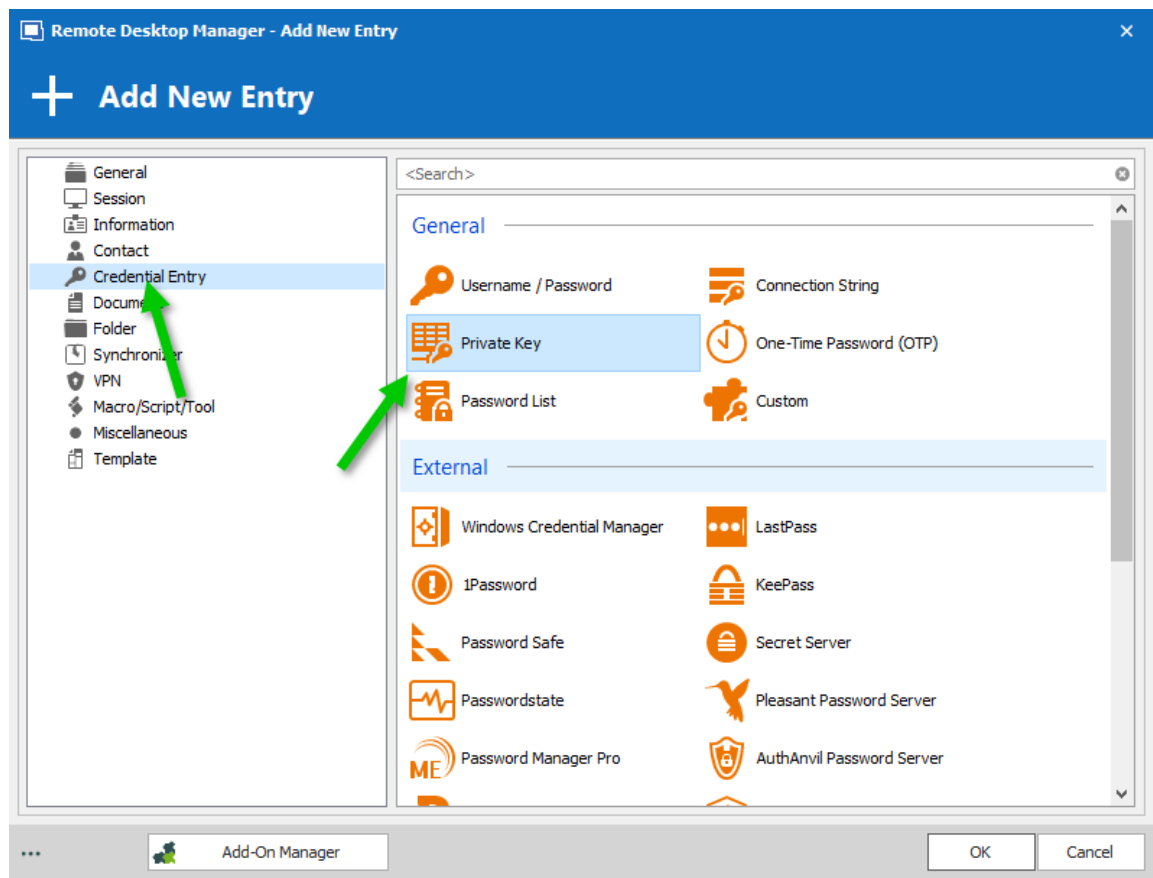


SSH Shell session - Advanced

PRIVATE KEY CREDENTIAL

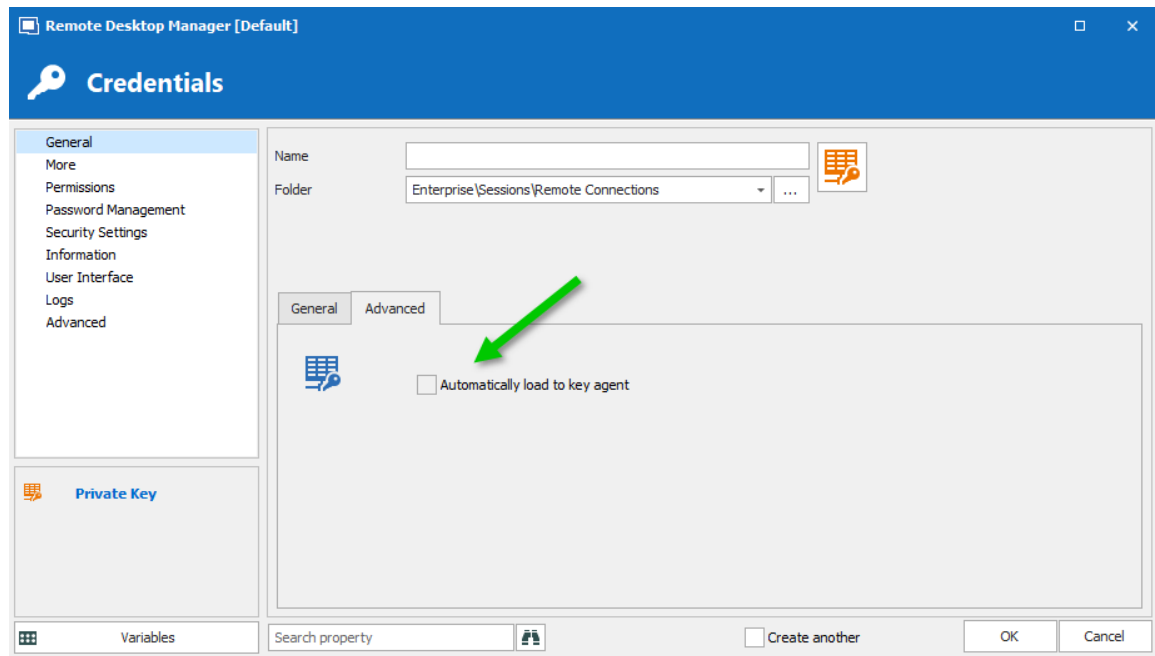
When creating new Private Key credential entry in Remote Desktop Manager you have the option of loading them automatically in your Key Agent Manager.

1. Create your new Private Key credential.



New Credential Entry - Private Key

2. In the **Advanced** tab of your Private Key entry activate the option **Automatically load to key agent**.

*Private Key - Advanced Tab*

6.8.2.4 PowerShell (RDM CmdLet)

DESCRIPTION

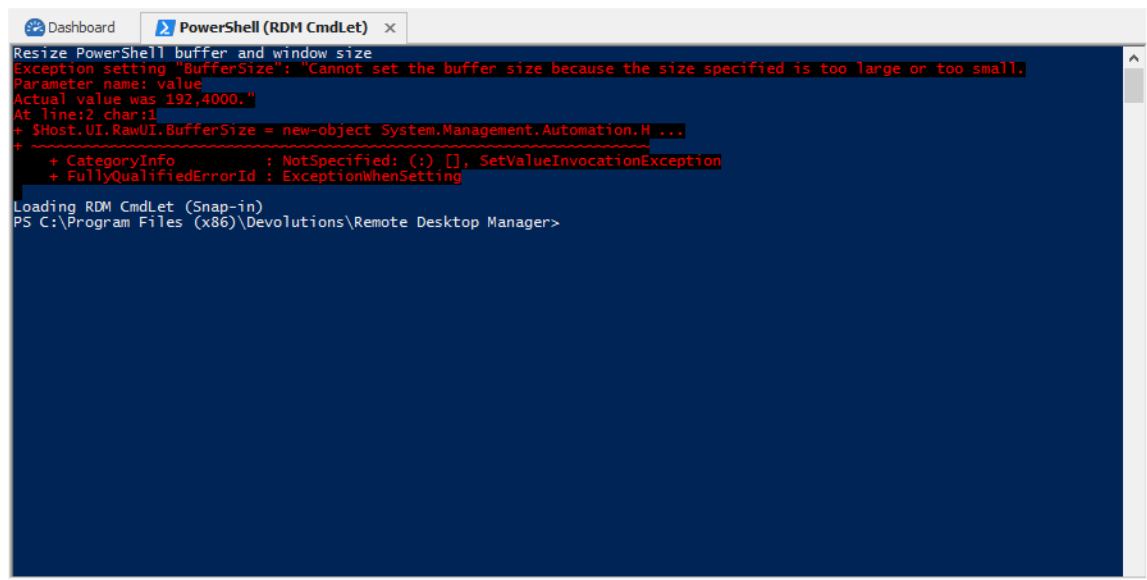
The **PowerShell (RDM CmLet)** automatically opens an embedded PowerShell window. RDM snap-in allows for quick and robust automation of actions such as add/edit/open of sessions, the possibilities are endless.

Since its release, this highly-requested feature has become very useful in solving user requests. A quick search through our forum reveals many usages of the cmdlets, such as automating the creation of Windows Start Menu shortcuts for every RDM session.

To learn more, you can find full RDM cmdlet documentation available via the [PowerShell Scripting](#) topic or directly in PowerShell using the Get-Help cmdlet.

SETTINGS

You will find on the [Forum](#) multiple PowerShell script to import edit or interact with the Remote Desktop Manager data.



```
Dashboard PowerShell (RDM CmdLet) x
Resize PowerShell buffer and window size
Exception setting "BufferSize": "Cannot set the buffer size because the size specified is too large or too small.
Parameter name: value
Actual value was 192,4000."
At line:2 char:1
+ $Host.UI.RawUI.BufferSize = new-object System.Management.Automation.H ...
+ ~~~~~
+ CategoryInfo          : NotSpecified: (:) [], SetValueInvocationException
+ FullyQualifiedErrorId : ExceptionWhenSetting

Loading RDM CmdLet (Snap-in)
PS C:\Program Files (x86)\Devolutions\Remote Desktop Manager>
```

PowerShell

6.8.2.5 More Tools

6.8.2.5.1 Chocolatey Console

DESCRIPTION




[Chocolatey](#) need to be installed on your computer to use the Chocolatey Console.

The Chocolatey Console is available in the **Tools – More Tools - Chocolatey Console** menu. It allows you to install all the supported applications from Chocolatey directly from Remote Desktop Manager.

SETTINGS

Dashboard

Chocolatey Console



25,517
Downloads

[Project Site](#)
[License](#)
[Report Abuse](#)
[Contact Maintainers](#)
[Download](#)

AutoHotkey

[Open in gallery](#)





AutoHotkey is a free, open source macro-creation and automation software utility that allows users to automate repetitive tasks. It is driven by a custom scripting language that is aimed specifically at providing keyboard shortcuts, otherwise known as hotkeys.

AutoHotkey_L is a fork of AutoHotkey which adds a long list of new features and fixes some bugs. Anything that can be done with AutoHotkey can also be done with AutoHotkey_L. Scripts written for AutoHotkey will also run on AutoHotkey_L, with some exceptions.

```
C:\> choco install autohotkey
```

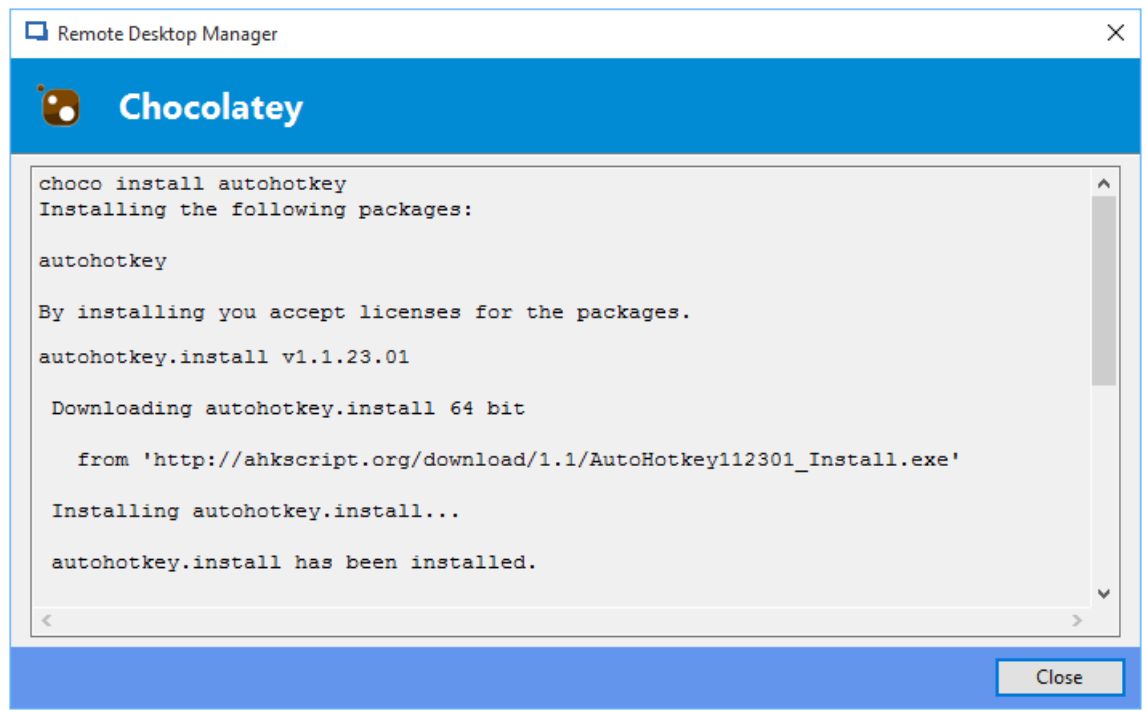
| Name | Installed Version | Latest Version | Installed |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| autohotkey | | 1.1.23.01 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| autoit | | 3.3.14.2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| filezilla | | 3.15.0.2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Firefox | | 44.0.2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| GoogleChrome | | 48.0.2564.109 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| HeidiSQL | | 8.3.0.4694 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| javaruntime | | 8.0.66 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| keepass | | 2.31 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| mysql.workbench | | 6.3.6 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| powershell | | 4.0.20141001 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| putty.install | 0.66 | 0.66 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| pvm | | 7.1.0.0 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Radmin. Viewer | | 3.4.0.20120928 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| safari | | | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| skype | | 7.18.0.112 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| sysinternals | | 2016.02.02 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| teamviewer | | 11.0.53254 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| tightvnc | | 2.7.10.20140503 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Chocolatey Console

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--------------------------------------|
|  | Install the selected application. |
|  | Update the selected application. |
|  | Uninstall the selected application. |
|  | Refresh the Chocolatey details list. |

USAGE

During the installation, you will see the following window.



Installation window

When the installation is completed you will see a check mark in the **Installed** column.

| Name | Installed Version | Latest Version | Installed |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| autohotkey | 1.1.23.01 | 1.1.23.01 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| autoit | 3.3.14.2 | 3.3.14.2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| filezilla | | 3.15.0.2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Firefox | | 44.0.2 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| GoogleChrome | | 48.0.2564.109 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| HeidiSQL | | 8.3.0.4694 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| javaruntime | | 8.0.66 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| keepass | 2.31 | 2.31 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| mysql.workbench | | 6.3.6 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Installation Complete

6.8.2.5.2 Local RDP/RemoteApp Manager

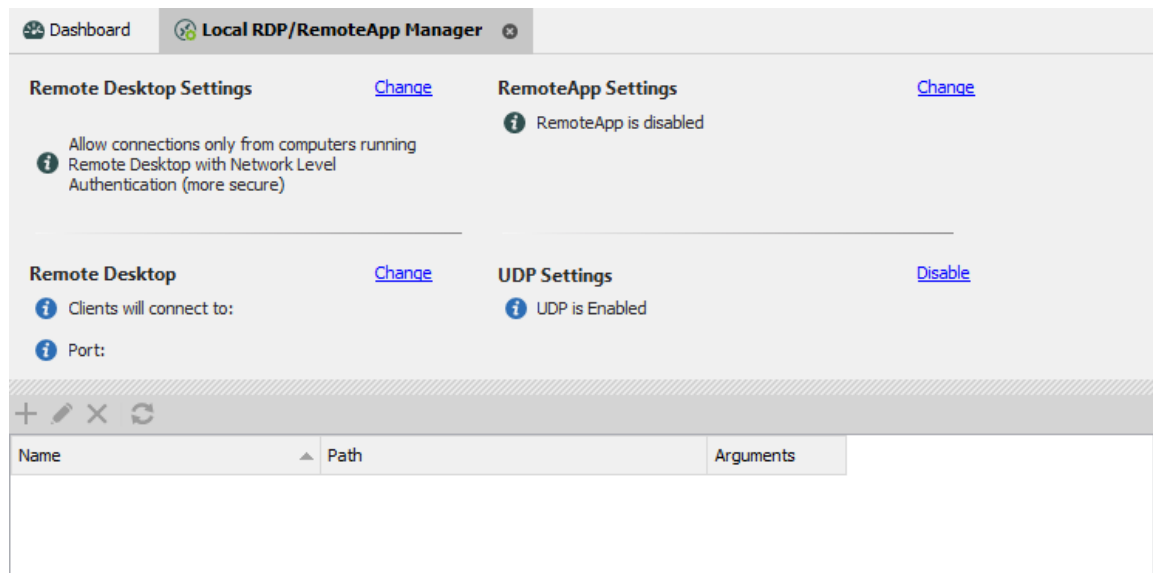
DESCRIPTION

The local RDP settings and the RemoteApp settings are available from **Tools – More Tools - Local RDP/RemoteApp Manager**.

If you run Remote Desktop Manager on a Windows Server 2008 machine the TS RemoteApp MMC console will be launched.

If you are running on Windows Vista, the RemoteApp console built into Remote Desktop Manager will be launched because RemoteApp functionality is available in Windows 7 but not the MMC console. Therefore instead of having to modify the required registry entries you can use the Remote Desktop Manager RemoteApp Manager.

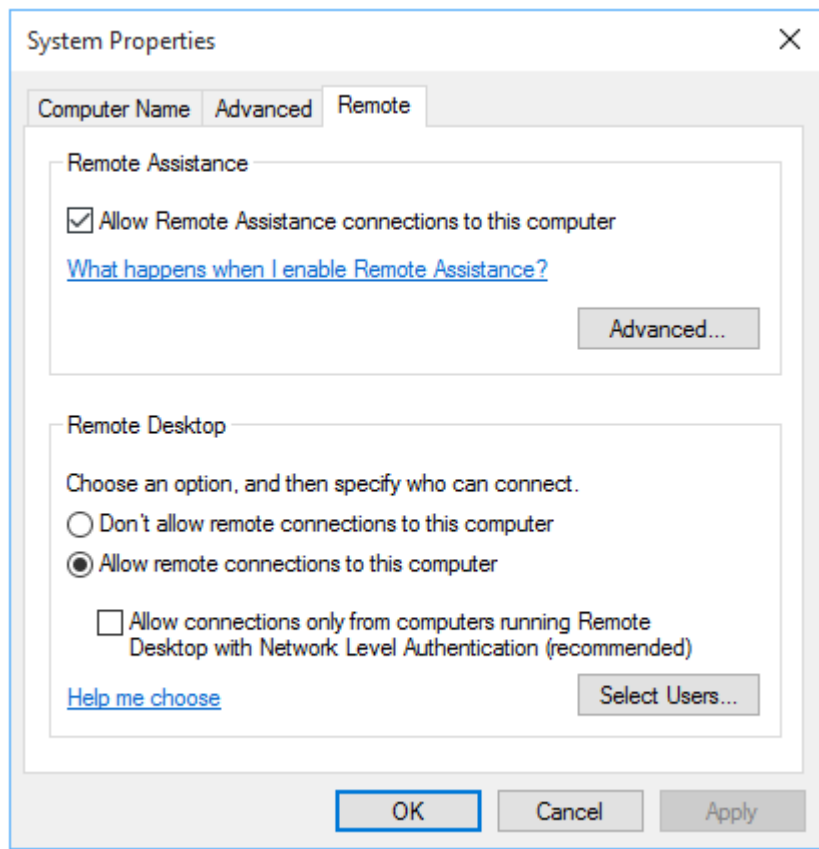
SETTINGS



More Tools - Local RDP/RemoteApp Manager

REMOTE DESKTOP SETTINGS

Allow or disallow the remote connections to your computer.



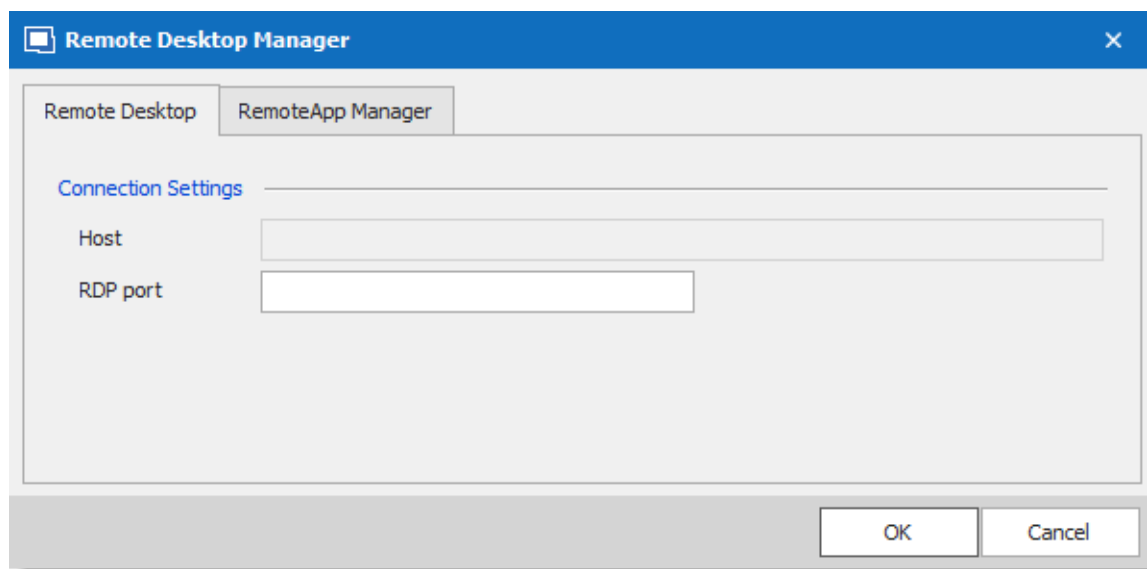
Remote Desktop Settings

REMOTE DESKTOP

Allows you to modify the local RDP port.



Remote Desktop Manager must be run as an administrator to modify the Remote Desktop settings.



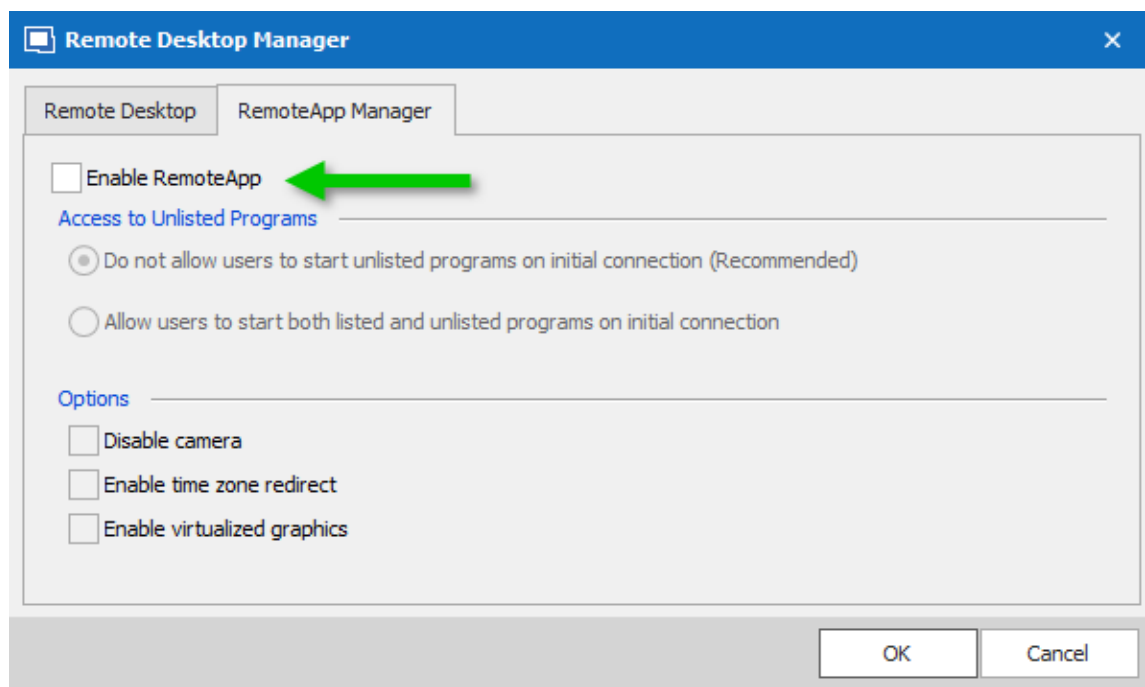
Remote Desktop Connection Settings

REMOTEAPP SETTINGS

You must Enable RemoteApp to be able to create a New RemoteApp Setting.

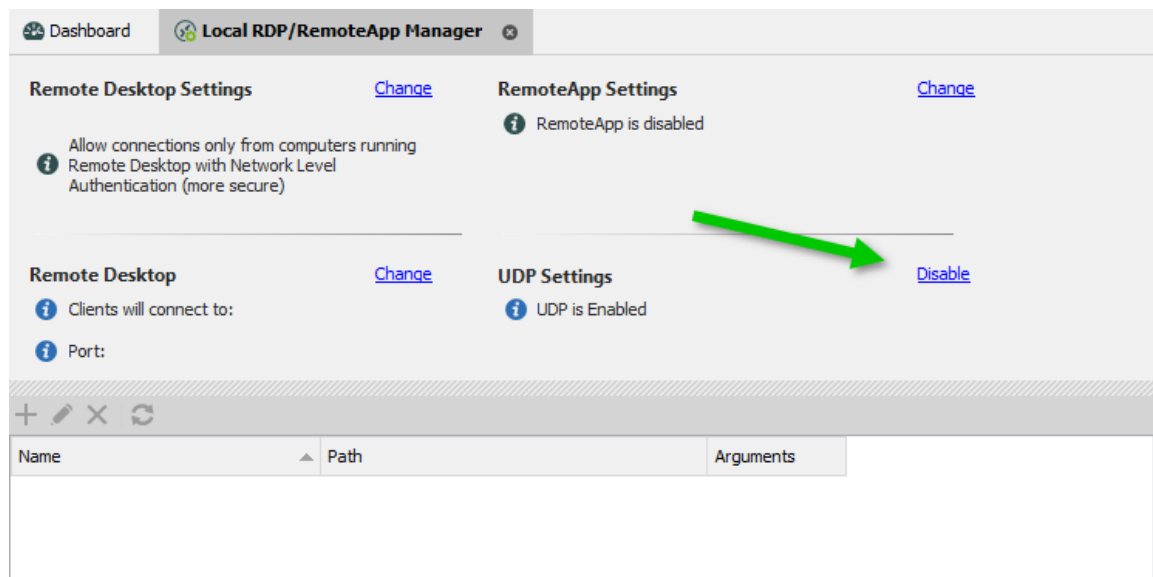


Remote Desktop Manager must be run as an administrator to modify the RemoteApp settings.

*RemoteApp Settings*

UDP SETTINGS

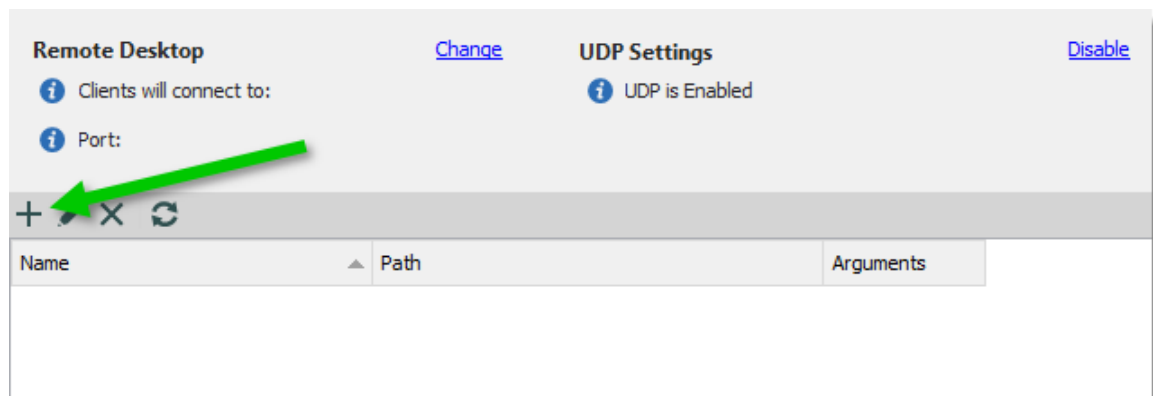
Enable or disable UDP (User Datagram Protocol) locally on your computer. UDP is a communication protocol that offers a limited amount of service when messages are exchanged between computers in a network that uses the Internet Protocol (IP).



Local RDP/RemoteApp Manager - UDP is Enabled

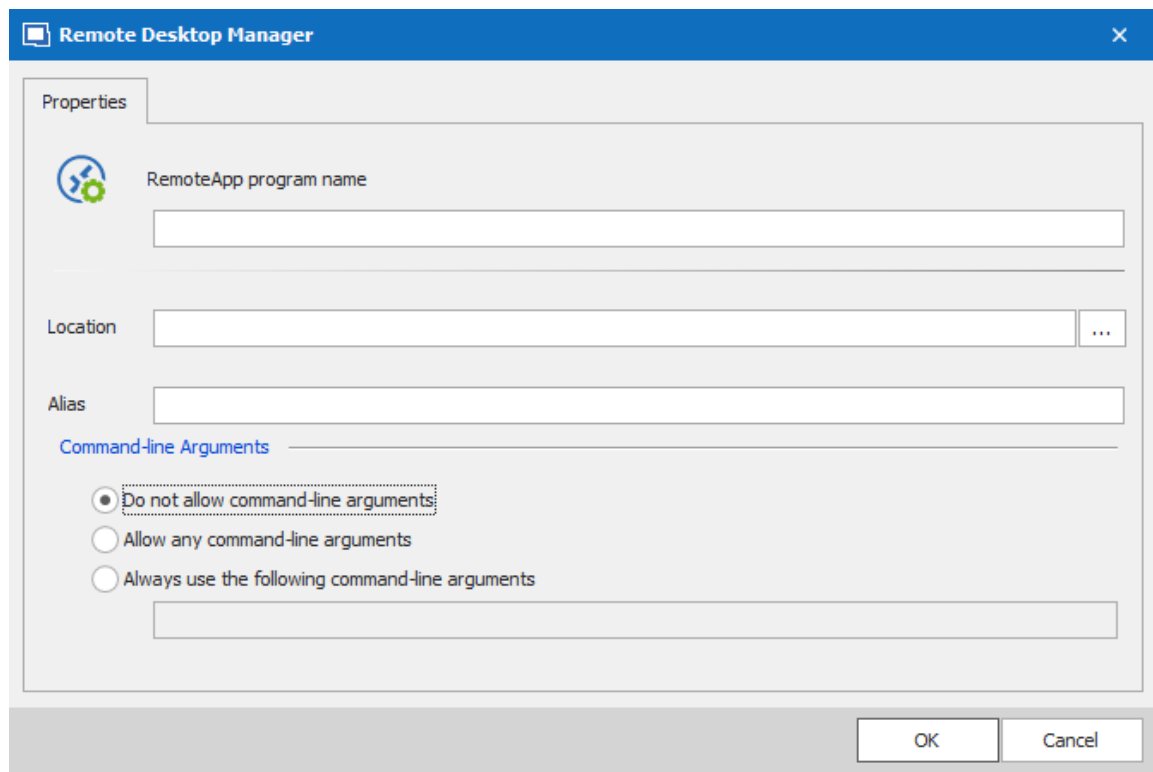
USAGE

1. Click on **New RemoteApp Settings**.

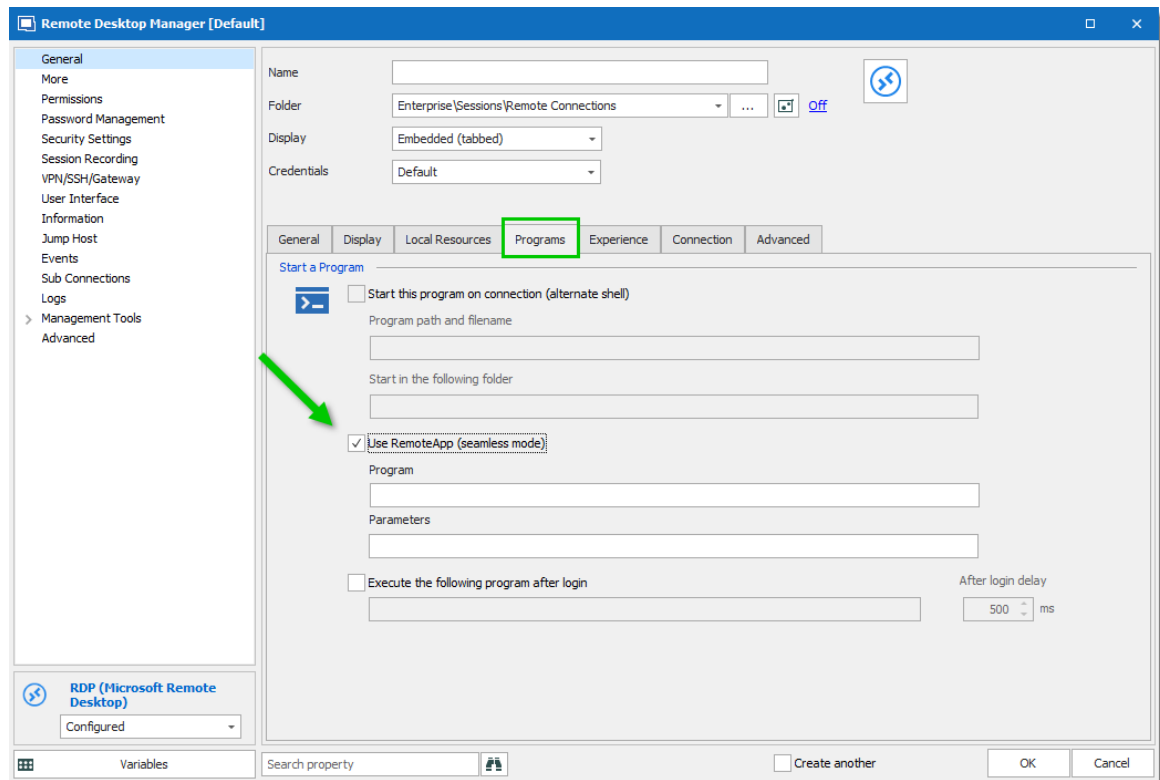


New RemoteApp Settings

2. Configure the RemoteApp



3. Create a new RDP session and select the **Programs** tab. Enable the **Use RemoteApp** option and then enter the name of the RemoteApp program and save the session. When the session is launched you will have the RemoteApp running locally.



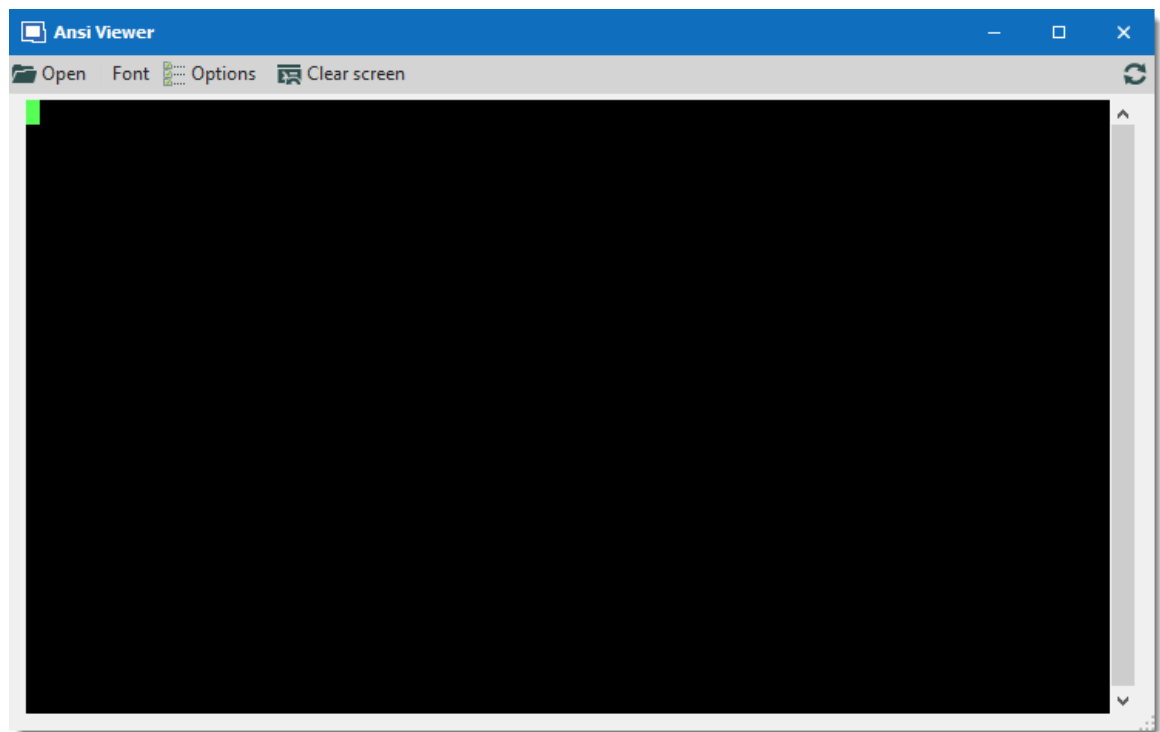
RDP session - Programs Tab

6.8.2.5.3 Playback (Ansi)




DESCRIPTION

The **Playback (Ansi)** is available in **Tools – More Tools – Playback (Ansi)**.

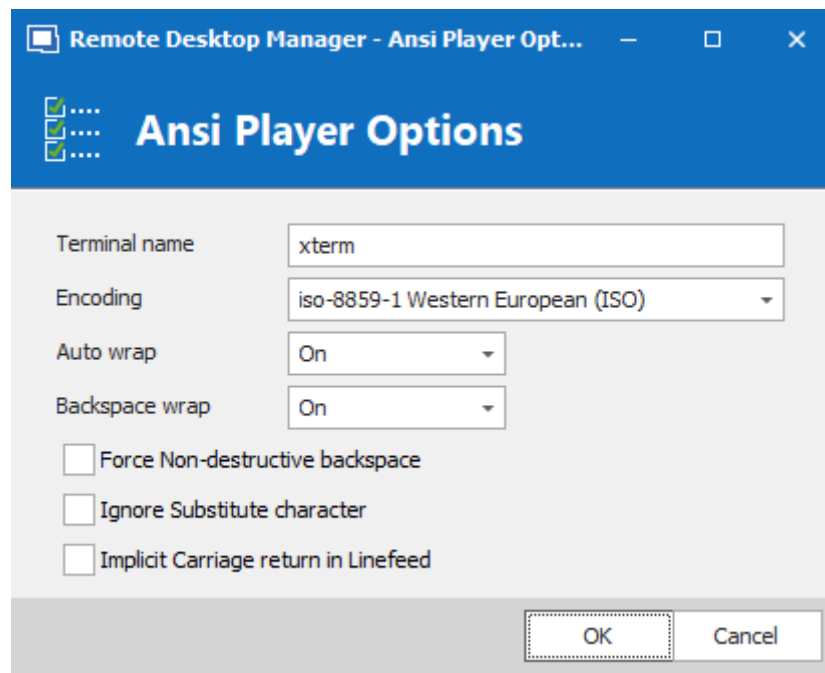
SETTINGS



More Tools - Playback (Ansi)

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
|  Open | Select the ansi file you wish to open in the Terminal Playback. |
| Font | Select the font for the Terminal Playback. |
|  Options | See Options section. |
|  Clear screen | Clear the screen to play another ansi file. |

OPTIONS



Playback (Ansi) - Ansi Player Options

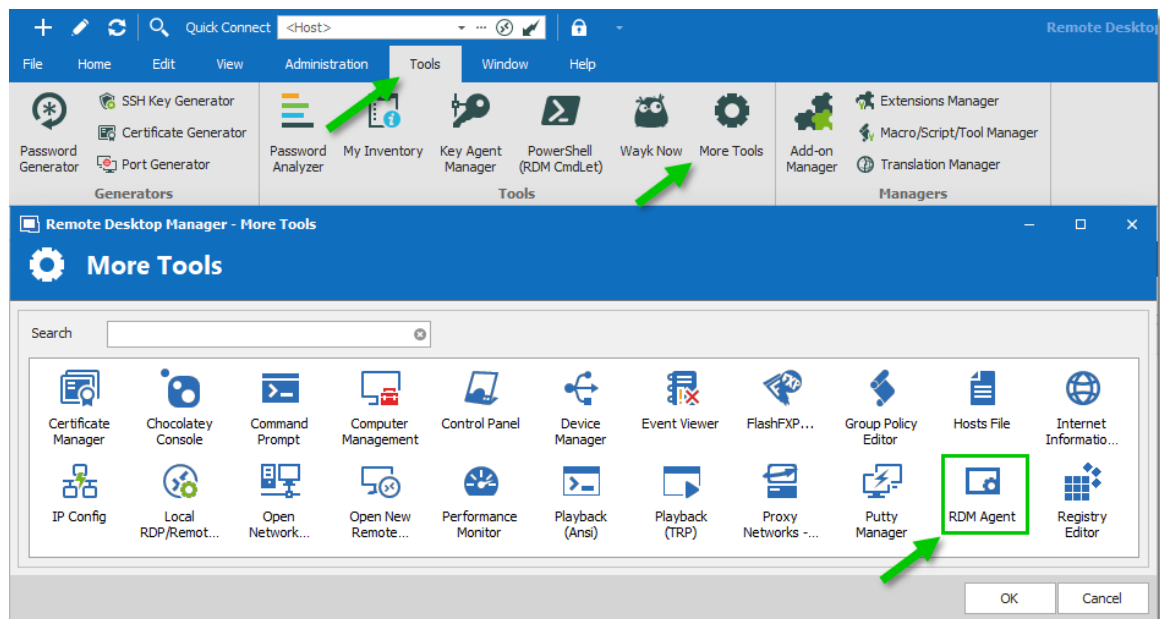
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| Terminal name | Indicate the terminal name. |
| Encoding | Indicate the encoding you wish to use. |
| Auto wrap | <p>Indicate what happen when text reaches the right-hand edge of the window. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off • Dos |
| Backspace wrap | <p>This option allows you to choose what you want to do when you press backspace. Some terminals believe that the backspace key should send the same thing to the server as Control-H (ASCII code 8). Other terminals believe that the backspace key should send ASCII code</p> |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| | <p>127 (usually known as Control-?) so that it can be distinguished from Control-H. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• On• Off• Dos |
| Force Non-destructive backspace | Allow to perform a normal backspace without deleting a character. |
| Ignore Substitute character | Ignore the substitute character that can be use in Putty. |
| Implicit Carriage return in Linefeed | <p>Most servers send two control characters, CR and LF, to start a new line on the screen. The CR character makes the cursor return to the left-hand side of the screen. The LF character makes the cursor move one line down (and might make the screen scroll).</p> <p>Some servers only send LF, and expect the terminal to move the cursor over to the left automatically. If you come across a server that does this, you will see a stepped effect on the screen. If this happens to you, try enabling the option and things might go back to normal.</p> |

6.8.2.5.4 RDM Agent

DESCRIPTION

The **Remote Desktop Manager Agent** is a very powerful tool that allows commands to be run on multiple machines.



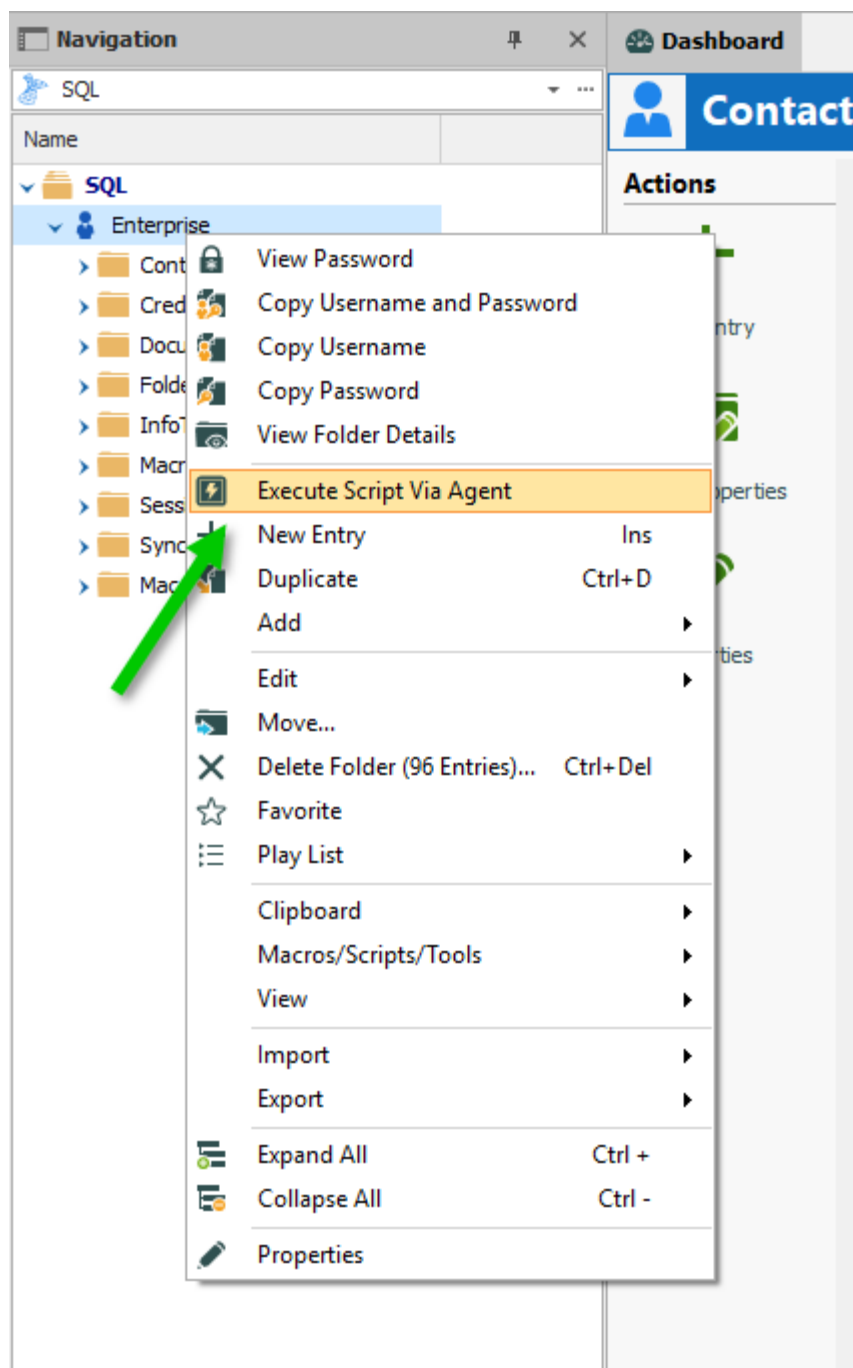
More Tools - RDM Agent

SETTINGS

To launch a script through the **RDM Agent**, you first need to open an RDP connection to all the machines you wish to execute the script on. Once opened, select all the opened sessions in the [Navigation Pane](#), right-click them and select **Execute Script via Agent**.

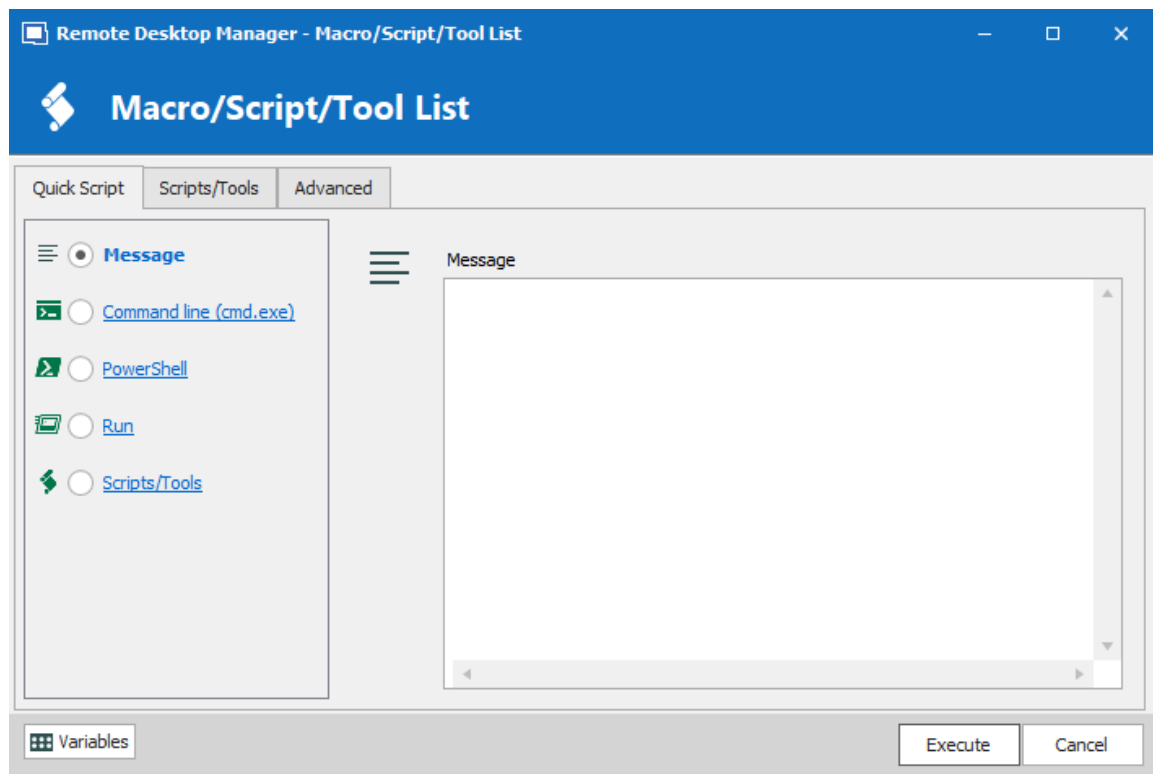


Execute script via Agent only needs the RDM Agent when the script is executed from the Quick Script tab. RDM needs to be fully installed on the remote computer when the script is executed from the Scripts/Tools tab.



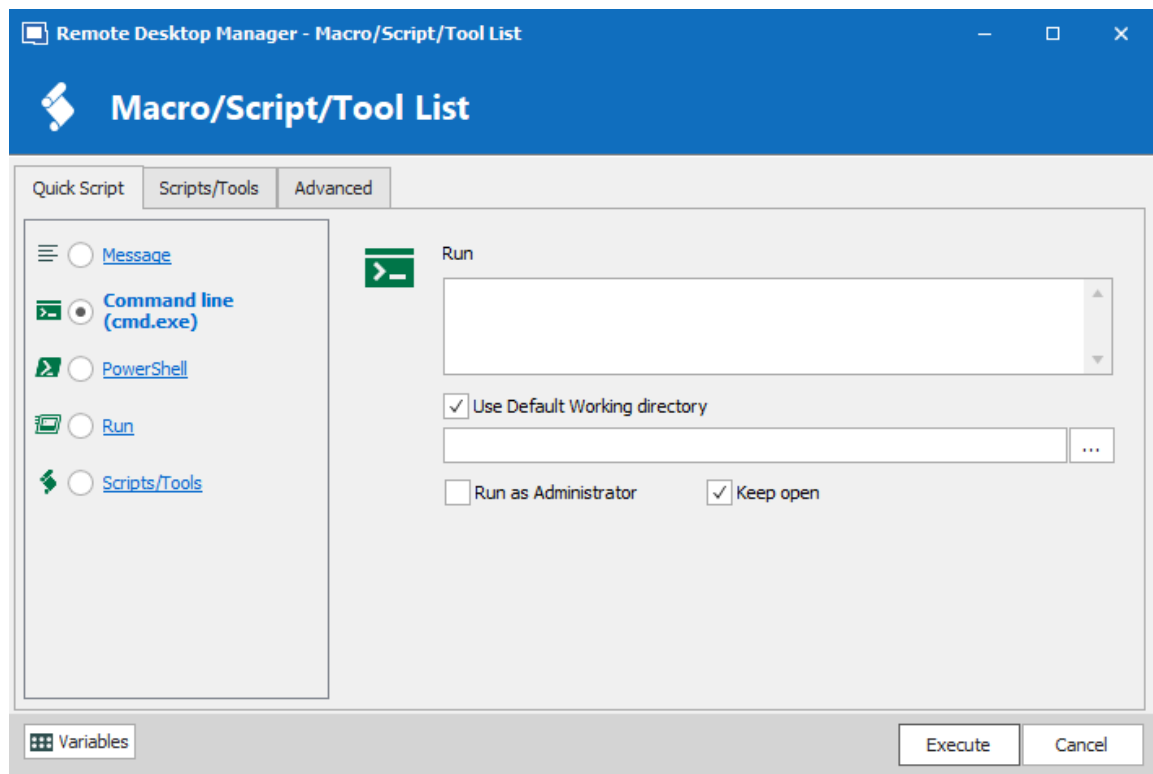
Execute Script Via Agent

QUICK SCRIPT - MESSAGE

*Quick Script - Message*

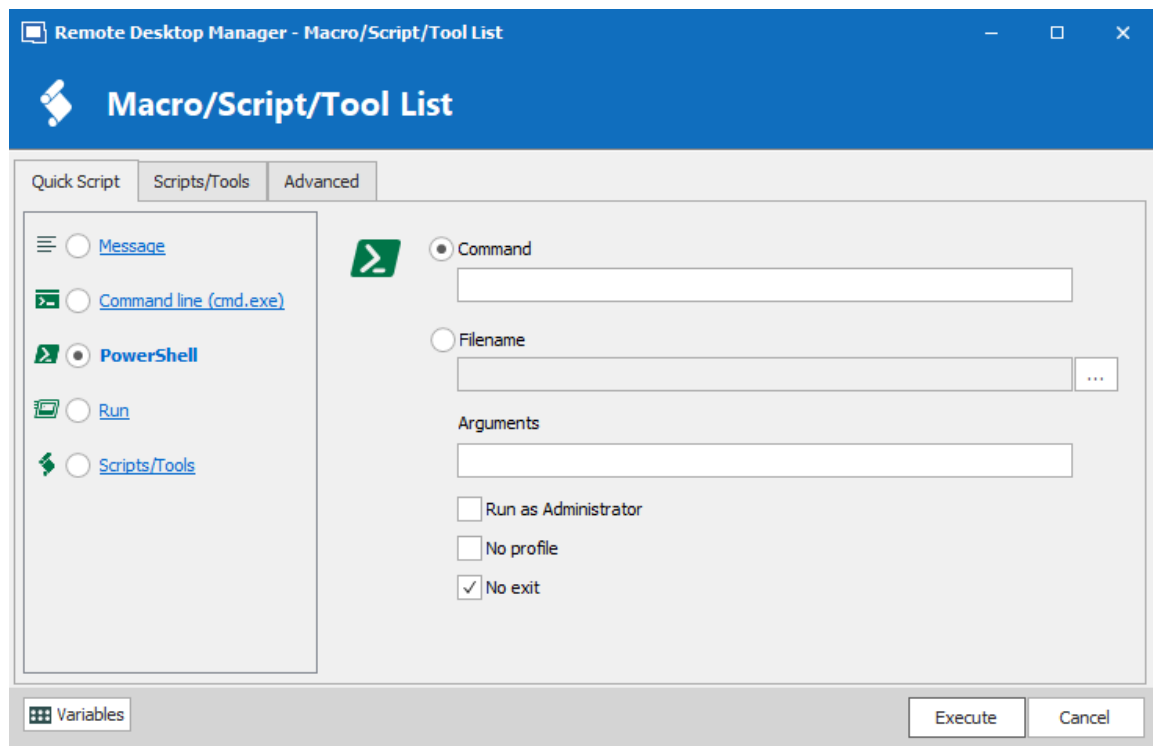
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Message | Send a message to all targets. |

QUICK SCRIPT - COMMAND LINE (CMD.EXE)

*Quick Script - Command Line*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Run | Indicate the command line that you want to execute. |
| Use Default Working directory | Use the default working directory when connect to the session. |
| Run as Administrator | Elevates the process to run as an administrator. |
| Keep open | Keep the window open after the execution of the command line. |

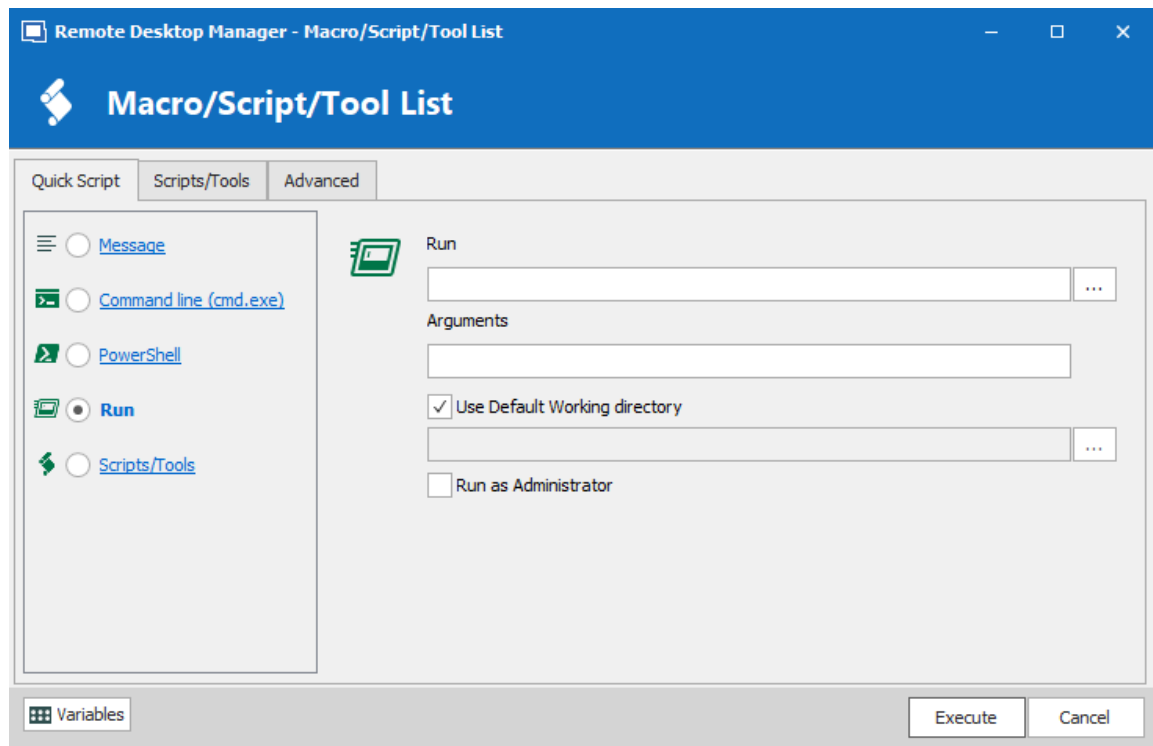
QUICK SCRIPT - POWERSHELL



Quick Script - PowerShell

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Command | Indicate the PowerShell command that you want to execute. |
| Filename | Select a PowerShell file on the network or on the computer. |
| Arguments | Arguments that are appended to the Command. |
| Run as Administrator | Elevates the process to run as an administrator. |
| No Profile | Does not load the Windows PowerShell profile. |
| No exit | Does not exit after running startup commands. |

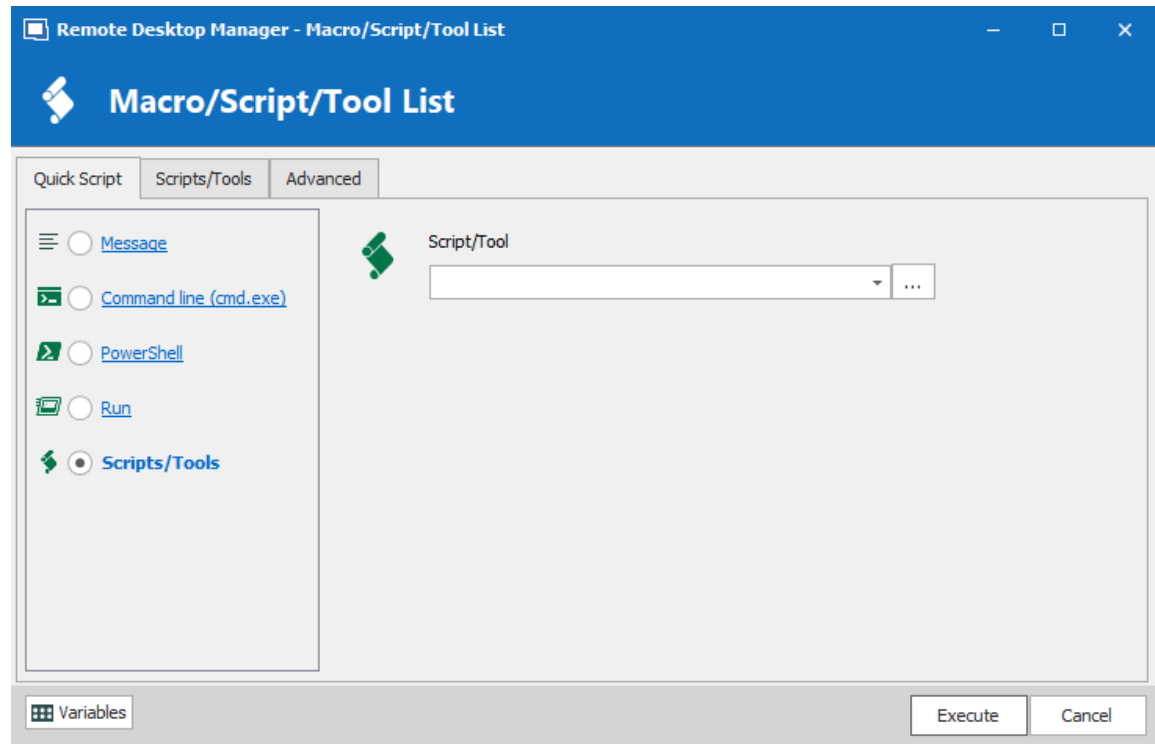
QUICK SCRIPT - RUN



Quick Script - Run

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Run | Select the program or file that you want to execute. |
| Arguments | Arguments that are appended to the Command. |
| Use Default Working directory | Use the default working directory when connect to the session. |
| Run as Administrator | Elevates the process to run as an administrator. |

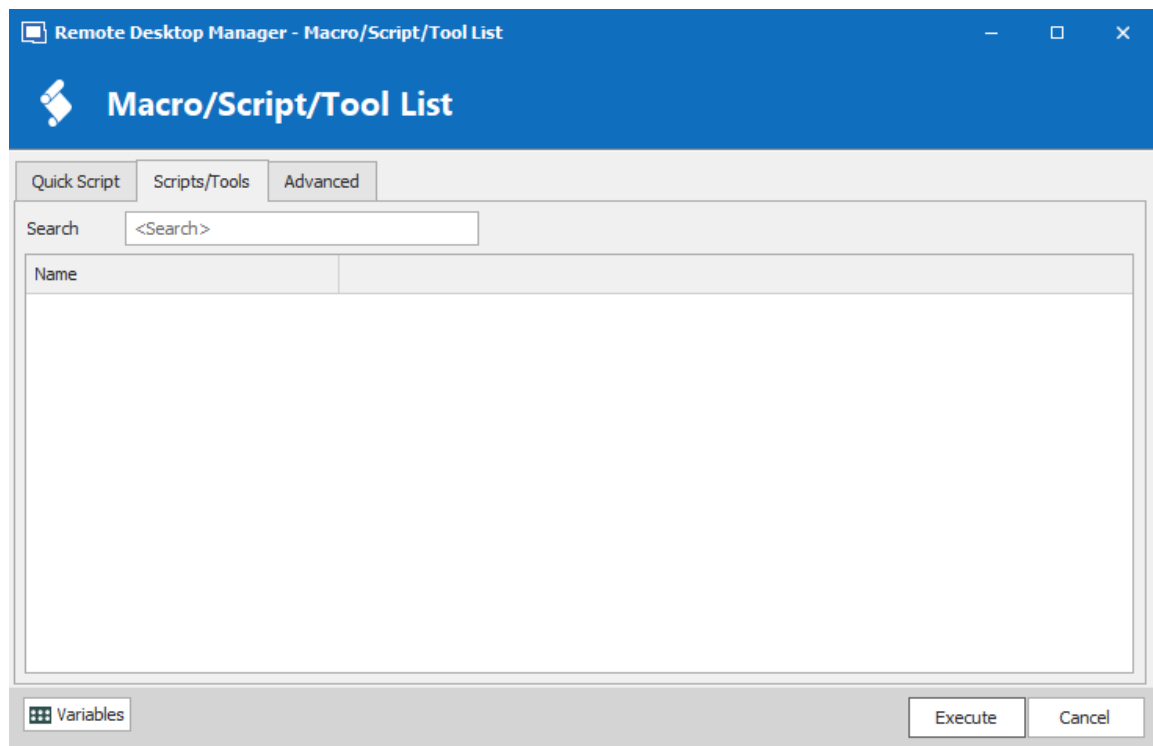
QUICK SCRIPT - SCRIPTS/TOOLS



Quick Script - Scripts/Tools

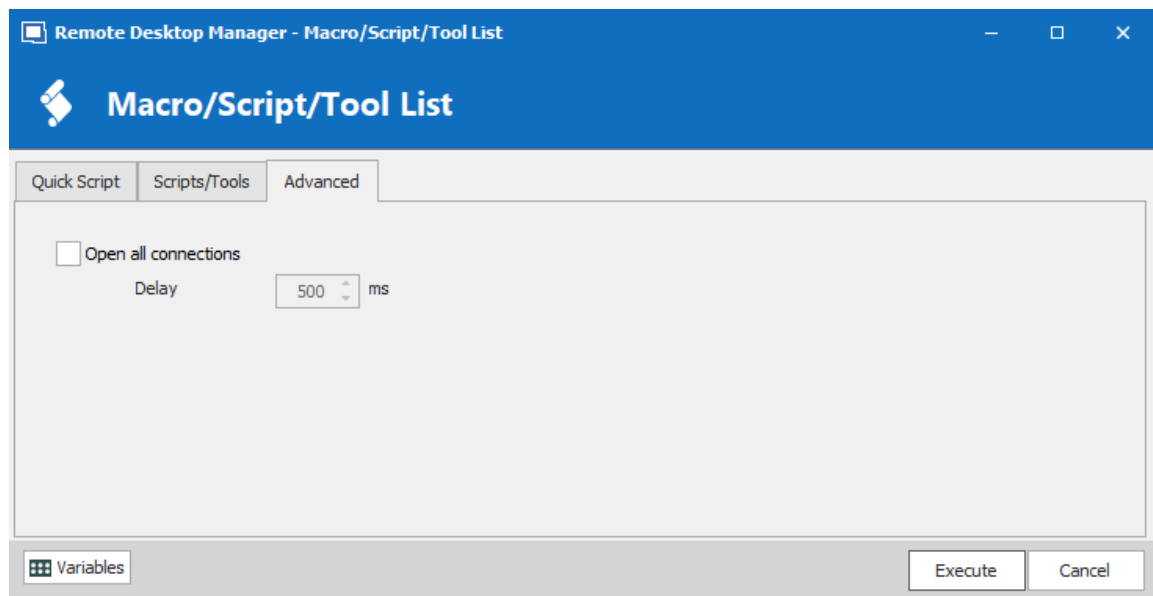
| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------|--|
| Scripts/Tools | Select a script or a tool session that you have already created in Remote Desktop Manager. |

SCRIPT/TOOLS

*Scripts/Tools*

Search for a script or a tool you wish to execute through the RDM Agent.

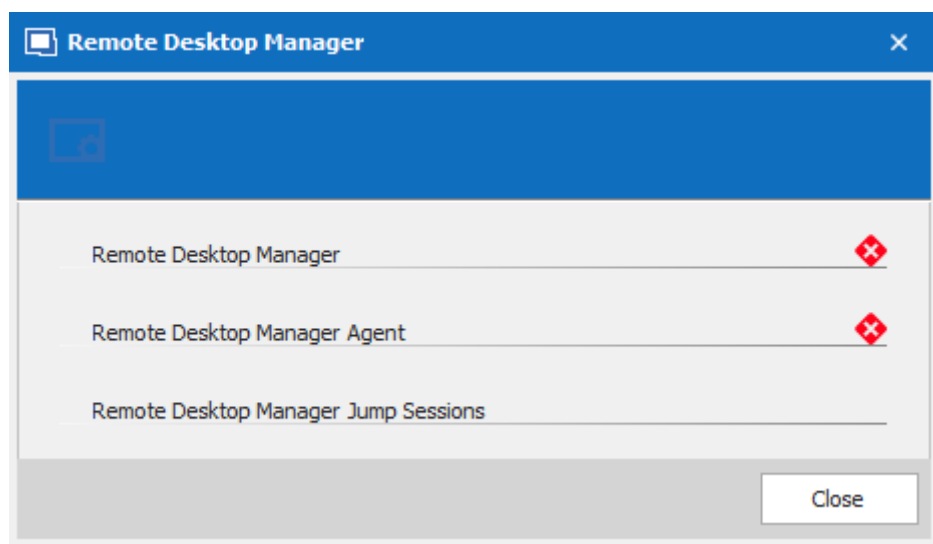
SETTINGS

*Advanced*

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Open all connections | When multiple sessions are selected to Execute Script Via Agent , it will open all the selected connections. |
| Delay | Enter the time delay between opening each selected session. |

AGENT STATUS

Open a RDP session, right-click on this single session and select Agent Status. The Agent Status will show you that Remote Desktop Manager is installed on the remote computer or not, that the Remote Desktop Manager Agent is active or not and how many Remote Desktop Manager Jump sessions are opened.

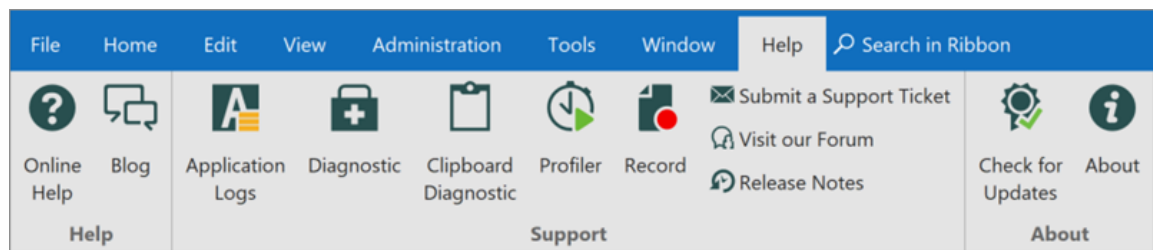


Agent Status

6.9 Help

DESCRIPTION

The **Help** tab contains links to the **Devolutions forum** and **Online Help**, and many support related features, such as the **Application Logs**, the **Profiler**, and the **Recorder**.

*Ribbon - Help*

HELP

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| Online Help | Launches the Online Help documentation for Remote Desktop Manager. |
| Blog | Visit our Blog and learn about the Devolutions team, as well as our goals, products and more. |

SUPPORT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Applications Logs | Opens the Application Logs to view encountered errors. |
| Diagnostic | Launches the Diagnostic feature. |
| Clipboard Diagnostic | The Clipboard Diagnostic tool helps to view all requests in real time and identify which application is involved with copy paste errors. |
| Profiler | Use the Profiler to acquire specific information. Used to diagnose connectivity issues with a data source. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Record | Use the Recorder to help our Devolutions Support team troubleshoot the problem. |
| Submit a Support Ticket | Submit a Support Ticket to help us make your experience better by reporting experience issues or by asking for new features. |
| Visit our Forum | Visit our Forum for help and exchange with the Devolutions community. |
| Release Notes | Send you directly to our Remote Desktop Manager web page to view the new features and enhancements when a new version is released. |

ABOUT

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| Check for Updates | Validate if a Remote Desktop Manager update is available. |
| About | Learn about Remote Desktop Manager. |

6.9.1 Support

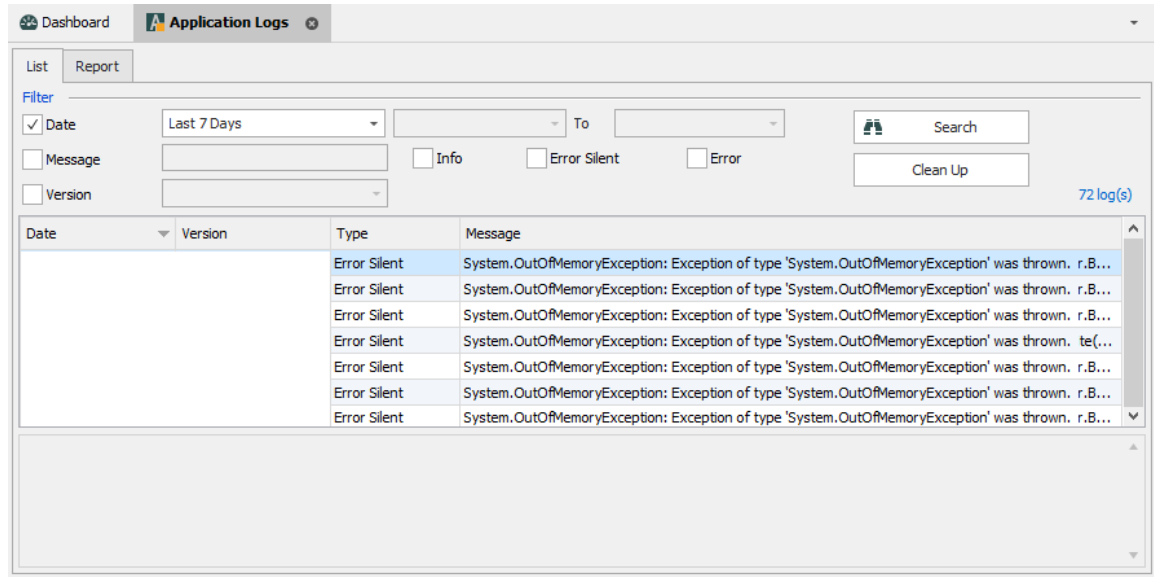
6.9.1.1 Application Log

DESCRIPTION

When encountering errors, you can verify the local application log, which is available in **Help – Application Logs**.

These logs are saved in **%LocalAppData%**

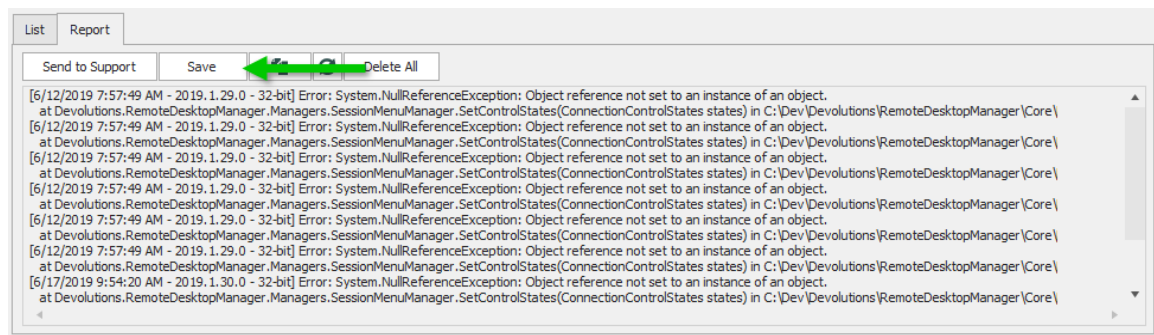
\Devolutions\RemoteDesktopManager\RemoteDesktopManager.log.db. Logs are displayed as a list which can be filtered by date, message, version, or type of log.



View Application Log dialog

REPORT

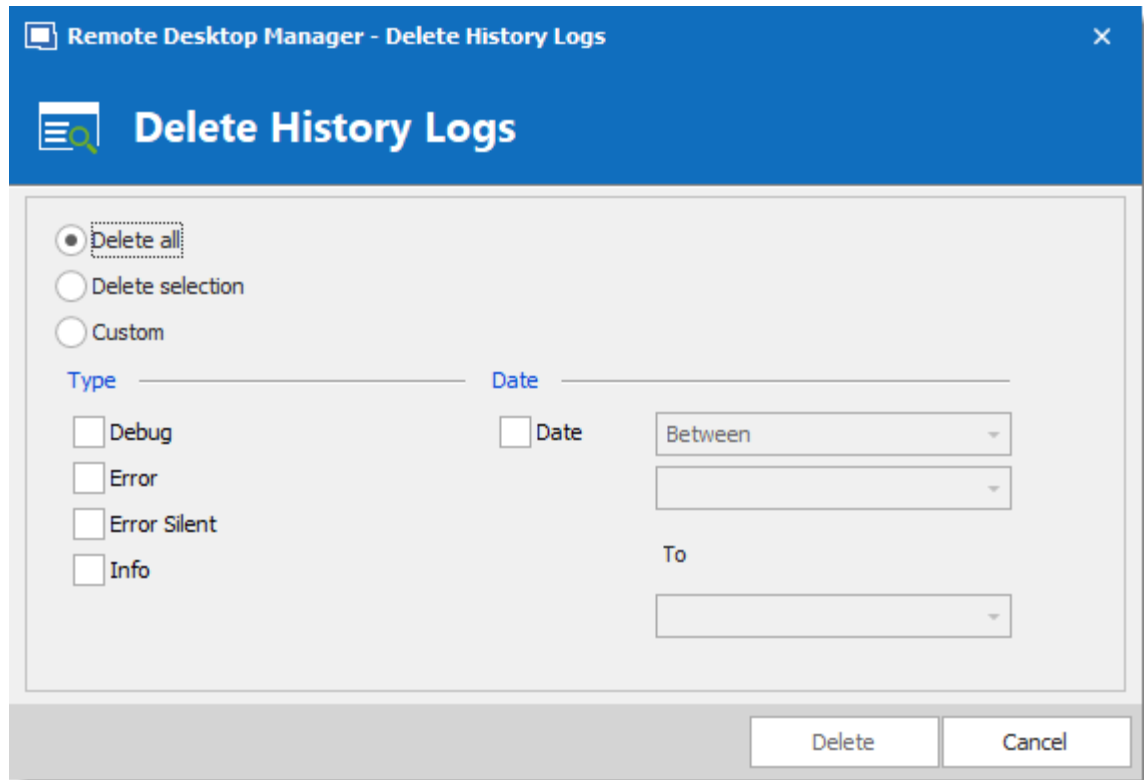
A report of the logs can be saved in a text file as well. Simply navigate to the **Report** tab of the application log, then click on the **Save** button to select a location to save the file.



CLEAN UP

For security reason, it is a best practice is to clean up the application log once every month. To do so, in the application log, use the **Clean Up** feature.

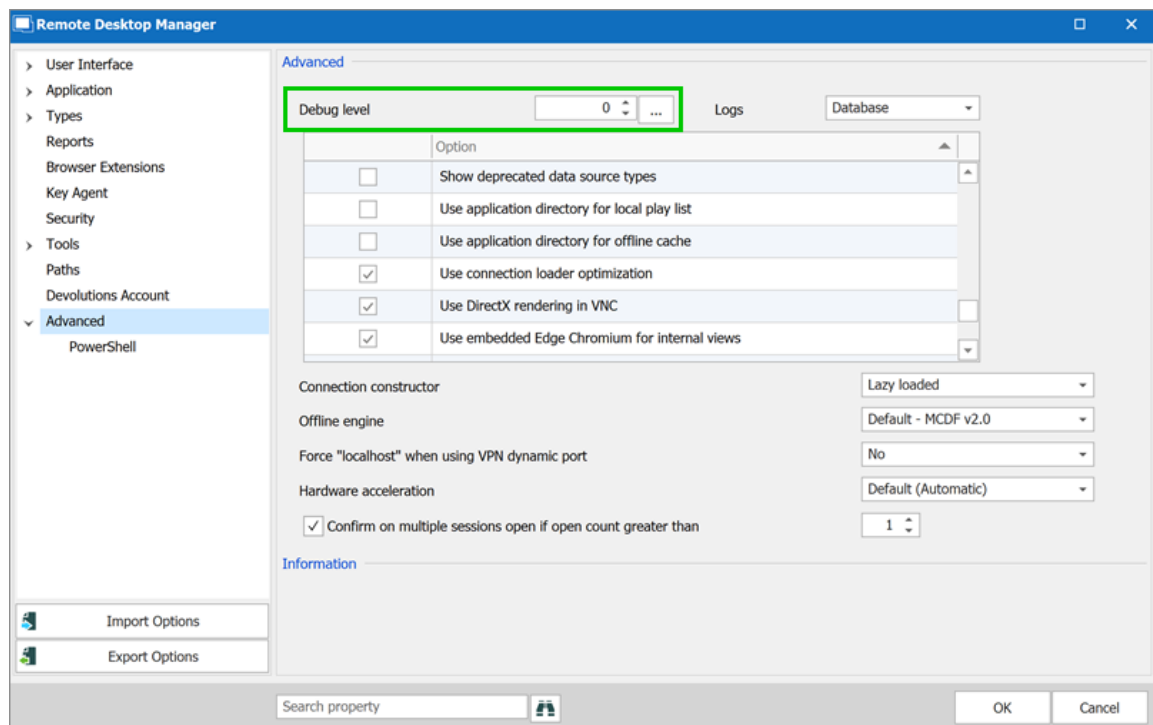
We strongly recommend to do a **Delete all**, but this can be customized to delete specific logs by type, date or selection.



INCREASING THE DEBUG LEVEL

When experiencing issues with Remote Desktop Manager our support team might ask you to increase the debug level of the application during the support process. We strongly suggest to only increase the debug level when requested by our support team.

Increase the debug level in [File - Options - Advanced](#).



File – Options – Advanced – Debug level

6.9.1.2 Diagnostic

DESCRIPTION

If you encounter a problem with Remote Desktop Manager, you can run a system diagnostic, which is available in **Help – Diagnostic**. This could help diagnose or give a pointer to what kind of issues you might be experiencing.

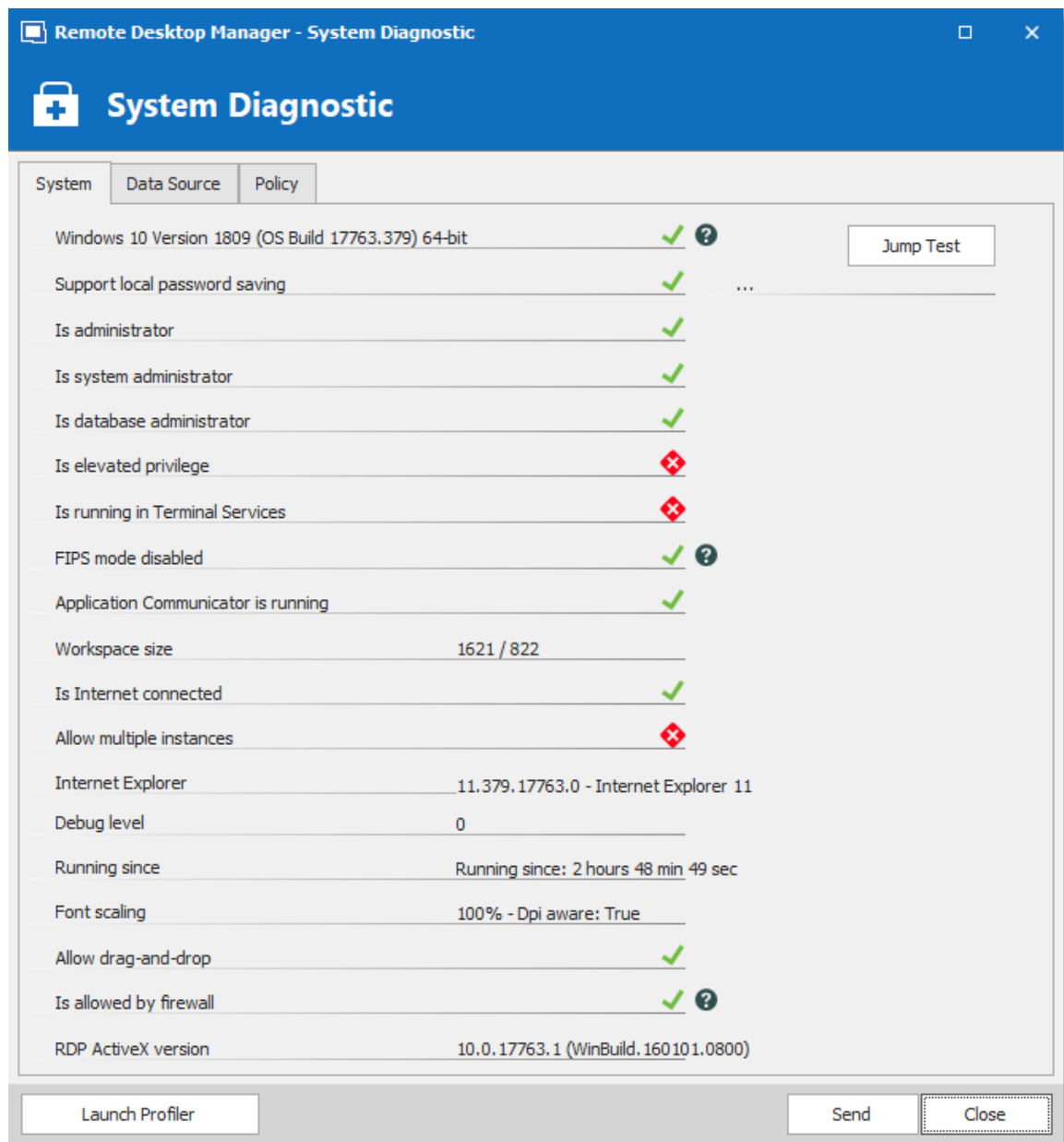
SYSTEM

The administrator item could be the possible source for security problem. This happens often when a user has the SYSDBA or is DB_OWNER of the SQL Server database.

Some other issues could be related to the fact that the application is running in Remote Desktop Services. However Remote Desktop Manager is fully compatible with Remote Desktop Services.

FIPS related issues and solutions can be found in the specific FIPS (Encryption) troubleshooting section.

If you have a [Remote Desktop Manager Jump](#) configured you can run a test of your Jump host by clicking on Jump Test.



System Diagnostic – System



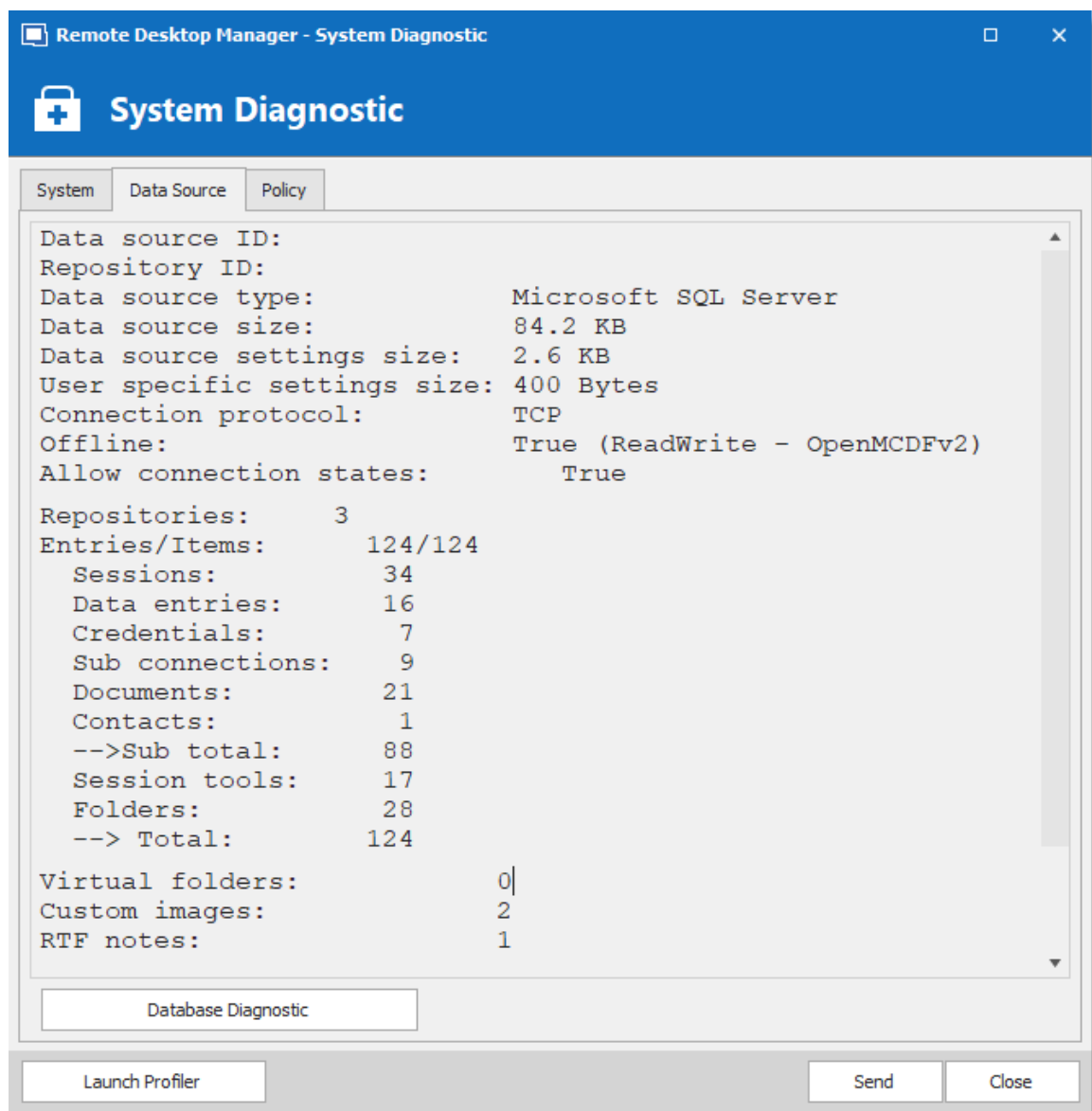
Please read the Troubleshooting topic if experiencing issues with Remote Desktop Manager, it lists error messages and could contain the fix/workaround for your problem.

DATA SOURCE

The **Data Source** tab contains information regarding the current data source, such as the number of entries it contains, the size of your data source, the number of custom images and the offline state.



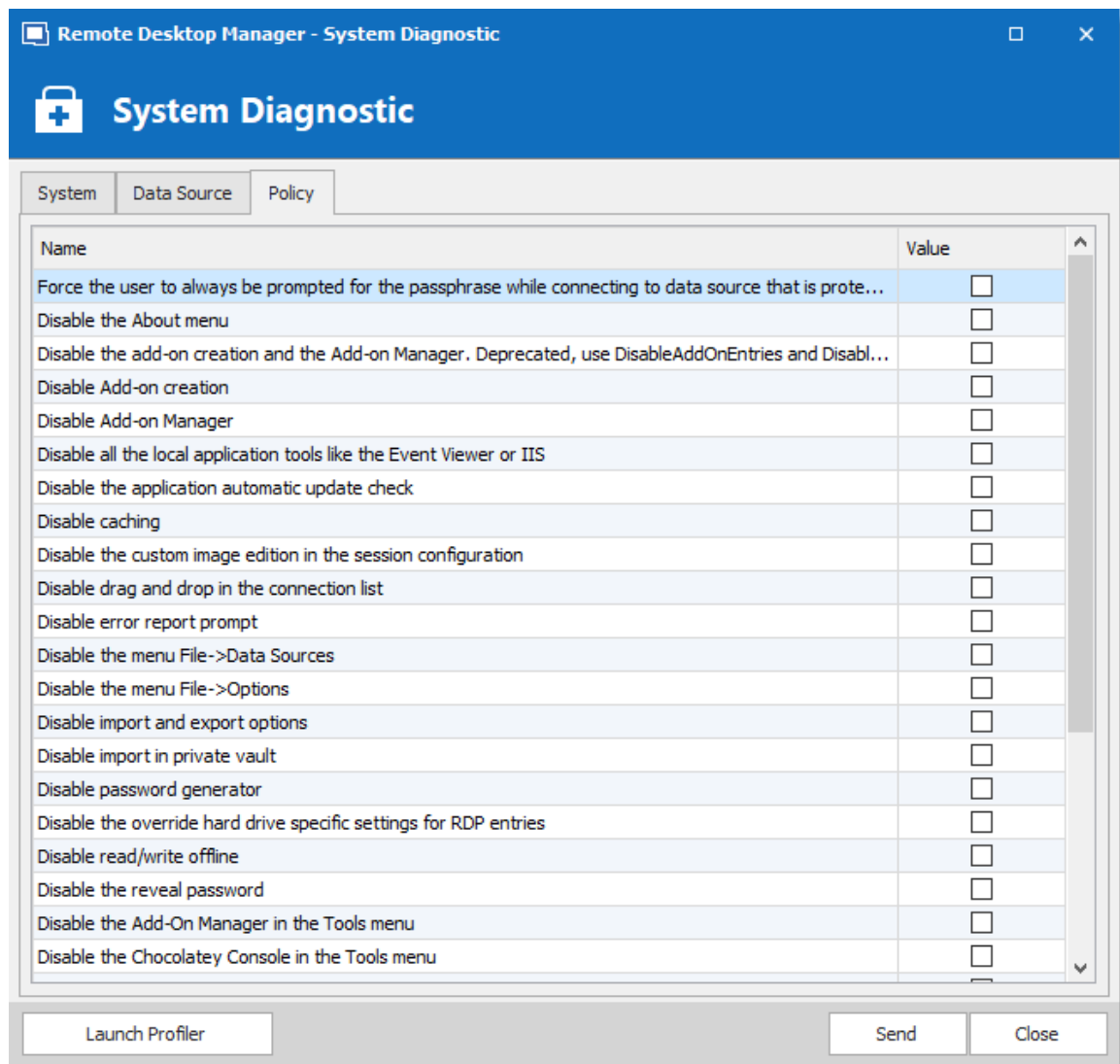
Too many custom images could dramatically increase the size of the data source and cause load time issue.



System Diagnostic - Data Source

POLICY

The Policy tab display the list of Group Policy Templates to see if any of them has been applied.



System Diagnostic - Policy

6.9.1.3 Profiler

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager has a built-in profiler to diagnose connectivity issues with a data source.



Displaying the Profiler window might slow down the operations on the data source. Proceed with care.



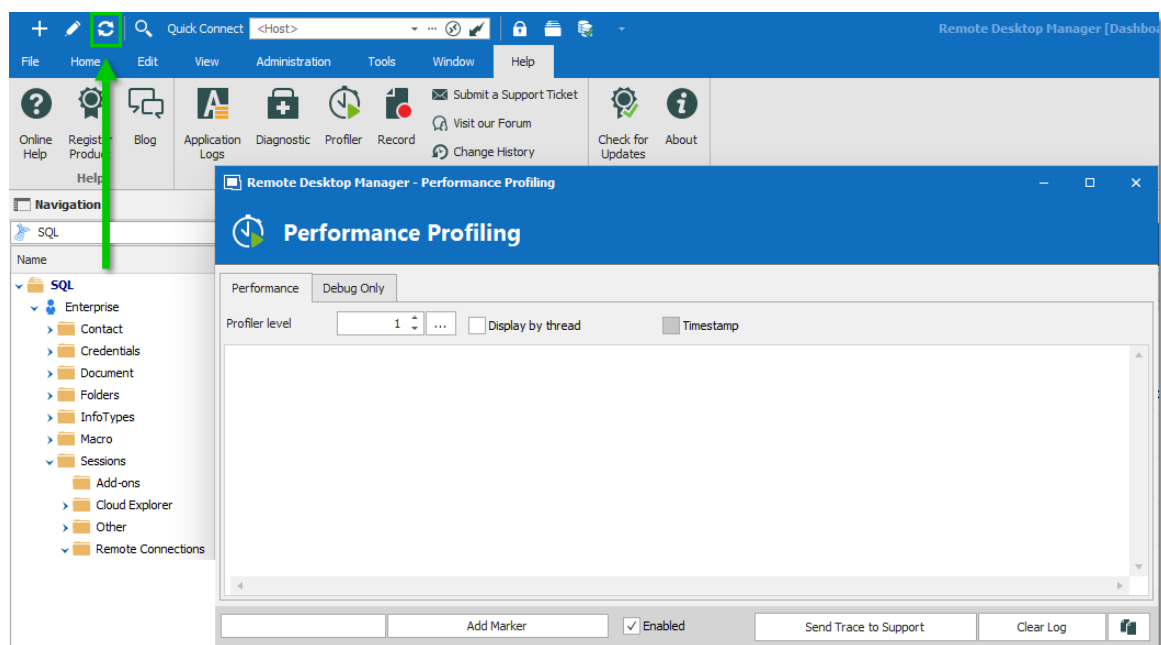
To diagnose startup issues, you can enable the profiler from the command line as described in Command Line Arguments

PROCEDURE

1. Once the Profiler is opened, refresh the data source.

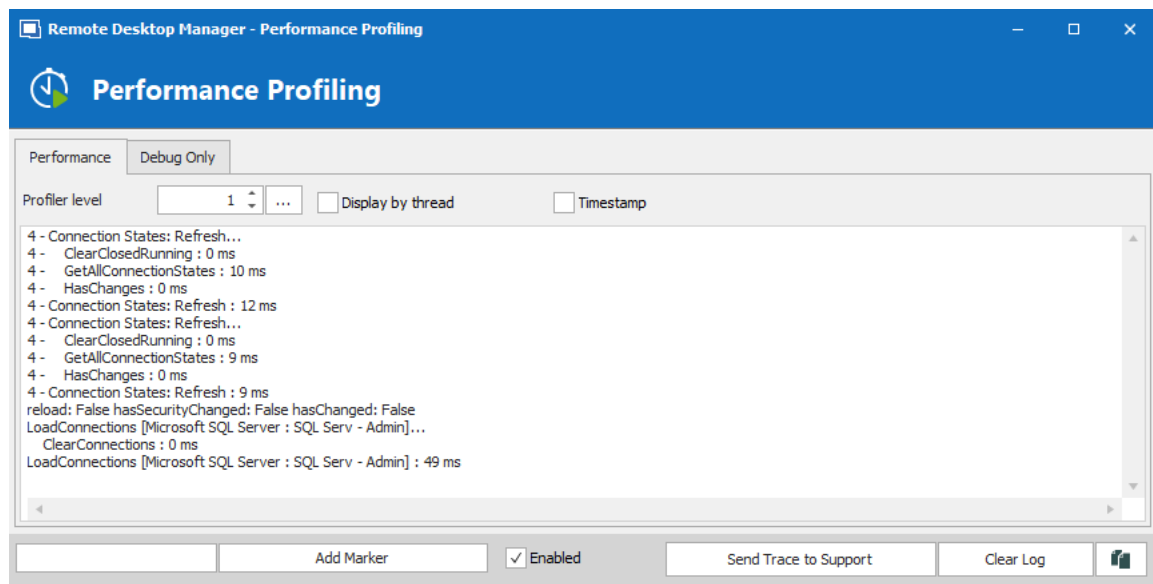


Holding the **Ctrl** key while performing the refresh should force a full reload of the data source, recreating the offline cache.



Refresh Data Source

2. The Profiler data will appear in the **Performance Profiling** window.

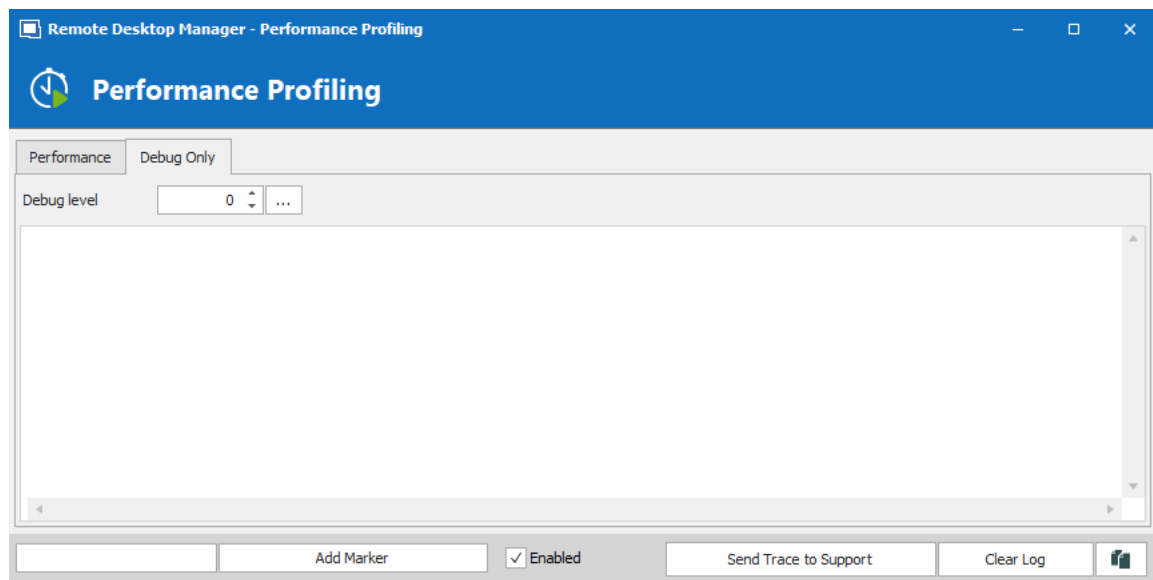


Performance Profiling

3. Click on **Send Trace to Support** in order to send the Profiler data logs to our Devolutions support team. You can add a Marker when running multiple tests to separate them.

DEBUG ONLY

To learn more about the **Debug only** tab please see the Debugging topic.



Debug only

6.9.1.4 Record

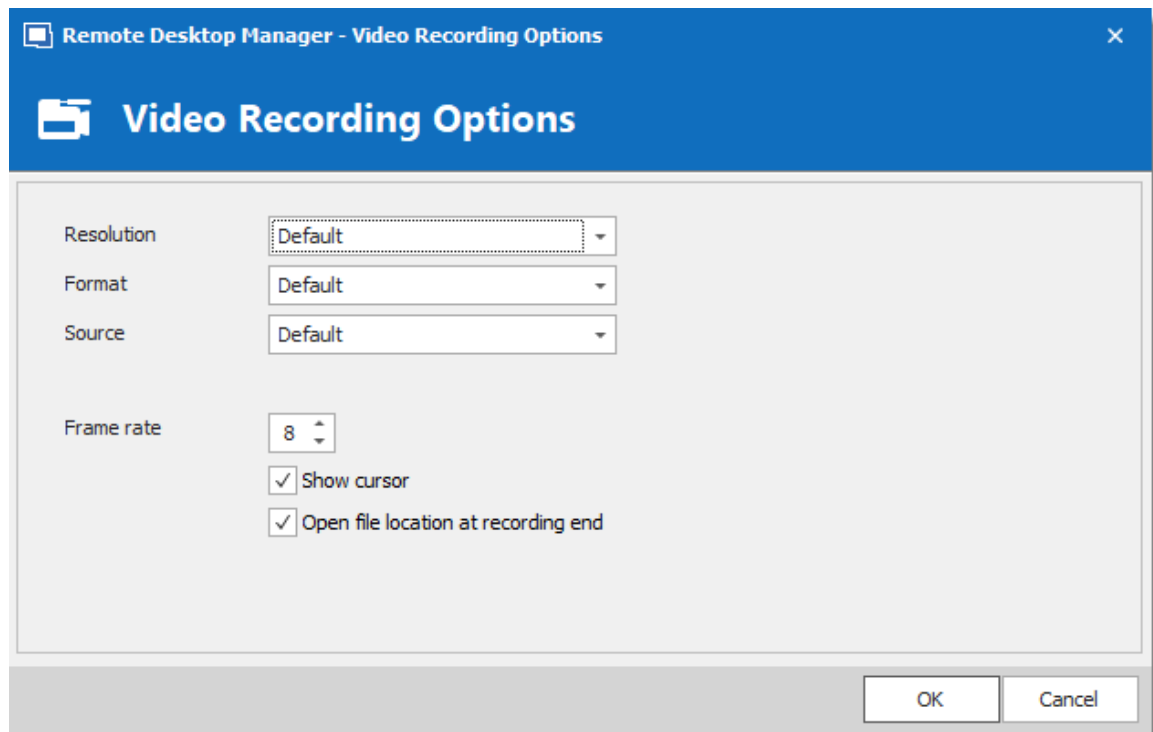
DESCRIPTION

If you are experiencing issues with Remote Desktop Manager, you can help our Devolutions Support team troubleshoot the problem by sending them a short video of your issue. Launch this by using the **Record** feature located in the menu **Help – Record**.

The **Record** is an easy-to-use built-in screen recorder that could even be a useful for your in-house training as it is not limited to Remote Desktop Manager.

SETTINGS

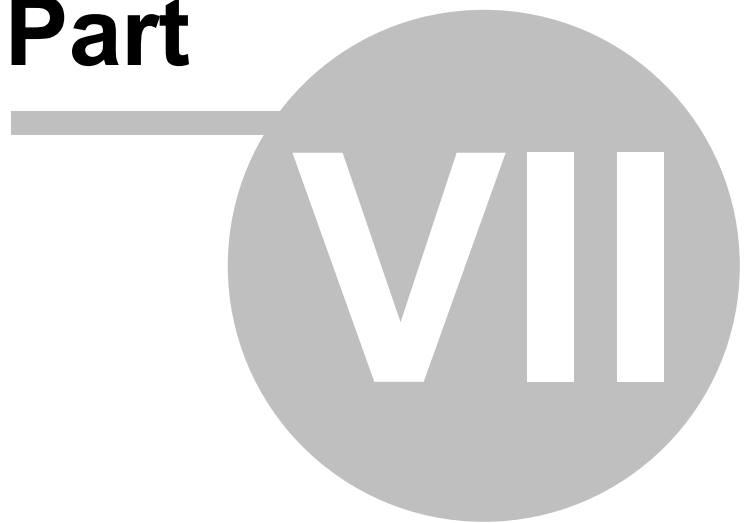
The Video Recording Options uses the MP4 format, which on Vanilla installs of Windows is not supported. If you encounter any difficulty viewing the video we strongly suggest the use of a [VLC player](#).



Video Recording Options

Devolutions Web Login

Part



7 Devolutions Web Login




7.1 Overview

DESCRIPTION



Devolutions Web Login is a web browser password plugin used in conjunction with Remote Desktop Manager, Devolutions Server and Password Hub, which allows users to securely inject passwords into websites using credentials stored in their vaults.

It gives system administrators full control over the management of passwords, without affecting the user's productivity.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
|  <p>Remote Desktop Manager</p> <p>Centralize, Manage and Secure Remote Connections</p> |  <p>Devolutions Server</p> <p>Secure, Manage and Monitor Access to Privileged Accounts</p> |  <p>Password Hub</p> <p>Vault and Manage Business-User Passwords</p> |
| <p>Remote Desktop Manager centralizes all remote connections on a single platform that is securely shared between users and across the entire team.</p> | <p>Devolutions Server lets you control access to privileged accounts and manage remote sessions through a secure solution that can be deployed on-premises.</p> | <p>Password Hub is a secure and cloud-based password manager for teams.</p> |



Advanced users, other browser extensions, or even JavaScript injection can all result in the password being read from the password edit control, even if it displays dots instead of the password. Any use of an external browser must be carefully weighed against your security requirements.

7.2 Installation

DESCRIPTION

Devolutions Web Login is a free browser extension companion tools. It does require one of our products to function at this time.

Click on the browser link below to start the installation of Devolutions Web Login plugin:

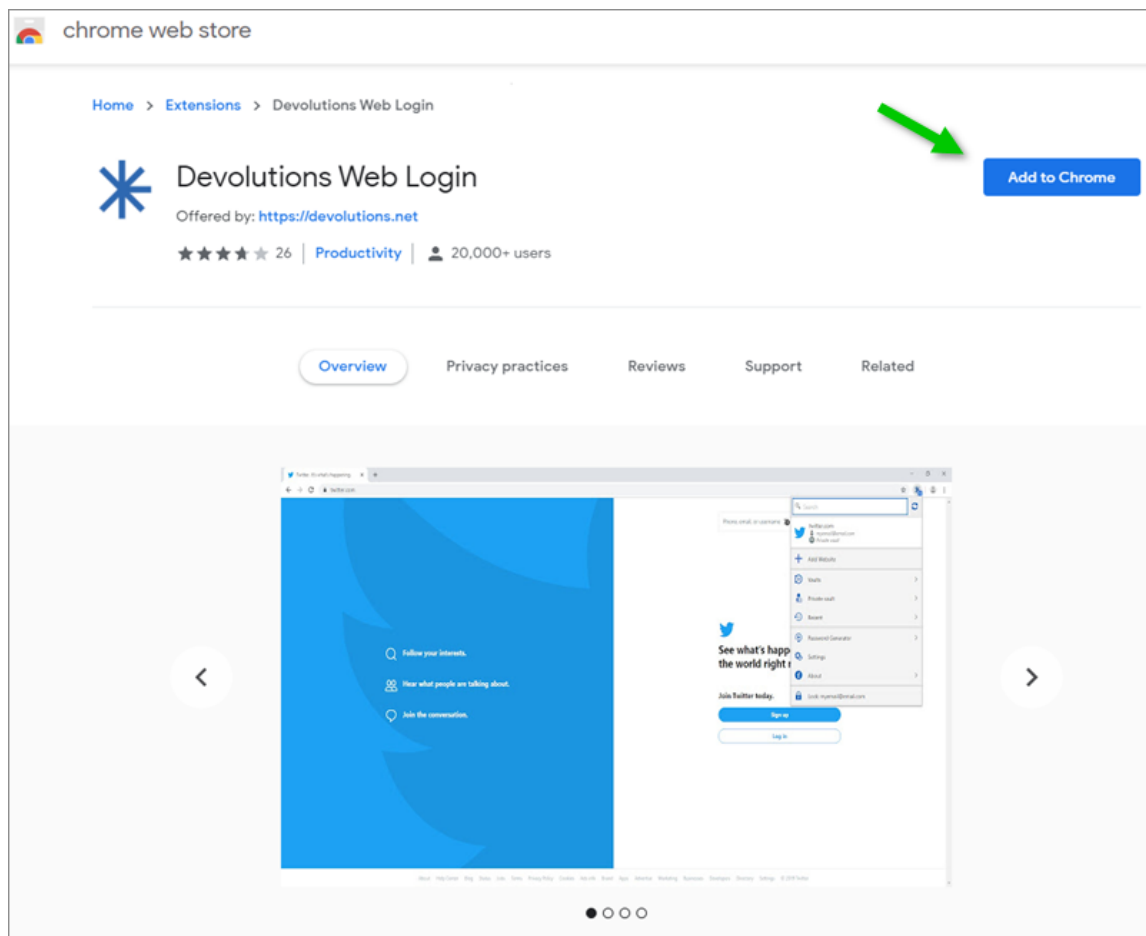
- [Chrome](#)
- [Firefox](#)
- [Edge](#)
- [Opera](#)

7.2.1 Chrome

DESCRIPTION

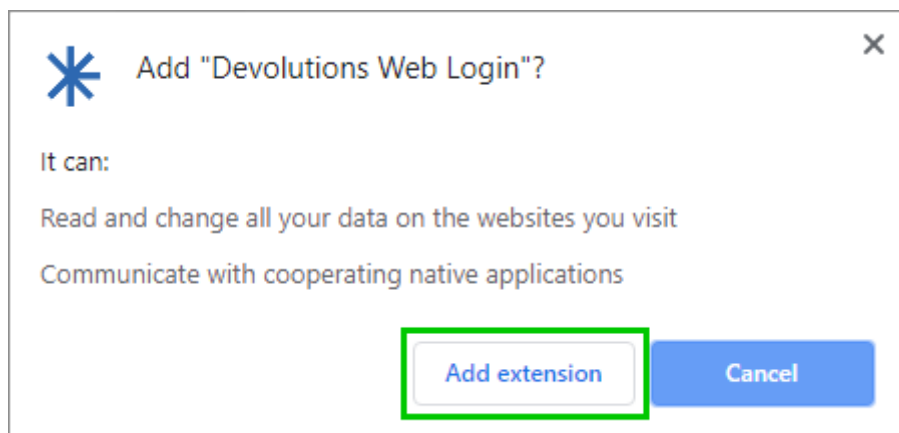
Follow the steps below to complete the installation of Devolutions Web Login in the Chrome web browser.

1. Open Chrome.
2. Navigate to [Devolutions Web Login extension](#) or use the link from our [Website](#).
3. Click the **Add To Chrome** button.



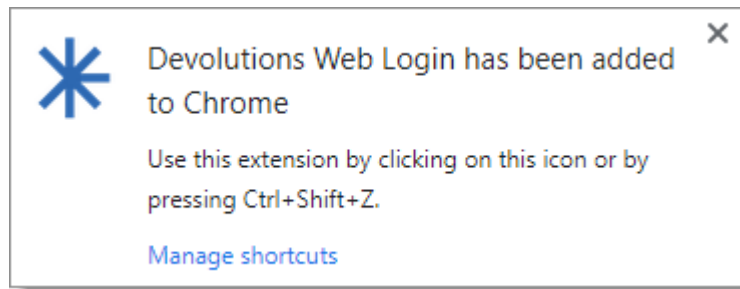
Devolutions Web Login Chrome Web Store

4. Click **Add extension** in the confirmation dialog.

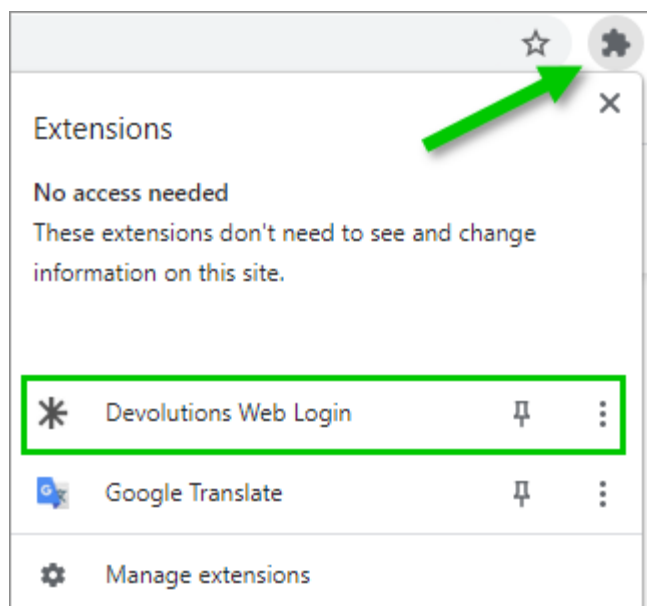


Extension Installation Confirmation

Once installed a confirmation box will appear.



5. Click the Chrome extension button and **Pin** Devolutions Web Login to finish the installation.



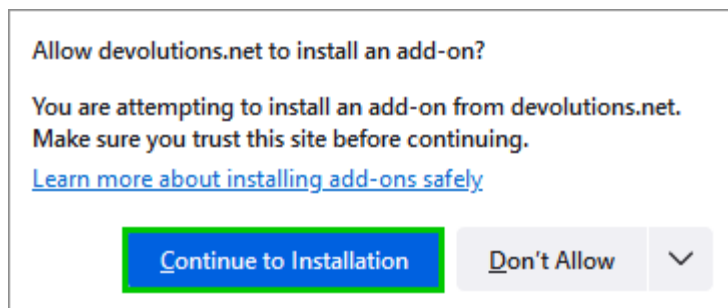
Devolutions Web Login Extension Button

7.2.2 Firefox

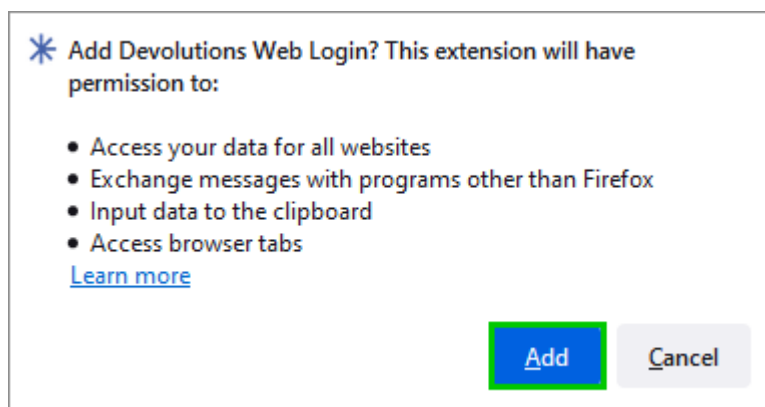
DESCRIPTION

Follow the steps below to complete the installation of Devolutions Web Login in the Firefox web browser.

1. Open a Firefox window.
2. Download the extension from our [Devolutions Web Login](#) website page.
3. Click **Continue to Installation** in the confirmation dialog.

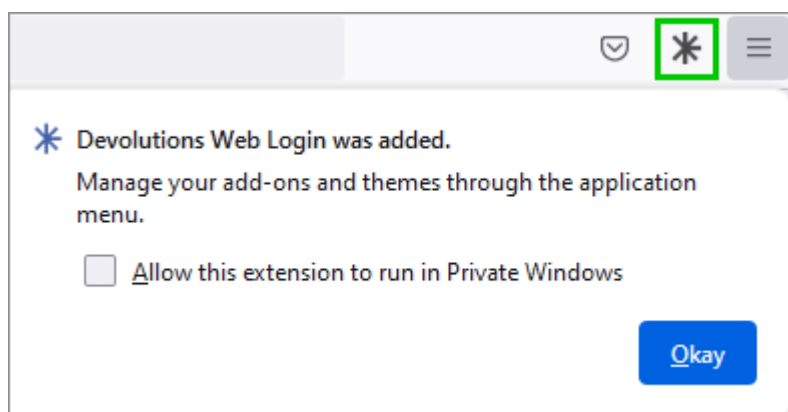


4. Click **Add**, when prompted to add Devolutions Web Login to the extension.



Add the Extension

5. Once installed, access the extension by clicking * in the top-right corner of Firefox.



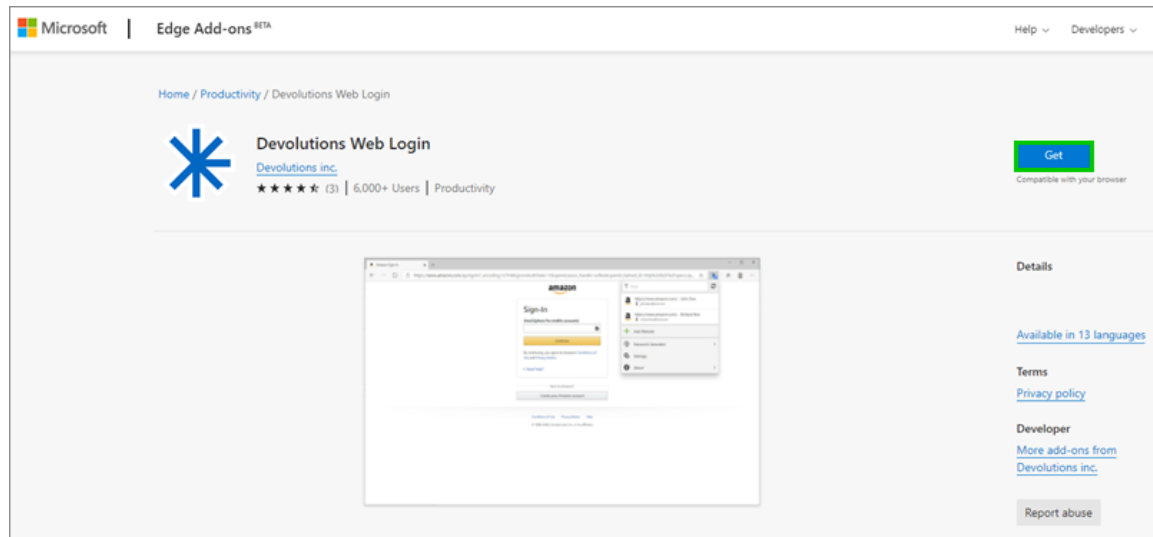
Devolutions Web Login Extension Button

7.2.3 Edge

DESCRIPTION

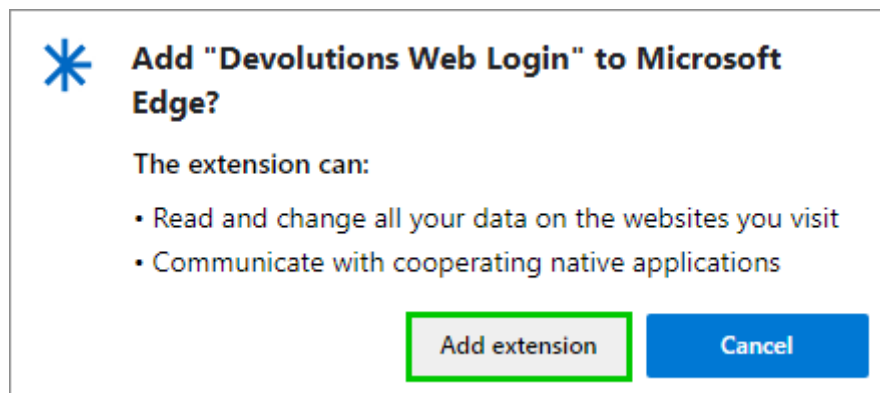
Here are the steps to install Devolutions Web Login on Microsoft Edge.

1. Open a Microsoft Edge window.
2. Download the extension from [Devolutions Web Login](#) website page.
3. Click **Get**.



Chrome Web Store

4. Add the extension to Microsoft Edge.



Add Devolutions Web Login to Microsoft Edge Beta

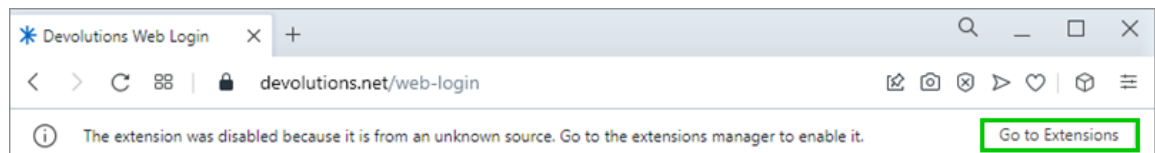
The extension is installed. Access it by clicking * in the top-right corner of the Microsoft Edge web browser.

7.2.4 Opera

DESCRIPTION

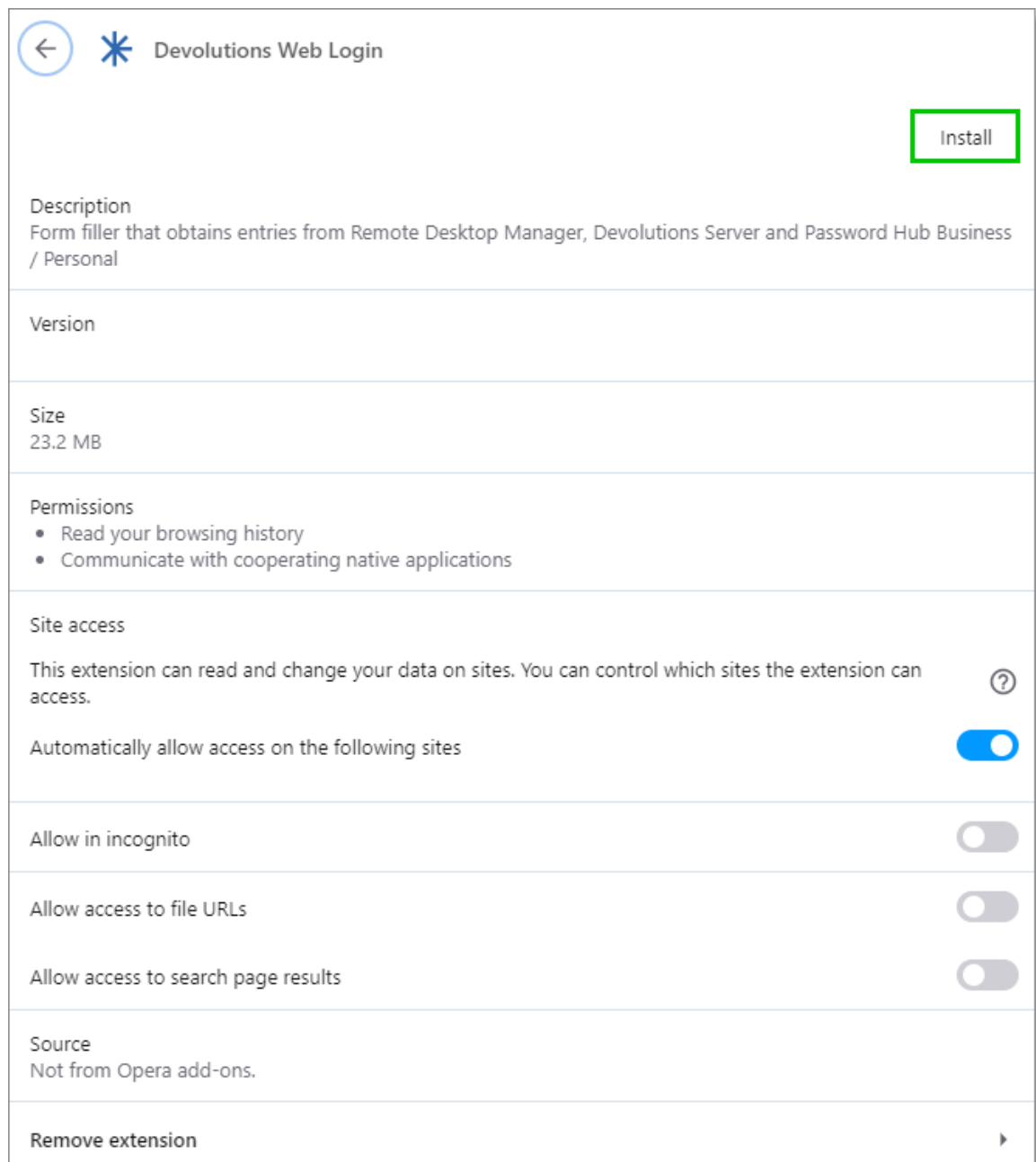
Follow the steps below to complete the installation of Devolutions Web Login in the Opera web browser.

1. Open Opera.
2. Download the extension of [Devolutions Web Login](#) from our website page.
3. Click on **Go to Extension** from the information panel at the top or click on the Extension button



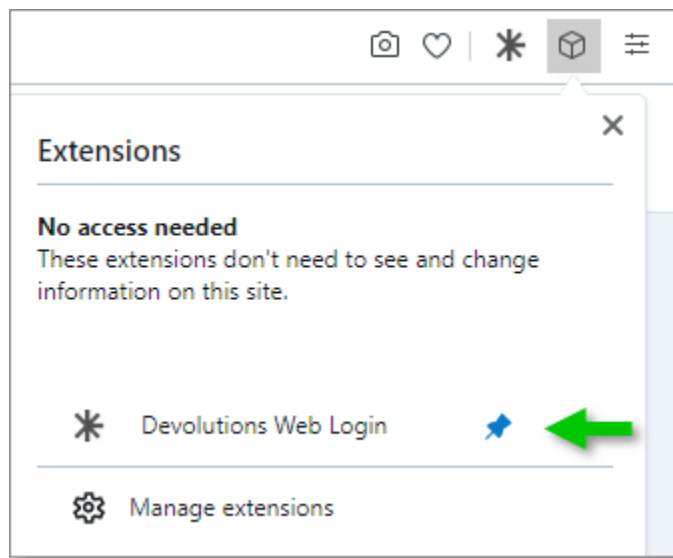
Opera Extensions Enabling

4. Click **Install** and the **Yes, install** pop up.



Opera Install Window

5. Click on the **Extensions** button of the browser and **Pin** the Devolutions Web Login extension.



Access the extension by clicking * in the top-right corner of Opera.

7.3 First Login

7.3.1 Password Hub Business Login

DESCRIPTION

FIRST LOGIN WITH DEVOLUTIONS WEB LOGIN

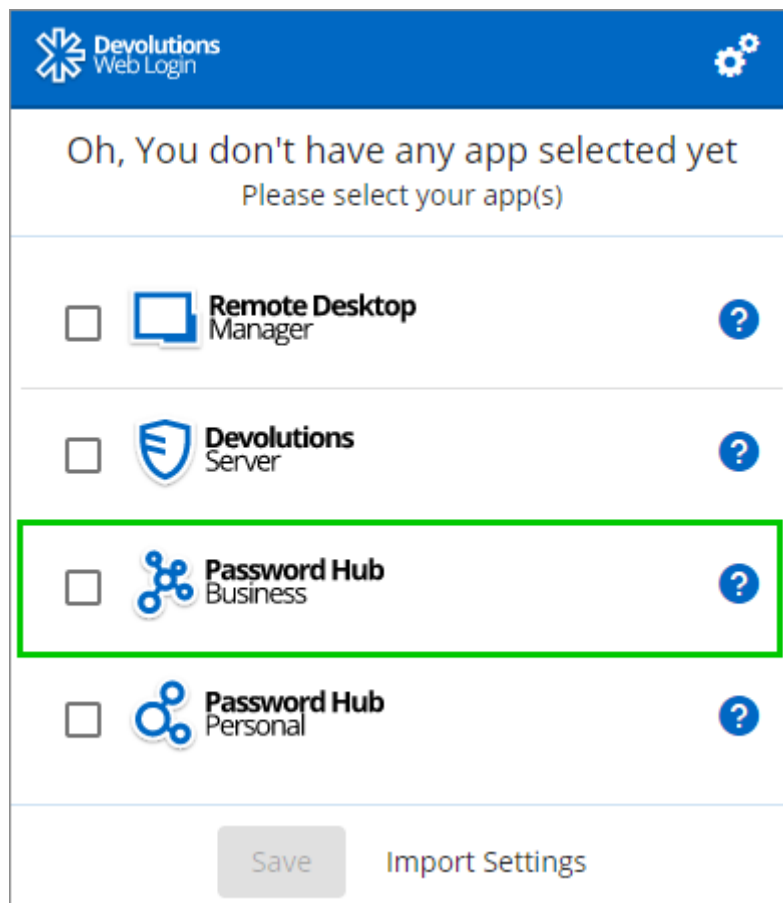
Follow these steps to connect Password Hub Business to Devolutions Web Login extension:

1. Click on **Devolutions Web Login** * extension at the top right corner of your browser.



A Password Hub Business access is required to continue.

2. Choose **Password Hub Business** in the list and **Save**.



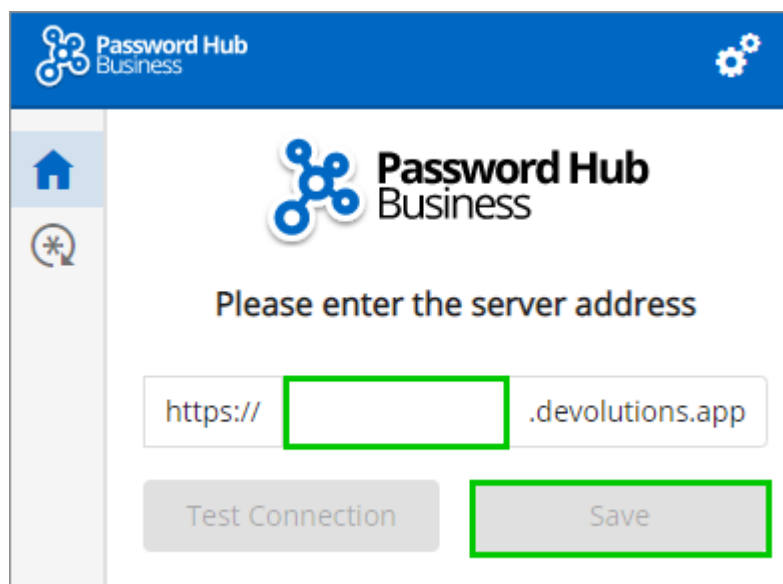
The screenshot shows the 'Devolutions Web Login' interface. At the top, a blue header contains the Devolutions logo and a settings gear icon. Below the header, a message reads: 'Oh, You don't have any app selected yet Please select your app(s)'. A list of four applications is displayed, each with a checkbox, an icon, the application name, and a help icon (a blue circle with a question mark). The applications are: Remote Desktop Manager, Devolutions Server, Password Hub Business, and Password Hub Personal. The 'Password Hub Business' row is highlighted with a green rectangular border. At the bottom of the list, there are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Import Settings'.

| App | Selected | Help |
|------------------------|--------------------------|------|
| Remote Desktop Manager | <input type="checkbox"/> | ? |
| Devolutions Server | <input type="checkbox"/> | ? |
| Password Hub Business | <input type="checkbox"/> | ? |
| Password Hub Personal | <input type="checkbox"/> | ? |

Save Import Settings

First Login

3. Enter your Password Hub Business server address and **Save**.



The screenshot shows the 'Password Hub Business' configuration screen. A blue header contains the Password Hub Business logo and a settings gear icon. On the left, there is a sidebar with a home icon and a magnifying glass icon. The main content area has the Password Hub Business logo and the text: 'Please enter the server address'. Below this, there is a text input field with the placeholder text 'https://' followed by a green-bordered box and the text '.devolutions.app'. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Test Connection' and 'Save', with the 'Save' button highlighted by a green rectangular border.

https:// .devolutions.app

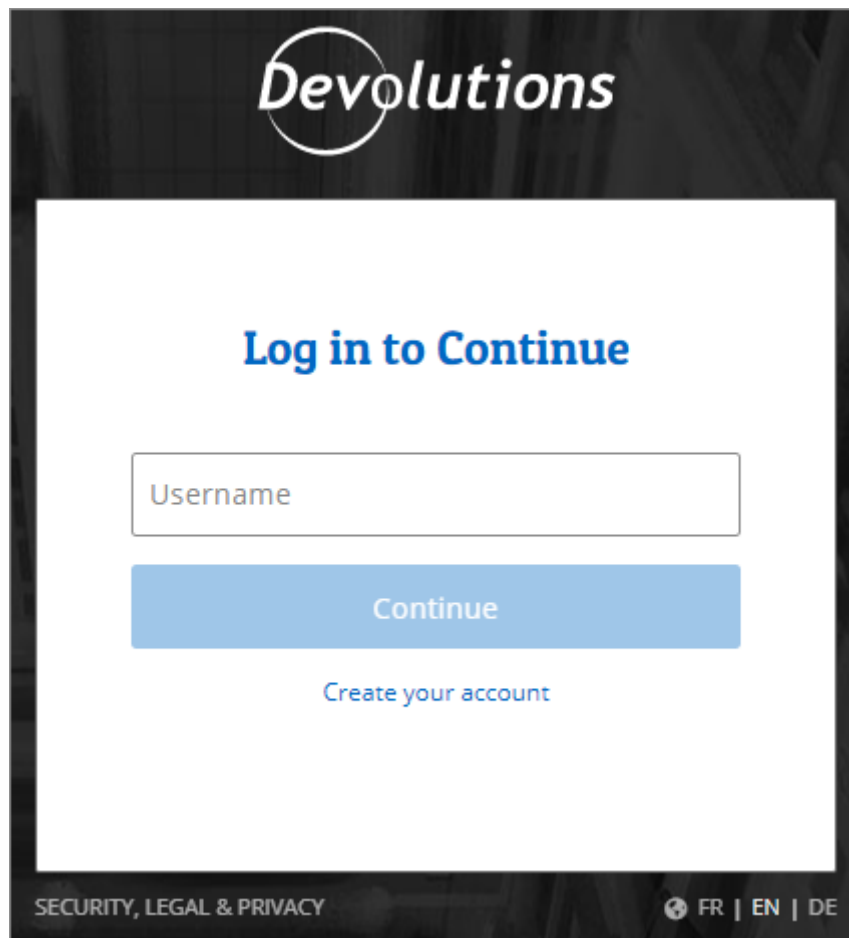
Test Connection Save

4. **Log in** to your Devolutions Account.



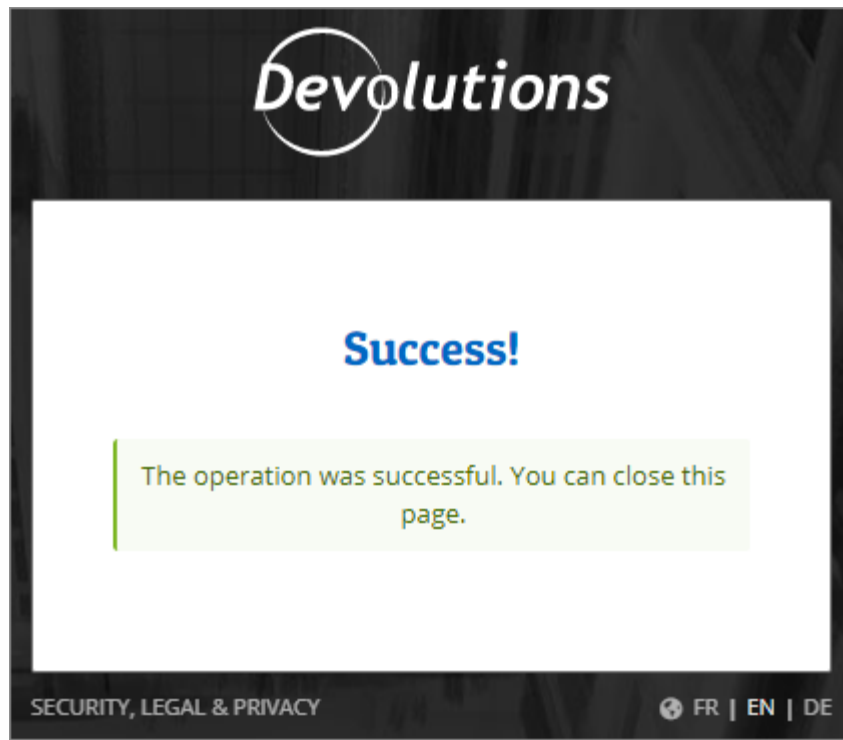
Log In

5. Enter the credentials from your Devolutions Account to continue.

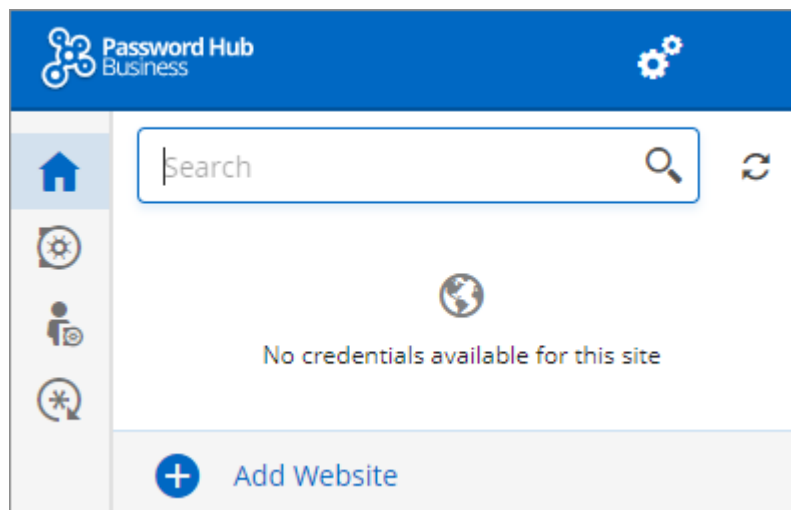


Devolutions Account Login

6. When complete, a log in confirmation message will appear.

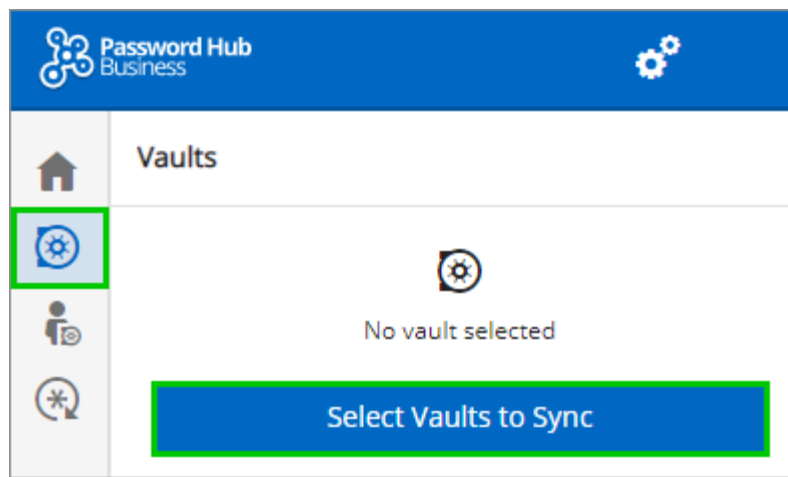


7. If you click on the * icon, you can validate that Devolutions Web Login is now connected to your Password Hub Business.

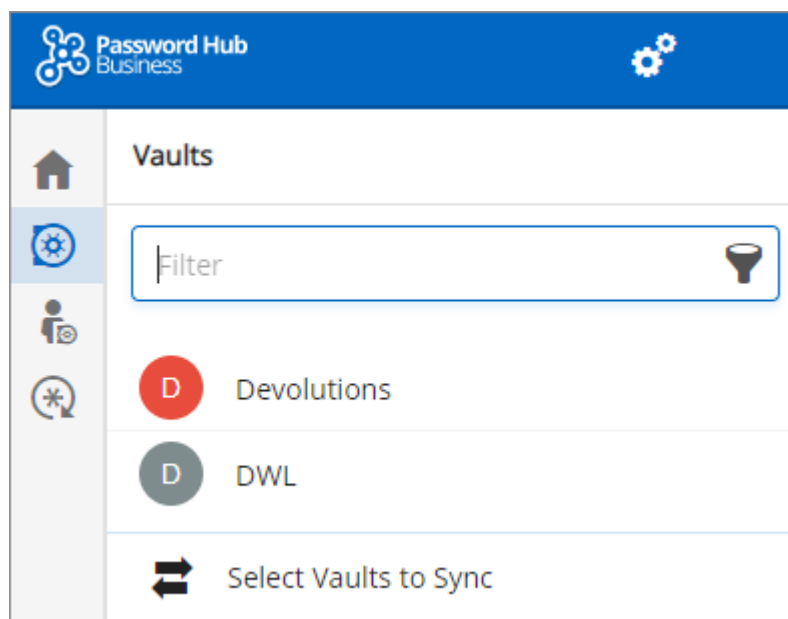


Devolutions Web Login Connected to Password Hub Business

8. To select the vaults to be synchronized, click on the **Vaults** icon and the **Select Vaults to Sync** button. Afterward, you click on the **Select all** button, or refine your view by adding a check mark next to the specific vaults to synchronize.



9. When done selecting your vaults, click on the **Select Vaults to Sync** at the top of the panel, to get the following view.



7.3.2 Password Hub Personal Login

DESCRIPTION

FIRST LOGIN WITH DEVOLUTIONS WEB LOGIN

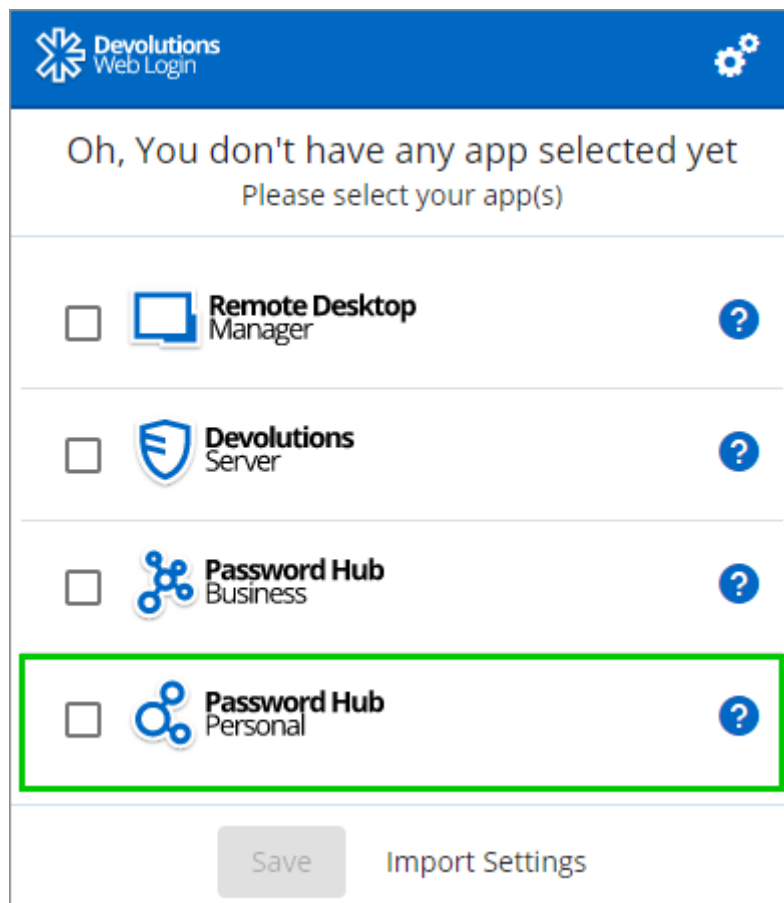
Follow these steps to connect Password Hub Personal to Devolutions Web Login extension:

1. Click on **Devolutions Web Login** * extension at the top right corner of your browser.

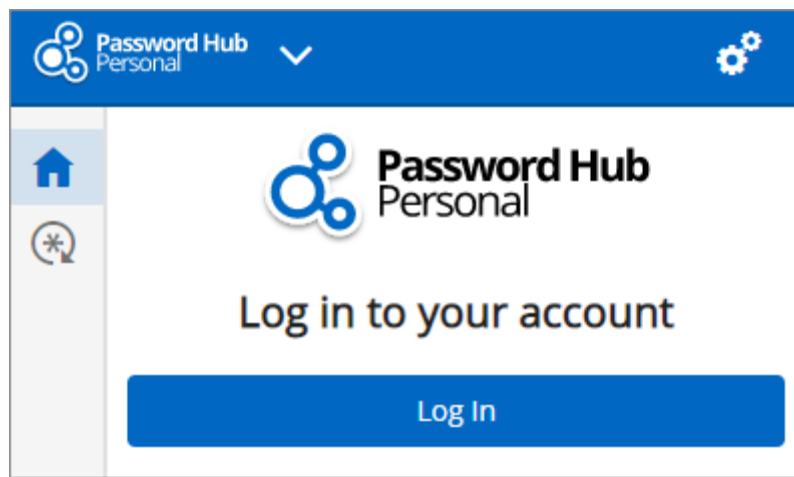


A Password Hub Personal access is required to continue.

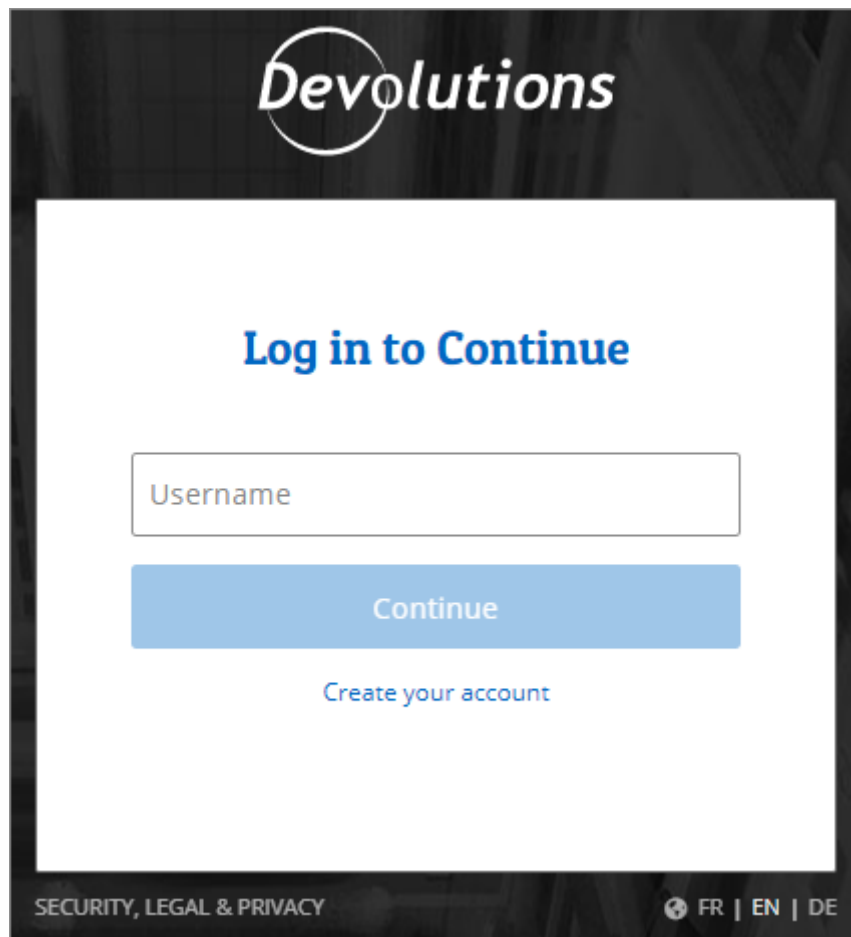
2. Choose **Password Hub Personal** in the list and **Save**.



3. **Log in** to your account.

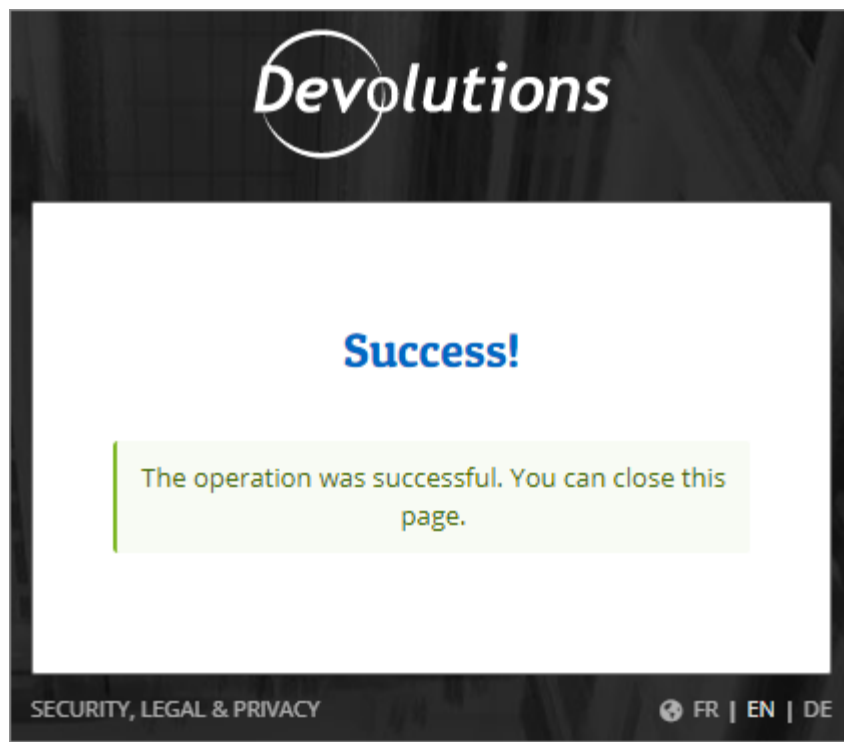


4. Enter the credentials from your Devolutions Account to continue.

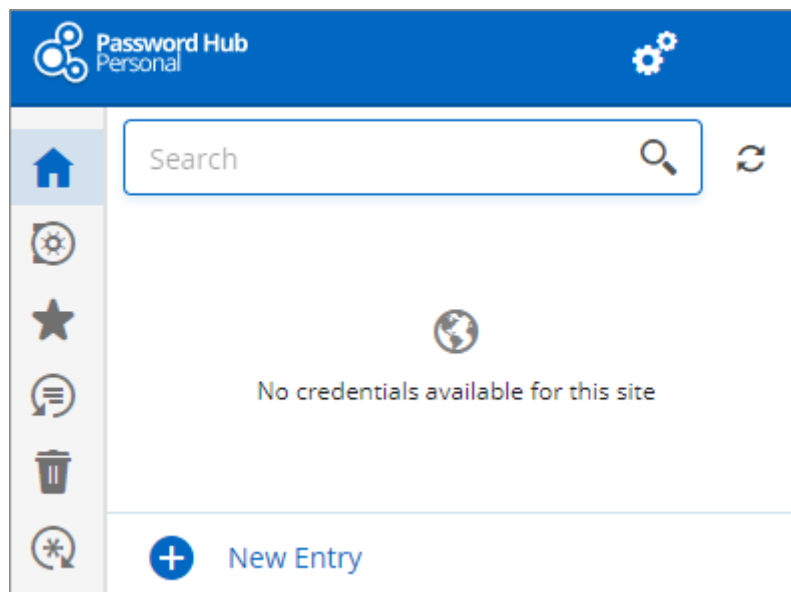


Devolutions Account Login

5. When complete, a log in confirmation message will appear.



6. If you click on the * icon, you can validate that Devolutions Web Login is now connected to your Password Hub Personal.



7.3.3 Devolutions Server Login

DESCRIPTION

FIRST LOGIN WITH DEVOLUTIONS WEB LOGIN

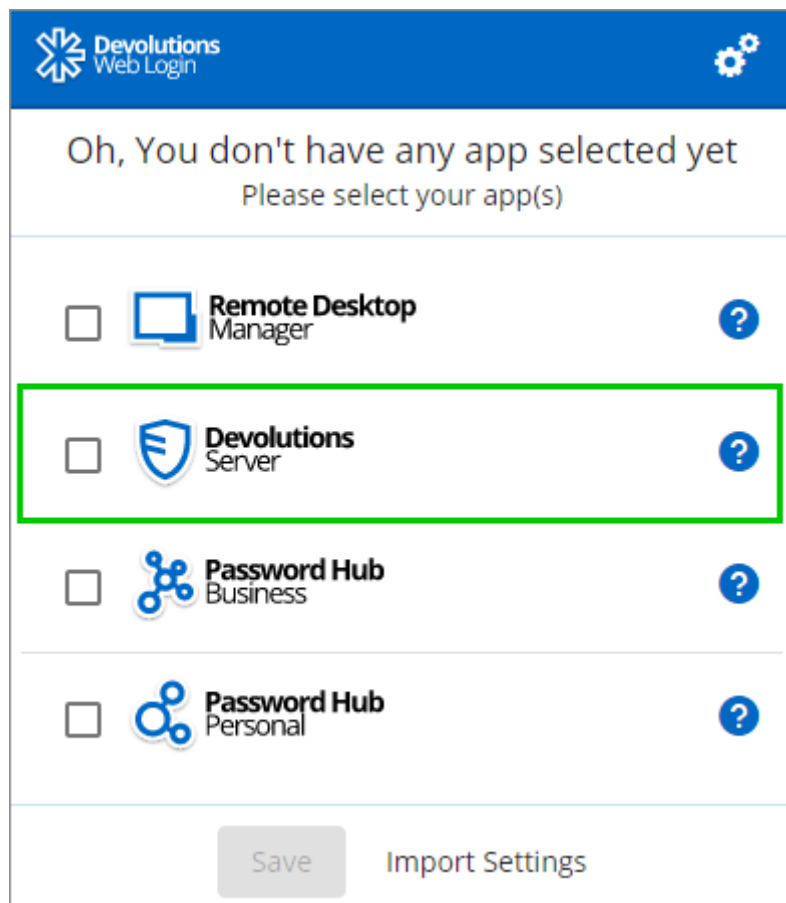
Follow these steps to connect Devolutions Server to Devolutions Web Login extension:

1. Click on **Devolutions Web Login** * extension at the top right corner of your browser.











A Devolutions Server access is required to continue.

2. Choose **Devolutions Server** in the list and **Save**.



Devolutions Web Login

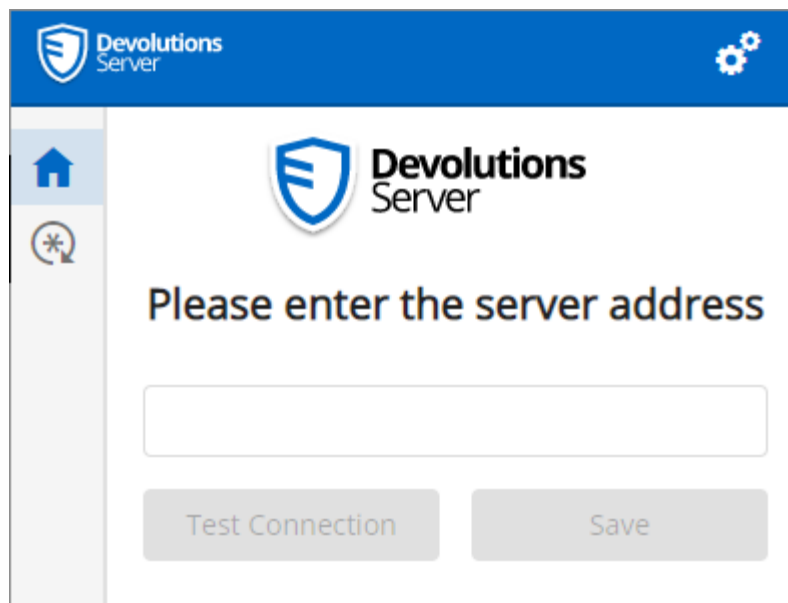
Oh, You don't have any app selected yet
Please select your app(s)

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  Remote Desktop Manager |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  Devolutions Server |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  Password Hub Business |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> |  Password Hub Personal |  |

Save Import Settings

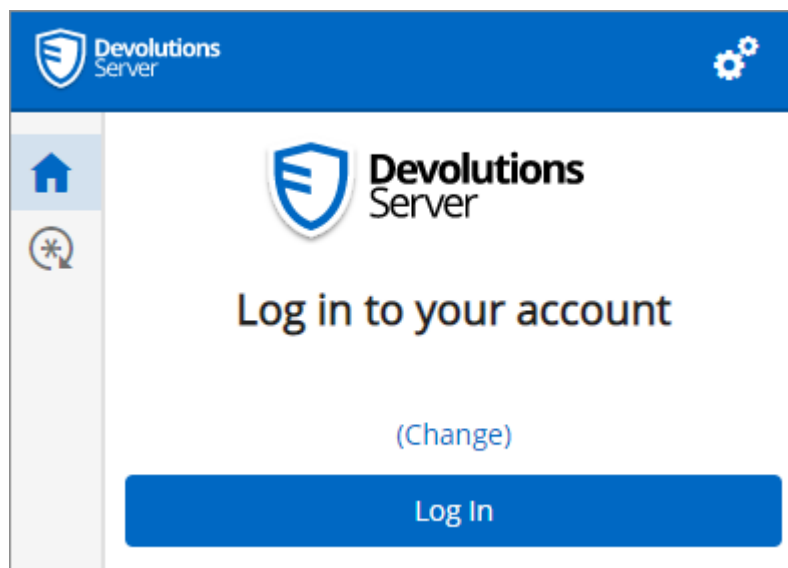
First Login

3. Enter the address of your server. You will need to input the same information that you would use to connect to the web interface of your Devolutions Server. Test the connection to validate it, then **Save**.

The screenshot shows the Devolutions Server web interface. At the top is a blue header with the Devolutions Server logo and a settings gear icon. On the left is a sidebar with a home icon and a magnifying glass icon. The main content area has the Devolutions Server logo and the text 'Please enter the server address'. Below this is a text input field. At the bottom are two buttons: 'Test Connection' and 'Save'.

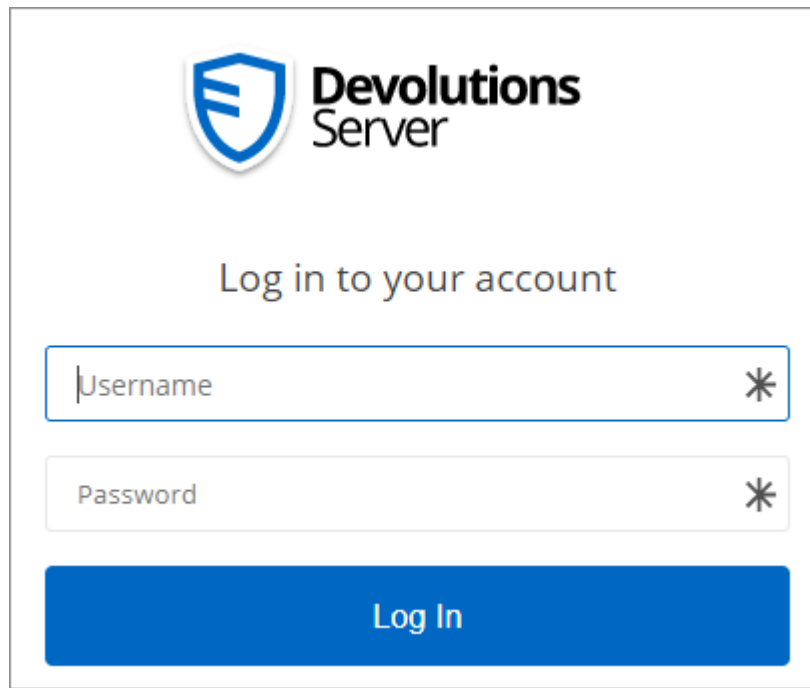
Server Address

4. Click **Log In**.

The screenshot shows the Devolutions Server web interface. At the top is a blue header with the Devolutions Server logo and a settings gear icon. On the left is a sidebar with a home icon and a magnifying glass icon. The main content area has the Devolutions Server logo and the text 'Log in to your account'. Below this is a link '(Change)' and a large blue button labeled 'Log In'.

Devolutions Web Login Login

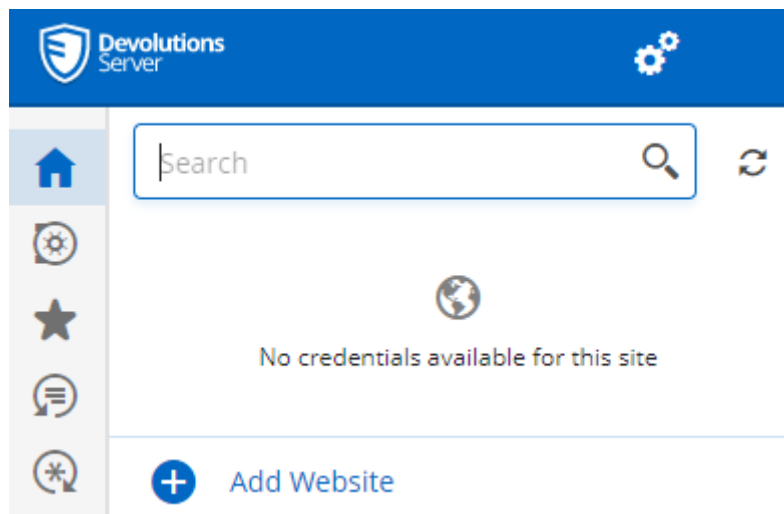
5. Enter your Devolutions Server credentials and click **Log in**.



The image shows the Devolutions Server login interface. At the top, there is a logo consisting of a blue shield with a white 'E' inside, followed by the text 'Devolutions Server'. Below the logo, the text 'Log in to your account' is centered. There are two input fields: the first is labeled 'Username' and the second is labeled 'Password'. Both fields have a blue asterisk icon on the right side. Below the input fields is a large blue button with the text 'Log In' in white.

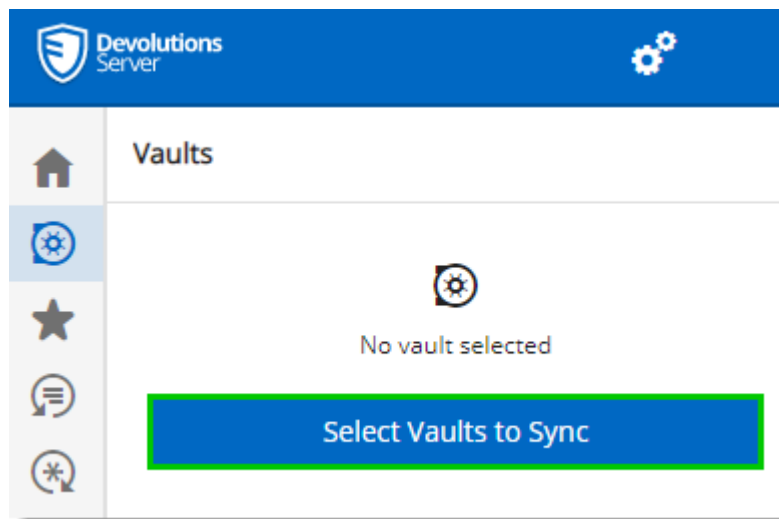
Devolutions Server Login

6. If you click on the * icon, you can validate that Devolutions Web Login is now connected to your Devolutions Server.

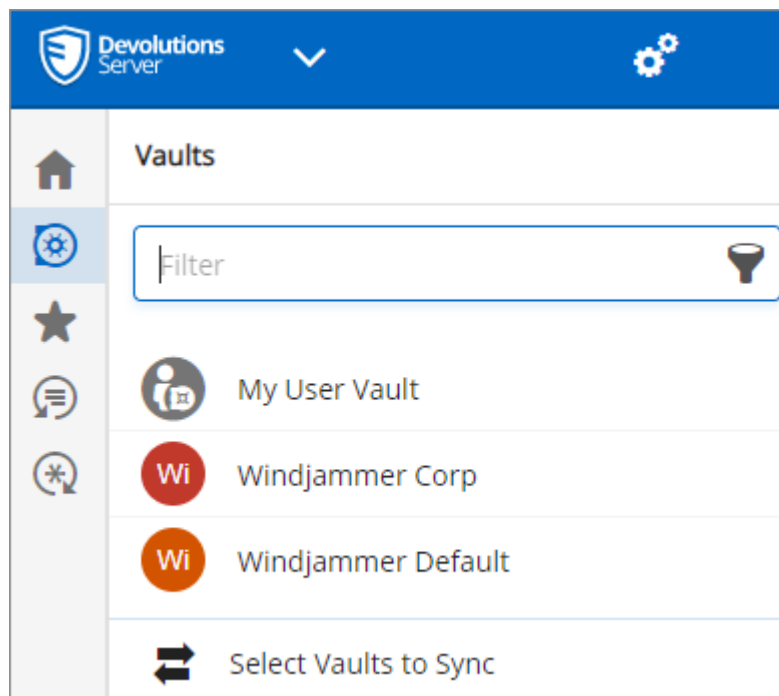


Devolutions Web Login Connected

7. To select the vaults to be synchronized, click on the **Vaults** icon and the **Select Vaults to Sync** button. Afterward, you click on the **Select all** button, or refine your view by adding a check mark next to the specific vaults to synchronize.



8. When done selecting your vaults, click on the **Select Vaults to Sync** at the top of the panel, to get the following view.



7.3.4 Remote Desktop Manager Login

DESCRIPTION

FIRST LOGIN WITH DEVOLUTIONS WEB LOGIN

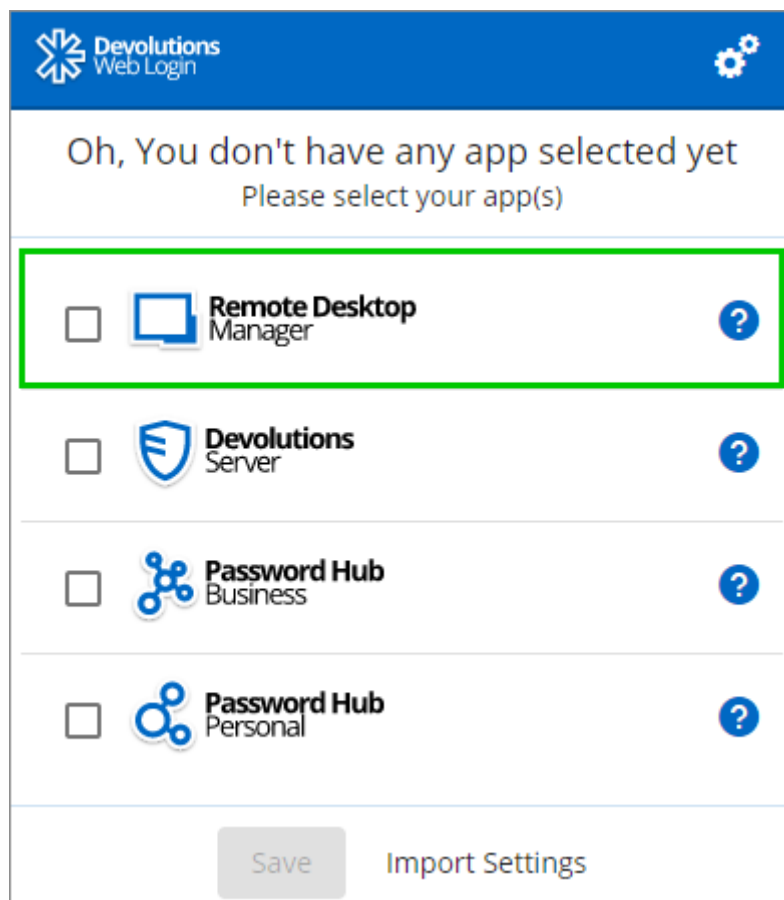
Follow these steps to connect your Remote Desktop Manager to Devolutions Web Login extension, you will be prompted to pair the two applications.

1. Click on Devolutions Web Login * extension at the top right corner of your browser.



Remote Desktop Manager must be installed and running to continue.

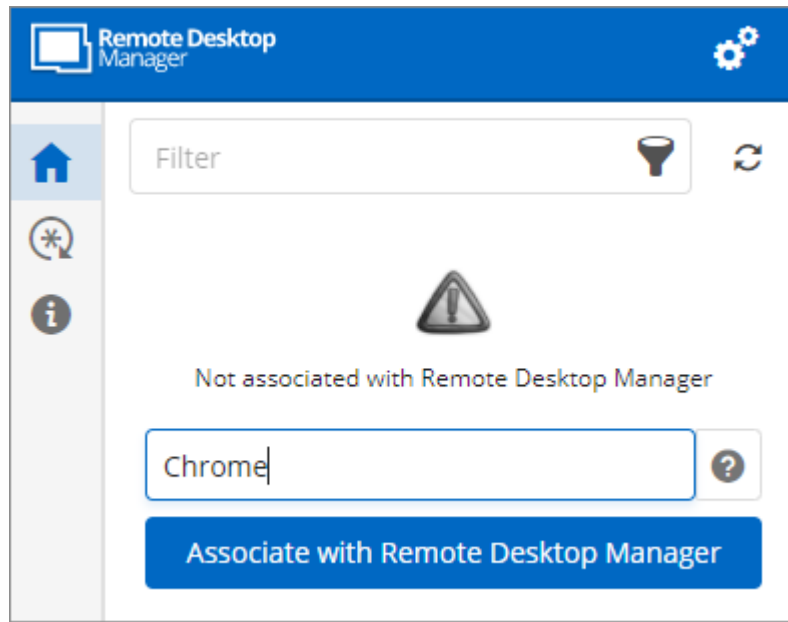
2. Choose **Remote Desktop Manager** in the list and **Save**.



3. Enter a name, for this association, in the text box.



This name can be used to identify a particular association and to deny access to it from Remote Desktop Manager. The default name is the name of the web browser running Devolutions Web Login.

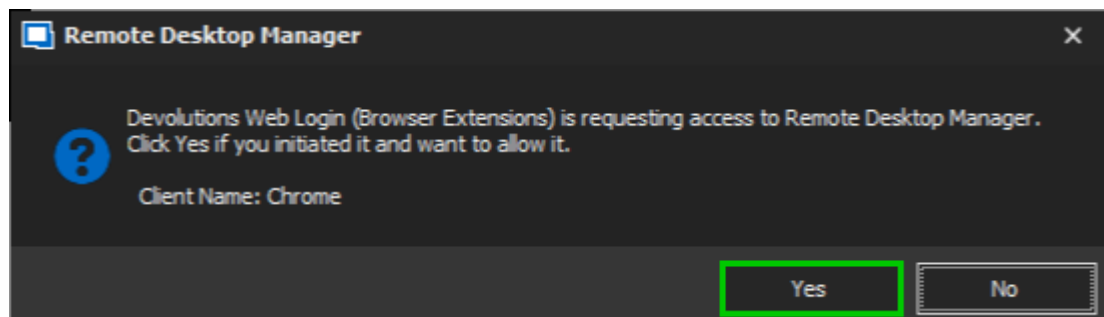


4. Click on **Associate with Remote Desktop Manager**.

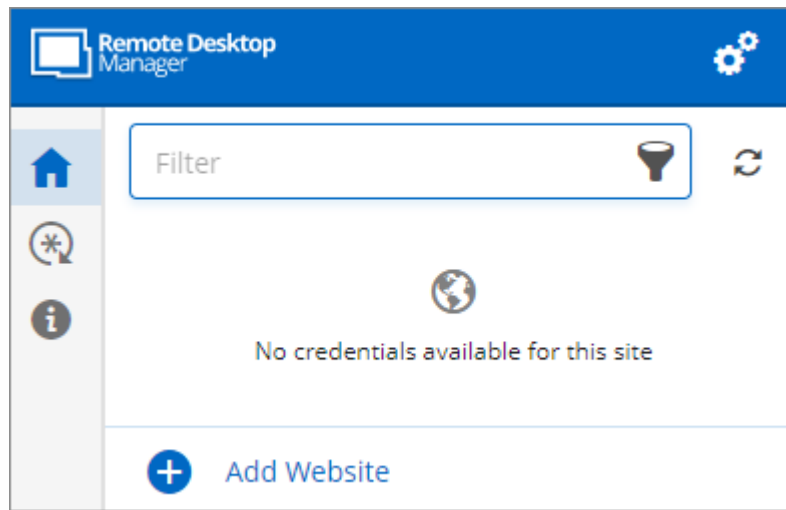


A popup window should appear on Remote Desktop Manager asking if the request was actually sent by you.

5. Click **Yes** in Remote Desktop Manager to accept the association request.



6. If you click on the * icon, you can validate that Devolutions Web Login is now paired to your Remote Desktop Manager.

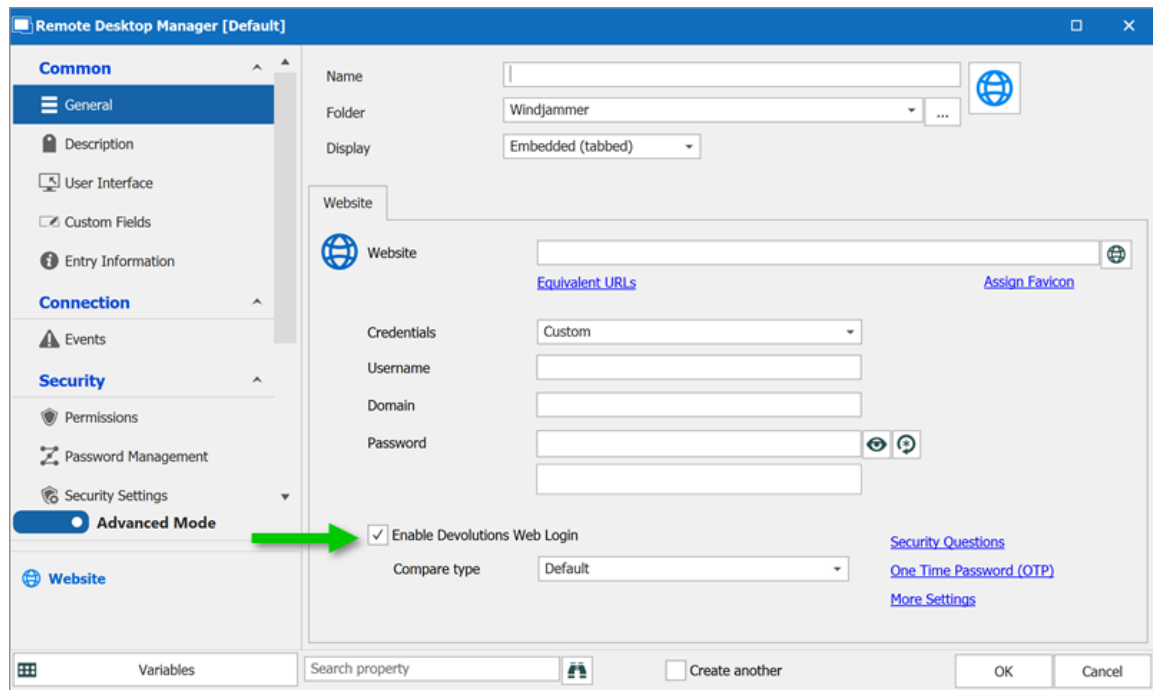


Note that, while Remote Desktop Manager can handle multiple associations (e.g., multiple browsers), Devolutions Web Login can only be paired to a single instance of RDM at any time.

7.3.4.1 Enable Devolutions Web Login

DESCRIPTION

Checkmark ***Enable Devolutions Web Login*** in Remote Desktop Manager entries to allow Devolutions Web Login extension to retrieve the credentials when connecting to its respective website.



Enable Devolutions Web Login

7.4 Exploring Devolutions Web Login

7.4.1 Menu

DESCRIPTION

The user interface **Devolutions Web Login** is slightly different in appearance when connected to Remote Desktop Manager, Devolutions Server or Password Hub Business and Personal.

See below a list of the menu and information available from the Devolutions Web Login extension:

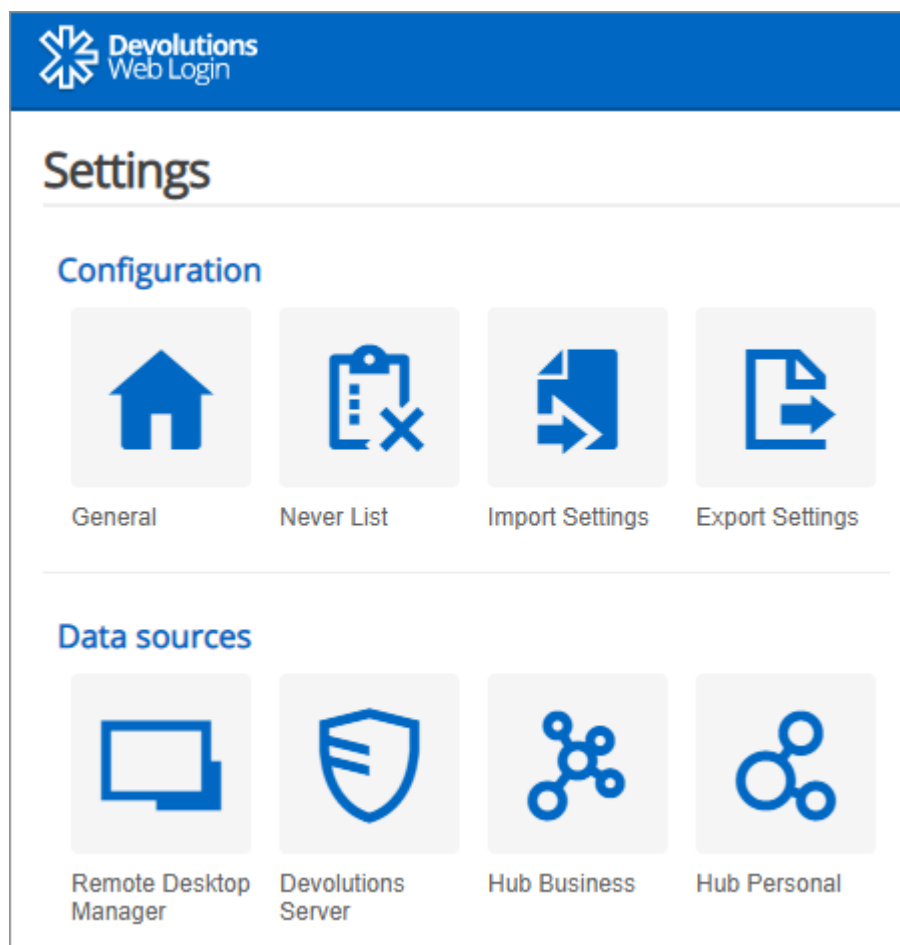
- Refine the credential list available with the **Filter** search bar.
- **Add Website** from Devolutions Web Login in a specific folder located in a vault or your User Vault.
- **Visualize the credential** stored in the vaults if you are connected with Devolutions Server or Password Hub.

- Browse **Recent** entry or **Favorites**.
- Use the **Password generator** to create custom and more secure credentials.
- Set Devolutions Web Login [Settings](#).

7.4.1.1 Settings

DESCRIPTION

Devolutions Web Login settings are separated in two categories, [Configuration](#) and [Data sources](#).



Devolutions Web Login Settings

CONFIGURATION

The **General** settings are about the user interface and interaction.

- Show Devolutions Web Login extension icon in the credentials fields.
- Show the prompt when saving credentials on new login.
- Show the context menu options.
- Color the fields that are filled with Devolutions Web Login
- Set the color **Theme** of the application.
- Disable the analytics telemetry in the **Advanced** setting.

The **Never list** displays the list of websites, added locally, to which the user will never be prompted to save credentials.

- Type can range from: **Never add site**, **Never autofill**, **Never do anything** to **Never show icons in fields**.
- Matching options are: **Base domains**, **Host**, **Starts with**, **RegEx** and **Exact**.

The **Import / Export Settings** allows to save and transfer your currently set preferred settings.

- Import setting from other browsers or users.
- Choose to export Devolutions Web Login **Settings**, **Password Generator** template and the **Never List**.

DATA SOURCES

The data sources settings are used to customize Devolutions Web Login interactions with [Remote Desktop Manager](#), [Devolutions Server](#) and [Password Hub](#) Business or Personal.

REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER

| GENERAL OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Enable Remote Desktop Manager app | Retrieve entries from Remote Desktop Manager when the application is open. |

| GENERAL OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Use default port (19443) | Communicate with the default port 19443 between the application. |
| Add entry in User Vault by default | Save new entries in the User Vault. |
| Destination folder | Choose the folder where the credentials are stored in the vault. |
| ACTION OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
| Automatically retrieve credentials on page load | <p>Devolutions Web Login automatically search for credentials in the data source when connecting to a website.</p> <p>If disabled, click on the Devolutions Web Login extension icon to manually retrieve credentials.</p> |
| Automatically fill in credentials on load | Fill automatically the credentials when loading a web page. |
| Automatically submit the form after filling | Submit the credentials automatically when the fields are filled. |
| ADVANCED OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
| Application key | Secure the port with an application key by using the same code in Remote Desktop Manager and Devolutions Web Login. |

| ADVANCED OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|--|
| | Navigate to File - Options - Browser Extensions in Remote Desktop Manager to set the application key. |
| Enable native messaging | Exchange messages with a native application installed on the user's computer. |
| Use legacy API | Use the old browser extension API for compatibility with older versions of Remote Desktop Manager. |

DEVOLUTIONS SERVER

| GENERAL OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|--|
| Enable Devolutions Server | Retrieve entries from Devolutions Server. |
| Destination folder | Choose the folder where the credentials are stored in the vault. |
| Server URL | Enter the URL of the Devolutions Server instance to connect to. |

| ACTION OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Automatically retrieve credentials on page load | <p>Devolutions Web Login automatically search for credentials in the data source when connecting to a website.</p> <p>If disabled, click on the Devolutions Web Login extension icon to manually retrieve credentials.</p> |

| ACTION OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|--|
| Automatically fill in credentials on load | Fill automatically the credentials when loading a web page. |
| Automatically submit the form after filling | Submit the credentials automatically when the fields are filled. |

| ADVANCED OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------|---|
| Default compare type | Set a default comparing option type. |
| Sync all available vaults | Enable to synchronize all the available vaults from Devolutions Server. |

PASSWORD HUB BUSINESS AND PERSONAL

| GENERAL OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| Enable Password Hub | Retrieve entries from Password Hub. |
| Server URL (Business only) | Enter the URL of the Password Hub instance to connect to. |

| ACTION OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Automatically fill in credentials on load | Fill automatically the credentials when loading a web page. |
| Automatically submit the form after filling | Submit the credentials automatically when the fields are filled |

| ADVANCED OPTIONS | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Devolutions Account login | Set your Devolutions Account login URL. |
| Show favicon | Display the Devolutions Web Login favicon. |
| Default compare type | Set a default comparing option type. |
| Sync all available vaults (Business only) | Enable to synchronize all the available vaults from Devolutions Server. |

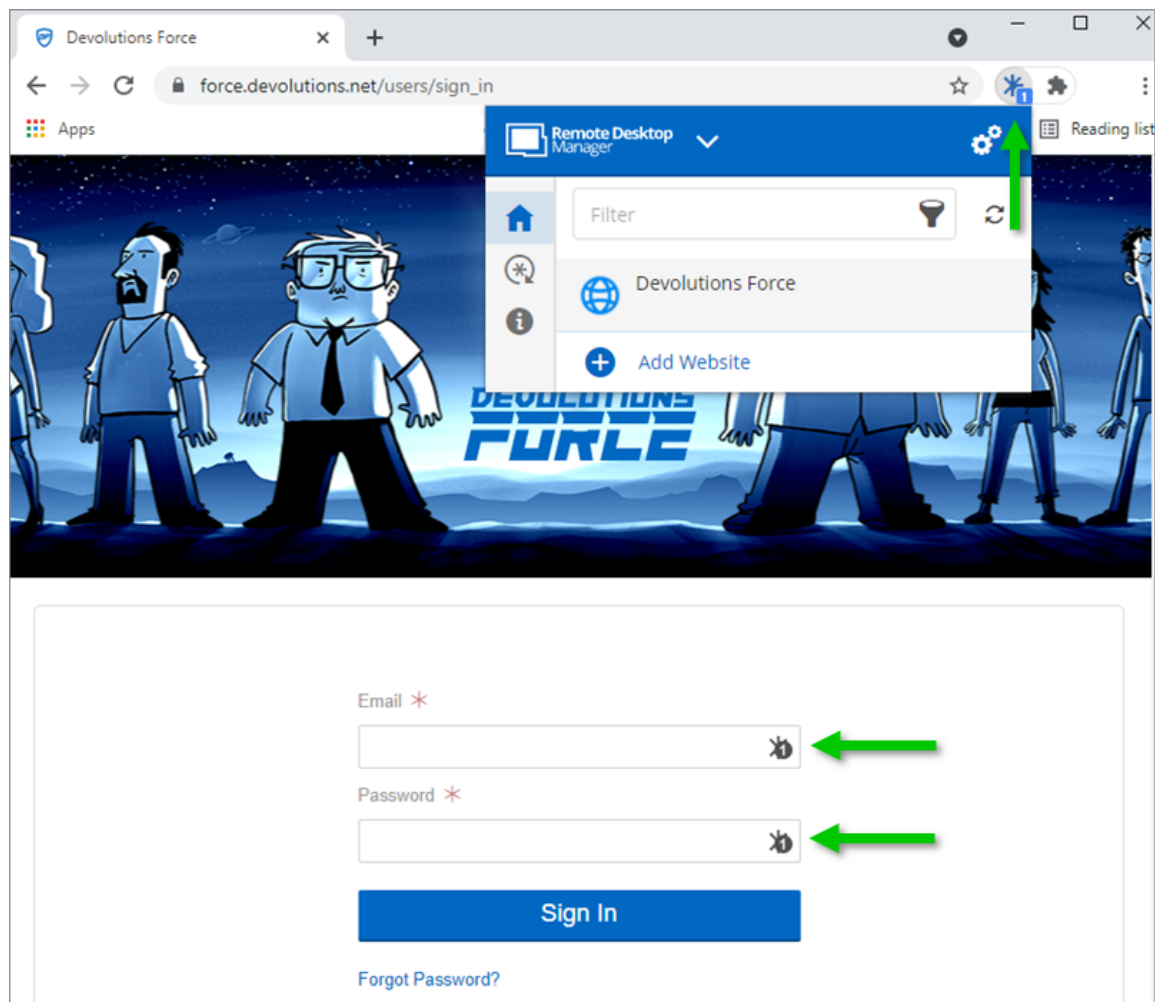
7.4.2 Retrieve Credentials

DESCRIPTION

Once configured in your Devolutions product, credentials are automatically detected by **Devolutions Web Login** when connected to their respective applications.

LOG IN TO A WEBSITE

Select an entry from the list in Devolutions Web Login or click on the icon in the credential field of the browser to fill in the login information and connect to the website.

*Automatic Log In*

7.4.3 Secure Devolutions Web Login

DESCRIPTION

In Remote Desktop Manager version 2021.1 and higher, we changed how our browser extension, Devolutions Web Login, communicates with Remote Desktop Manager to fill in credentials inside web pages. We did these changes to increase the security of this feature. Follow this [link](#) for the steps.

If you are using a version prior to 2021.1 and as mentioned in the Devolutions Web Login [Overview](#) topic, installing the extension in a Terminal Services environment can introduce security risks. In such environments, each user must have a distinct port

assigned, as well as an application key to prevent any other Devolutions Web Login from listening in.

If you insist on using it, it is critical that each user is assigned a distinct port. An application key must be set as well. The first client application that starts will be able to use the port exclusively. ALL Devolutions Web Login calling on that port will get the responses unless an application key is set. Follow this [link](#) for the steps.

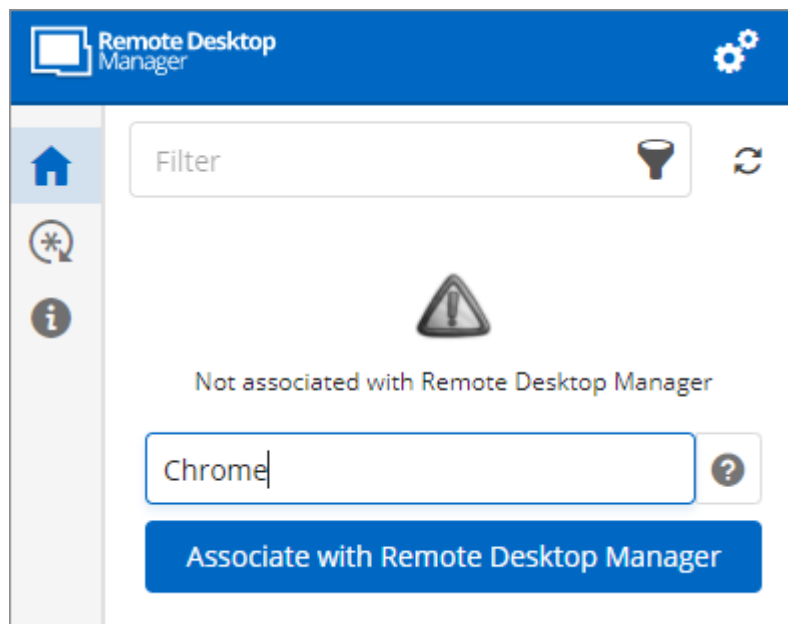
HOW TO SET UP DEVOLUTIONS WEB LOGIN FOR VERSION 2021.1 AND HIGHER



An application key is mandatory if you are using Devolutions Web Login on a Terminal server. Please follow the steps describe [here](#).

When you will first open Devolutions Web Login and choose to use it with Remote Desktop Manager, you will be prompted to pair the two applications.

1. Enter a name, for this association, in the text box.



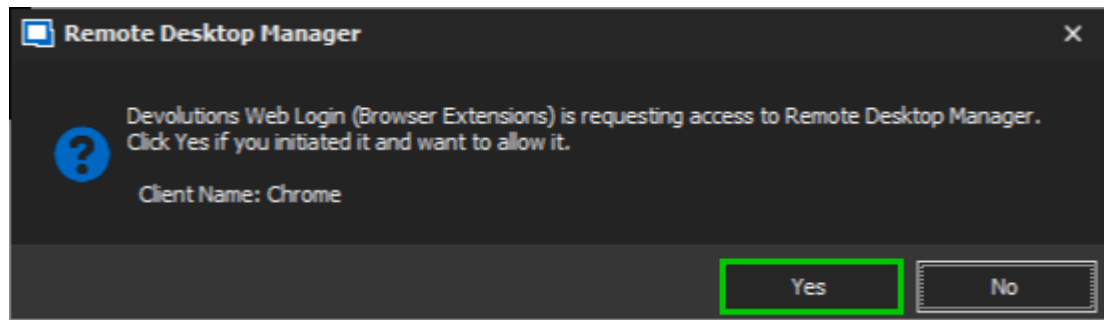
This can be used to identify a particular association and to deny access to it from Remote Desktop Manager. The default name is the name of the web browser running Devolutions Web Login.

2. Click on **Associate with Remote Desktop Manager**.



A popup window should appear on Remote Desktop Manager asking if the request was actually sent by you.

3. Click **Yes** to accept the association request.



You are now paired.



Note that, while Remote Desktop Manager can handle multiple associations (e.g., multiple browsers), Devolutions Web Login can only be paired to a single instance of RDM at any time.

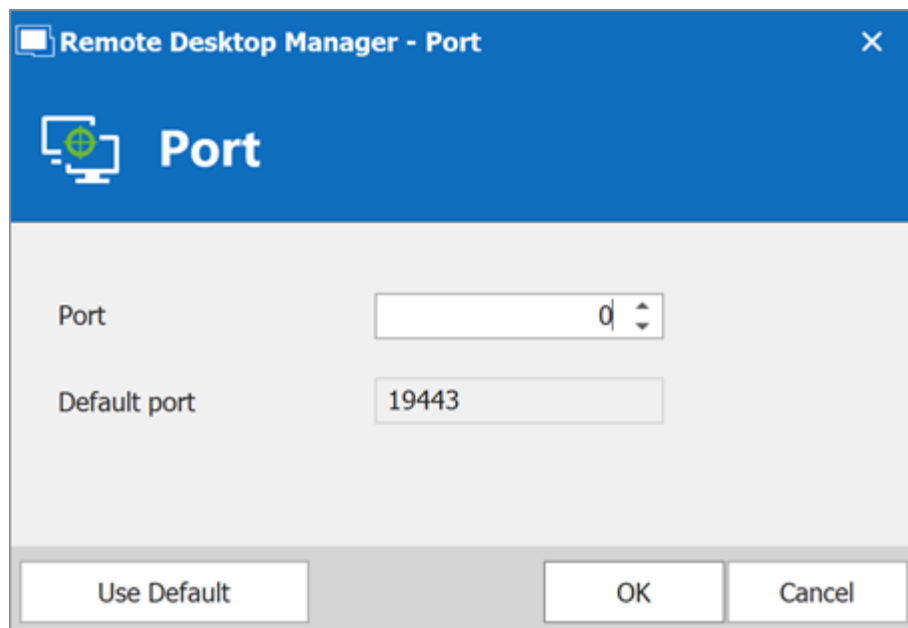
HOW TO SET UP DEVOLUTIONS WEB LOGIN FOR VERSION LOWER THAN 2021.1 AND FOR TERMINAL SERVER



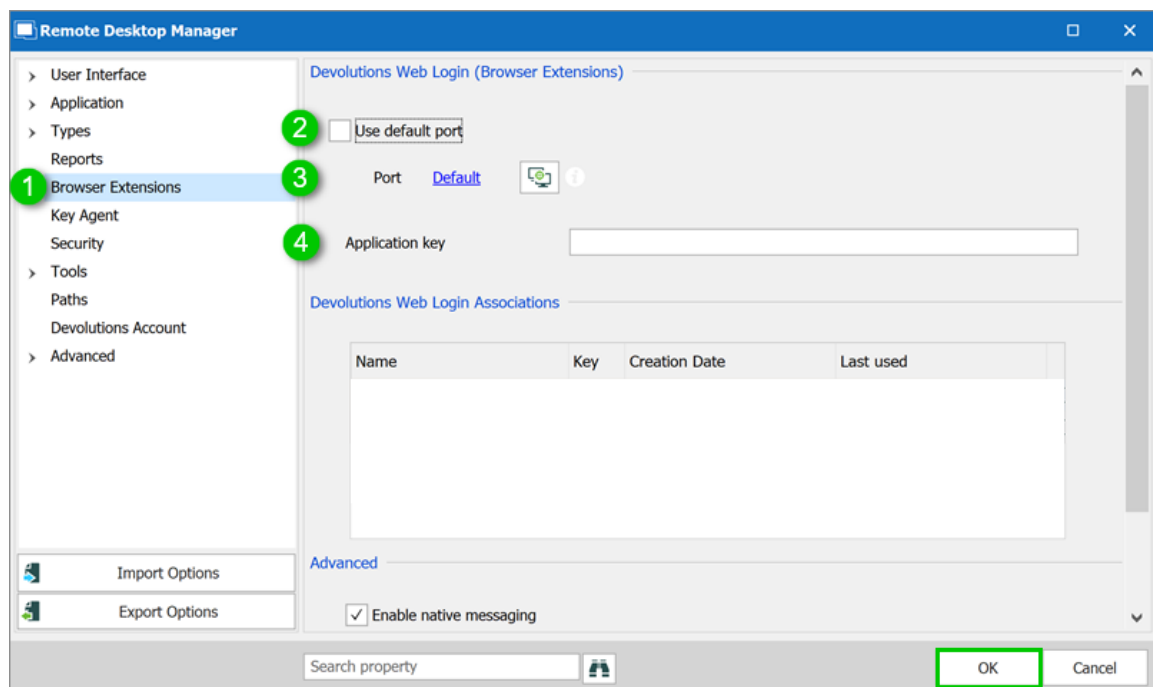
The application key is displayed in clear text, it must be kept secret by the user.

To enable the security layer in Remote Desktop Manager, follow these steps:

1. Navigate to **File - Options - Browser Extensions**.
2. Uncheck **Use default port**.
3. Click **Default** to enter a custom port and **OK** when done.



4. Type an **Application key** then click **OK** to save.



Remote Desktop Manager Browser Extensions Options

5. In your browser, click the Devolutions Web Login icon * and go to **Settings - Data sources - Remote Desktop Manager**.
6. Disable **Use default port**.

7. Enter the custom port created earlier in Remote Desktop Manager and **Save**.

Settings - Remote Desktop Manager

General

☒ Enable Remote Desktop Manager app

Actions

☐ Use default port (19443)

Advanced

Port

0

☒ Add entry in user vault by default

Destination folder

Devolutions Web Login

Save Cancel

8. Click **Advanced** and enter the same **Application key** as Remote Desktop Manager, **Save**.

Settings - Remote Desktop Manager

General

Application key

Actions

Advanced

☐ Enable native messaging

☐ Use legacy API

Save Cancel

Devolutions Web Login Settings for Remote Desktop Manager

7.4.3.1 Unpair a Browser Extension

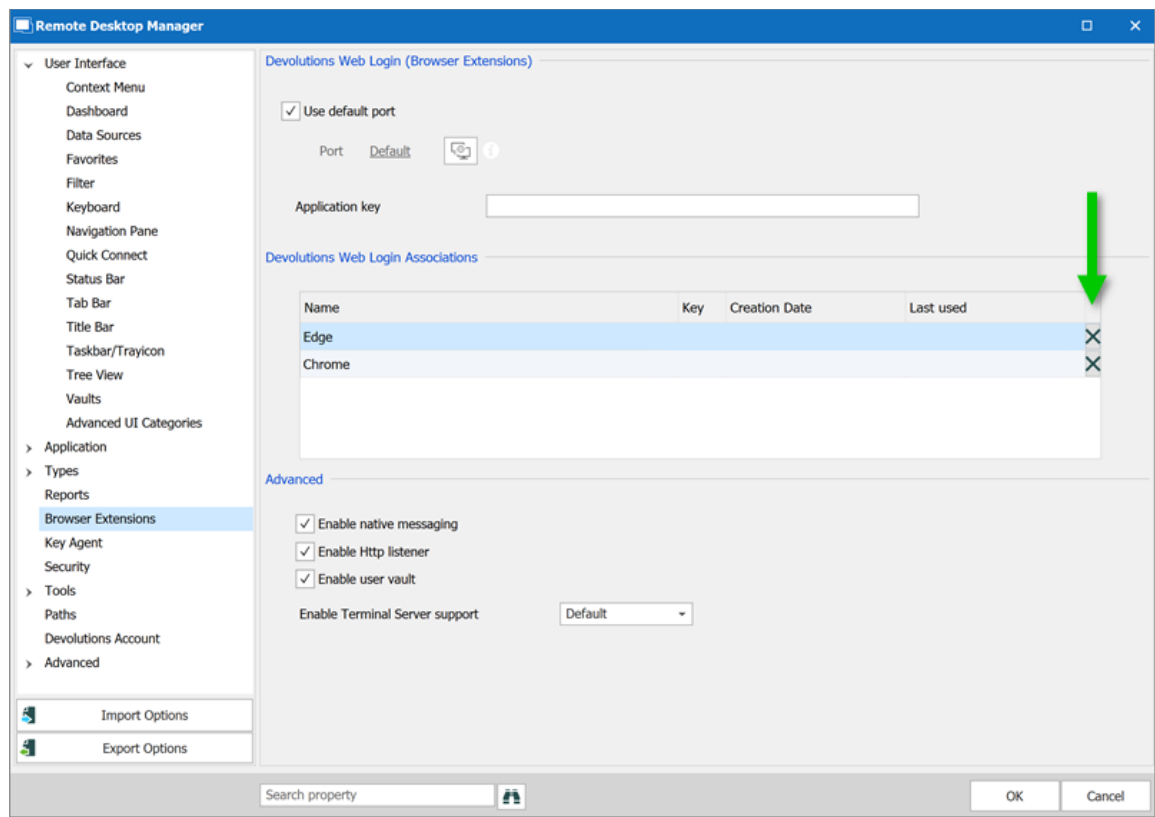
DESCRIPTION

In the event you want to deny access to Remote Desktop Manager from a previously paired browser extension, you need to delete it from Remote Desktop Manager.

1. In RDM go to **File - Options - Browser Extensions**.
2. In the **Devolutions Web Login Associations** section click the **X** button of the entry in the list and click **OK** to save the modifications.



In the **Devolutions Web Login Associations** section, you will find a list of each association made to Remote Desktop Manager including some information to identify them. This includes the name specified at the time of association (which defaults to the web browser's name), a part of the encryption key used between the two, its creation date and the date when it was last used.



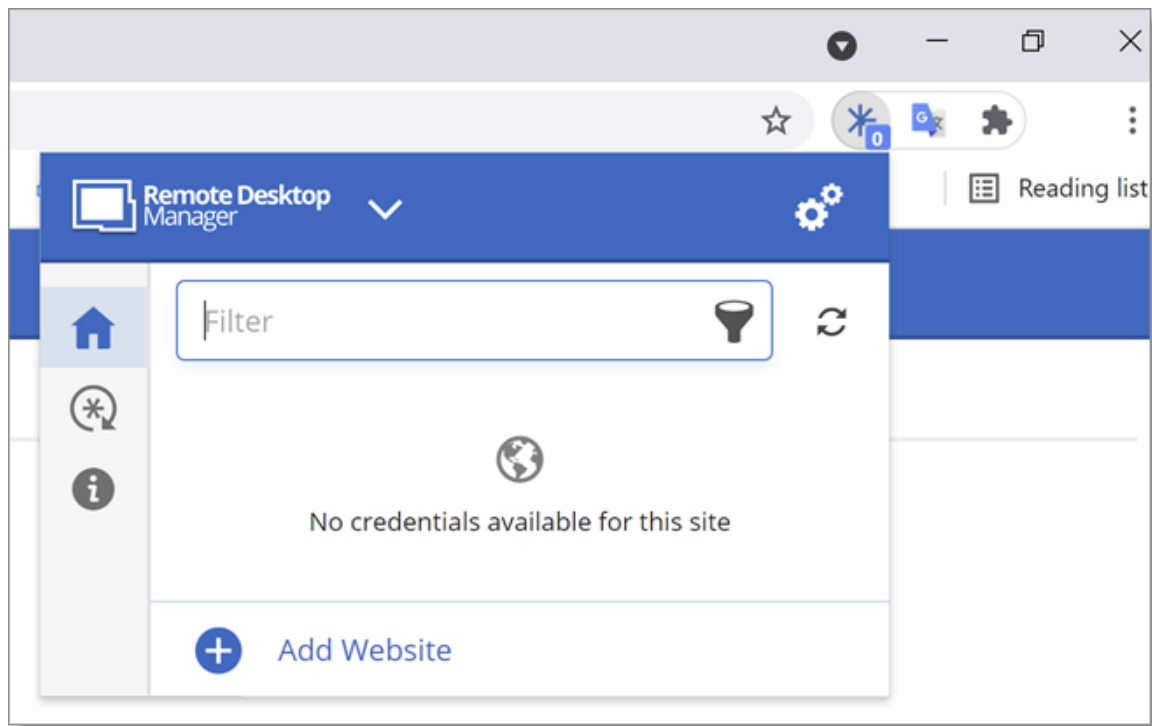
7.4.4 Keyboard Shortcuts

DESCRIPTION

Here is the list of keyboard shortcuts available for Devolutions Web Login:

CTRL+SHIFT+Z

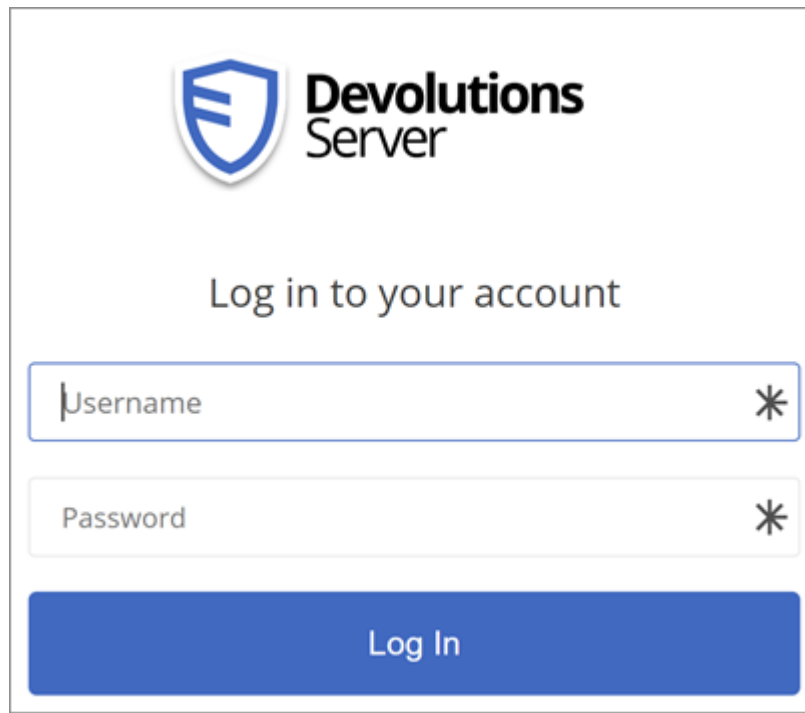
Use this key shortcut to open Devolutions Web Login window in your active browser.



Devolutions Web Login in Chrome

CTRL+SHIFT+Y

Use it to autofill your credential when only one is available for an entry.

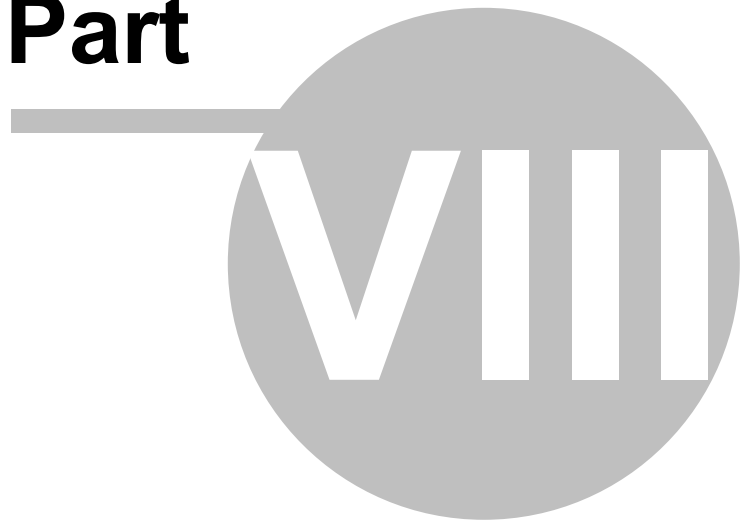


The image shows a login window for Devolutions Server. At the top left is the Devolutions Server logo, which consists of a blue shield icon with a white 'E' inside, followed by the text 'Devolutions Server' in a bold, black, sans-serif font. Below the logo, the text 'Log in to your account' is centered. There are two input fields: the first is labeled 'Username' and the second is labeled 'Password'. Both fields have a blue border and a blue asterisk icon on the right side. Below the input fields is a large blue button with the text 'Log In' in white, centered.

One Credential Login with Devolutions Web Login

User Groups Based Access Control

Part



8 User Groups Based Access Control

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager user group based access control allows to create a granular protection system that is quite flexible. However, flexibility comes at a price and sometimes making the wrong choices could increase the time involved in managing the system.

The following recommendations are based on our experience with the system and the ideas shared by our community. Follow these guidelines, as they will help you to use the user group based access control efficiently.

Here are the main key points of the user group based access system:

- Security is inherited: child items and folders are covered by a parent folder's security.
- Permissions can be overridden: a permission set on a sub folder will override the parent item's permission.
- Permissions are granular: Multiple permissions can be set on entries at once.

ENHANCE THE SECURITY

While the user group based access control is a great feature to secure access to entries, many other features can be used to add more security layers. For more information, please consult the following topics:

- [Security Provider](#)
- Credential repository
- [Password Templates](#)
- [Two-factor authentication](#)
- One-time password

SCENARIOS

Because of the great flexibility of our system, it becomes difficult to describe how to achieve the exact security system that matches your needs. For this reason, we have elected to describe the most popular systems that we have seen in use in our current

community of users. We hope that one of them will closely match your needs. You can obviously mix and match the various strategies used in our scenarios to achieve your requirements.

Please consult the following:

- [Simplified security](#)
- [Advanced security](#)

USER GROUPS CONFIGURATION

When using the user group based access control, user groups are mostly used to control user access for multiple users at once.

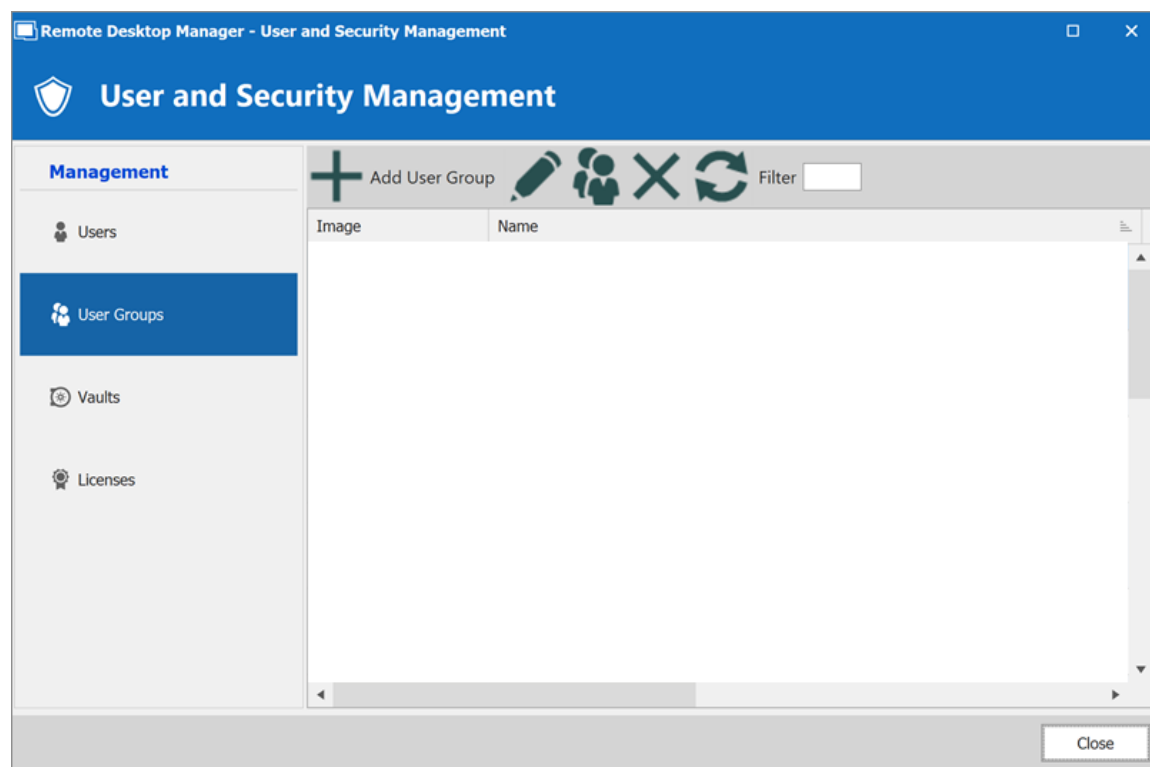
Common user groups can be:

- Service Desk: a single point of contact to handle incidents, problems and questions from staff and customers. Provide an interface for activities such as change requests, software licences, configuration management, and more.
- Help Desk: manage, co-ordinate and resolve support requests.
- Consultants: employed externally on a temporary basis, they usually are read-only users and can use only a subset of entries.

To be more specific, we will use these team names in our scenarios.

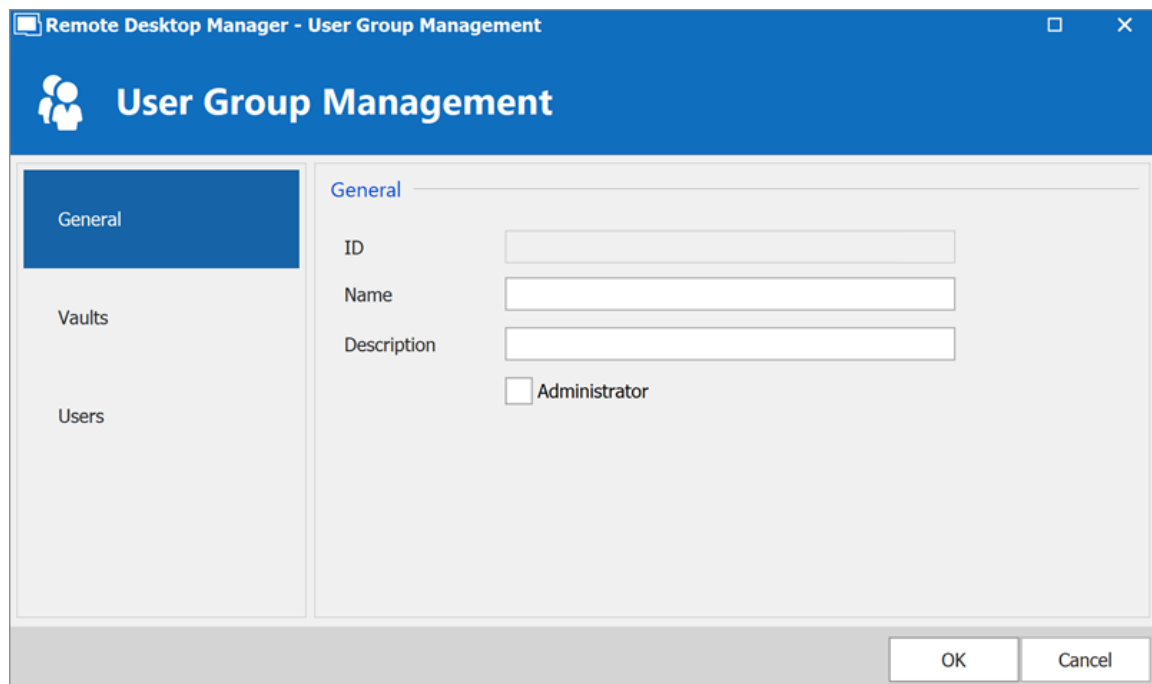
CREATE THE USER GROUPS

To create user groups, navigate to **Administration – User Groups**, then click **+ Add User Groups**.



Create a User Group

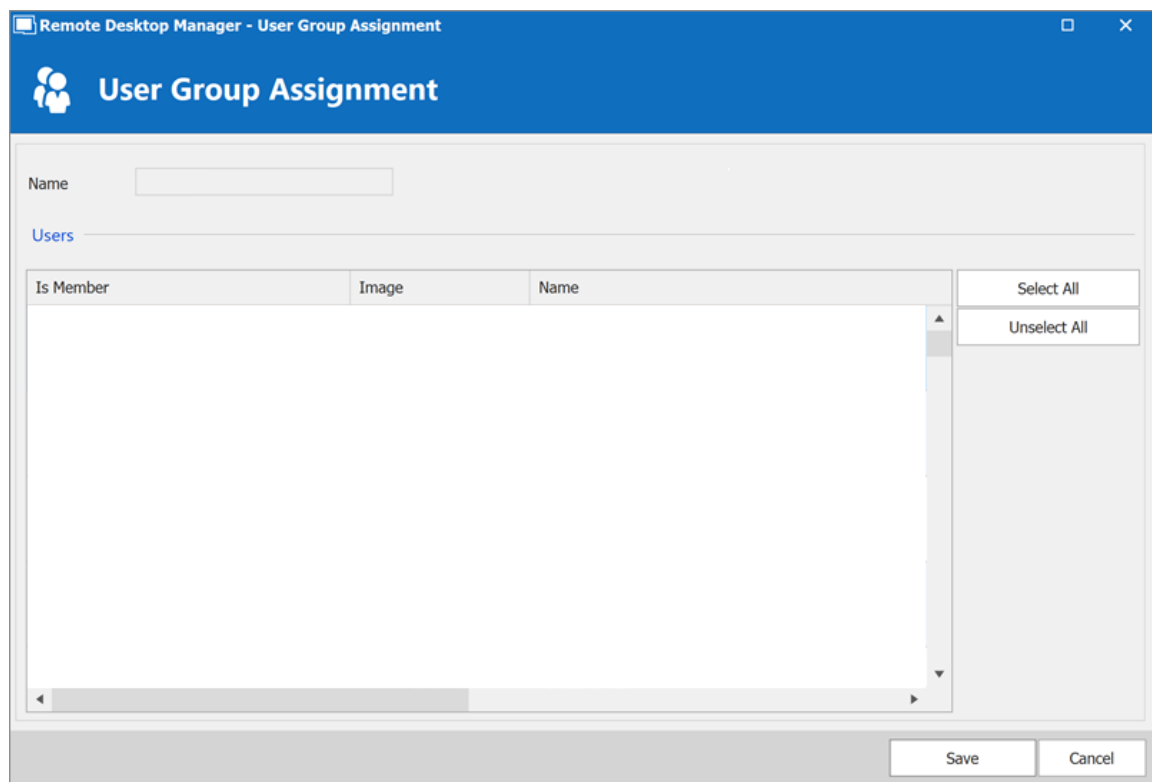
All settings can be left to default unless the user group contains only administrators. In this case, check the **Administrator** box when configuring the user group. Enter a **Name** for the user group, then click **Ok**.



The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Group Management' dialog box. The title bar is blue with the text 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Group Management'. Below the title bar is a blue header area with a user icon and the text 'User Group Management'. On the left is a sidebar with three items: 'General' (selected), 'Vaults', and 'Users'. The main area is titled 'General' and contains the following fields: 'ID' (text box), 'Name' (text box), 'Description' (text box), and an 'Administrator' checkbox. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Configure a User Group

To assign users to the user group, click , then check the **Is Member** box of the respective user.



The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Group Assignment' dialog box. The title bar is blue with the text 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Group Assignment'. Below the title bar is a blue header area with a user icon and the text 'User Group Assignment'. On the left is a sidebar with two items: 'Name' (text box) and 'Users' (selected). The main area is titled 'Users' and contains a table with the following columns: 'Is Member', 'Image', and 'Name'. The table is empty. To the right of the table are two buttons: 'Select All' and 'Unselect All'. At the bottom right are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Assign a user to the User Groups

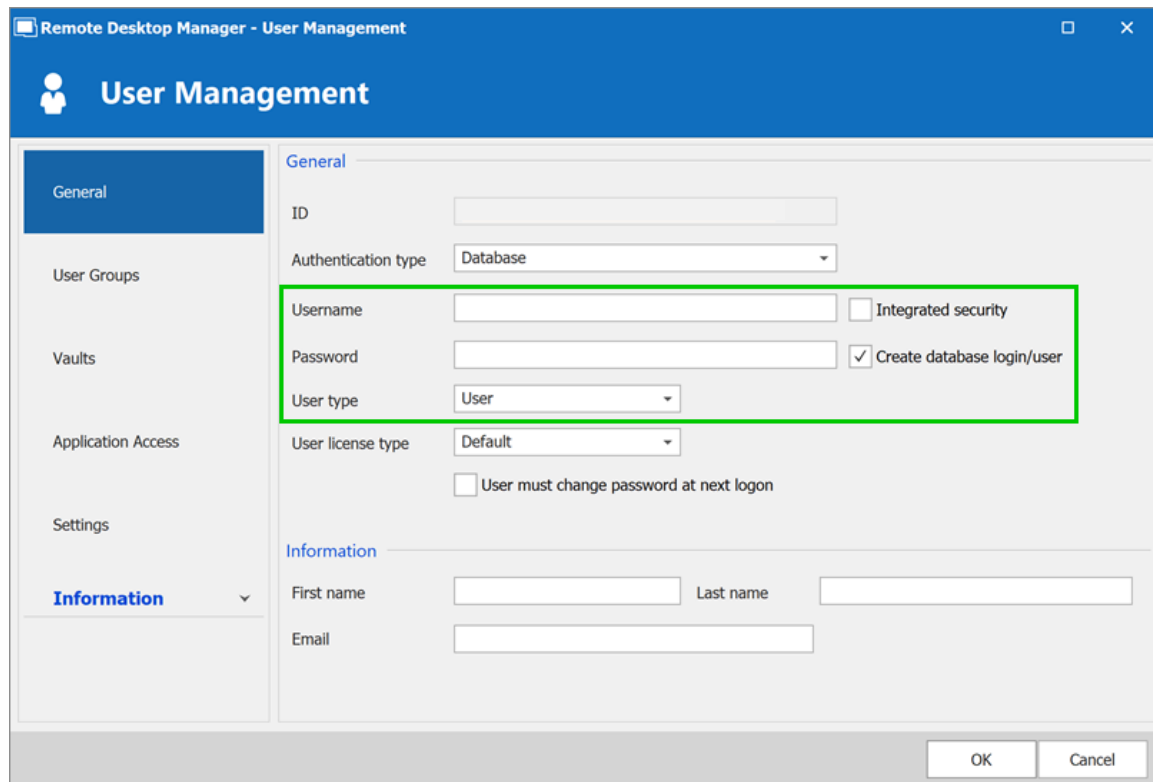
USER CONFIGURATION

USER TEMPLATE

It is possible to change the default user template. To do so, navigate to **File – Options – Security – User Template**. These settings control the default settings of a new user. The best practice is to disable all privileges.

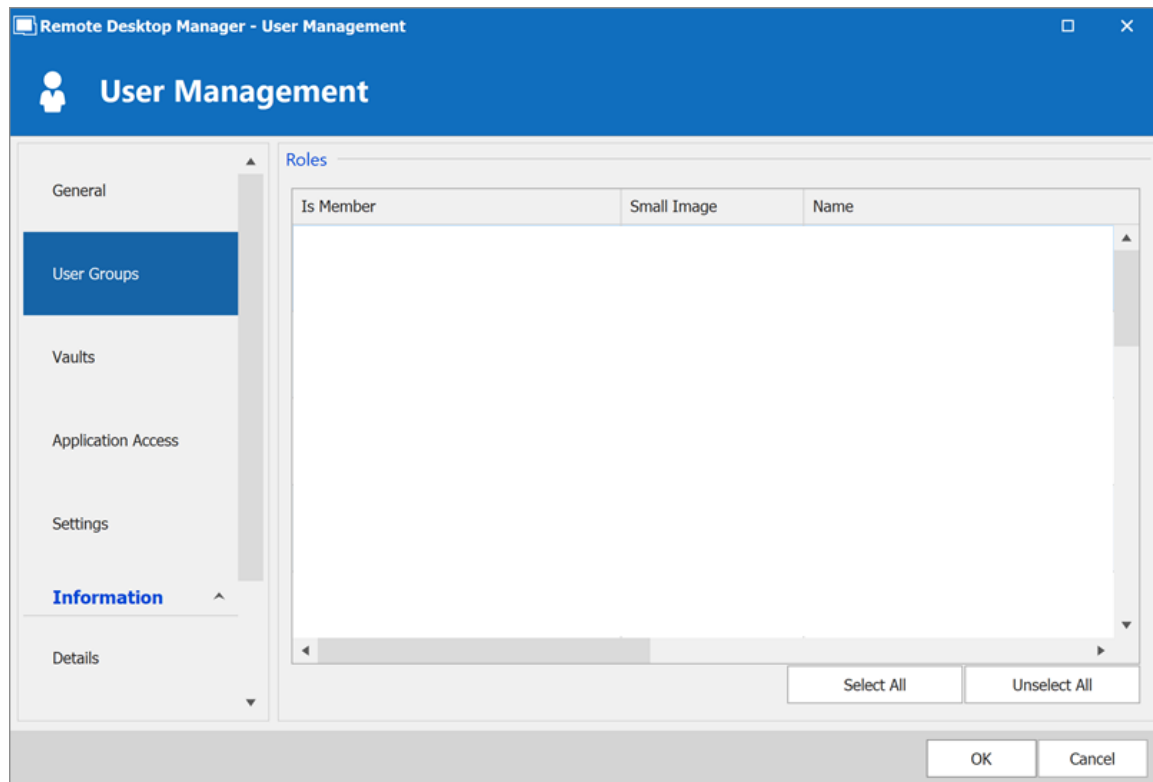
CREATE THE USER

To create users, navigate to **Administration – Users**, then click **+ Add User**. Enter a **Login** and **Password** for the user and select the **User type**.



Create a user

A user can be assigned to multiple user groups at once by checking the **Is Member** box of the respective user groups in the **User Groups** section of the **User Management**.



Assign a user to a User Groups

ADMINISTRATORS

Administrators can do everything, regardless of the security. These users are usually the chief officers and senior management.

RESTRICTED USERS

Restricted users have limited access to resources. They usually have the **Add** and **Edit** rights only. These users can be mid or first level executives, such as service desk and help desk.

USERS

Users also have limited access to resources much like Restricted users. However, Users have by default the **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** rights and can perform these actions on all unsecured entries.

READ ONLY USERS

Read only users can only view and use resources, but cannot edit them. These users are usually external consultants.

SELECT THE APPROPRIATE USER TYPE

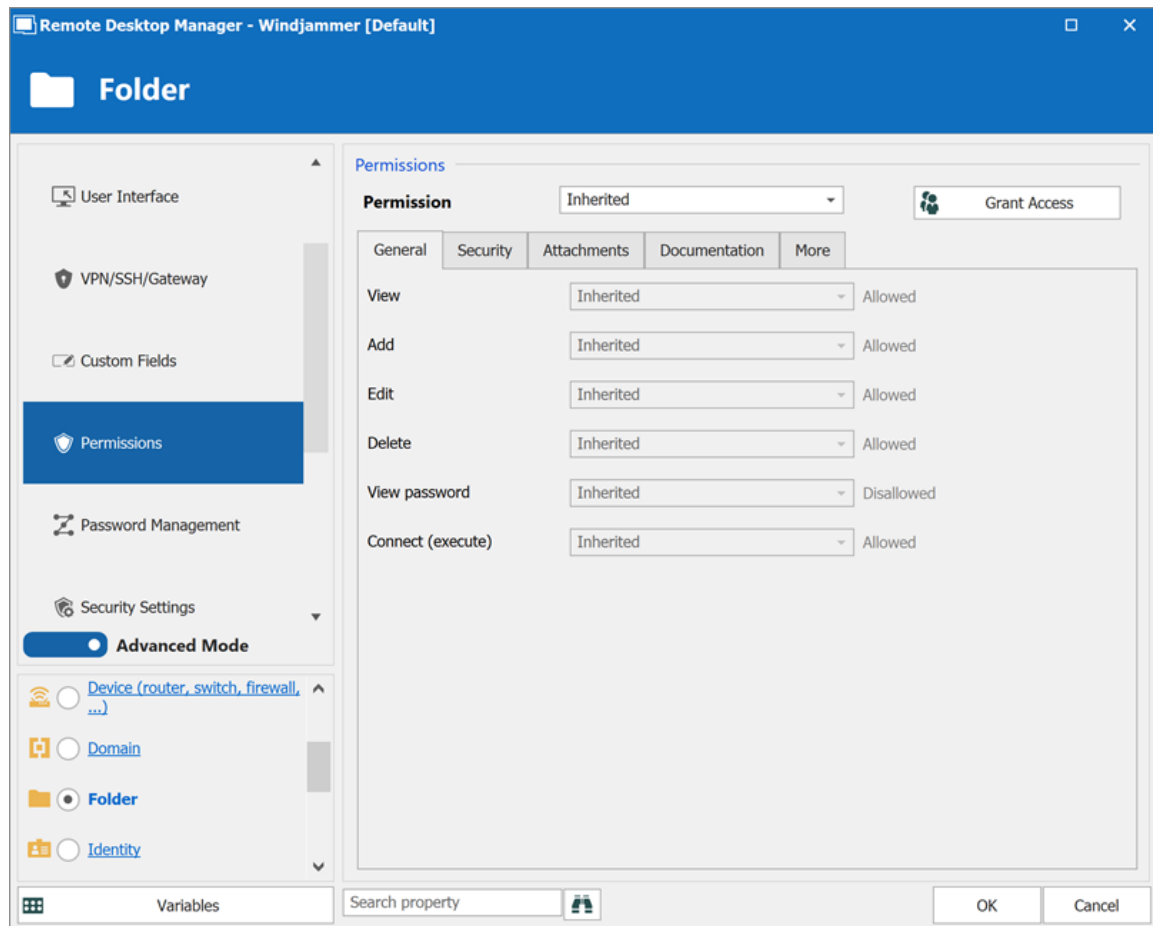
When creating users, some key points must be taken into consideration. Ask yourself the following questions while configuring a new user:

- Should they be able to access any resource without restriction? These are your **Administrators**.
- Should they be able to add, edit, or delete entries? A **User** would have all of these. Alternatively, you can select specific rights with **Restricted User**.
- Should they be able to see sensitive information, or import and export entries? **Read-Only** users are best used for those who should have very limited access.

ENTRY CONFIGURATION

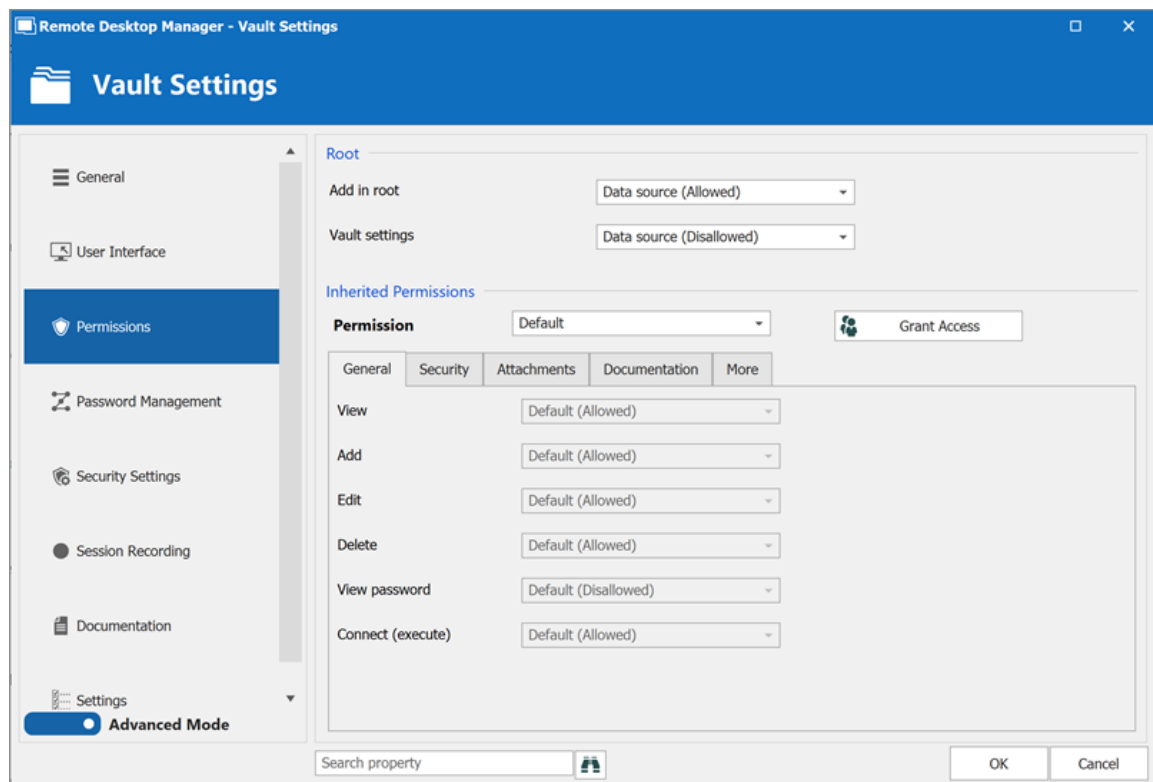
Access is granted or denied to users by setting permission on entries. Permissions can be set to users or user groups. The best practice is to grant permissions to user groups to control access for multiple users at once.

To set permissions on an entry, edit any entry, then navigate to the **Permissions** section.



Entry's Permissions

Permissions are usually set on folders, and apply to all child entries. A best practice is to set all the permissions of the Vault folder to **Never**. As a result, all permissions of all entries are denied by default.

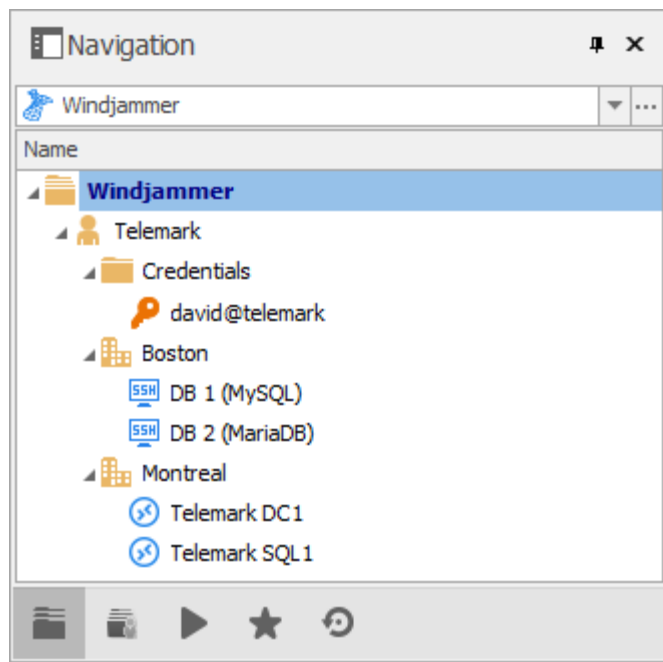


Vault Settings Permissions

Access is denied to users by expressly granting the access to other users. In other words, all users that are not on the list of a permission have the access denied.

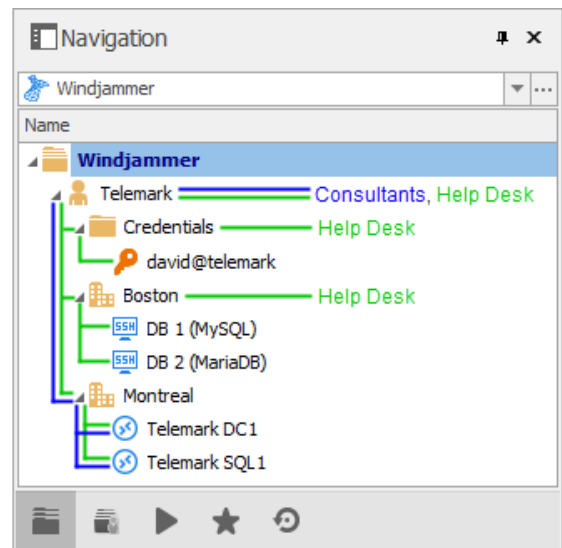
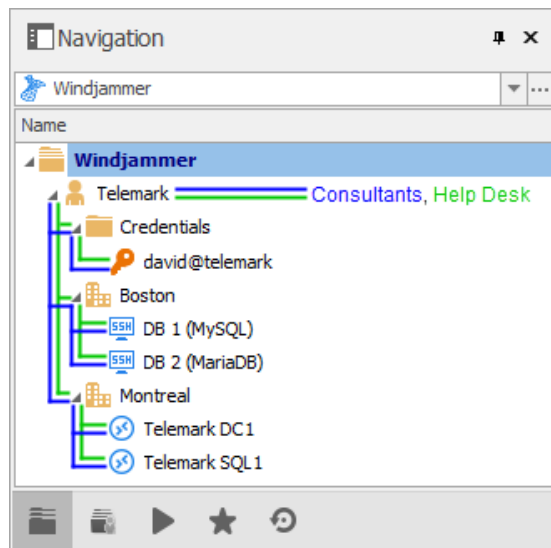
For a user to have access to a sub folder, the user must have at least the view permission on all parent folders.

Consider the following structure:



There are three levels of folders: the Vault, Telemark, and child items of Telemark.

Suppose that a user, such as a consultant, must have access to the Montreal folder only. The consultant must be granted the view permission on the Telemark folder as well. However, granting the view access to the Telemark folder gives to the consultant the permissions to view all child items of Telemark. To deny the view permissions for the consultant on specific child items, the view permissions of these items must be expressly set for other users.




8.1 Permission

DESCRIPTION

The Permission window which is only available in an [Advanced Data Source](#), can be found in every entry properties in the **Permission** section.

The user group based permission system can give a very accurate control of the security. Here is an overview of the permission window:

Permission Custom  Grant Access

General Security Attachments Documentation More

View Default (Allowed)

Add Default (Allowed)

Edit Custom [Select user groups or users](#)

Delete Default (Allowed)

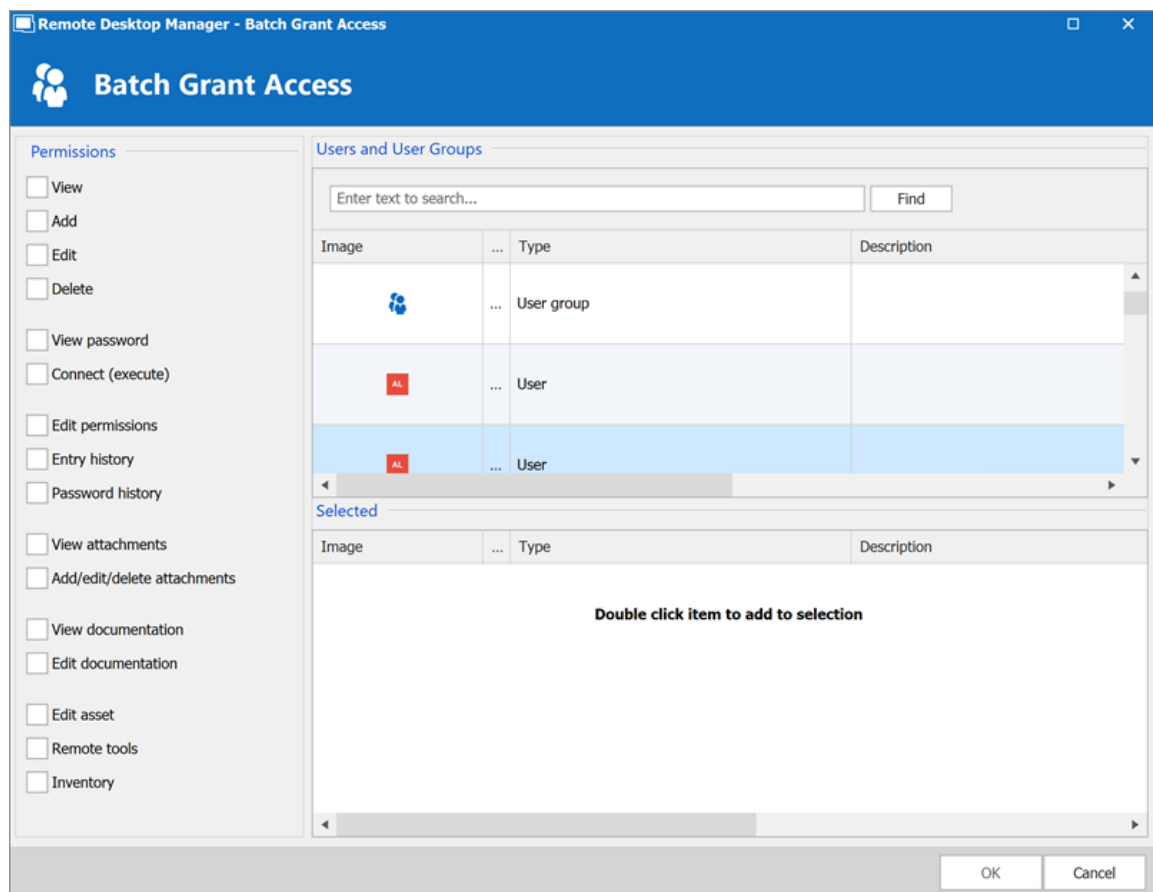
View password Default (Disallowed)

Connect (execute) Default (Allowed)

Permission panel

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|--|
| Permission | <p>Sets the permission mode. Select between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inherited (Default): will inherit the permissions from the parent groups. • Custom: lets you specify a custom value for each of the permission. • Everyone: everyone will be granted all the permissions below. • Never: no one but the administrators will be granted the permission. |

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Grant Access | Allows batch granting access to a specific entry or entries. |
| Inherited values | Indicates what is inherited from parent groups. |
| Select user groups or users | Lets you select Users / User groups to be granted the permission. Available only if the permission is set to Custom . |

*Batch Grant Access*

8.2 Scenarios

8.2.1 Simplified Security

DESCRIPTION



This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).



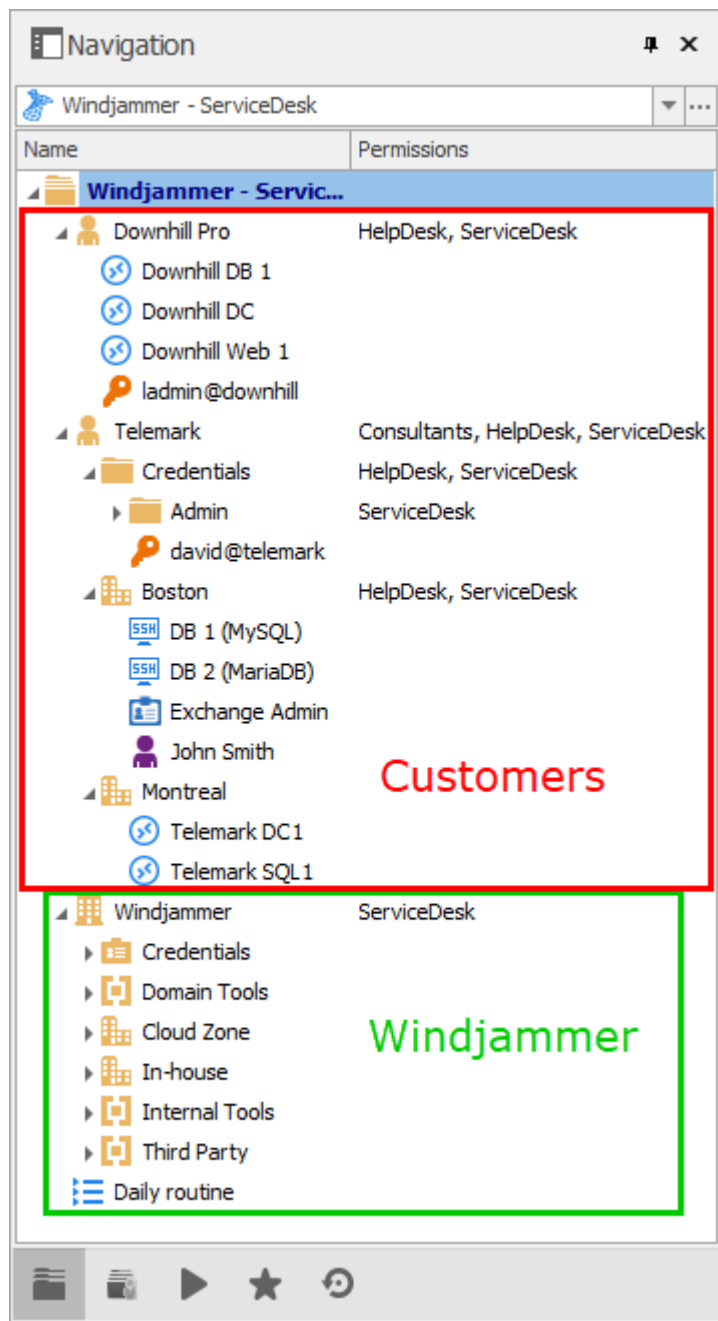
While the following scenario is relevant for small to medium enterprises, it is not recommended for a larger business. For a scenario more suited for large enterprises, please consult the [Advanced Security](#) scenario.



Watch Video

Our fictional company, Windjammer, has four User Groups: HelpDesk, ServiceDesk, Administrations, and Consultants. There are two client companies: Downhill Pro and Telemark.

The following tree structure represents entries which users have access to once all permissions are set:



USER CONFIGURATION

Here is an example for user configuration. To create users, navigate to **Administration – Users – Add User**.

The following rights selection is available when setting a user to **Restricted user**.

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Desktop Manager - User Management' window. The 'General' tab is selected in the left sidebar. The 'General' section contains fields for ID, Authentication type (Database), Username, Password, User type (Restricted user), and User license type (Default). There are checkboxes for 'Integrated security' and 'Create database login/user'. A green arrow points to the 'User type' dropdown. The 'Rights' section is highlighted with a green box and contains checkboxes for 'Add', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Move'. The 'Information' section at the bottom has fields for First name, Last name, and Email. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

User Management - Rights Section

Administrators: administrators have a lot more access than regular users. When creating these users, set the User type to **Administrator** to give them access to everything. The administrator can access all entries, regardless of permissions.

Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

User Groups

Vaults

Application Access

Settings

Information

ID

Authentication type: Database

Username

Password

User type: Administrator

User license type: Default

☐ Integrated security

☒ Create database login/user

☐ User must change password at next logon

Information

First name

Last name

Email

OK Cancel

User Management - Administrator

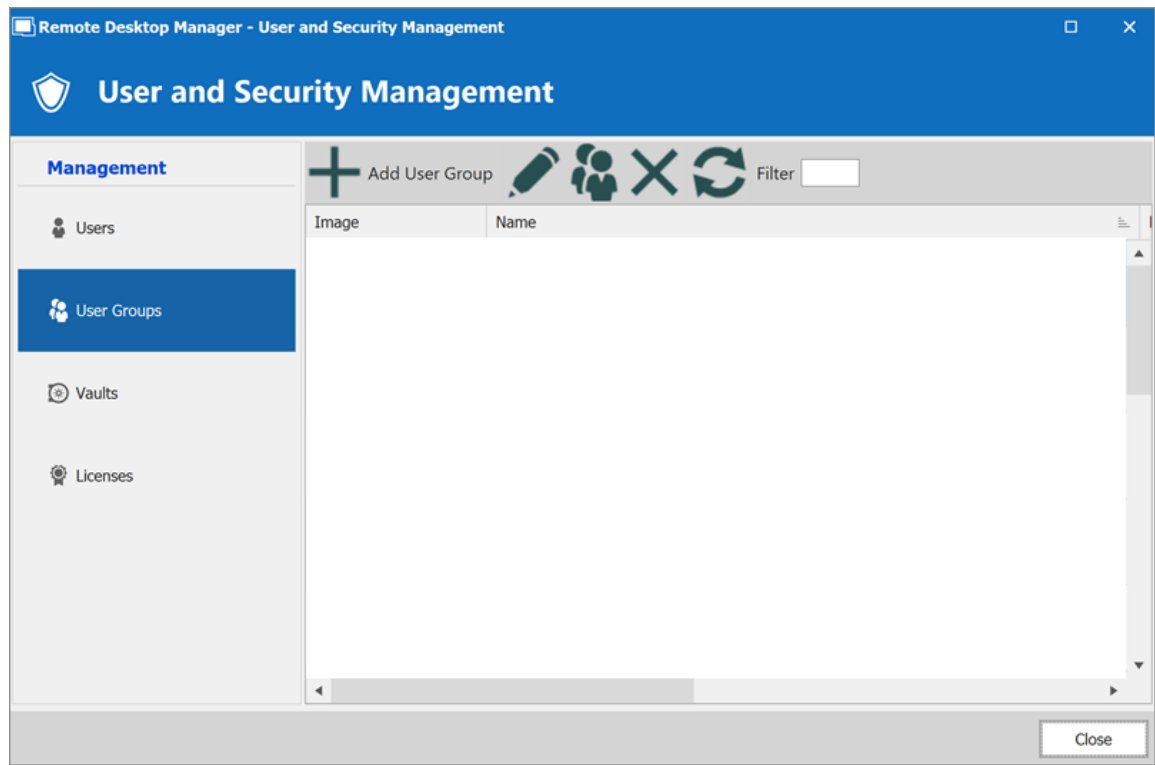
Regular users (User): these users have fewer rights than administrators. They essentially have all the basic rights (except for **View Password**) but are susceptible to all denied permissions. Later, we will deny these rights by specifying which users can actually perform these actions.

Consultants: consultants can only view a subset of entries, we will set those as **Read-Only**. They cannot add, edit or otherwise affect the information in any way.

USER GROUPS CONFIGURATION

Now that the users are created, we will add the user groups which we will later grant the permissions to. We need to create the user groups to assign users to them. There is no need to grant any privileges to these user groups.

- ServiceDesk
- HelpDesk
- Consultants



User and Security Management - User Groups

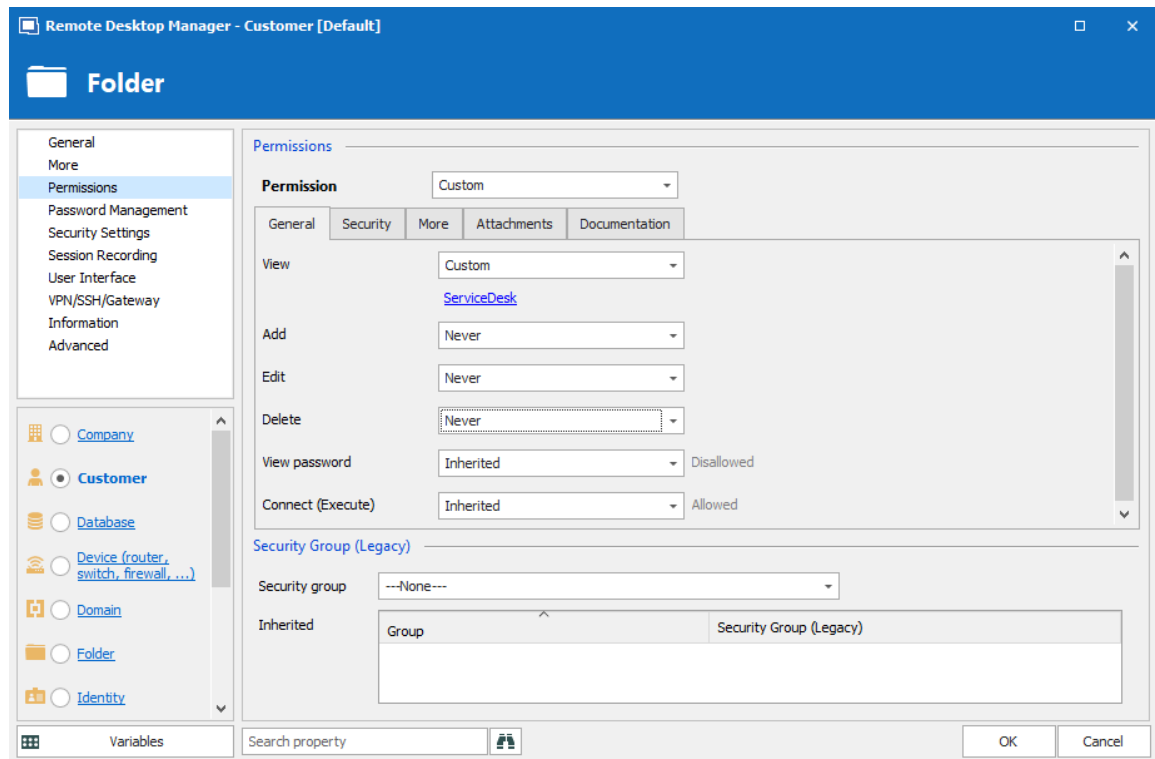
ENTRIES CONFIGURATION

Now, everything is ready to grant or deny access to the user groups.

- The ServiceDesk will have the permission to view and open all entries but will be able to edit only the entries in the customer groups/folders.
- The HelpDesk will have the permission to view and open entries in the customer groups/folders only and will not be able to edit them.
- The Consultants will have the permission to view and open entries in the Montreal folder only but will not be able to edit it nor its child items.

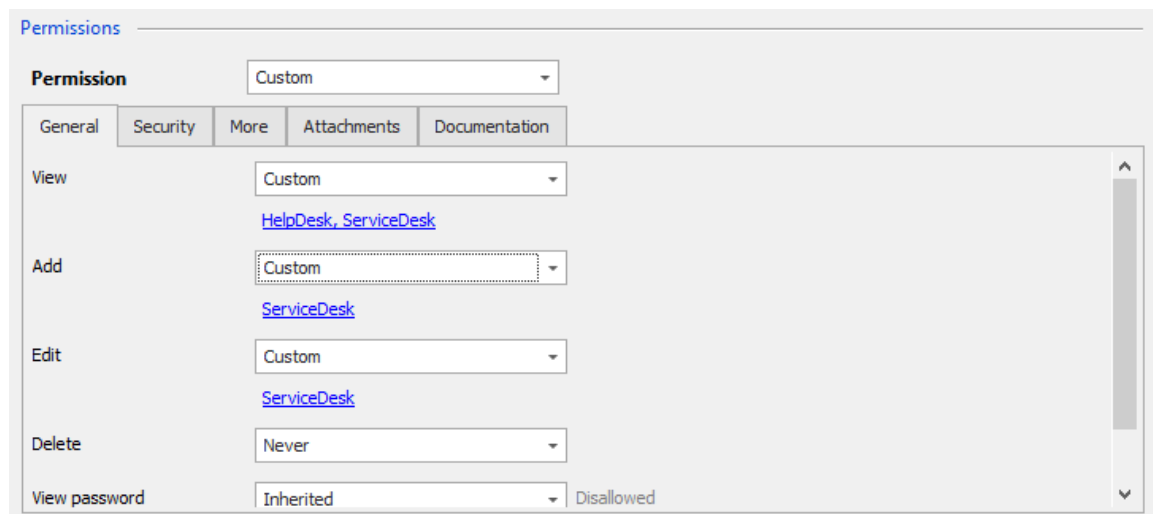
We will begin with the Vault level folders: Downhill Pro, Telemark and Windjammer.

The permission to view the Windjammer folder will be set for the ServiceDesk only since we want them to be able to use its child entries. We don't want the ServiceDesk to add or edit anything. We will set the **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** permissions to **Never**. Only the administrator will be able to add or edit entries in the Windjammer folder.

*Windjammer - Permissions*

- **View: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Never;** Only the administrator can add entries.
- **Edit: Never;** Only the administrator can edit entries.
- **Delete: Never;** Only the administrator can delete entries.

For Downhill Pro, we will grant permissions to the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk.



Downhill Pro - Permissions

- **View:** **Custom**; HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add:** **Custom**; ServiceDesk.
- **Edit:** **Custom**; ServiceDesk.
- **Delete:** **Never**; Only the administrator can delete entries.

We already have a good example of the flexibility of Remote Desktop Manager's Security. A ServiceDesk user can view and use all the entries in the Downhill Pro folder, even the credential entries, but it will never be able to see any password since View Password is Disallowed (from the Vault folder).

Next, for the Telemark folder, we will grant permissions to the ServiceDesk, the HelpDesk and the Consultants. This is where things get complex. If we want the Consultants to be able to view only the Montreal folder which is a child item of Telemark, we must grant to consultants the permission to view the entire Telemark content. Then we will grant permissions on child items only to the user group that should have access to these items. This last step will deny the view permission for the consultants on the child items.

Permissions

Permission: Custom

General Security More Attachments Documentation

View: Custom
[Consultants, HelpDesk, ServiceDesk](#)

Add: Custom
[ServiceDesk](#)

Edit: Custom
[ServiceDesk](#)

Delete: Never

View password: Inherited Disallowed

Telemark - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** Consultants, HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Edit: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Delete: Never;** Only the administrator can delete entries.

Since we want the users to be able to use the credential entries, we will grant the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk the permission to view the Credentials folder. This way, the ServiceDesk and HelpDesk will be able to use the entries in the folder without revealing the passwords. Therefore, by specifying that only the HelpDesk and ServiceDesk have the **View** permission, we deny the view access to any user group or user that is not in the list of the permission.

The **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** permissions can be left to **Inherited** since they inherit the settings from the Telemark parent folder. The ServiceDesk is the only user group that has been granted the **Add** and **Edit** permission in the parent folder and the **Delete** permission inherits the Never setting.

The screenshot shows the 'Permission' dialog box for the 'Telemark\Credentials' folder. The 'View' permission is set to 'Custom' and includes 'HelpDesk, ServiceDesk'. The 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' permissions are all set to 'Inherited'. The 'View password' permission is 'Inherited' and 'Disallowed'. The 'Connect (Execute)' permission is 'Inherited' and 'Allowed'.

| Permission | Value | Source |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| View | Custom | HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Inherited | Never |
| View password | Inherited | Disallowed |
| Connect (Execute) | Inherited | Allowed |

Telemark\Credentials - Permissions

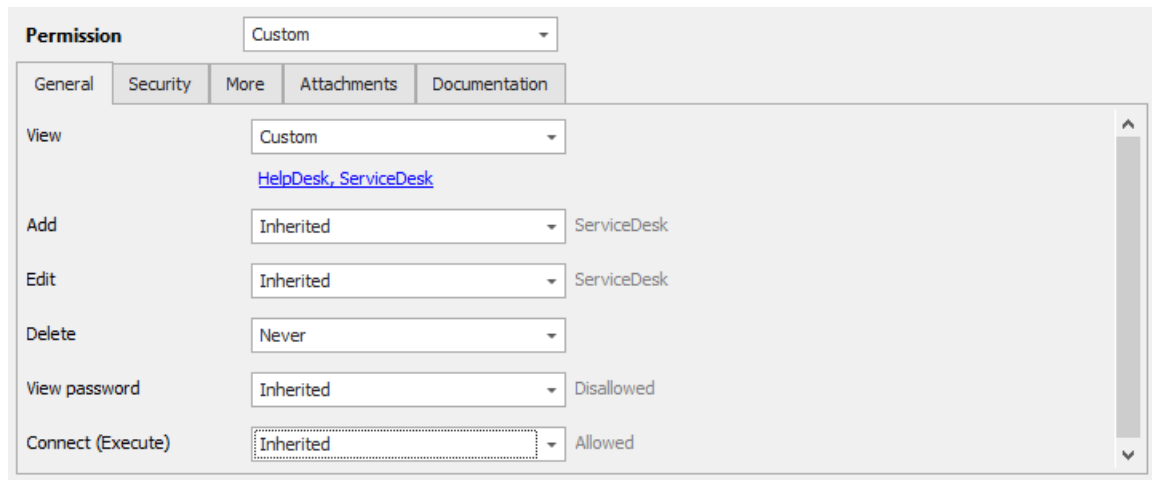
- **View:** **Custom**; HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add:** **Inherited**; ServiceDesk inherited from Telemark folder.
- **Edit:** **Inherited**; ServiceDesk inherited from Telemark folder.
- **Delete:** **Inherited**; Never inherited from Telemark folder.

We want the ServiceDesk to be able to use the Domain Admin credential entry as well but not the HelpDesk. For this we must grant the **View** permission to the ServiceDesk. The ServiceDesk will still be able to edit the credential entry but will never see the password. The delete permission is set to **Never**.

The screenshot shows the 'Permission' dialog box for the 'Telemark\Credentials' folder. The 'View' permission is set to 'Custom' and includes 'HelpDesk, ServiceDesk'. The 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' permissions are all set to 'Inherited'. The 'View password' permission is 'Inherited' and 'Disallowed'. The 'Connect (Execute)' permission is 'Inherited' and 'Allowed'.

| Permission | Value | Source |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| View | Custom | HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Never | |
| View password | Inherited | Disallowed |
| Connect (Execute) | Inherited | Allowed |

The last step for the Telemark child items is to set the **View** permission to the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk on the Boston folder and leave every other permission of this folder to **Default**. This denies the Consultants to view the Boston folder. Now, the Consultants will be able to view and open entries only in the Montreal folder.

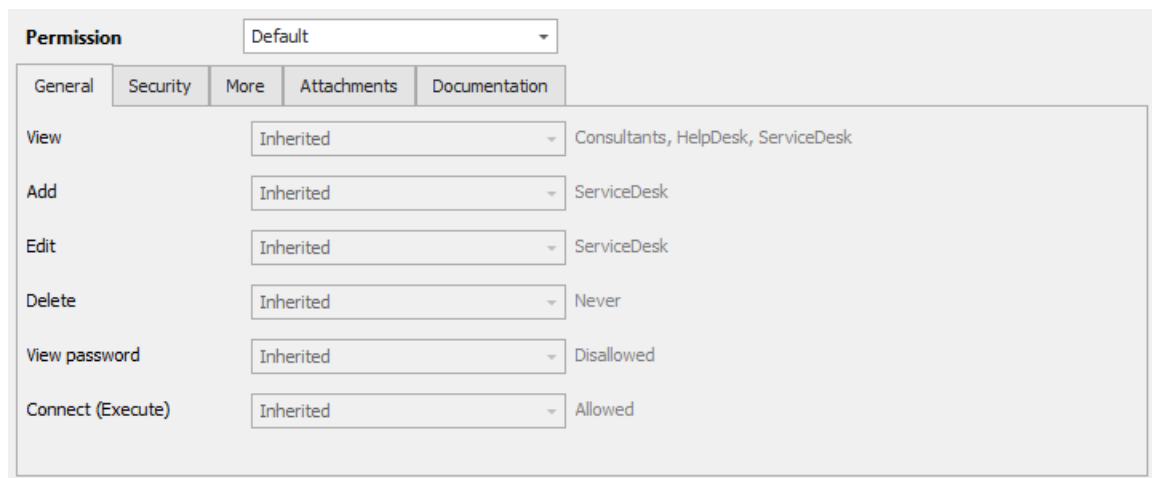


| Permission | |
|-------------------|---|
| General | Security |
| More | Attachments |
| Documentation | |
| View | Custom
HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Inherited
ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Inherited
ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Never |
| View password | Inherited
Disallowed |
| Connect (Execute) | Inherited
Allowed |

Telemark\Boston - Permissions

Every time a new folder is added, the **View** permission must be set for ServiceDesk and HelpDesk to hide the new folder and its content from the Consultants.

No need to set any permissions on the Montreal folder, since they are inherited from the parent folders.



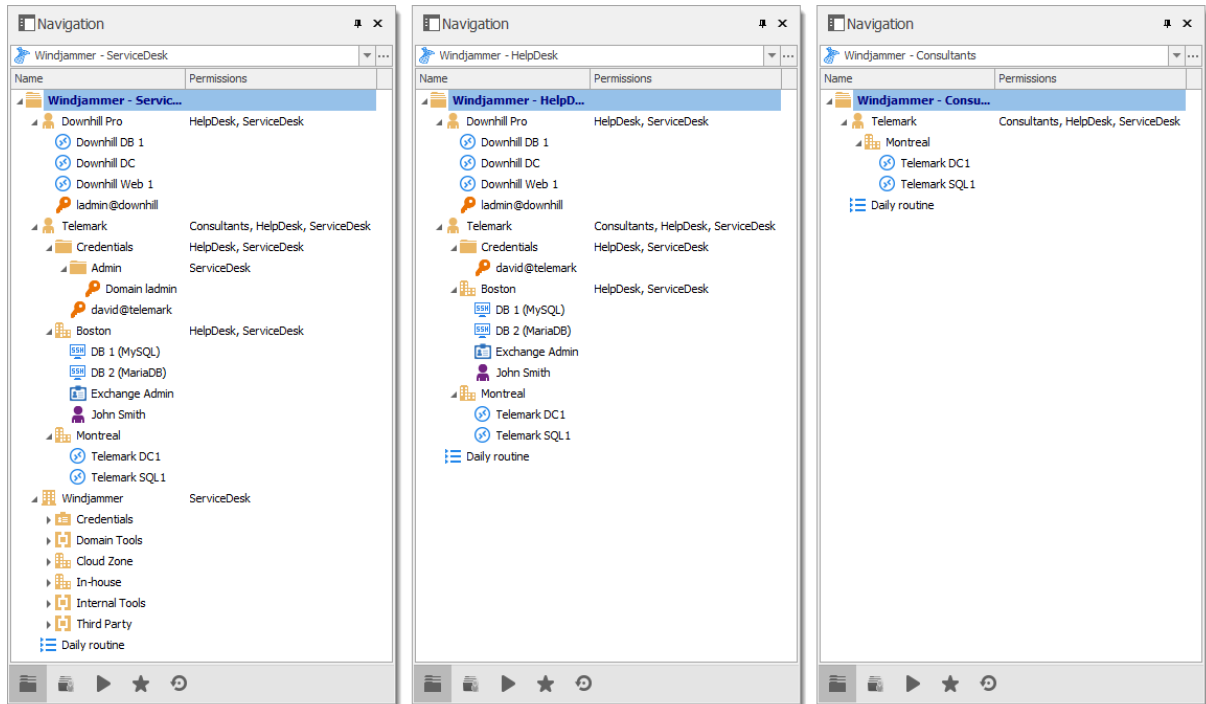
| Permission | |
|-------------------|---|
| General | Security |
| More | Attachments |
| Documentation | |
| View | Inherited
Consultants, HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Inherited
ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Inherited
ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Inherited
Never |
| View password | Inherited
Disallowed |
| Connect (Execute) | Inherited
Allowed |

Telemark\Montreal - Permissions

IN CONCLUSION

The permissions are now correctly set. Note that every entry added at Vault level will have no security by default. This means they would be available for anyone, even the consultants. This can be confirmed by looking at the screenshot below in which the

entry **Daily routine** is available for everyone. Here is what each user should see in the tree view:



Side by Side Tree View

You can further customize your permissions by using the **Security Settings** tab when editing entries, or the **Logs** tab to add more traces of coming and goings. As always, great care must be taken when granting permissions.

If you need more details on each permission, please consult our [Common Settings – Permissions](#) topic.

8.2.2 Advanced Security

DESCRIPTION



This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).

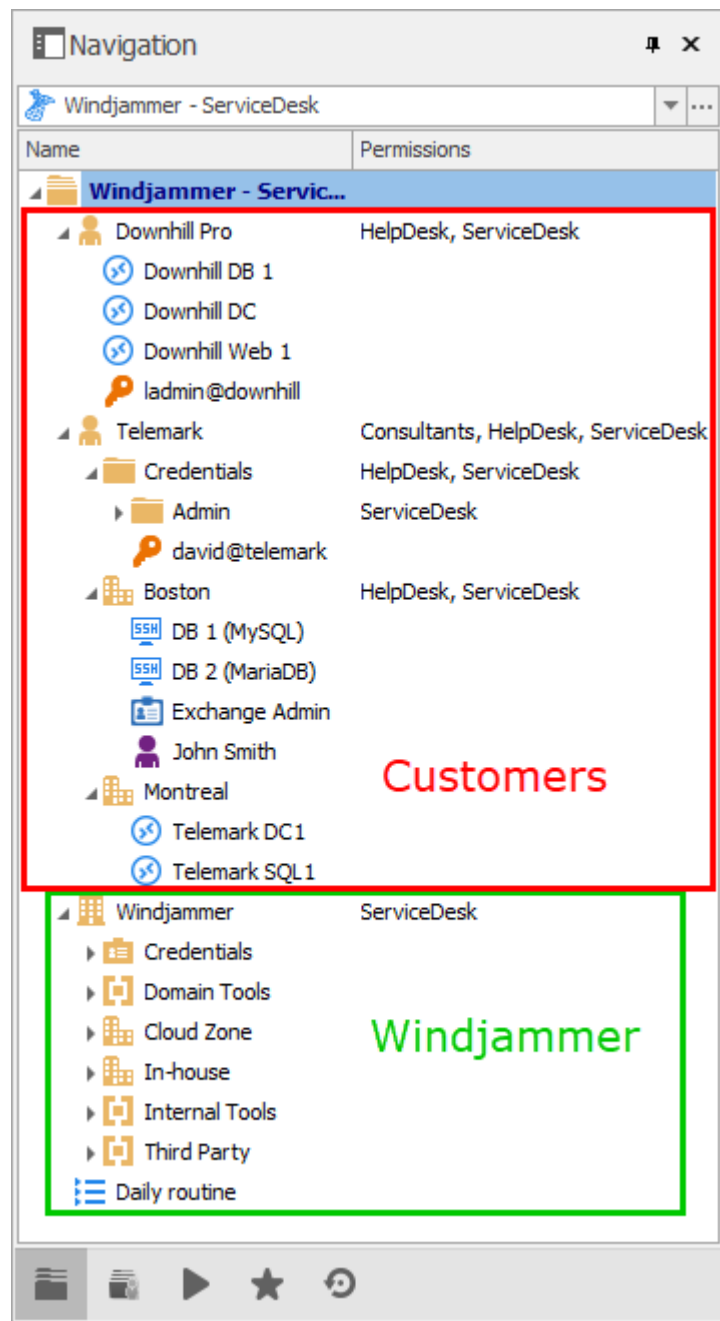


The following scenario is designed for large enterprises. For a scenario more suited for small enterprises, please consult our [Simplified Security](#) scenario.

While this example fits for large enterprises, please keep in mind that any privilege should be granted only as necessary. Be careful when granting permissions to a user or a user group.

Our fictional company, Windjammer, has three user groups: HelpDesk, ServiceDesk, and Consultants. There are two client companies: Downhill Pro and Telemark.

The following tree view structure represents entries which users have access to once all permissions are set:



USER CONFIGURATION

Here is an example of user configuration. To create users, navigate to **Administration – Users – Add User**.



In this scenario, all the options in the **Privileges** section of the **User Management** are set to **None**.

Here we select the user type to give them the most basic rights (**Add**, **Edit**, and **Delete**).

ServiceDesk users are **Restricted users**. They have the **Add** and **Edit** rights. However, they cannot add entries into the Vault folder.

Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

ID:

Authentication type: Database

Username: ☐ Integrated security

Password: ☒ Create database login/user

User type: Restricted user

User license type: Default

☐ User must change password at next logon

Rights

☒ Add

☒ Edit

☐ Delete

☐ Move

Information

First name: Last name:

Email:

OK Cancel

User Management - ServiceDesk - Restricted User

HelpDesk users are **Restricted Users** as well. They only have the **Add** right. However, they cannot add entries into the Vault folder.

Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

ID:

Authentication type:

Username: ☐ Integrated security

Password: ☒ Create database login/user

User type:

User license type:

☐ User must change password at next logon

Rights

☒ Add ☐ Edit ☐ Delete ☐ Move

Information

First name: Last name:

Email:

OK Cancel

User Management - HelpDesk - Restricted User

Consultants are **Read Only Users** and can only view a subset of entries. They cannot add or edit anything.

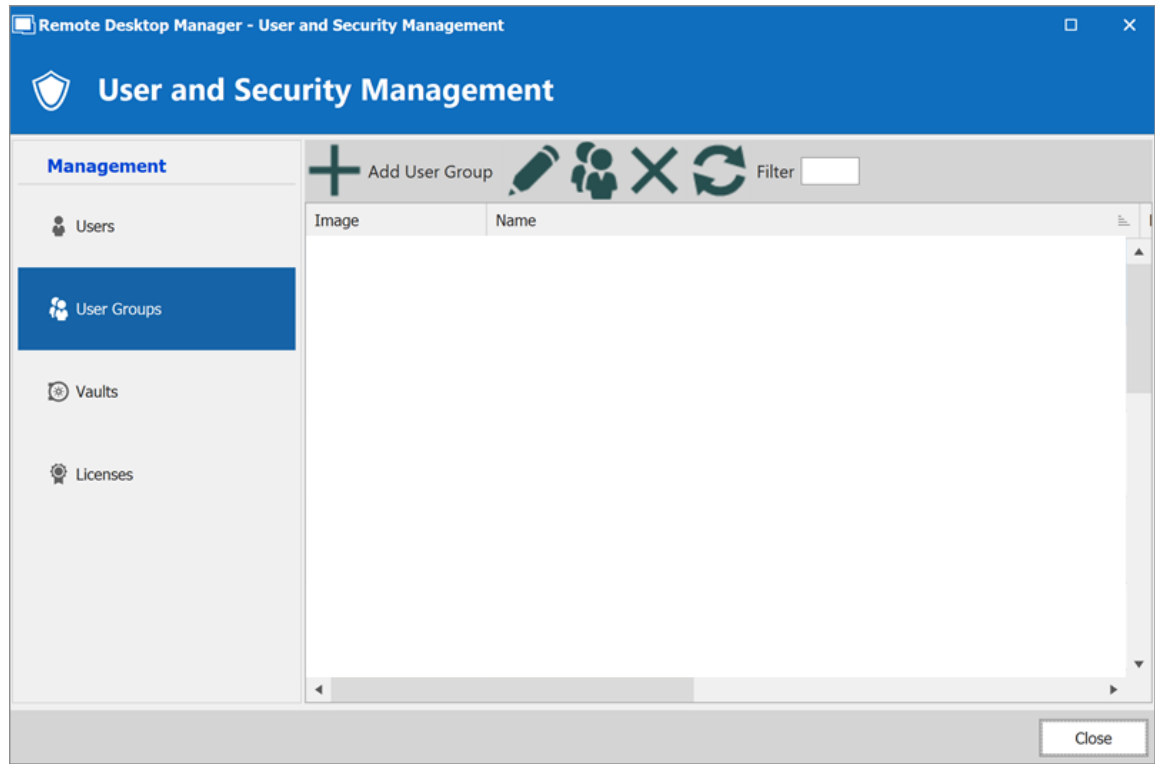
USER GROUPS CONFIGURATION

Now that the users are created, we will add the user groups which we will later grant the permissions to. We need to create the user groups and assign the respective user to each user group. There is no need to grant any privilege to these user groups since they are mainly empty shells used to group multiple users. This allows for controlling multiple users at once instead of granting permissions to each users, one at a time.

- ServiceDesk
- HelpDesk
- Consultants

To add a user group, click the **Add User Group** button, enter a name for the user group, and click **Ok**.

To assign users to a user group, select a user group and click the **Assign User Groups** button. Use the **Is Member** check boxes to add users to the user group.



User and Security Management - User Groups

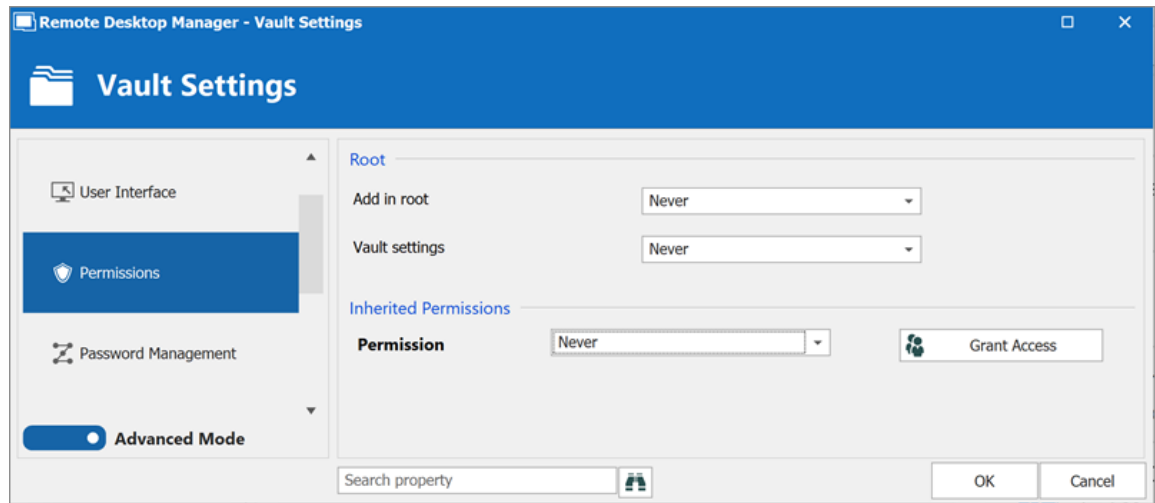
ENTRY CONFIGURATION

Now, everything is ready to grant or deny access to the user groups.

- All Vault folder permissions are set to **Never**. By inheritance, this denies the child items default access to everyone.
- The ServiceDesk has the permission to view and open all entries but is able to edit only the entries in the client's groups/folders.
- The HelpDesk has the permission to view and open entries in the client's groups/folders only and is not able to edit them.
- The Consultants have the permission to view and open entries in the Montreal folder only but is not able to edit it or its child items.

Vault Settings

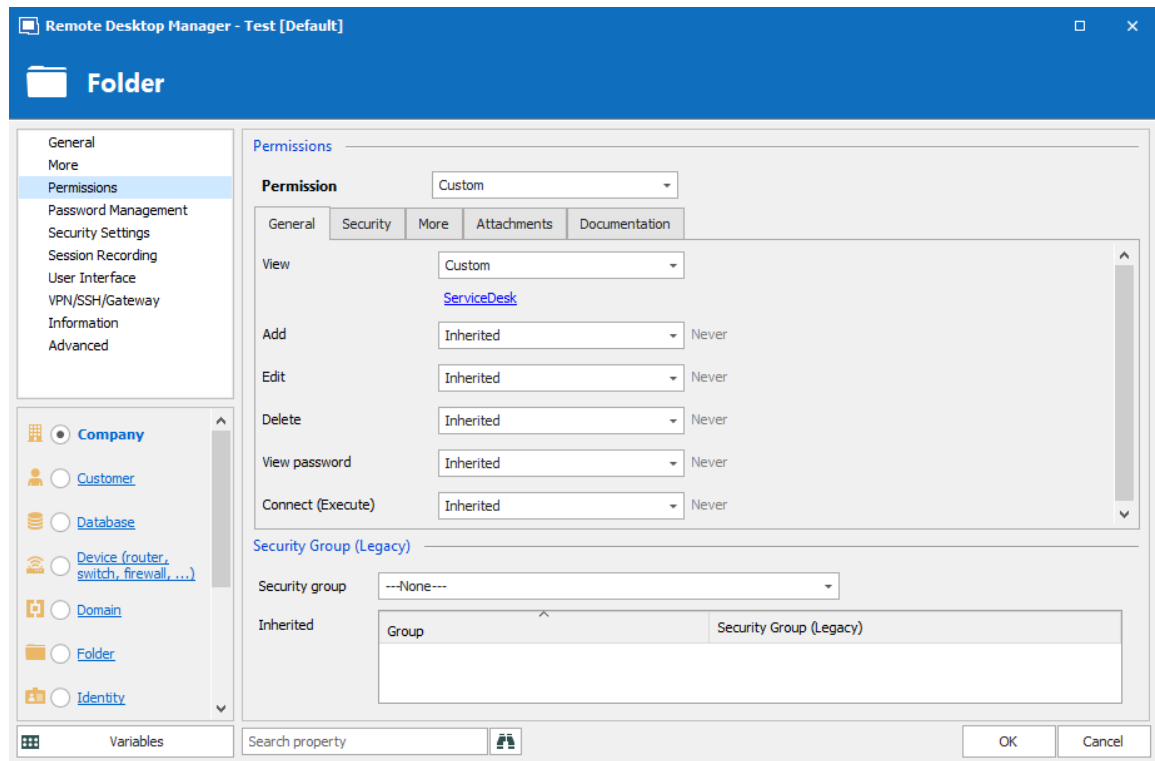
As mentioned above, **ALL** Vault settings folder permissions are set to **Never**. This denies the default access to other users.



Vault Settings - Permissions

Windjammer Downhill Pro, and Telemark, the Vault level groups/folders

The permission to view the Windjammer folder is set for the ServiceDesk only since we want them to be able to use the child entries. We don't want the ServiceDesk to add, edit or delete anything. We leave the **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** permissions to **Inherited** so only the administrators can perform these action on the Windjammer folder and its child items.



Windjammer - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only the administrator can add entries.
- **Edit: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only the administrator can edit entries.
- **Delete: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only the administrator can delete entries.

For Downhill Pro, we grant permissions to the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk.

| Permission | Custom |
|---------------|---|
| View | Custom
HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Custom
ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Custom
ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Inherited
Never |
| View password | Inherited
Never |

Downhill Pro - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Edit: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Delete: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only the administrator can delete entries.

We already have a good example of the flexibility of Remote Desktop Manager Security. ServiceDesk and HelpDesk users can view and use all the entries in the Downhill Pro folder, even the credential entries, but they will never see any passwords since the ServiceDesk and HelpDesk users do not have the privilege to reveal passwords.

Next, for the Telemark folder, we grant permissions to the ServiceDesk, the HelpDesk and the Consultants. This is where things get complex. If we want the Consultants to be able to view only the Montreal folder, which is a child item of Telemark, we must grant Consultants the permission to view the parent folder, thereby the entire Telemark content. Then we will grant permissions on child items only to the user group that should have access to these items. This last step will deny the view permission for the Consultants on the child items.

| Permission | |
|---------------|--|
| General | Security More Attachments Documentation |
| View | Custom
Consultants, HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Custom
ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Custom
ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Inherited
Never |
| View password | Inherited
Never |

Telemark - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** Consultants, HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Edit: Custom;** ServiceDesk.
- **Delete: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only the administrator can delete entries.

Telemark Child Items

Since we want the users to be able to use the credential entries, we grant the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk the permission to view the Credentials folder. Therefore, the ServiceDesk and HelpDesk are able to use the entries in the folder without revealing the passwords. By specifying that only the HelpDesk and ServiceDesk have the **View** permission, we deny the view access to any user group or user that is not on the list of the permission.

The **Add** and **Edit** permissions are set to **Never** and the **Delete** permission can be left to **Inherited** since it inherits the **Never** settings from the Vault. Only the administrators can perform these actions in groups/folders containing credentials.

Permission Custom

General Security More Attachments Documentation

View Custom
[HelpDesk, ServiceDesk](#)

Add Never

Edit Never

Delete Inherited Never

View password Inherited Never

Connect (Execute) Inherited Never

Telemark/Credentials - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Never;** Only administrators can add credential entries.
- **Edit: Never;** Only administrators can edit entries.
- **Delete: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only administrators can delete entries.

We want the ServiceDesk to be able to use the **Domain admin** credential entry, but not the HelpDesk. For this, we must grant the **View** permission to the ServiceDesk. The ServiceDesk is still be able to use the credential entry but will never see the password.

Permission Custom

General Security More Attachments Documentation

View Custom
[ServiceDesk](#)

Add Inherited Never

Edit Inherited Never

Delete Inherited Never

View password Inherited Never

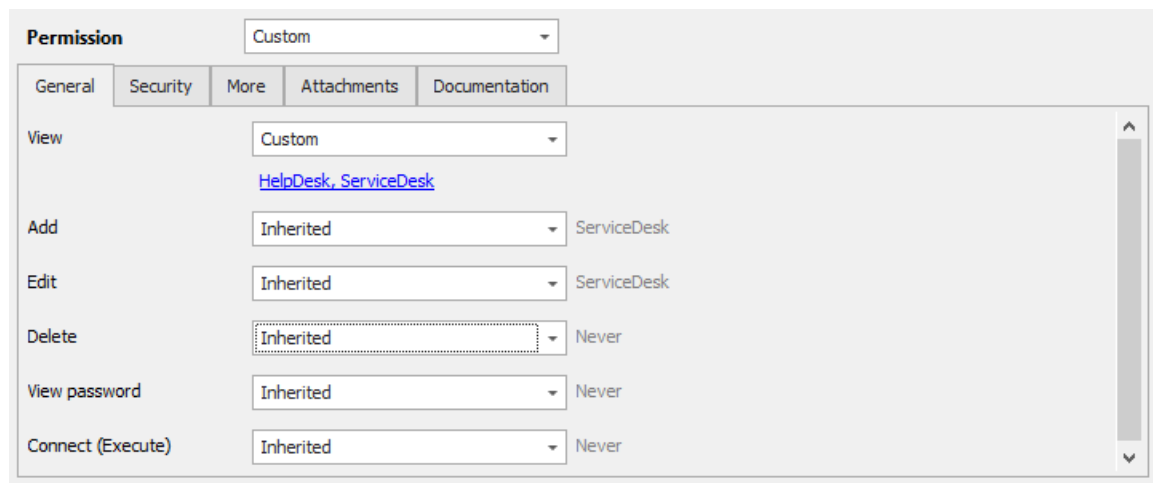
Connect (Execute) Inherited Never

Telemark\Credentials\Admin - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** ServiceDesk.

- **Add: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only administrators can add credential entries.
- **Edit: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault. Only administrators can edit credential entries.
- **Delete: Inherited; Never** inherited from Telemark\Credentials. Only administrators can delete credential entries.

The last step for the Telemark child items is to set the **View** permission to the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk on the Boston folder and leave every other permissions of this folder to **Inherited**. This denies the Consultants to view the Boston folder. Now, the Consultants are able to view and open entries only in the Montreal folder.



| Permission | Value | Inherited From |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| View | Custom | HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Inherited | Never |
| View password | Inherited | Never |
| Connect (Execute) | Inherited | Never |

Telemark\Boston - Permissions

- **View: Custom;** HelpDesk, ServiceDesk.
- **Add: Inherited;** ServiceDesk inherited from Telemark.
- **Edit: Inherited;** ServiceDesk inherited from Telemark.
- **Delete: Inherited; Never** inherited from Vault.



Every time a new folder is added as a child of the Telemark folder, the **View** permission must be set for ServiceDesk and/or HelpDesk to hide the new folder and its content from the Consultants.

There is no need to set any permissions on the Montreal folder, since they all inherit values from parent folders.

Permission Default

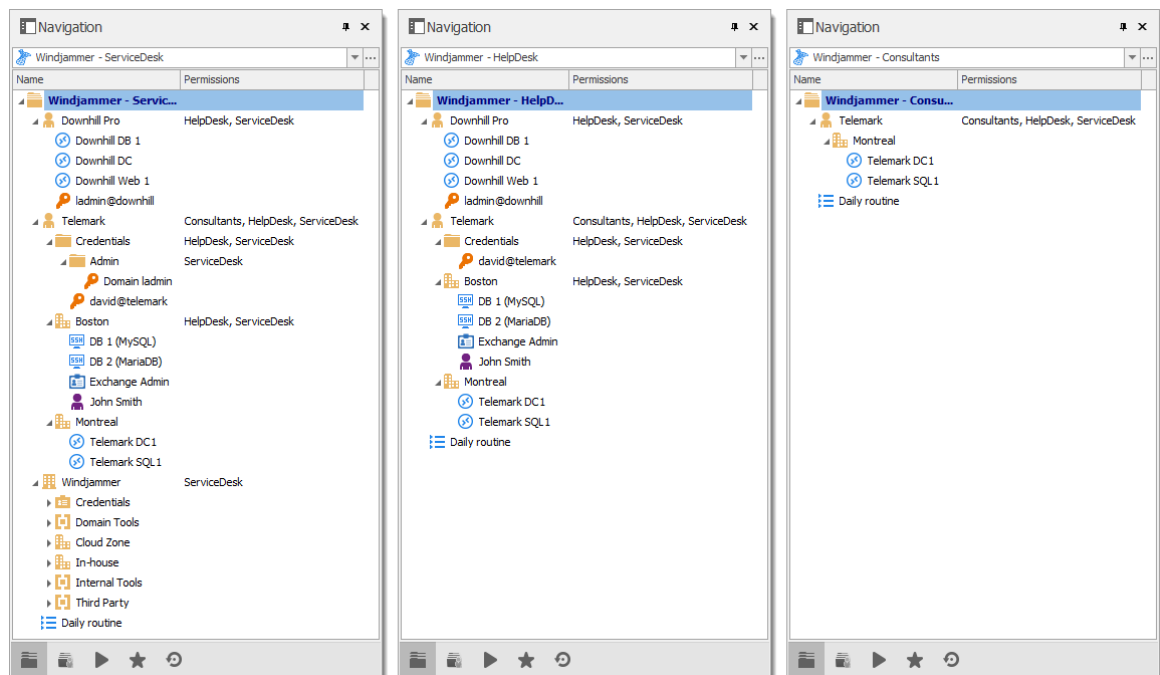
General Security More Attachments Documentation

| | | |
|-------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| View | Inherited | Consultants, HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Inherited | ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Inherited | Never |
| View password | Inherited | Never |
| Connect (Execute) | Inherited | Never |

Telemark\Montreal - Permissions

IN CONCLUSION

The permissions are now correctly set. Note that every entry added at Vault level are inheriting from the Vault as well. This means they would be available to admins only, unless their permissions were modified. This can be confirmed by looking at the screenshot below, in which the entry **Daily routine** is available for everyone (It's permissions have been changed to Everyone. Here is what each user should see in the tree view:



Side by Side Tree View

You can further customize permissions by using the **Security Settings** tab when editing entries. As always, great care must be taken when granting permissions.

8.3 Legacy Information

DESCRIPTION

Describing such a flexible security system takes a lot of effort. This chapter contains valuable information, but that may have been optimized by a newer topic.

8.3.1 Small to Medium Enterprise

DESCRIPTION

Here we will give you a security structure example that should be relevant for small to medium business.

In this scenario, all the options in the **Privileges** section of the user properties will be left disabled.

While this example might fit for many enterprises, please keep in mind that any privilege should be granted only if needed. Be extremely careful when granting permissions to a user or a user group.

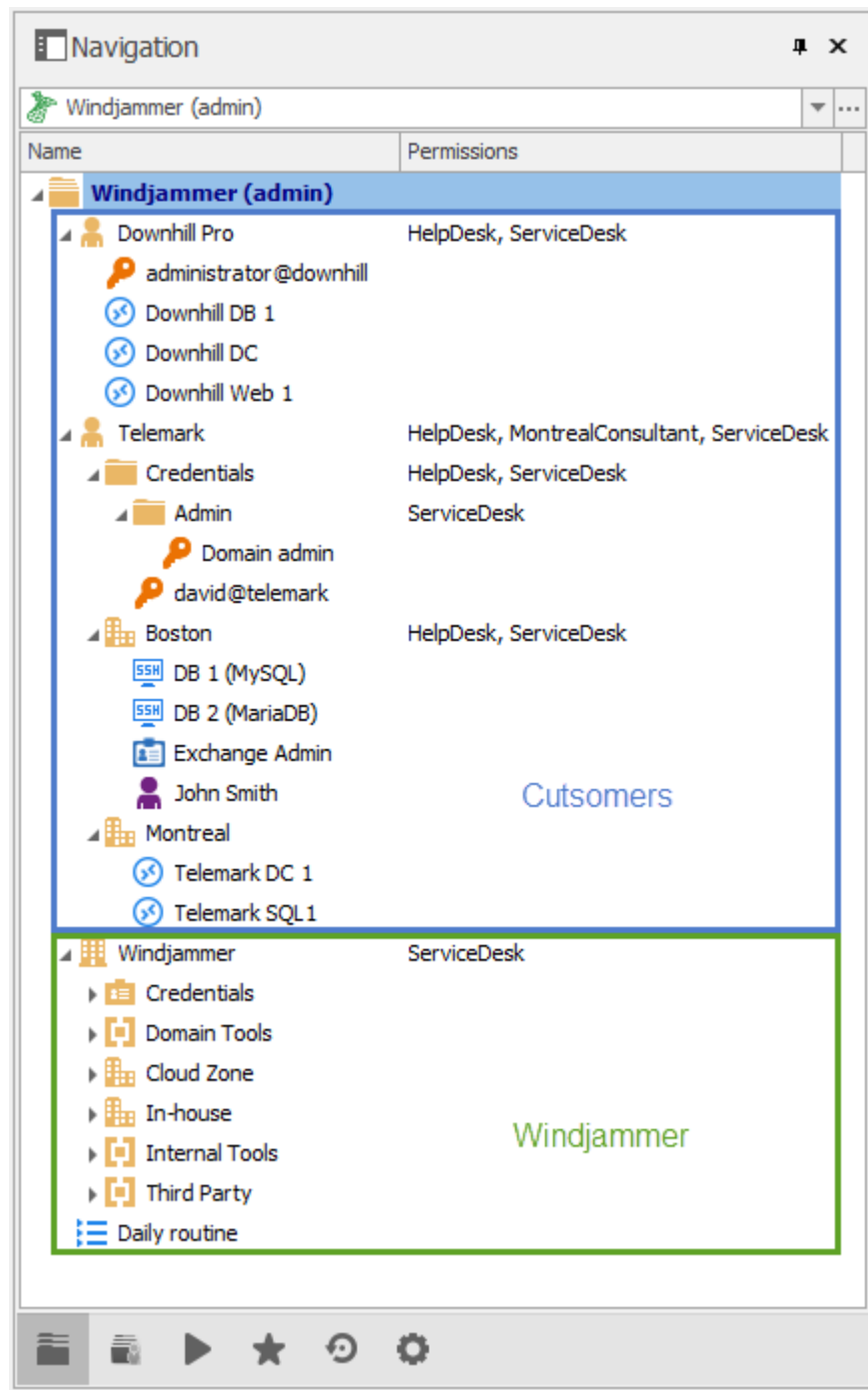


This feature is only available when using an [Advanced Data Source](#).

STEPS

Our fictional company *Windjammer* has a *HelpDesk* and a *ServiceDesk* department, an administrator and a *MontrealConsultant*. We can also see two customers: *Downhill Pro* and *Telemark*.

Here is a view of the data source tree view structure:



Windjammer tree view structure

USER CONFIGURATIONS

Here is an example for user configurations.

The administrator:

- When creating the user, select the **Administrator** in the dropdown menu to give it access to everything.

Remote Desktop Manager - User Management

User Management

General

ID: 9914D1D1-7E4E-47EF-93AA-3F47DB6D9654

Authentication type: Database

Username:

Password:

User type: **Administrator**

User license type: ☐ Integrated security

☒ Create database login/user

Information

First name: Last name:

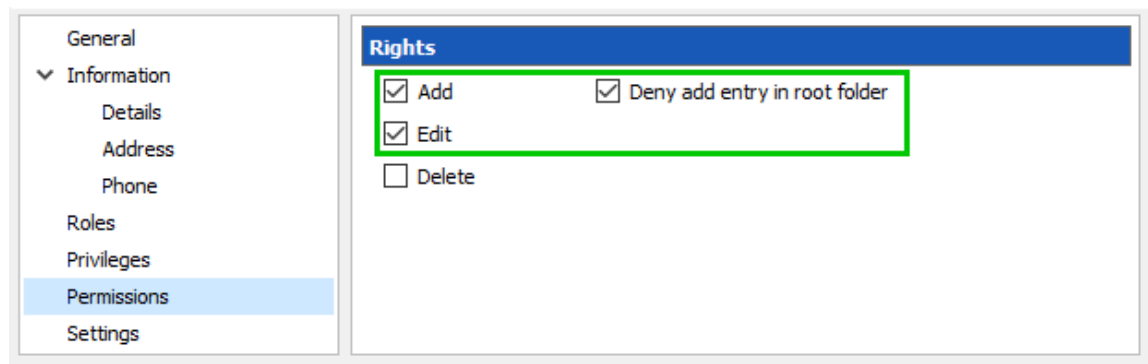
Email:

OK Cancel

Administrator Permission

The *ServiceDesk*:

- **Add**
- **Edit**
- **Deny add entry in root folder**

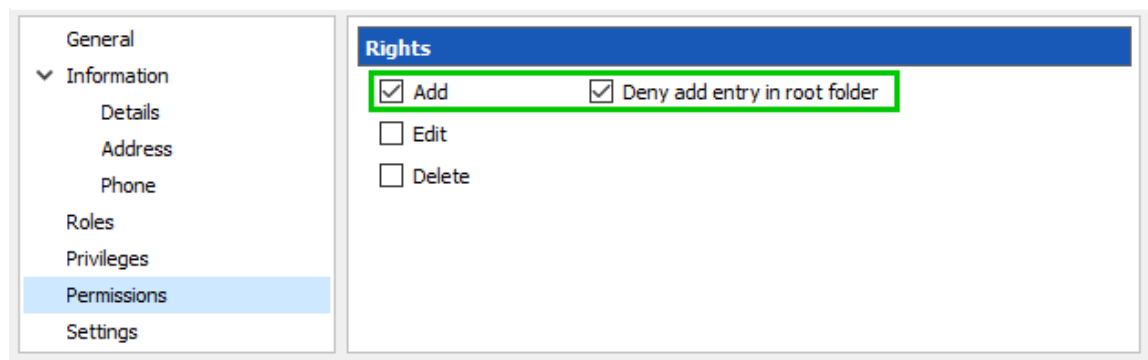


| Rights | |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deny add entry in root folder |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edit | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Delete | |

ServiceDesk Rights

The *HelpDesk*:

- **Add**
- **Deny add entry in root folder**

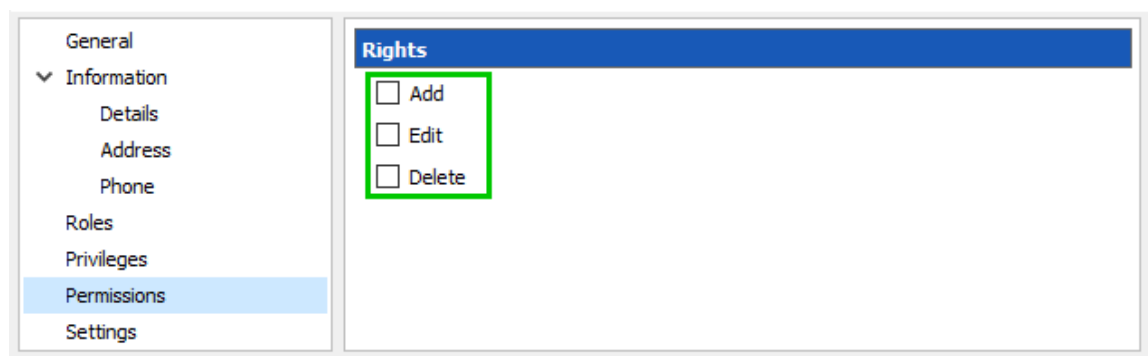


| Rights | |
|---|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Add | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deny add entry in root folder |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Edit | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Delete | |

HelpDesk Rights

The *MontrealConsultant* has read-only access. He cannot see any password or entry detail.

- Leave everything disable for this user



| Rights | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Add | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Edit | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Delete | |

MontrealConsultant Rights

USER GROUPS CONFIGURATION

Now that the users are created we will add the user groups to which we will later grant the permissions. We just need the user groups to assign users to them. No need to grant them any privileges.

- ServiceDesk
- HelpDesk
- MontrealConsultant

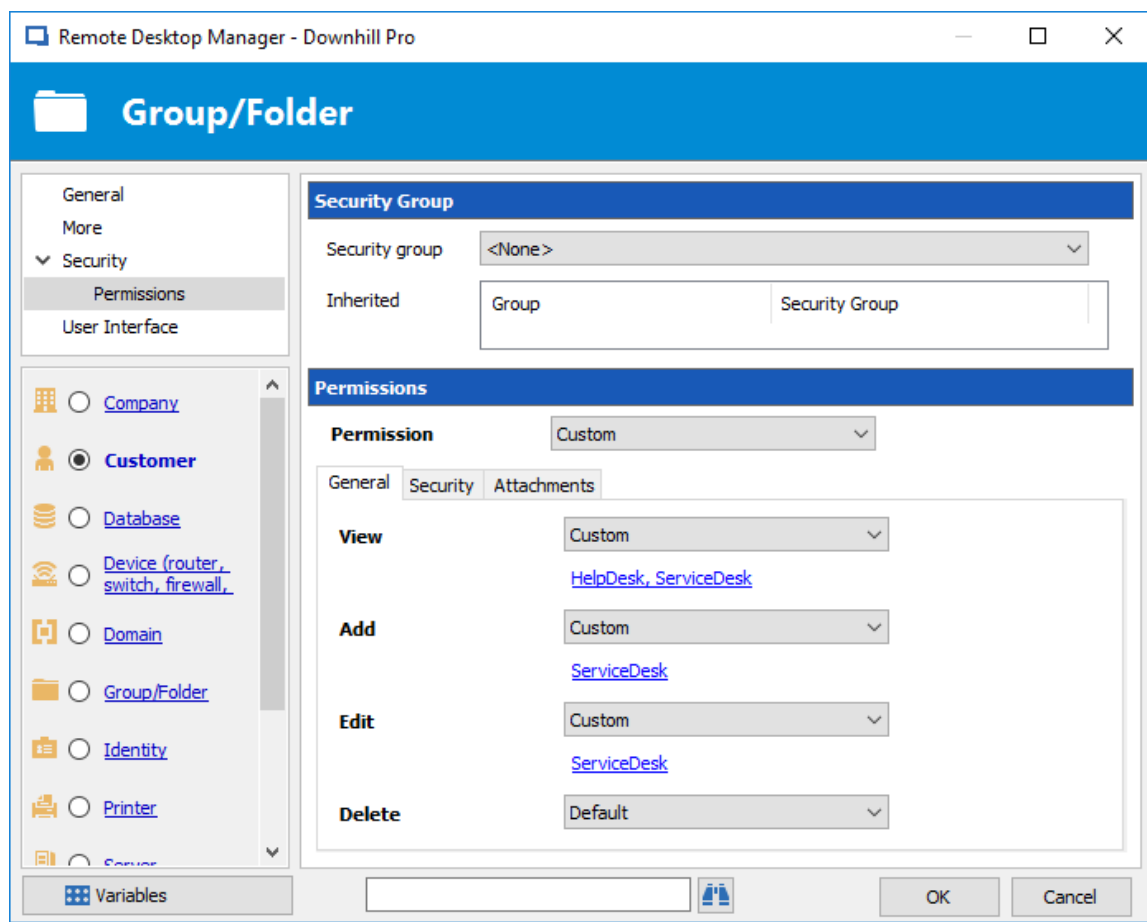
ENTRIES CONFIGURATION

Now everything is ready to grant or deny access to the user groups.

- The ServiceDesk will have the permission to view and open all entries but will be able to edit only the entries in the customer groups/folders.
- The HelpDesk will have the permission to view and open entries on the customer groups/folders only and will not be able to edit them.
- The MontrealConsultant will have the permission to view and open entries on the Montreal group/folder only and will not be able to edit it nor its child items.

We will begin with the root level groups/folders: Downhill Pro, Telemark and Windjammer.

For Downhill Pro, we will grant permissions to the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk.



Downhill Pro - Permissions

- **View:** HelpDesk, ServiceDesk
- **Add:** ServiceDesk
- **Edit:** ServiceDesk
- **Delete:** Since no user have the delete right we can leave this permission to **Default**.

We already have a good example of the flexibility of Remote Desktop Manager's Security. A ServiceDesk user can view and open all the entries in the Downhill Pro folder, even the credential entry, but it will never be able to see any password.

Next for the Telemark folder, we will grant permissions to the ServiceDesk, the HelpDesk and the MontrealConsultant. This is where things get complex. If we want the MontrealConsultant to be able to view only the Montreal folder which is a child item of Telemark, we must grant to the consultant the permission to view the entire Telemark content. Then we will grant permissions on child items only to the user group that should have access to these items. This last step will deny the view permission for the consultant on the child items.

Permissions

Permission Custom

General Security Attachments

View Custom
[HelpDesk, MontrealConsultant, ServiceDesk](#)

Add Custom
[ServiceDesk](#)

Edit Custom
[ServiceDesk](#)

Delete Default

Telemark - Permissions

- **View:** HelpDesk, MontrealConsultant, ServiceDesk
- **Add:** ServiceDesk
- **Edit:** ServiceDesk
- **Delete:** Default

Since we want the users to be able to use the credential entries, we will grant the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk the permission to View the Credentials folder. This way they will be able to use the entries without being able to view the passwords.

The **Add** and **Edit** permissions can be left to **Default** since the ServiceDesk is the only user group that has been granted these permissions in the parent folder.

Permissions

Permission Custom

General Security Attachments

View Custom
[HelpDesk, ServiceDesk](#)

Add Default [ServiceDesk](#)

Edit Default [ServiceDesk](#)

Delete Default

Telemark\Credentials - Permissions

- **View:** HelpDesk, ServiceDesk
- **Add:** Default
- **Edit:** Default
- **Delete:** Default

We want the ServiceDesk to be able to use the Domain Admin credential entry as well but not the HelpDesk. For this we must grant the **View** permission to the ServiceDesk only and change the **Add** and **Edit** permission to **Never**. The ServiceDesk will still be able to edit the credential entry but will never see the password. If you prefer you can set the **Edit** permission to an Administrator user or user group to deny it to the ServiceDesk.

The screenshot shows a 'Permissions' dialog box with a blue header. Below the header, there's a 'Permission' dropdown menu set to 'Custom'. Underneath, there are three tabs: 'General', 'Security' (which is active), and 'Attachments'. In the 'Security' tab, there are four rows of permissions: 'View', 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete'. Each row has a dropdown menu. For 'View', the dropdown is 'Custom' and 'ServiceDesk' is listed below it. For 'Add', the dropdown is 'Default' and 'ServiceDesk' is listed to its right. For 'Edit', the dropdown is 'Custom' and 'Admin' is listed below it. For 'Delete', the dropdown is 'Default'.

Telemark\Credentials\Admin - Permissions

- **View:** ServiceDesk
- **Add:** Default (ServiceDesk)
- **Edit:** Default or Administrator user/user group
- **Delete:** Default

The last step for the Telemark child items would be to set the **View** permission to the ServiceDesk and the HelpDesk on the Boston folder and leave every other permission to **Default**.

Now the MontrealConsultant will be able to view and open entries only in the Montreal folder. Every time a new folder is added the **View** permission must be set for ServiceDesk and HelpDesk to hide the new folder and its content from the consultant.

| Permissions | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Permission | Custom |
| General Security Attachments | |
| View | Custom
HelpDesk, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Default ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Default ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Default |

Telemark\Boston - Permissions

- **View:** HelpDesk, ServiceDesk
- **Add:** Default (ServiceDesk)
- **Edit:** Default (ServiceDesk)
- **Delete:** Default

No need to set any permissions on the Montreal folder, since they are inherited from the parent folders.

| Permissions | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Permission | Default |
| General Security Attachments | |
| View | Default
HelpDesk, MontrealConsultant, ServiceDesk |
| Add | Default ServiceDesk |
| Edit | Default ServiceDesk |
| Delete | Default |

Telemark\Montreal - Permissions

Finally, the permission to view the Windjammer folder will be set for the ServiceDesk only since we want them to be able to use its child entries. We don't want them to add or edit anything so we will set the **Add** and **Edit** permissions to the Administrator user/user group.

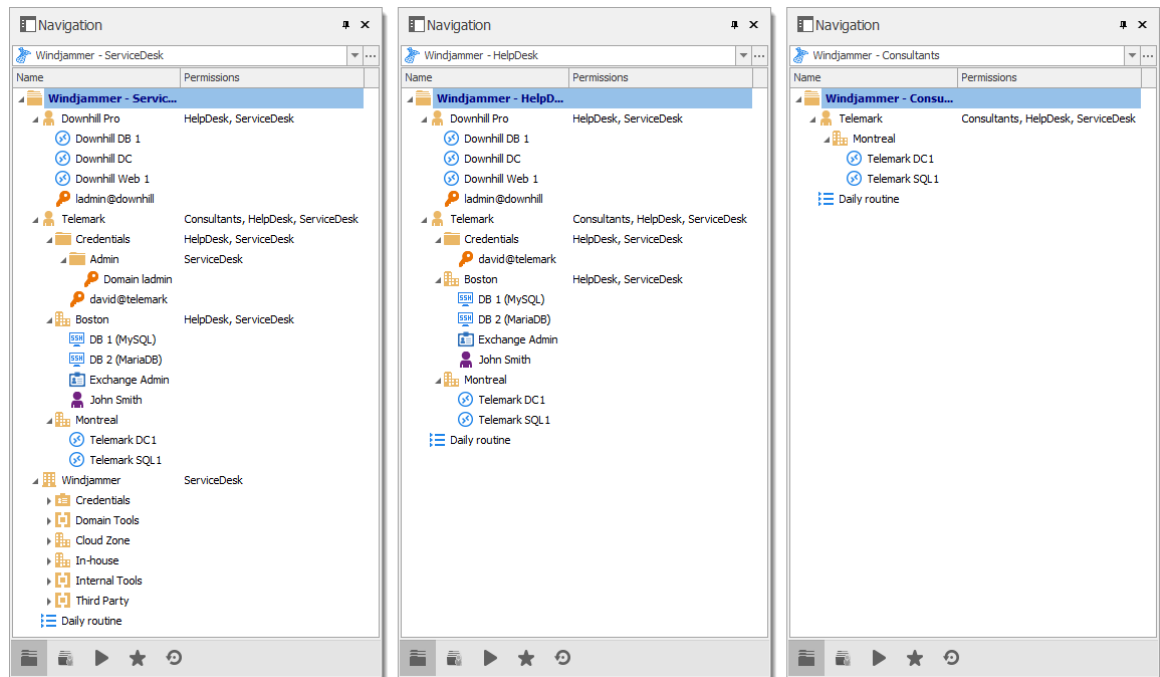
The screenshot shows a 'Permissions' dialog box with a blue header. Below the header, there's a 'Permission' dropdown menu set to 'Custom'. Underneath, there are three tabs: 'General', 'Security', and 'Attachments'. The 'General' tab is active, displaying a list of permissions. Each permission has a dropdown menu and a text field below it. The permissions and their settings are: 'View' (Custom, ServiceDesk), 'Add' (Custom, Admin), 'Edit' (Custom, Admin), and 'Delete' (Default).

| Permission | Dropdown | User/Group |
|------------|----------|-------------|
| View | Custom | ServiceDesk |
| Add | Custom | Admin |
| Edit | Custom | Admin |
| Delete | Default | |

Windjammer - Permissions

IN CONCLUSION

The permissions are now correctly set. Note that every entry added higher than the root level groups/folders will have no security by default. This means they would be available for anyone, even the consultant. This can be confirmed by looking at the screenshot below in which the entry Daily routine is available for everyone. Here is what each user should see in the tree view:

*Side by side tree views*

You can go further with granting permissions by using the **Security** and **Attachments** tabs of the permissions section. As always, a great care must be taken when granting permissions and users should have very strict privileges.

PowerShell Scripting

Part



IX

9 PowerShell Scripting

DESCRIPTION



We have moved to a GitHub repository to hold our various samples and recipes. Please consult the content of our [GitHub repository](#) to see what's available. Questions and samples should be requested on our [forum](#) and our team will be glad to assist you.

There are two ways to interact with Remote Desktop Manager using PowerShell:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Module | Remote Desktop Manager PowerShell Module: a module that exposes many cmdlets that are used to "pilot" a LOCAL installation of Remote Desktop Manager. As such, its quite different from most of the modules available out there since the great majority is used to communicate with a remote service. This means that it requires an interactive Windows session in a user context. |
| Custom Actions | <p>Snippets of PowerShell code that can be executed directly in Remote Desktop Manager. The actions can be initiated using Edit – Edit (Special Actions), Custom PowerShell Command. The advantages of this approach are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. No need to handle loading of the appropriate module for the instance of Remote Desktop Manager.2. No need to handle filtering of entries, most of the times you would perform manual selection directly in your navigation pane, or even better use the advanced search to select entries in one fell swoop. |

9.1 Tips and tricks

DESCRIPTION

We are always asked for a full list of property names and sadly it is extremely hard to provide for multiple reasons. The best way is still to look at the xml structure of an entry of the proper type to identify the field names.

REVERSE ENGINEERING AN ENTRY'S STRUCTURE

1. Create an entry of the needed type, add only mandatory data at this time. Save the entry.
2. Right-click on the entry, then use **Clipboard – Copy**.
3. In the dialog that appears, switch to the **Preview** tab, copy the xml structure to a text file. This is the **BEFORE**.
4. Manually perform the modification to the entry that you would like to automate using PowerShell, save the entry.
5. Using **Clipboard – Copy**, save the modified xml to another file. This is the **AFTER**.
6. Compare the two files with your favorite difference tool, you will see the fields that have changed, and the values that have been assigned. This indicates what your script should do.

ESSENTIAL INFORMATION ABOUT REMOTE DESKTOP MANAGER'S XML FORMAT

- To save space, most fields have a default value and when the field contains that default value, it simply does NOT appear in the content. That is why you must watch out for new fields that appear in the AFTER content.
- Credentials are handled in a special way. They contain a GUID when they refer to other entries, but they hold Well-Known static GUIDs when they use other mechanisms.

| SETTING | WELL KNOWN GUID |
|---|---|
| Default | "" |
| Credential repository ---
Prompt on connection --- | "45479560-173E-435D-8848-C22F863FDC96" |
| Embedded | should be used for backwards compatibility only, we prefer not to list it here. |
| Parent (only for sub-connections) | "E2CC9029-CA3A-4308-BA54-16D5029BC8ED" |
| Inherited | "1310CF82-6FAB-4B7A-9EEA-3E2E451CA2CF" |

| SETTING | WELL KNOWN GUID |
|--|--|
| My personal credentials | "9F3C3BCF-068A-4927-B996-CA52154CAE3B" |
| None | "B87B29D9-9239-4D7B-86D8-9B53DCD3BA9F" |
| User Vault, paired with <i>PersonalConnectionID</i> | "245A4245-48E7-4DF5-9C4C-11861D8E1F81" |
| User Vault Search, paired with <i>CredentialPrivateVaultsearchString</i> | "88E4BE76-4C5B-4694-AA9C-D53B7E0FE0DC" |

TIPS AND TRICKS

- To find properties and paths, reverse engineer the session XML file format. Create a sample session in RDM and export it using the right click menu Import/Export - Export Session (.rdm).... Once exported, open the .rdm file with your favorite editor. Browse the XML structure to find the property path and name.
- To list all properties of an entry, pipe the session object to Get-Member cmdlet.

```
$session = Get-RDMSession -Name "MyRDPSession"  
$session | Get-Member
```

- Use the AddDataEntryKind method to set the data entry kind to Web (11 in this case). This is not actually documented – it's just a bonus tip that we use here at Devolutions all the time!

9.2 PowerShell Module

DESCRIPTION



Starting with Remote Desktop Manager version 2021.2.x, the PowerShell module is available for [download on PowerShell Gallery](#).

Remote Desktop Manager supports Windows PowerShell. PowerShell is a powerful scripting shell that lets administrators automate Remote Desktop Manager. They are provided in a PowerShell module.

MANUALLY INSTALL AND IMPORT THE POWERSHELL MODULE

The Remote Desktop Manager PowerShell Module is now available on PowerShell Gallery and can be [downloaded here](#). It can also be installed and imported like the following commands. Please see this [knowledge base article](#) for further instructions about the PowerShell module usage.

```
Install-Module -Name RemoteDesktopManager
Import-Module RemoteDesktopManager
```

COMMANDS

To list all cmdlet commands, please enter this command:

```
Get-Command -Module RemoteDesktopManager
```

For more information on those commands, use the following command:

```
get-help [command name]
```



Here's how to generate a text file with all the commands:

```
Get-Command -Module RemoteDesktopManager -Type Cmdlet `
| Sort-Object -Property Name `
| Format-Table -Property Name `
| out-file $env:temp\pshelp.txt
```



```
Get-Command -Module RemoteDesktopManager `
| ForEach-Object { get-help -name $_.Name -full } `
| out-file -append $env:temp\pshelp.txt
```

9.2.1 Extract TeamViewer ID

DESCRIPTION

You can use Powershell to extract the TeamViewer ID from a session.

SETTINGS

Here a script to extract the TeamViewer ID from a session:

```
$sessions = Get-RDM-Session | where {$_.Session.Kind -eq "TeamViewer"}
$sessions[0].Session.GetProperty("TeamViewer", "ID")
```

9.2.2 Custom Export to CSV

DESCRIPTION

Many customers ask for a special export that would contain specific fields.

SETTINGS

Here is a small script that can be used to generate URLs for our new web protocol handler. We generate a csv file that contains the name and the URL.

```
## get the data source ID, note that the "Create Web Url" button generates a different
$dsid = Get-RDM-DataSource | where {$_.IsCurrent -eq "X"} | select -expand "ID"
## get the RDP sessions, create a new object with the desired fields.
## Simply append "add-member" commands to include a new field
$s = Get-RDM-Session |
where {$_.Session.Kind -eq "RDPCConfigured"} |
foreach {
    new-Object Object |
```



```

        Add-Member NoteProperty Name $_.Name -PassThru |
        Add-Member NoteProperty URL "rdm://open?DataSource=$dsid&Session=$(($_.ID) " -Pas
    };
    ## save to csv, the field names are used as column headers.
    $s | export-csv c:\temp\sessions.csv -notypeinformation;

```

9.2.3 Creating Group Folder Structure from CSV file

DESCRIPTION



Please note that the CSV file must be encoded in UTF-8 to support special characters.

This sample creates a Group Folder structure from a CSV file.

SAMPLE

```

$csv = Import-Csv "c:\YourFolder\GroupFolder.csv"

foreach ($csvEntry in $csv) {
    $groupName = $csvEntry.Name

    # Extract the group folder name
    if ($groupName.Contains("\\")) {
        $groupName = $groupName.Substring($groupName.LastIndexOf("\\"), $groupName.Length)
        $groupName = $groupName.TrimStart("\")
    }

    # Create the group folder if it is not null, empty or fill in with space character
    if (![string]::IsNullOrEmpty($groupName)) {
        $session = New-RDMSession -Type "Group" -Name $groupName
        $session.Group = $csvEntry.Name
        Set-RDMSession $session
        Write-Host "Group Folder $groupName created" -f Yellow
    }
}

Update-RDMUI

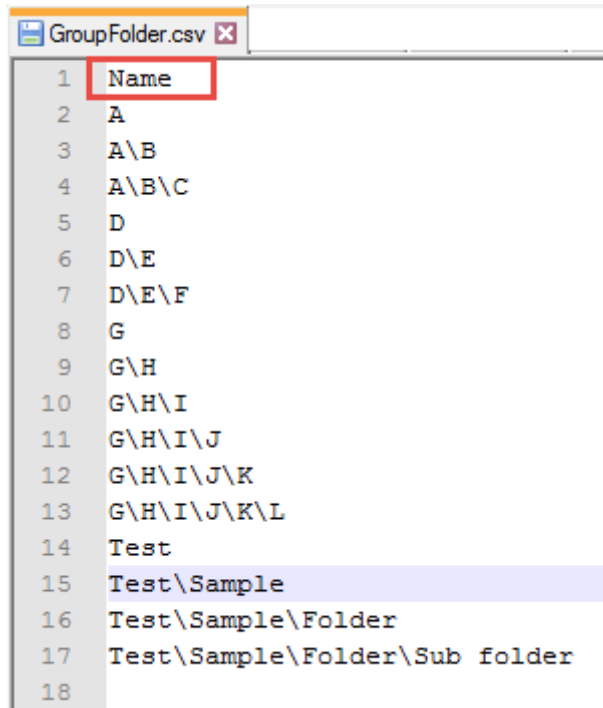
```

NOTES

The CSV file must have only one column with the title set as Name.

The full path must be specified for each sub folder.

Here is an example of this CSV file :



CSV File example

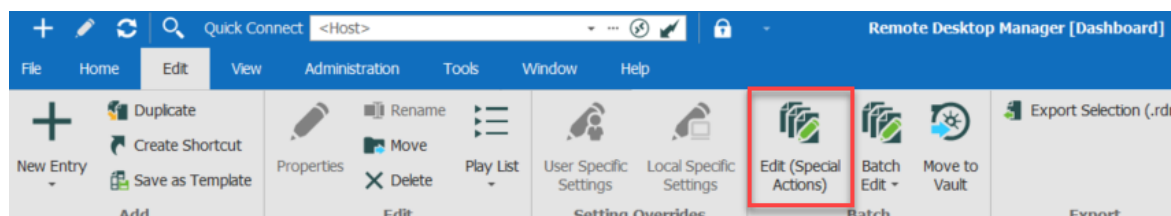
CMDLETS REFERENCE

9.3 Custom PowerShell Commands

DESCRIPTION

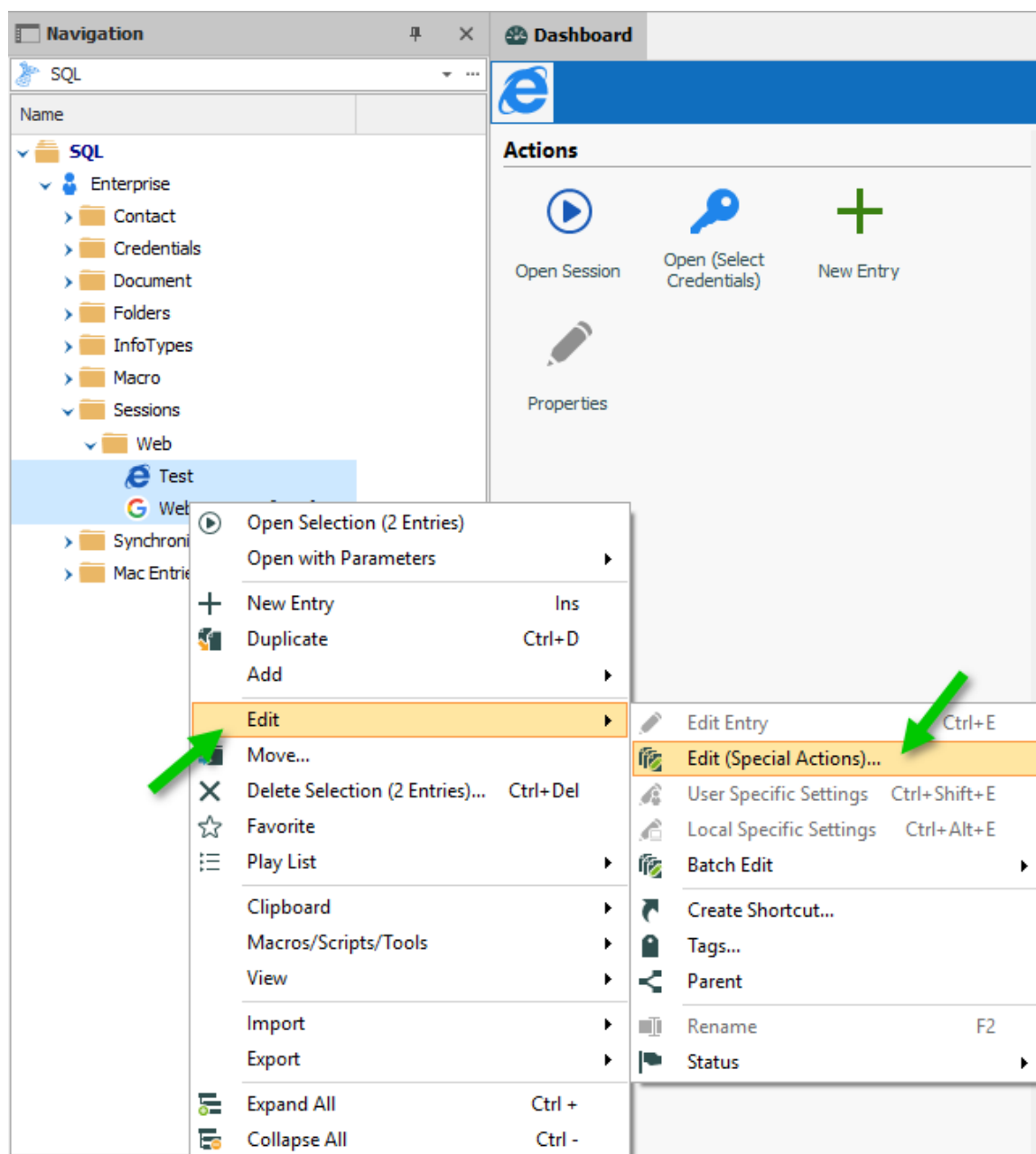
Custom Powershell Command will act on currently selected entries in your navigation panel. Use click & ctrl-click to build up your list, or an advanced search to select a great number of entries. After your selection is done, the command is available using either :

- **Edit - Batch - Edit (Special Actions).**



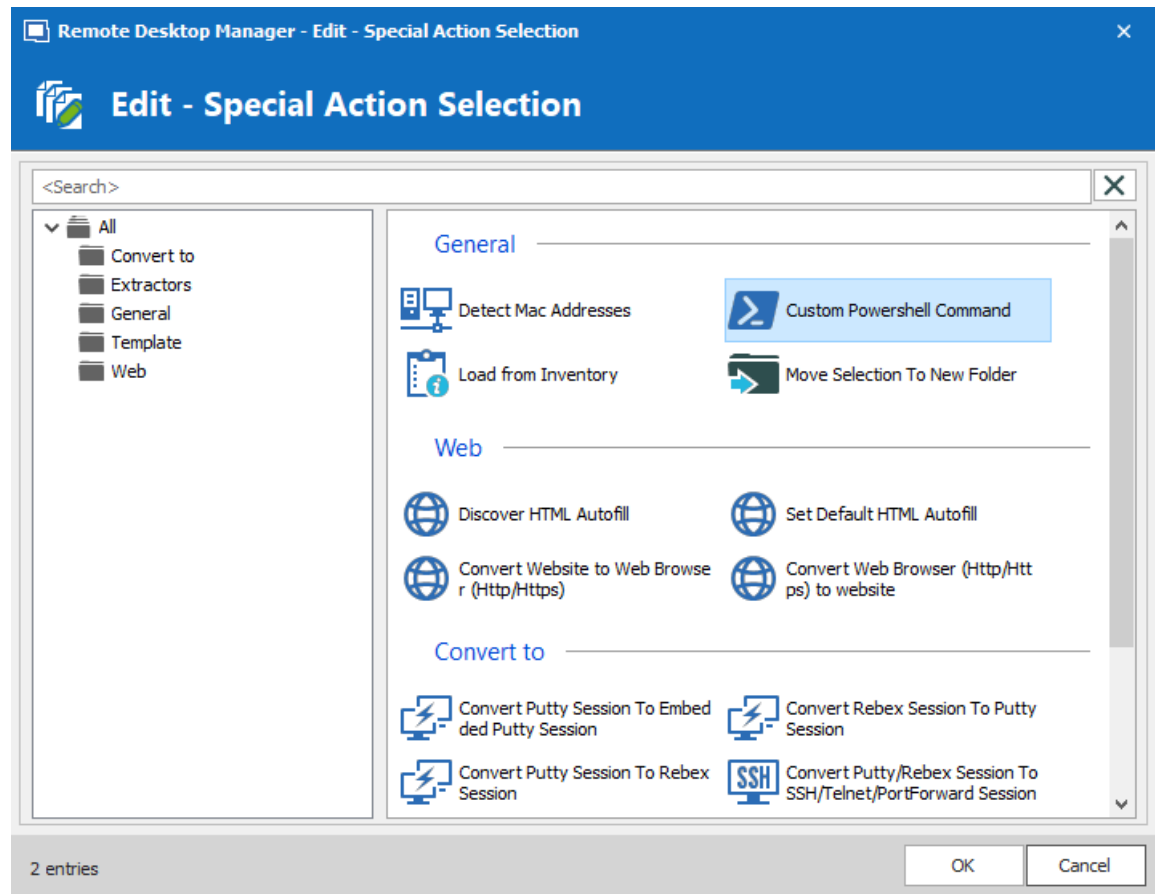
Edit Toolbar

- Right-click then **Edit – Edit (Special Actions)**.



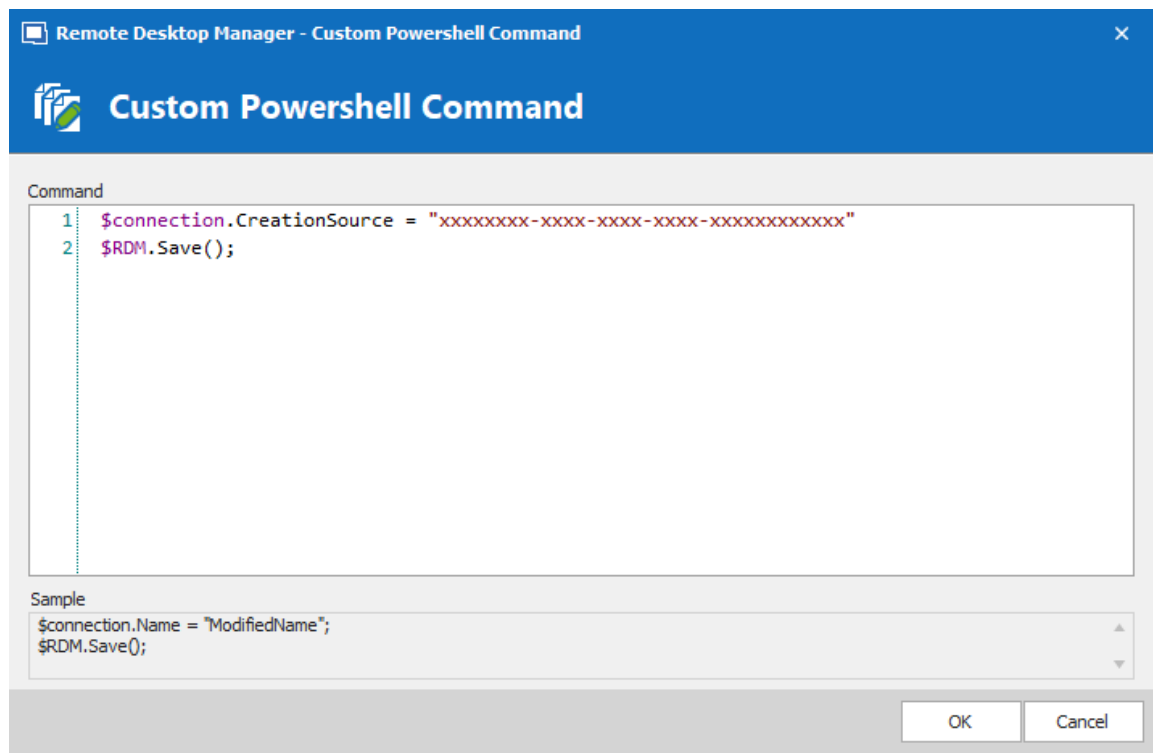
Selected entries - Edit (Special Actions)

- Once there, Select **Custom PowerShell Command**.



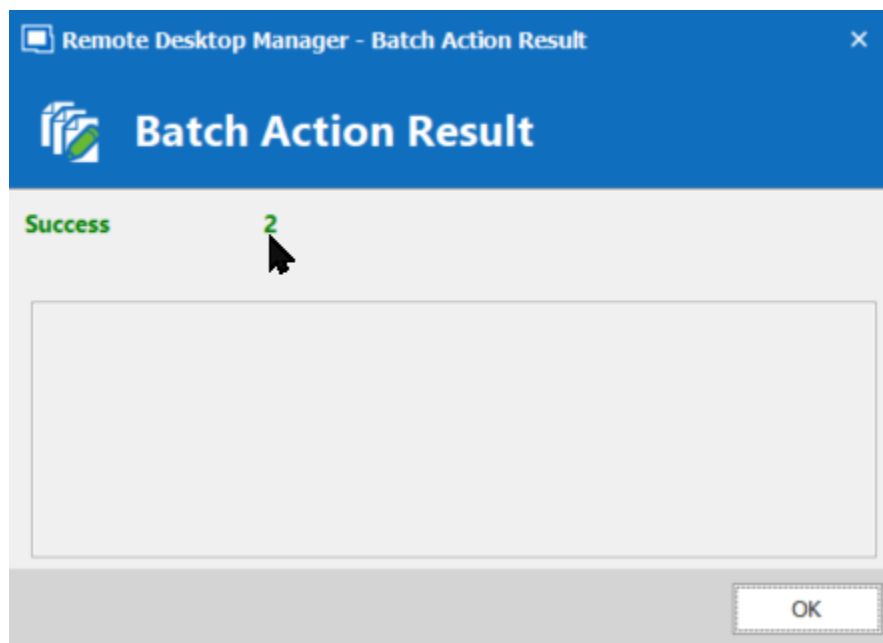
Edit (Special Actions)

- A window appears in which you can write a snippet of code. Note that the last line must always be **\$RDM.Save()**;

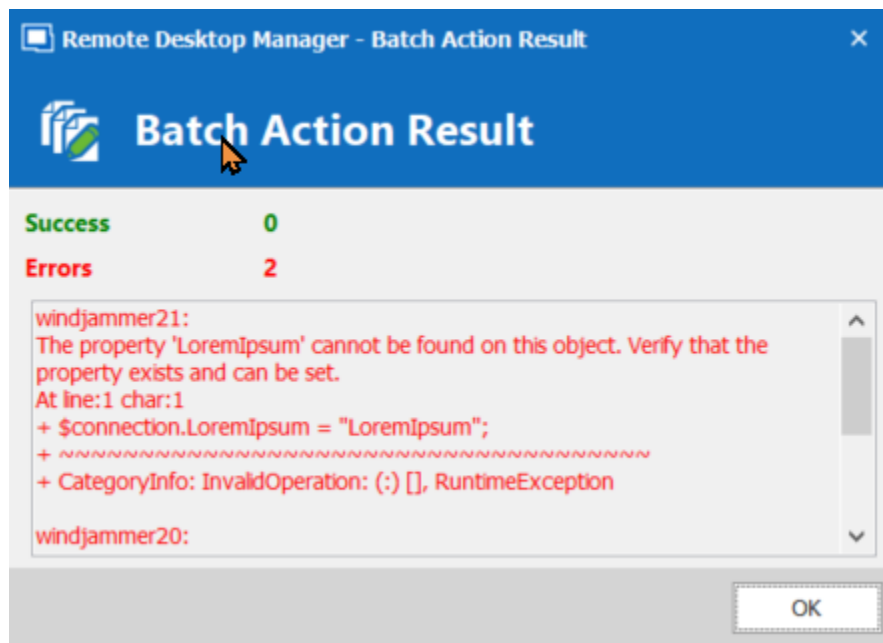


Custom Powershell Command

- Upon pressing Ok, a summary dialog appears to indicate success or failure.



Batch Action Result - Success



Batch Action Result - Failure

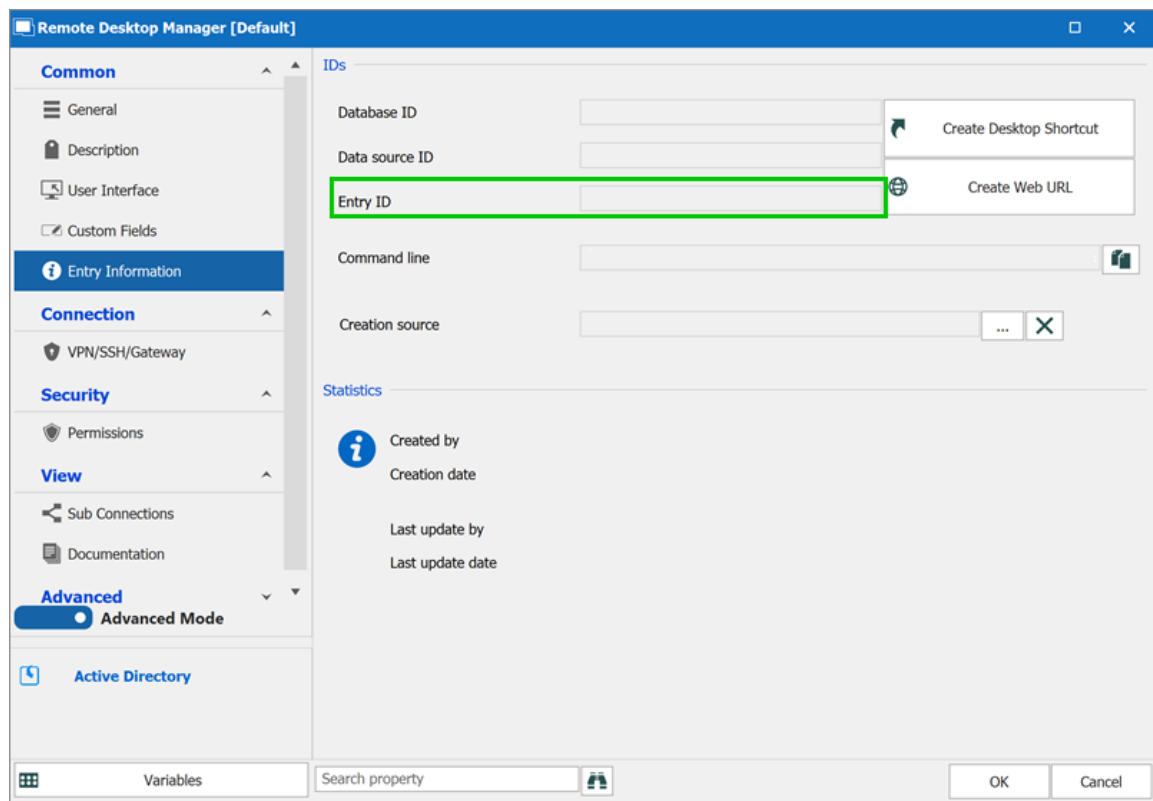
9.3.1 Change your Synchronizer source

DESCRIPTION

If you have been using the Remote Desktop Manager version with the Synchronizer **Action on Entry Mismatch** feature, the following steps will allow you to easily change your source with a Powershell Command without having to recreate all your sessions, thus marking all selected entries as created by the synchronizer.

SETTINGS

1. Select your Synchronizer entry in your Tree view, right click and select **Properties**.
2. Copy the **Entry ID** in the **Entry Information** menu (you will then need that ID number to insert in your Powershell Command).

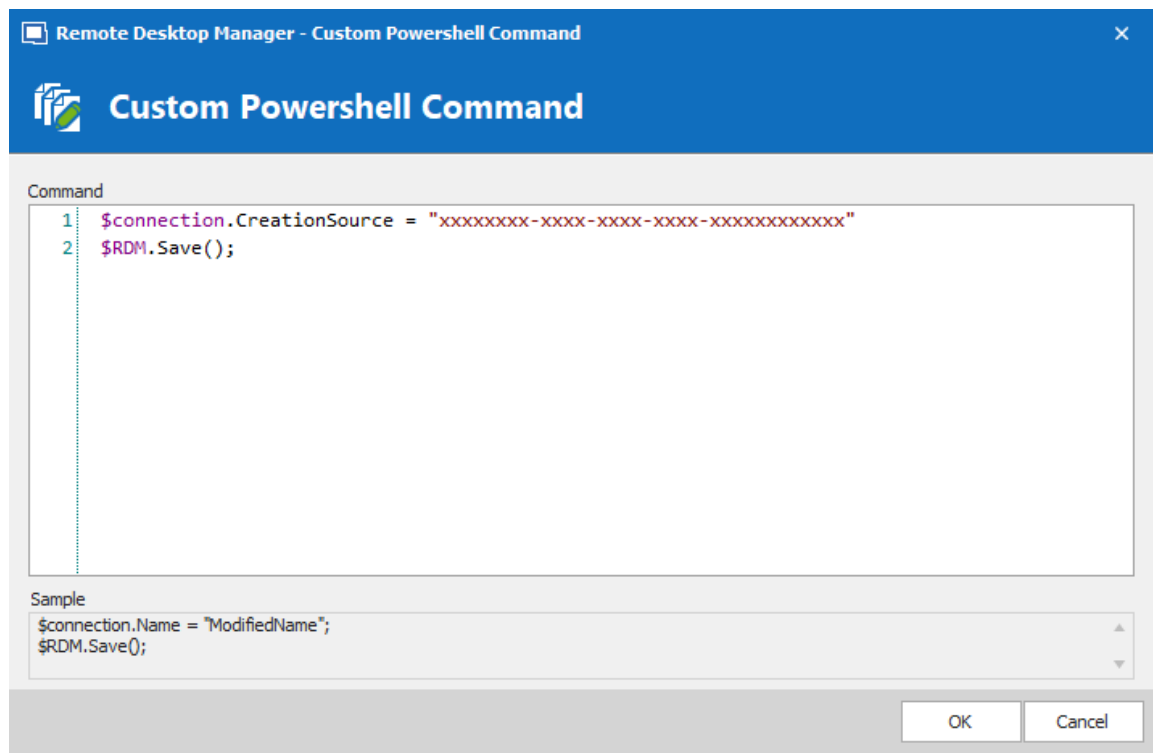


Advanced - Session ID

3. Select your entries and reach the Custom PowerShell Command dialog as described in [Custom PowerShell Commands](#)

4. Write the following line for your Powershell Command:

```
$connection.CreationSource = "***** synchronizer ID obtained in step 2 *****"  
$RDM.Save();
```


*Custom Powershell Command*

9.3.2 Batch Actions Samples

DESCRIPTION

The Batch Actions allow for a quick way to modify multiple sessions at once, but within Remote Desktop Manager itself.

To be able to create your PowerShell script, you would need the name of the field(s) that you would like to update. To retrieve the exact name of the field, right-click on your session and select **Clipboard – Copy**. You can then paste the information in a text editor to retrieve the name of the field(s) that you would like to modify via the Custom PowerShell Command.

Since they use the Powershell technology, we provides samples in this section because the fields are the same when accessed through our Batch Actions or through Powershell.

SAMPLES

DISABLE ONLY SEND PASSWORD IN HTML PASSWORD FIELD OPTION IN WEB BROWSER SESSIONS

```
$connection.Web.OnlySendPasswordInPasswordField = $false;
$RDM.Save ( ) ;
```

ENABLE VIEW URL EMBEDDED (INFORMATION ENTRIES)

```
$connection.DataEntry.ViewUrlDisplayMode = "Default";
$RDM.Save ( ) ;
```

ViewUrlDisplayMode: "Default" = embedded, "External" = external.

OPEN URL (EXTERNAL) FOR WEB LOGIN (INFORMATION ENTRIES)

```
$connection.DataEntry.DefaultAction = "OpenUrlExternal";
$RDM.Save ( ) ;
```

SSH SHELL BATCH EDIT (SESSION TYPE SETTINGS)

```
$connection.Terminal.MaxScrollbackLines = 2000;

$connection.Terminal.AlwaysAcceptFingerprint = $true;

$connection.Terminal.EnableLogging = $true;
$connection.Terminal.LogPath = '$LOGPATH$\$NAME$_$DATE_TEXT_ISO$_$TIME_TEXT_ISO$';
$connection.Terminal.LogMode = 1;
$connection.Terminal.LogOverwriteMode = 0;
$RDM.Save ( ) ;
```

Here are some values that you can change for this command;

LogPath: your path between '' (single quotes). You can also use variables. i.e. %USERPROFILE%, \$NAME\$, etc. In this example \$LOGPATH\$ is a custom variable defined in the [Data Source Settings \(System Settings\) - Custom Variables](#)

LogMode: 1 = Printable Output, 0 = Event

TerminalLogOverwriteMode: 0 = default, 1 = prompt, 2 = append, 3 = overwrite

Here's also other options that you can modify;

\$connection.Terminal.BellMode = 'Visual'

\$connection.Terminal.CloseOnDisconnect = \$false

CONVERT WEB BROWSER SESSIONS INTO LOGMEIN SESSIONS

```
$connection.ConnectionType = 'LogMeIn';
$connection.ConnectionSubType = ' ' ;
$connection.LogMeIn.Url = $connection.WebBrowserUrl;
$RDM.Save ( ) ;
```


Enable the "Hide script errors in all your LogMeIn sessions."

```
$connection.LogMeIn.ScriptErrorsSuppressed = $true;  
$RDM.Save();
```

Hide navigation bar.

```
$connection.LogMeIn.ShowUrl = $false;  
$RDM.Save();
```

Change the Web Browser Application.

```
$connection.LogMeIn.WebBrowserApplication = "GoogleChrome";  
$RDM.Save();
```

Enable the Sandbox Process.

```
$connection.LogMeIn.SandboxProcess = $true;  
$RDM.Save();
```

Change the URL.

```
$connection.LogMeIn.Url = " ";  
$RDM.Save();
```

Change the Portal Login field.

```
$connection.LogMeIn.DashboardHostUrl = " ";  
$RDM.Save();
```

Change Username & Password.

Please run these two one at a time

Host;

```
$connection.LogMeIn.UserName = " ";  
$RDM.Save();  
$connection.LogMeIn.SafePassword = " ";  
$RDM.Save();
```

Portal;

```
$connection.LogMeIn. DashboardEmail = " ";  
$RDM.Save();  
$connection.LogMeIn. SafePasswordDashboard = " ";  
$RDM.Save();
```

CHANGE A CUSTOM FIELD VALUE WITHOUT CHANGING THE DATA

```
$connection.MetaInformation.CustomField3Title = "MyField"  
$RDM.Save();
```

Please note that you would need to change "MyField" for the value that you want to replace Custom field #3 with.

BULK UPDATE FQDN INFO TO SESSIONS.

```
$connection.host = $Connection.name + ".mydomain.com"  
$RDM.Save();
```

BULK CHANGE RECORDING FIELD FOR PUTTY SESSIONS

```
$connection.Putty.RecordingMode = 1;  
$connection.Putty.RecordingFileName = "C:\path\to\your\file.log"  
$RDM.Save();
```

CHANGE THE COMPUTER FIELD OF AN RDP SESSION

```
$connection.Url = " ";  
$RDM.Save();
```


ENCODING

```
$connection.Putty.TelnetEncoding = "UTF-8";  
$RDM.Save();
```

CHANGE THE EXPIRATION DATE OF AN RDP SESSION

The date must be specified using the ISO8601 format.

```
$connection.MetaInformation.Expiration = "2018-12-25T00:00:00-05:00";  
$RDM.Save();
```

CHANGE THE EXPIRATION DATE OF AN RDP SESSION WITH A RELATIVE DATE

Use any date time operator supported by PowerShell.

```
$connection.MetaInformation.Expiration = (Get-Date).AddMonths(6);  
$RDM.Save();
```

MODIFY PAGE TAB TITLE IN UI

```
$connection.TabTitle = '$COMPANY_NAME$ - $NAME$';  
$RDM.Save();
```

CLEAR KEYWORDS IN SESSION

```
$connection.MetaInformation.Keywords = "";  
$RDM.Save();
```

CHANGE HISTORY MAX LINES FOR SSH SHELL (REBEX)

```
$connection.Putty.HistoryMaxLength = 2000;  
$RDM.Save();
```

CONVERT COMMAND LINE TOOL TO A COMMAND LINE SESSION


```
$connection.ConnectionType = 3;  
$RDM.Save();
```

CHANGE KEYBOARD HOOK FOR AN RDP SESSION

```
$connection.KeyboardHook = "OnTheRemoteComputer";  
$RDM.Save();
```


Support/Resources

Part



10 Support/Resources

10.1 Technical Support

Hours: Monday to Friday 7:30 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. EST

Knowledge Base: Find helpful information's and procedures regarding our [products](#).

Email: service@devolutions.net

Forum: <https://forum.devolutions.net/>

Language: English-Français-Deutsch
:

Phone: +1 844 463.0419

EXTENDED AND PREMIUM SUPPORT PLANS

Subscribers of a paid support plan receive an email address and a plan ID. You should send your support requests to the appropriate email address and provide your plan ID in the subject line.

Please consult our [Support Policy](#) for more information.



10.2 Keyboard Shortcuts

DESCRIPTION

Here are the default keyboard shortcuts for various commands. These can be modified in ***File – Options – User Interface – Keyboard***.

GENERAL

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|---------------|------------|
| Filter | Ctrl+F |
| Force Refresh | Ctrl+F5 |
| Online Help | F1 |
| Quick Connect | Ctrl+Alt+Q |
| Quick Search | Ctrl+Space |
| Refresh | F5 |

EDIT

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Add Credential Entry | Alt+Shift+N |
| Add Folder | Ctrl+Shift+N |

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| Add Information | Ctrl+Alt+N |
| Add Session | Ctrl+N |
| Delete | Ctrl+Del |
| Duplicate | Ctrl+D |
| Edit Entry | Ctrl+E |
| Local Specific Settings | Ctrl+Alt+E |
| New Entry | Ins |
| Rename Entry | F2 |
| User Specific Settings | Ctrl+Shift+E |

ACTIONS

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| Clipboard - Copy Connection String | Ctrl+Alt+H |
| Clipboard - Copy Domain | Ctrl+Alt+B |
| Clipboard - Copy Host | Ctrl+H |

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| Clipboard - Copy Password | Ctrl+Shift+B |
| Clipboard - Copy Url | Ctrl+Shift+H |
| Clipboard - Copy Username | Ctrl+B |
| Execute Typing Macro | Ctrl+Shift+A |
| Navigate URL | Enter |
| Open (Embedded/Tabbed) | Ctrl+Enter |
| Open (External) | Shift+Enter |
| Open (Full screen) | Alt+Enter |
| View Password | Ctrl+P |

VIEW

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|-----------|----------|
| Dashboard | Alt+F6 |
| Details | F12 |
| Favorites | F10 |

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| Grouped Tab Pane | Ctrl+Alt+F9 |
| Header Pane | Alt+Shift+F6 |
| Large Icons | F6 |
| Navigation Pane | Alt+F8 |
| Opened Sessions | F8 |
| Play List Management | Ctrl+G |
| RDP Toggle View Only | Shift+F3 |
| Recent | F9 |
| Status Bar | Alt+F7 |
| Tabbed Entries Pane | Alt+F9 |
| Top Pane
(Ribbon/Menubar) | Alt+F11 |
| Tree View | F7 |

NAVIGATION

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|--------------------|--------------|
| Change Data Source | Ctrl+Shift+D |

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|---------------------|------------------|
| File | Ctrl+Shift+F |
| Focus Dashboard | Ctrl+Shift+L |
| Focus Tab | Ctrl+Shift+Up |
| Focus Tree/List | Ctrl+L |
| Goto Bookmark 1 | Ctrl+1 |
| Goto Bookmark 2 | Ctrl+2 |
| Goto Bookmark 3 | Ctrl+3 |
| Goto Bookmark 4 | Ctrl+4 |
| Goto Bookmark 5 | Ctrl+5 |
| Goto Bookmark 6 | Ctrl+6 |
| Goto Bookmark 7 | Ctrl+7 |
| Goto Bookmark 8 | Ctrl+8 |
| Goto Bookmark 9 | Ctrl+9 |
| Select Next Tab | Ctrl+Shift+Right |
| Select Previous Tab | Ctrl+Shift+Left |
| Set Bookmark 1 | Ctrl+Shift+1 |

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|----------------|--------------|
| Set Bookmark 2 | Ctrl+Shift+2 |
| Set Bookmark 3 | Ctrl+Shift+3 |
| Set Bookmark 4 | Ctrl+Shift+4 |
| Set Bookmark 5 | Ctrl+Shift+5 |
| Set Bookmark 6 | Ctrl+Shift+6 |
| Set Bookmark 7 | Ctrl+Shift+7 |
| Set Bookmark 8 | Ctrl+Shift+8 |
| Set Bookmark 9 | Ctrl+Shift+9 |
| Switch Vault | Ctrl+Shift+R |

IMPORT/EXPORT

| ACTION | SHORTCUT |
|---------------|--------------|
| Import (.rdm) | Ctrl+Shift+I |

10.3 Lexicon

DESCRIPTION

Remote Desktop Manager is a feature-rich software that has an extensive set of functionality. Here are the major concepts that are important to understand in order to use the program to its full potential.

DATA SOURCE

A container for entries. It can be a local file or a database (either local or shared). You can use multiple distinct data sources in the application, although only one is considered active at one point in time. See data source [Overview](#) for more information.

ENTRY

All items in your data source are entries. There are multiple types. The entry is an abstract concept that serves as a container for all specific types.

CREDENTIAL ENTRY

A credential is used to control access to a resource by identifying the user. It can be a classic username/password pair held by the application or even by an external source.

INFORMATION ENTRY

An information entry can contain various information like account information, emails, serial numbers. Unlike credential entries, information entries are meant to be shared. Therefore, the data in the information entries is not encrypted. It's principal use in Remote Desktop Manager is to hold Web site information, from the URL to the credentials. This allows auto log in on the specified web site.

CONNECTION

Any type of entry that allows you to connect to a remote host, service or device is a connection. An IP address or host name is normally used, as well as credentials.

SESSION

In Remote Desktop Manager infancy, it was mainly aimed at managing Microsoft Remote Desktop. A **Session** was a term that was in use back then to describe a connection to Microsoft Remote Desktop Services. It appears widely in our documentation. Any technology that connects to something and that needs to use authentication is a **Session**.

10.4 Tutorials

DESCRIPTION

Our tutorials are published on [Devolutions YouTube channel](#).

Our focus is to deliver quality information as soon as possible after the release of a new or modified feature.

Please use our forums if documentation is missing or plain wrong, we will do our best to correct the situation.



Contact Us

For any questions, feel free to contact us:

Support: service@devolutions.net

Phone: +1 844 463.0419

Monday to Friday 7:30 a.m. to 6 p.m. EST

Head Office

Devolutions inc.

1000 Notre-Dame

Lavaltrie, QC J5T 1M1

Canada

**WHERE IT
MEETS SECURITY**